EDITION 2005

Т. Ю. Дроздова, А. И. Берестова, В. Г. Маилова

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

WITH A SEPARATE KEY VOLUME

REFERENCE & PRACTICE

Anthology

Т. Ю. Дроздова, А. И. Берестова, В. Г. Маилова

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

REFERENCE & PRACTICE

WITH A SEPARATE KEY VOLUME

Учебное пособие для старшеклассников
и студентов неязыковых вузов
с углубленным изучением английского языка

Издание девятое,
исправленное и дополненное

Антология
Санкт-Петербург
2005

ББК 81.2Англ-2
Д 75

Рецензент: Л. П. Чахоян, профессор, доктор филологических наук

По вопросам приобретения издания обращайтесь:
ООО «Антология трэйд»:
Санкт-Петербург (812) 326-0127; 326-0128; 323-7301; sales@anthology.spb.ru
Москва (095) 282-0402; chimera_trade@mtu-net.ru

ООО ИПЦ «КАРО»:
Санкт-Петербург (812) 320-8479; 317-9460
Москва (095) 964-0846; 964-0210

Дроздова Т. Ю., Берестова А. И., Маилова В. Г.
Д 75 *English Grammar: Reference and Practice*: Учебное пособие. – Издание девятое, исправленное и дополненное. – СПб.: Антология, 2005. – 400 с.

ISBN 5-94962-075-5

Учебник по грамматике английского языка для школьников и студентов с различным уровнем подготовки. Оригинальная сопоставительная методика; опора на родной язык; многообразие примеров и таблиц; более 500 упражнений.

ББК 81.2Англ-2

Редактор *А. И. Берестова*
Художественный редактор *А. А. Неклюдова*
Компьютерная верстка *Д. В. Лемеш, А. Б. Ткаченко*

Подписано в печать 20 09.05. Формат 84×108 1/16.
Гарнитура PragmaticaCTT. Печать офсетная. Печ. л. 25.
Доп. тираж 10 000 экз. Заказ № 6043.

Издательство «Антология».
199053, Санкт-Петербург, В. О., Средний пр., д. 4, лит. Б
тел.: (812) 326-0127, 326-0128, 323-7301
sales@anthology.spb.ru
В Интернете: www.anthology.spb.ru

Отпечатано с фотоформ
в ФГУП «Печатный двор» им. А. М. Горького
Федерального агентства по печати
и массовым коммуникациям.
197110, Санкт-Петербург, Чкаловский пр., 15.

ISBN 5-94962-075-5

© Т. Ю. Дроздова, А. И. Берестова, В. Г. Маилова, 1996-2004
© ООО «Антология», 2005

ОТ АВТОРОВ

Предлагаемое вашему вниманию пособие создано на основе фундаментальных классических трудов по грамматике английского языка, изданных в России, а также новых работ английских и американских авторов в русле коммуникативной лингвистики.

Пособие состоит из 15 тематических разделов, в которых приводятся общие сведения по каждой теме и объясняются особые случаи употребления. Цель данного сборника – изложить и объяснить в доступной форме существенные морфологические особенности грамматического строя английского языка, необходимые для практического использования.

В основе структуры учебника лежит принцип сопоставления моделей родного и изучаемого языков, а также дифференциация сходных (для носителей русского языка), но различающихся по сути грамматических структур английского языка. Лучшему усвоению материала должны способствовать таблицы, схемы и модели, систематизирующие материал разделов.

Данное пособие предназначено для учащихся школ и гимназий, а также для студентов неязыковых вузов с углубленным изучением английского языка. Оно может быть успешно использовано для работы со студентами любой формы обучения и уровня языковой подготовки, поскольку достаточно подробные объяснения снабжены большим количеством примеров, таблиц и моделей, закрепляемых в разнообразных упражнениях. Упражнения построены по принципу нарастания языковых трудностей и предназначены для студентов начинающих (A), продолжающих (B) и продвинутых (C) групп. Упражнения индексированы соответствующими обозначениями.

К большинству упражнений предлагаются ответы-ключи, изданные отдельной книгой “The Keys”. Цифровые обозначения в упражнениях соответствуют ответам, помещенным в книге “The Keys”.

В течение нескольких лет материал пособия успешно использовался в различных целевых программах при обучении студентов с разным уровнем языковой подготовки.

Т.Ю. Дроздова
А.И. Берестова
В.Г. Маилова

CONTENTS

THE VERB

1. The Verb *"to be"* 8
2. *"There is (are)"* Construction 11
3. The Verb *"to have"* 13
4. English Tenses Active 16
5. The Indefinite (Simple) Forms 18
5.1 The Present Indefinite (Simple) Tense 18
5.2 The Past Indefinite (Simple) Tense 20
5.3 The Future Indefinite (Simple) Tense 24
6. The Continuous Forms 27
6.1 The Present Continuous Tense 27
6.2 The Present Continuous and Present Indefinite (Simple) 31
6.3 The Past Continuous Tense 34
6.4 The Past Continuous and Past Indefinite (Simple) 35
6.5 The Future Continuous Tense 39
6.6 Revision 41
7. The Perfect Forms 42
7.1 The Present Perfect Tense 42
7.2 The Present Perfect and Past Indefinite (Simple) 47
7.3 The Past Perfect Tense 52
7.4 The Future Perfect Tense 58
8. The Perfect Continuous Forms 60
8.1 The Present Perfect Continuous 60
8.2 The Present Continuous and Present Perfect Continuous 61
8.3 The Present Perfect and Present Perfect Continuous 62
8.4 Revision 65
8.5 The Past Perfect Continuous 67
8.6 The Past Continuous and Past Perfect Continuous 69
8.7 The Future Perfect Continuous 71
9. The Revision of Tenses 72
10. Tests 80
11. Talking about the Future 82
11.1 Present Tenses with a Future Meaning 82
11.2 ***"to be going to ..."*** 84
11.3 The Future Indefinite (Simple) 85
11.4 ***"be to"*, *"be about to"*, *"be due to"*** 88
11.5 Revision 88

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

1. General Rules 91
2. Revision 96
3. Tests 97

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH

1. **Indirect Statement** 98
2. **Indirect Command and Request** 100
3. **Indirect Questions** 101
   3.1 Indirect General Questions 101
   3.2 Indirect Special Questions 102
4. **Revision** 103

THE PASSIVE VOICE

1. **The Formation of the Passive Voice** 107
2. **Uses of the Passive Voice Peculiar to the English Language** 108
3. **Revision** 118
4. **Tests** 120

THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

1. **Conditional Sentences** 122
   1.1 Revision 130
   1.2 Test 131
2. **Making a Wish** 132
3. **Revision** 135
4. **Tests** 136

MODAL VERBS

1. **Definition** 137
2. **Can** 138
   2.1 Revision 143
3. **May** 144
4. **Must** 147
   4.1 Revision 154
5. **Should and Ought** 155
6. **Need** 158
7. **Revision** 160
8. **Tests** 164

THE NOUN

1. **Formation of Nouns** 166
2. **Classification of Nouns** 169
3. **The Category of Number** 172
4. **The Category of Case** 177
5. **Tests** 181

THE ARTICLE

1. The Use of Articles with Common Nouns 182
1.1 The Use of the Indefinite Article (*a/an*) 182
1.2 The Use of the Definite Article (*the*) 184
1.3 The Zero Article 186
1.4 Revision 191
2. The Use of Articles with Nouns of Material and Abstract Nouns 193
3. The Use of Articles with Proper Nouns 196
3.1 Geographical Names 196
3.2 Names of Persons 197
3.3 The Use of Articles in the Names of Places, Some Buildings, public organizations, etc 198
3.4 Revision 200
4. Special Difficulties in the Use of Articles 201
5. The Use of Articles with Nouns in Some Set Expressions 205
6. Tests 207

THE PRONOUN

1. Classification of Pronouns 209
1.1 Personal and Possessive Pronouns 209
1.2 Reflexive Pronouns 212
1.3 Demostrative Pronouns 215
1.4 Interrogative Pronouns 216
1.5 Defining Pronouns 217
1.6 Indefinite and Negative Pronouns 224
1.7 **"Much/many", "little/few", "a little/a few"** 231
2. Tests 234

THE ADJECTIVE

1. Formation of Adjectives 235
2. Word Order: adjective + noun 238
3. The Comparison of Adjectives 241
4. Tests 249

THE ADVERB

1. Definition and Forms 250
2. Classification of Adverbs 254
2.1 Adverbs of Manner 254
2.2 Adverbs of Time 256
2.3 Adverbs of Frequency 258
2.4 Adverbs of Place and Direction 259
2.5 Adverbs of Degree, Measure and Quantity 260
2.6 Viewpoint Adverbs 266
3. Revision 268
4. Tests 270

THE VERBALS (the non-finite forms of the verb)

1. The Gerund 272
1.1 Forms. Tense/Voice Distinctions 272
1.2 The Use of the Gerund 273
1.3 Verbs Used with the Gerund and the Infinitive 281
1.4 The Gerundial Construction 285
1.5 The Gerund and the Verbal Noun 287
1.6 Revision 289
1.7 Tests 291
2. The Infinitive 293
2.1 Forms. Tense/Voice Distinctions 293
2.2 The Use of the Infinitive without the Particle "to" 294
2.3 The Functions of the Infinitive in the Sentence 295
2.3.1 Revision 303
2.4 The Infinitive Constructions 306
2.4.1 The Complex Object 306
2.4.2 The Complex Subject 312
2.4.3 The For-to-Infinitive Construction 319
2.5 Revision 323
2.6 Tests 325
3. The Participle 327
3.1 Forms and Functions 327
3.2 The Functions of the Participle in a Sentence 328
3.3 Russian Equivalents of Participles Used as Attributes 329
3.4 Russian Equivalents of Participles Used as Adverbial Modifiers 330
3.5 Have Something Done 339
3.6 The Absolute Participial Construction 340
3.7 Revision 341
3.8 Tests 343

SOME CONFUSED OR CONFUSING ELEMENTS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

1. Some Prepositions Confused 345
2. The Complex Sentence 349
3. Revision Exercises 358
4. Emphasis 360
5. Additional Exercises. Miscellaneous 364

Appendix 1. List of Irregular Verbs 371
Appendix 2. Irregular Verbs: Difficult Cases 375
Appendix 3. Regular Verbs: Spelling Rules 376
Appendix 4. List of Adverbs and Adverbial Phrases 377
Appendix 5. Place of Adverbs 383
Appendix 6. Verbs Followed by the Infinitive 384
Appendix 7. American English 390
Appendix 8. List of Grammar Terms and Key Words 391
Appendix 9. Punctuation 395

Literature 400

THE VERB

1. THE VERB *'TO BE'*

THE VERB *'TO BE'* IN THE PRESENT INDEFINITE TENSE

POSITIVE FORM			NEGATIVE FORM				QUESTIONS	
I	**am**	(**I'm**)	I	**am**	**not**	(**I'm not**)	**Am**	I?
You	**are**	(you**'re**)	You	**are**	**not**	(you**'re not** or you **aren't**)	**Are**	you?
He	**is**	(he**'s**)	He	**is**	**not**	(he**'s not** or he **isn't**)	**Is**	he?
She	**is**	(she**'s**)	She	**is**	**not**	(she**'s not** or she **isn't**)	**Is**	she?
It	**is**	(it**'s**)	It	**is**	**not**	(it**'s not** or it **isn't**)	**Is**	it?
We	**are**	(we**'re**)	We	**are**	**not**	(we**'re not** or we **aren't**)	**Are**	we?
You	**are**	(you**'re**)	You	**are**	**not**	(you**'re not** or you **aren't**)	**Are**	you?
They	**are**	(they**'re**)	They	**are**	**not**	(they**'re not** or they **aren't**)	**Are**	they?

- ❑ **I'm** small but **I'm not** helpless.
- ❑ Where **are** you from?
- ❑ How much **are** these stamps?

EXERCISES (A)

Ex. 1

I. Write short forms (*she's/we're*, etc.).

1. he is *he's*
2. they are _____
3. she is not _____
4. it is not _____
5. I am not _____
6. you are not _____

II. Write the full forms (*she is/we are*, etc.)

7. we aren't *we are not*
8. I'm _____
9. you're _____
10. they aren't _____
11. it isn't _____
12. she's _____

Ex. 2. Put in *am*, *is* or *are*.

1. The sky *is* very blue today. 2. I _____ not tired. 3. This shelf _____ very heavy. 4. These shelves _____ very heavy. 5. The child _____ asleep. 6. Look ! This _____ Mabel. 7. I _____ cold. Can you shut the window, please? 8. The castle _____ one thousand years old. 9. My brother and I _____ good tennis players. 10. Amy _____ at home but her parents _____ in church. 11. I _____ a student. 12. My sister _____ an archeologist.

Ex. 3. Write full sentences. Use *am/is/are* each time.

1. (my grandparents very old) *My grandparents are very old.*
2. (my desk very comfortable) _____

3. (your spectacles in your bag) _____
4. (I not very clever today) _____
5. (this house very expensive) _____
6. (the shops not open today) _____
7. (Mr Wren's grandson six years old) _____
8. (the houses in this street very big) _____
9. (the examination not difficult) _____
10. (those flowers very beautiful) _____

Ex. 4. Write positive or negative sentences. Use *am/am not/is/isn't/are/aren't.*

1. (Brussels...the capital of Belgium) *Brussels is the capital of Belgium.*
2. (I...interested in hockey) *I am not interested in hockey.*
3. (I...angry) _____
4. (It...cold today) _____
5. (The Hague...in Switzerland) _____
6. (I...afraid of dogs) _____
7. (My hands...dirty) _____
8. (Russia...a very big country) _____
9. (The Amur...in Europe) _____
10. (Diamonds...cheap) _____
11. (Motor-racing...a dangerous sport) _____
12. (Squirrels...big animals) _____

Ex. 5. Write questions with *What/Who/How/Where/Why...*? Use *am/is/are.*

1. (What colour your house?) *What colour is your house?*
2. (Where my key?) _____ ?
3. (Where my trousers?) _____ ?
4. (How old your grandmother?) _____ ?
5. (What colour his hair?) _____ ?
6. (How much these shoes?) _____ ?
7. (Who your favourite actor?) _____ ?
8. (Why you always late?) _____ ?

Ex. 6. Ask questions. (Read the answers to the questions first.)

1. (his name?) *What's his name?*	Robert.
2. (single or married?) *Are you single or married?*	I'm single.
3. (British?)	No, I'm not.
4. (where / from?)	From Australia.
5. (how old?)	I'm 18.
6. (a student?)	No, I'm a secretary.
7. (your mother a teacher?)	No, she's a lawyer.
8. (where / from?)	She's Italian.
9. (her name?)	Rachel.
10. (how old?)	She's 40.

Ex. 7. Write positive and negative short answers (*Yes, I am./No, he isn't*, etc.)

1. Are you married? *No, I'm not.*
2. Is she tall? *Yes, she is.*
3. Is it cold today? _____
4. Are you an engineer? _____
5. Are you hungry? _____
6. Is it light now? _____
7. Are your hands warm? _____
8. Are you thirsty? _____
9. Is your father tall? _____
10. Is it sunny? _____

Ex. 8. Translate into English.

1.Твой брат дома? 2. Сколько стоят эти открытки? 3. Эта гостиница очень дорогая. 4. Я интересуюсь искусством. 5. Все магазины сегодня открыты. 6. Музей сегодня открыт? 7. Мне жарко. 8. Моя сестра архитектор. 9. Я не устала. 10. Откуда родом ее муж? 11. Они не студенты, они врачи. 12. Тебе интересны иностранные языки?

THE VERB *"TO BE"* IN THE PAST INDEFINITE TENSE

POSITIVE FORM		NEGATIVE FORM			QUESTIONS	
I	**was**	I	**was**	**not**	**Was**	I?
You	**were**	You	**were**	**not**	**Were**	you?
He	**was**	He	**was**	**not**	**Was**	he?
She	**was**	She	**was**	**not**	**Was**	she?
It	**was**	It	**was**	**not**	**Was**	it?
We	**were**	We	**were**	**not**	**Were**	we?
You	**were**	You	**were**	**not**	**Were**	you?
They	**were**	They	**were**	**not**	**Were**	they?

was not = wasn't
were not = weren't

- ❑ I **was** tired last night.
- ❑ The weather **was** good when we **were** on holiday.
- ❑ The hotel **wasn't** very expensive.
- ❑ Where **were** you at 5 o'clock yesterday?

EXERCISES (A)

Ex. 9. Put in *am/is/are/was/were*. Some sentences are present and some are past.

1. Last year their son *was* 26, so he *is* 27 now.
2. Today the weather_____ nice, but yesterday it _____ cold.
3. I _____ cold. Can I have something hot to drink?
4. I _____ hungry last night, so I had something to eat.
5. Where _____ you at 10 o'clock last Sunday morning?
6. Don't buy those shoes. They _____ too expensive.

7. Why _____ you so tired yesterday?
8. We must go now. It _____ very late.
9. This time last year I _____ in England.
10. We _____ tired when we arrived home, so we went to bed.
11. Anton Chekhov died in 1904. He _____ a famous Russian writer.
12. "Where _____ the dogs?" – "I don't know. They _____ in the garden ten minutes ago."

Ex. 10. Put in *was/wasn't/were/weren't*.

1. We didn't like that house. It *was* very old and it *wasn't* large enough.
2. Helen got married when she _____ 21 years old.
3. I called you yesterday evening but you _____ at home. Where _____ you?
4. My son _____ at work last week because he _____ ill. He's better now.
5. The shops _____ open yesterday because it _____ a public holiday.
6. "_____ you at home at 9.30?" – "No, I _____. I _____ at work."

Ex. 11. Translate into English.

1. Где они были вчера вечером?
2. Почему ты вчера опоздал?
3. Его вчера не было в институте.
4. Меня там не было.
5. Ее не было дома в 5 часов.

2. *"THERE IS (ARE)"* CONSTRUCTION

We use *"there is (are)"* constructions talking about the existence of people, things, etc. These constructions have the meaning *"есть", "имеется", "находится", "существует"*. The verb *"to be"* in such constructions can be used in different tense forms:

there is/are
there was/were
there will be
there has/have been
there had been

- ❑ **There are** many French books in this library.
- ❑ **There was** a meeting at the club yesterday.
- ❑ **There will be** a good crop in this region this year.
- ❑ **There hasn't been** any rain for some days.

WORD ORDER

"there is (are)" + subject + $\frac{\textit{adverbial modifier of place}}{\textit{adverbial modifier of time}}$

The corresponding Russian sentences begin with adverbial modifiers.

Russian	English
В моей комнате есть (имеется) телефон.	There is a telephone *in my room*.
В саду (имеется) много яблонь.	There are many apple-trees *in the garden*.
Вчера в институте было собрание.	There was a meeting *at the Insitute yesterday*.

The verb *"to be"* in such constructions can be used with modal verbs *(can, may, must, ought to):*

- ❑ **There must be** a dictionary on the shelf.
- ❑ **There can be** no doubt about it.
- ❑ **There ought to be** more books on the subject in our library.

We can also use some other verbs after *"there" – to live, to exist, to stand, to lie,* etc.:

- ❑ **There lived** an old doctor in the village.
- ❑ **There exist** different opinions on this problem.

If the subjects are of different number the predicate agrees with the subject that stands first:

- ❑ **There is** a table and six chairs in the room.
- ❑ **There were** some books and a dictionary on the table.

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORMS

- ❑ **Is there** a telephone in your room? – No, **there isn't**.
  No, **there is no** telephone in my room.
- ❑ **Was there** a meeting at the Institute? – No, **there wasn't**.
- ❑ **Will there be** many people there? – No, **there won't**.
  No, **there won't be** any people there.

Mind that the sentences: *"There is a book on the table"* and *"The book is on the table"* have different meaning. The first one shows that there is something *("a book")* in that place, the second one shows that the object *("the book")* we now are speaking about or looking for is in that place *("on the table")*.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Use *"there is (are)"* construction in the necessary tense form.

1. Look! _____ their telephone number in the letter. 2. Chichester is a very old town. _____ many old buildings there. 3. Excuse me, _____ a restaurant near here? 4. How many students _____ in your group? 5. I was hungry but _____ anything to eat. 6. _____ a football match on TV last night. 7 _____ many people at the meeting? 8. Look! _____ an accident. Call the ambulance! 9. _____ 24 hours in a day. 10. This box is empty. _____ nothing in it. 11. _____ somebody at the airport to meet you when you arrive tomorrow. 12. When we arrived at the cinema _____ long queue outside.

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Ask questions to the following statements, then answer them according to the pattern.

Pattern: There is a good programme on TV tonight.
– Is there a good programme on TV tonight?
– *Yes, there is.*
There aren't any theatres in my town.
– Are there any theatres in your town?
– *No, there are not/there aren't.*

1. There is a cat in the window. 2. There are a few changes in the text. 3. There are plenty of glasses in the cupboard. 4. There were a lot of people at the stadium. 5. There isn't anything on the plate. 6. There wasn't anybody in the room. 7. There are difficult exercises in this book. 8. There is something on the shelf. 9. There will be some interesting programmes on TV tomorrow. 10. There are several empty seats in the room. 11. There weren't any pears on the plate.

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

A

1. В этом журнале много интересных статей. 2. В нашем городе много музеев и театров. 3. В этой комнате есть телефон? 4. В этой комнате два окна. 5. В чашке не было чая. 6. Сколько статей было в этом журнале? – Там было несколько статей. 7. Сколько студентов в аудитории? – Двадцать. 8. Рядом с нашим домом будет парк. 9. На этой улице была школа? 10. На столе лежит несколько книг.

B

1. Рядом с нашим домом есть школа. Школа находится рядом с нашим домом. 2. В городе несколько театров. Театры находятся в центре города. 3. В вазе стояли цветы. Цветы стояли в красивой вазе. 4. В театре много детей. Дети сейчас в театре. 5. Существует несколько способов решения этой задачи. Способы решения этой задачи приведены на странице 5.

3. THE VERB *"TO HAVE"*

THE VERB *"TO HAVE"* IN THE PRESENT INDEFINITE TENSE

POSITIVE FORM				NEGATIVE FORM			QUESTIONS		
I	**have**	**(got)**	(**I've got**)	I	**have**	**not got**	**Have**	I	**got?**
You	**have**	**(got)**	(you**'ve got**)	You	**have**	**not got**	**Have**	you	**got?**
He	**has**	**(got)**	(he**'s got**)	He	**has**	**not got**	**Has**	he	**got?**
She	**has**	**(got)**	(she**'s got**)	She	**has**	**not got**	**Has**	she	**got?**
It	**has**	**(got)**	(it**'s got**)	It	**has**	**not got**	**Has**	it	**got?**
We	**have**	**(got)**	(we**'ve got**)	We	**have**	**not got**	**Have**	we	**got?**
You	**have**	**(got)**	(you**'ve got**)	You	**have**	**not got**	**Have**	you	**got?**
They	**have**	**(got)**	(they**'ve got**)	They	**have**	**not got**	**Have**	they	**got?**

have not got = haven't got
has not got = hasn't got

- ❑ **I've got** a cat but **I haven't got** a dog.
- ❑ What **have** you **got** in your bag?

In negatives and questions you can also use **do/does + have** (see the chart on p. 18):

- ❑ They **don't have** any children. (= They **haven't got** any children.)
- ❑ It's a nice house but it **doesn't have** a garden. (= it **hasn't got** a garden.)
- ❑ **Does** Ann **have** a car? (= **Has** Ann **got** a car?)
- ❑ How much money **do** you **have?** (= How much money **have** you **got**?)

When the verb *to have* is used in the following expressions:

– to have dinner /breakfast	– обедать, завтракать
– to have tea/coffee, etc.	– пить чай, кофе и т.д.
– to have a bath/a shower	– принять ванну, душ
– to have a shave/a wash	– побриться, помыться
– to have a rest/a sleep/a dream, etc.	– отдохнуть, поспать, помечтать и т.д.
– to have a holiday/a good time, etc.	– отдохнуть, хорошо провести время и т.д.

in negative and interrogative forms it takes the auxiliary verb *to do*:

- ❑ **Do** you **have** tea or coffee for breakfast?
- ❑ Where **does** he **have** dinner?

Note that ***have*** stresses the idea of regularity, ***have got*** is linked with "now" and means a particular thing. In spoken English the form ***I've got*** is used almost universally for *I have* in the sense of "*I own (possess)*".

- ❑ I **have** a cup of tea for breakfast in the morning (usually).
- ❑ I **haven't got** tea for breakfast this morning.

The past of *have* is *had*. In negatives and questions we use **did + have**.

I had	**I did not have** **I didn't have**	**Did I have?**

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A**) Write the short form (*we've got/he hasn't got,* etc.).

1. we have got *we've got*
2. he has got _____
3. they have got _____
4. she has not got _____
5. it has got _____
6. I have not got _____

Ex. 2. (**A**) Write questions.

1. (you/a bicycle?) *Have you got a bicycle?*
2. (you/a VCR?) _____ ?
3. (your father/a car?) _____ ?
4. (Carol/many friends?) _____ ?
5. (Mr and Mrs Lewis/any children?) _____ ?
6. (how much money/you?) _____ ?
7. (what kind of car/John?) _____ ?

Ex. 3. (**A**) What have Alice and Keith got? What have you got? Look at the information and write sentences about Alice, Keith and yourself.

	Alice (she)	Keith (he)	you?
a camera	no	yes	?
a car	yes	no	?
black hair	no	no	?
brothers/sisters	two brothers	one sister	?

1. (Keith/a camera) *Keith has got a camera.*
2. (I/black hair) _____ *I've got black hair.* *(or: I haven't got black hair.)*
3. (Alice/a camera) Alice _____
4. (I/a camera) I _____
5. (I/a car) _____
6. (Keith/a car) _____
7. (Alice/black hair) _____
8. (Alice/two brothers) _____
9. (Keith/black hair) _____
10. (Alice/a car) _____
11. (Keith/a sister) _____
12. (I/brothers/sisters) _____

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Put in *have got ('ve got), has got ('s got), haven't got* or *hasn't got.*

1. They like flowers. They've *got* a lot of roses in their garden.
2. Jane *hasn't got* a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
3. Everybody likes Tom. He _____ a lot of friends.
4. Mr and Mrs Eastwood _____ two children, a boy and a girl.
5. This insect _____ six legs.
6. I can't open the door. I _____ a key.
7. Quick! Hurry! We _____ much time.
8. "What's wrong?" – "I _____ something in my eye".
9. Ben doesn't read much. He _____ many books.
10. It's a nice town. It _____ a very nice shopping centre.
11. Mother is going to the dentist. She _____ a toothache.
12. "Where's my newspaper?" – "I don't know. I _____ it."
13. Julia wants to go on holiday but she _____ any money.
14. I'm not going to work today. I _____ a bad cold.

Ex. 5. (**B, C**) Extend the sentences according to the pattern.

Pattern: I always *have* sandals in the summer. (this summer)
I *haven't got* any sandals this summer.

1. They have seminars every month. (this month)
2. They have a lot of flowers in their garden every summer. (this summer)
3. We have a letter from home every week. (this week)
4. He often has a sore throat. (today)
5. I usually have warm shoes in the winter. (this winter)
6. She has a new dress every summer. (this summer)
7. They always have a light supper. (tonight)
8. I often have a headache in the evening. (tonight)
9. I often have fish for dinner. (today)

Ex. 6. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. У них есть три собаки и три кошки.
2. У нее большие зеленые глаза.
3. У моего брата голубая машина.
4. Сколько у вас земли?
5. У нас не было машины в прошлом году.
6. У меня вчера болела голова.
7. Когда вы пьете чай?
8. Мы хорошо провели время вчера.
9. Она хорошо провела отпуск на юге.
10. У вас есть книги по истории Англии?

4. ENGLISH TENSES ACTIVE

The category of tense denotes the relation of the action either to the moment of speaking or to some definite moment in the past or future. The category of tense and the category of aspect are intermingled.

The category of aspect shows the way in which the action develops, whether it is in progress or completed, etc. There are four groups of tenses: *Indefinite, Continuous, Perfect, Perfect Continuous*. The *Indefinite form* has no aspect characteristics whatever, the *Continuous, Perfect* and *Perfect Continuous* forms denote both time and aspect relations.

INDEFINITE
shows an action as a fact (customary, repeated)

verb

CONTINUOUS
shows an action as a process

to be + -ing

PERFECT
shows an action completed before a definite moment, connected with it

to have + Participle II

PERFECT CONTINUOUS
shows an action in progress, whose duration before a definite moment is expressed

to have been + -ing

ENGLISH TENSES (ACTIVE)

	INDEFINITE	CONTINUOUS	PERFECT	PERFECT CONTINUOUS
PRESENT	verb **ask(s)** *Repeated, customary action. *usually/generally* *always/never* *often/seldom* *sometimes* *Fact. *Future action (to a timetable, schedule).	be + -ing **am / is / are asking** *Action (process) going on at the present moment. *now,* *at present,* *at the moment* *Future action planned before.	have + III form **have / has asked** *Completed action connected with the present; result. *already/yet* ever/never *lately/recently* *this week/today* *by now*	have been + -ing **have / has been asking** *Action (process) which began in the past and is still going on now. *for a month/a long time* *since 5 o'clock* *how long/since when*
PAST	**asked** **took** *Action (succession of actions) in the past. *yesterday* *last week* *3 days ago*	**was / were asking** *Action (process) taking place at a given moment in the past. *at 5 yesterday* *from 5 to 6 yesterday* *for 3 days last week* all day long/the whole day *when we came*	**had asked** *Action completed before a certain moment in the past. *by 5 o'clock yesterday* *before he came* *by the end of last year* *At sequence of tenses.	**had been asking** *Action (process) which began before a definite moment in the past and was still going at that moment. *He **had been working** for 2 hours, when my brother came.*
FUTURE	**will ask** *Future action. *tomorrow* *next week* *in 3 days* *in 2017*	**will be asking** *Action (process) taking place at a given moment in the future. *at 5 tomorrow* *from 5 to 6 tomorrow* *for 3 days next week* *all day long tomorrow* *when he comes*	**will have asked** *Action completed before a definite moment in the future. *by 5 o'clock tomorrow* *when he comes* *by next summer*	**will have been asking** *Action (process) which will begin before a definite moment in the future and will be going on at that moment. *When you come, I'**ll have been working for 2 hours.***

5. THE INDEFINITE (SIMPLE) FORMS

5.1 THE PRESENT INDEFINITE (SIMPLE) TENSE

It is formed from the Infinitive without the particle ***"to"***:

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE				INTERROGATIVE		
I	**work**	I	**do**	**not**	**work**	**Do**	I	**work?**
He	**works**	He	**does**	**not**	**work**	**Does**	he	**work?**
She	**works**	She	**does**	**not**	**work**	**Does**	she	**work?**
It	**works**	It	**does**	**not**	**work**	**Does**	it	**work?**
We	**work**	We	**do**	**not**	**work**	**Do**	we	**work?**
You	**work**	You	**do**	**not**	**work**	**Do**	you	**work?**
They	**work**	They	**do**	**not**	**work**	**Do**	they	**work?**

do not = don't
does not = doesn't

The Present Indefinite (Simple) may denote:

1. a permanent action (a fact):
- ❑ She **speaks** English. They **live** in France.

2. the general truth:
- ❑ The Earth **rotates** round its axis.
- ❑ Vegetables **grow** well in this climate.

3. a repeated, customary action:
- ❑ The Browns **go** to the seaside every summer.
- ❑ We **write** two tests each term.

4. a future action if planned beforehand:
- ❑ The train **leaves** at 10 tomorrow.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A**) Answer the following questions according to the model:

Model: What does a driver do? – *He drives.*
What do drivers do? – *They drive.*

1. What does a singer do? 2. What does a runner do? 3. What do students do? 4. What does a dancer do? 5. What do cooks do? 6. What do dancers do? 7. What does a painter do? 8. What do teachers do? 9. What does a typist do? 10. What do painters do? 11. What do writers do?

Ex. 2. (**A**) Write the following sentences in the 3rd person singular.

1. I think I am ill. 2. They often visit their granny. 3. We live in Leeds. 4. You usually speak too quickly. 5. Do you like boiled potatoes? 6. Good animals always obey their masters. 7. The boys box in the gymnasium on Fridays. 8. His dogs always attack the neighbours. 9. Heavy trucks make a lot of noise.

Ex. 3. (**A**) Write the following sentences a) in the negative,
b) in the interrogative.

1. She understands the rule. 2. He usually has breakfast at 8 o'clock. 3. The lecture starts at 10.15. 4. The flowers look fresh. 5. She usually walks in the morning. 6. He has coffee in the evening. 7. She remembers them well. 8. He plays chess very well. 9. She leaves home at 10 o'clock every day. 10. Ann misses you badly. 11. They feel very cold. 12. Tom looks sick. 13. They harvest grapes in March. 14. The last boat sails at 10 p.m. 15. That train goes very fast.

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Indefinite*.

1. Oscar Wilde and Bernard Shaw (be) the most witty British writers. 2. Fishermen often (tell) tales about their catches. 3. Their children (go) to a private school. 4. Little Amanda (collect) all sorts of toy-pigs. 5. My father (like) a lot of milk in his tea and a few lumps of sugar. 6. Anything that he (say) (be) worth listening to. 7. We usually (spend) our holidays in Spain. 8. My English friends (live) in a nice house that (stand) on a hill that (overlook) lake Windermere, which (be) in the Lake District. 9. What this sentence (mean)? 10. I (live) in Tver, which (be) my native town. 11. My brother (sing) in Italian opera. 12. My sister (have) a good appetite and she always (eat) heartily. 13. Let's go outside. It (be) terribly hot in the house. 14. What you (see) over there? 15. In England the traffic (keep) to the left but on the Continent it (keep) to the right. 16. This map (be) the largest that we (have). 17. They often (come) to see me in my town house. 18. The twittering of birds in the trees in spring (be) a pleasant sound.

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Answer the questions using *the Present Indefinite*.

1. What time do you go to the Institute? (generally, usually) 2. What do you do on Sunday mornings? (often) 3. How do you spend your leisure time? (usually, occasionally) 4. What sort of radio programmes do you listen to? (usually, often, always) 5. How do you help your parents? (always, sometimes, usually) 6. What sort of films do you enjoy? (nearly always) 7. Where do you read for your examinations? (normally, sometimes) 8. Where do you have your meals? (usually, sometimes) 9. What do you take if you have a headache? (generally, usually) 10. How do you celebrate your birthday? (nearly always, occasionally)

Ex. 6. (**A, B**) Put the verb in brackets into the correct form.

Examples: The lecture <u>*begins*</u> at 10 o'clock (begin).
How many languages <u>*do you speak*</u> (you/speak)?

1. What time_____(the museums/open) in St.-Petersburg?
2. I have a bike but I_____ (not/use) it very often.
3. How many cups of tea _____(you/drink) a day?
4. "What_____ (you/do)?" – "I am a chemical engineer."
5. "Where (your father/come) from?" – "He_____(come) from Minsk."
6. If you need help, why_____(you/not/ask) for it?
7. I_____(play) the guitar, but I_____(not/play) very well.
8. I don't understand the word "maintain". What "maintain"_____(mean)?

Ex. 7. (**A, B**) Correct the sentences. The English is correct but the information is wrong. Write two correct sentences each time.

Example: The Earth goes round the Moon. *The Earth doesn't go round the Moon. The Moon goes round the Earth.*

1. The Sun sets in the East. _____
_____
2. Hens eat foxes. _____
_____
3. Blacksmiths make things from wood. _____
_____
4. The river Dvina flows into the Black Sea. _____
_____

Ex. 8. (**A, B**) Make questions. Begin the questions using the word(s) in brackets.

Examples: Bob plays chess. (How often)? *How often does Bob play chess?*
I get up early. (What time/usually?) *What time do you usually get up?*

1. Felix watches birds. (How often?) _____
2. I write to my parents. (How often?) _____
3. I have dinner in the evening. (What time/usually?) _____
4. She works. (Where?) _____
5. I go to the Zoo. (How often?) _____
6. People do stupid things. (Why?) _____
7. The motor breaks down. (How often?) _____

Ex. 9. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences into English using *the Present Indefinite Tense.*

1. Я обычно делаю домашнее задание вечером. 2. Мой друг живет на Севере. 3. Моя сестра учится в медицинском колледже. 4. У них два занятия иностранным языком в неделю. 5. Он всегда навещает нас, когда бывает в Москве. 6. "Сколько времени вы тратите на дорогу домой?" – "Как правило, я трачу на дорогу домой около тридцати минут." 7. Он теперь редко путешествует. 8. Вы часто ходите в кино? 9. Она никогда не опаздывает. Она всегда приходит вовремя. 10. "Вы чувствуете что-нибудь?" – "Нет, я ничего не чувствую." 11. Его отец – инженер. Он строит мосты. 12. Я не учу французский язык, я учу немецкий. 13. Теперь мы редко с ними встречаемся. 14. Ее муж часто ездит в командировки?

5.2 THE PAST INDEFINITE (SIMPLE) TENSE

Past Indefinite

- ***Regular verb + -ed***
- ***Irregular Verbs***
  See List of Irregular Verbs, p. 371

SPELLING AND PRONUNCIATION RULES

Regular verbs form the Past Indefinite and Participle II by adding ***-ed*** to the stem of the verb, or only ***-d*** if the stem of the verb ends in ***-e***.

to want – wanted to unite – united
to open – opened to live – lived

The pronunciation of ***-ed (-d)*** depends on the sound preceding it. It is pronounced:

[ɪd] after *t, d*: *wanted* [ˈwɔntɪd], *landed* [ˈlændɪd];
[d] after voiced consonants except *d* and after vowels: *opened* [ˈoupənd], *played* [pleɪd];
[t] after voiceless consonants except *t* : *worked* [wə:kt].

The following spelling rules should be observed:

a. Final *y* is changed into *i* before the addition of ***-ed*** if it is preceded by a consonant.

to carry – carried
to reply – replied

y remains unchanged if it is preceded by a vowel.

to enjoy – enjoyed

b. If a verb ends in a consonant preceded by a short stressed vowel, the final consonant is doubled.

to stop – stopped to sob – sobbed to submit – submitted
to plan – planned to stir – stirred

Final *r* is doubled if it is preceded by a stressed vowel.

to occur – occurred to prefer – preferred to refer – referred

Final *r* is not doubled when preceded by a diphthong.

to appear – appeared

Final *l* is doubled if it is preceded by a short vowel, stressed or unstressed.

to compel – compelled to quarrel – quarrelled

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE
I worked/wrote	**I did not work/write**	**Did I work/write?**
	I didn't work/write	

The Past Indefinite (Simple) may denote:

1. An action performed in the past:

❑ We **entered** the house in silence.
❑ He **met** us at the station.

2. A succession of past actions:

❑ He **shut** the window, **switched** off the light and **went** upstairs.

3. A repeated action in the past:

❑ He **made** an entry in his diary every night.

NOTE: Repeated actions are often expressed by
used to + Infinitive,
would + Infinitive.

❑ He ***would*** **spend** all days locked in his room.
❑ When I was young I **used to** work much.

Ex. 10. (**A**) Read a sentence about the present and then write a sentence about the past.

Example: Granny usually gets up at 6.30. Yesterday *she got up at 6.30.*
1. Granny usually wakes up early. Yesterday morning _____
2. Granny usually walks in the garden. Yesterday _____
3. Granny usually has a sandwich for lunch. Yesterday _____
4. Granny usually goes out in the evening. Yesterday evening _____
5. Granny usually sleeps very well. Yesterday _____

Ex. 11. (**A**) Put one of these verbs in each sentence:
hurt, teach, spend, sell, throw, fall, catch, buy, cost.

Example: I was thirsty, so I *bought* apple juice in the shop.
1. My father _____ me how to drive when I was 17.
2. James _____ down the stairs and _____ his leg.
3. We needed some money so we _____ our summer house.
4. They _____ a lot of money yesterday. They _____ a dishwasher which _____ 10000 roubles.
5. The boy _____ the ball to the dog and the dog _____ it.

Ex. 12. (**A**) Write questions. A friend has just come back from Italy and you are asking him about it.

Examples: What place/go to? *What place did you go to?*
The weather/fine? *Was the weather fine?*
1. how long/stay there? _____
2. stay at a hotel? _____
3. go alone? _____
4. how/travel? _____
5. the food/good? _____
6. what/do in the evenings? _____
7. make any friends there? _____

Ex. 13. (**A**) Put the verb into the correct form. All the sentences are past.

Example: I *didn't go* (not/go) to the park yesterday because the weather *wasn't* (not/be) very good.
1. I _____ (not/have breakfast) this morning because I _____ (not/have) time.
2. We _____ (not/buy) anything because we _____ (not/have) any money.
3. I _____ (not/sleep) because I _____ (not/feel) sleepy.
4. She _____ (not/be) interested in the book because she _____ (not/understand) it.

Ex. 14. (**A, B**) Complete the sentence with *used to.*

Example: He doesn't play the piano any more but he *used to* play every day.

1. She doesn't eat sweets now but she _____ them every day.
2. Miranda _____ my colleague but we don't work together any longer.
3. We live in Sussex now but we _____ in Scotland.
4. Now there is one cinema in our town but there _____ five.
5. When they were young they _____ our garden but they don't like it now.
6. Melly walks everywhere now. She _____ a horse.

Ex. 15. (**A, B**) Write some sentences about Denis who started following his friend Henry's life-style. Denis stopped doing some things and started doing other things.

Denis	was in time for work. didn't keep late hours. worked in his garden.	***Henry***	was always late everywhere. read only thrillers. travelled a lot.

Make sentences like these:
Examples: *Denis used to be in time for work.*
He never used to read thrillers or: *He didn't use to read thrillers.*

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

Ex. 16. (**A, B**) Translate into English using *the Past Indefinite Tense*.

1. Мы начали этот опыт на прошлой неделе. 2. Они вернулись домой в 7 часов вечера. 3. Мы решили послать это письмо вчера. 4. Кому вы отдали эти журналы? 5. Вчера я встретил Стива в библиотеке. 6. Когда вы его видели в последний раз? — В прошлый вторник. 7. В прошлом году мы не изучали французский. Мы изучали английский. 8. В котором часу вы начали работать вчера? — После обеда. У нас было мало работы. 9. Погода была хорошая, и мы с друзьями пошли в парк. 10. Где вы были час тому назад? 11. Я встретил ее позавчера, и она рассказала мне об этом.

Ex. 17. (**B, C**) Translate into English using *used to* and *would* + *Infinitive.*

1. Теперь она избегает ходить туда так часто, как раньше. 2. Он, бывало, внезапно появлялся в доме своей матери и так же внезапно исчезал. 3. Она, бывало, часами сидела у открытого окна, глядя на лес за холмом. 4. Иногда она жаловалась на свою трудную жизнь, и ей становилось легче. 5. Я лично думаю, что теперь вы говорите по-английски лучше, чем раньше. 6. Теперь он совсем не курит, так как у него плохое здоровье, а ведь раньше он курил сигарету за сигаретой. 7. Он начал изучать французский, а в детстве он занимался английским с частным преподавателем. 8. Когда-то он был весьма состоятельным человеком.

5.3 THE FUTURE INDEFINITE (SIMPLE) TENSE

shall/will + infinitive

AFFIRMATIVE			NEGATIVE				INTERROGATIVE		
I	**shall/will**	**work**	I	**shall/will**	**not**	**work**	**Shall/will**	I	**work?**
He	**will**	**work**	He	**will**	**not**	**work**	**Will**	he	**work?**
She	**will**	**work**	She	**will**	**not**	**work**	**Will**	she	**work?**
It	**will**	**work**	It	**will**	**not**	**work**	**Will**	it	**work?**
We	**shall/will**	**work**	We	**shall/will**	**not**	**work**	**Shall/will**	we	**work?**
You	**will**	**work**	You	**will**	**not**	**work**	**Will**	you	**work?**
They	**will**	**work**	They	**will**	**not**	**work**	**Will**	they	**work?**
I'll work			**I won't work (shan't)**						

The Future Indefinite (Simple) Tense denotes a future action.

- ❑ You **will write** these exercises tomorrow.
- ❑ I am tired. I **shall (will) go** and **have a nap** before dinner.

NOTE: The Future Indefinite (Simple) Tense *is not used* after the conjunctions:

till	*as soon as*	*provided*
until	*as long as*	*in case*
before	*unless*	
after	*on condition that*	

when
- introduces an object or attributive clause – the Future Indefinite *is used*.
- introduces an adverbial clause of time – the Future Indefinite *is not used*.

❑ I don't know ***when*** they **will arrive**.
BUT: ***When*** they **arrive**, I'll inform you.

if
- **"ли"** – the Future Indefinite *is used*.
- **"если"** – the Future Indefinite *is not used*.

❑ I don't know ***if*** he **will agree**.
BUT: ***If*** he **agrees**, I'll call you.

EXERCISES

Ex. 18. (**A**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Future Indefinite*.

1. He (be) here soon. 2. The dress (be) ready tomorrow. 3. They (be) at the station in time for the 10.30 train. 4. I (know) the result in a day. 5. I (be) twenty years old next year.

6. They (remember) you well. 7. When he (come) back? 8. When he comes, I (apologize) to him. 9. I (not see) this beautiful city again. 10. I (recognize) his pictures anywhere.

Ex. 19. (**A, B**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Indefinite* and *the Future Indefinite*.

I

a. 1. When he (call) I (give) him a piece of my mind. 2. I (be) at home if you (need) anything. 3. They (be) in the gallery if you (decide) to speak to them. 4. If they (want) your advice, they (get) in touch with you. 5. If you (have) anything to report, put it in writing and send it to me.

b. 1. I (write) you about it when I (have) time. 2. He (wait) until they (send) for him. 3. He (be) all right when this (be) over. 4. I'd like to ask you a few more questions before you (go).

c. 1. I (not know) when they (come) to see us. 2. Ask him if he (stay) for dinner. 3. I (wonder) if we ever (see) each other again. 4. I (be) not sure if they (be) in time. 5. He can't tell us when the motor (start).

II

1. When the weather (get) warmer, I (start) practising again. 2. "Come in," she said. "I (see) if he (be) at home." 3. Come and see me when you (come) up to town and we (talk) everything over. 4. If my friends (come) in, please ask them to wait in the picture gallery. 5. He (want) to know if you (be) free tomorrow morning at 10.00. 6. I (wonder) when they (write) to us. 7. I (be) down at your office at 12 tomorrow. 8. When things (get) a little more settled, we (come) to see you. 9. They can't tell me when they (be) free. 10. Go straight on till you (come) to a fountain at the corner of the street; then turn left and you (find) this shop on your right. 11. When you (come) to the main road remember to stop and look both ways before you (cross). 12. Ask them when they (move) to a new flat. 13. "I want to get to the bottom of the valley." – "You must be careful when you (go) down because the slope of the hill (be) very slippery." 14. "I (be) glad when I (get) to the top!" 15. He doesn't say when he (come) back. 16. "Give this message to your teachers as soon as you (come) to school," said his mother. – "All right," said the boy running out. – "I (be) sure it (be) still in his pocket when he (get) home tonight," said his father. 17. If the patient (continue) to improve we (transfer) him to another ward. 18. "I (buy) some pot plants." – "When you (buy) them?" – "The florist (bring) them. Perhaps he (bring) them in the afternoon." 19. If you (look) at them, don't smile. 20. Before we (talk) about it, I'd like to show you something.

Ex. 20. (**B, C**) Use subordinate clauses of time or condition instead of underlined parts of the following sentences. Make some changes if necessary. Pay attention to the use of tenses.

1. <u>I shall have time next week</u> and I shall fix the car. 2. <u>All will go well</u> and I shall graduate in June. 3. <u>He will finish this job</u> and we will give him another. 4. <u>The traffic conditions will get much worse</u> and the city will have to build elevated roads. 5. <u>The light will turn red</u> and all the cars will stop. 6. <u>The weather will clear</u> and we will finish our games. 7. <u>I will be paid tomorrow</u> and I will buy this dress. 8. <u>We will get there before you</u> and we will wait for you. 9. <u>He will come home</u> and his father will give him a good talking to. 10. <u>He will take this medicine</u> and will be all right.

Ex. 21. (**A, B**) All the sentences are future. Put the verbs into the correct form: *will/won't* or *the Present Simple*.

Example: As soon as I *see* (see) him, I'll *tell* (tell) him everything.

1. If they _____ (get) here on time, we can make it.
2. There is a surprise waiting for him when he _____ (get) home.
3. Before you _____ (leave), sir, I _____ (give) you your present back.
4. If you _____ (feel) better this afternoon, we _____ (drive) to the coast.
5. Give him this message when you _____ (see) him.
6. If we _____ (come) in time, we _____ (find) them there.
7. If I _____ (be) lucky, I _____ (get in) without a ticket.
8. _____ (you/be) lonely without me, while I _____ (be) away?

Ex. 22. (**A, B, C**) Make one sentence from two sentences.

Example: They are off soon. You must visit them before that.
You must visit them before *they are off.*

1. I'm going to finish my work. Then I'll go to the cinema.
   _____ when _____
2. He'll spend a week in Brussels. Then he'll go to England.
   _____ before _____
3. He'll come to London in April. He can stay with us.
   _____ when _____
4. It's going to be dark soon. Let's leave before that.
   _____ before _____

Ex. 23. (**A, B, C**) Put in *when* or *if*.

Example: If it rains in the morning, we won't go swimming.

1. I'm going to England next week. _____ I'm there, I hope to visit a few museums. 2. Frank might return this evening. _____ he does, can you cook him some meal? 3. I think he'll pass his exam. I'll be very surprised _____ he doesn't pass it. 4. I hope to be on time. But _____ I don't make it, go without me. 5. I'm going shopping. _____ you want anything, I can get it for you. 6. I don't feel well tonight. I think I'll go straight to bed _____ I get home. 7. I'm leaving for Canada tomorrow. I'll write to you _____ I get there. 8. I want you to come to the party but _____ you don't want to come, you needn't.

Ex. 24. (**A**) Translate into English.

1. В следующем году мне будет 20 лет. 2. Возможно, он придет сегодня. 3. Когда вы начнете изучать иностранный язык? 4. Он думает, вам не понравится новый балет. 5. Она будет дома в 6 часов? – Нет. 6. Я надеюсь, вы хорошо напишете контрольную работу. 7. У вас завтра будет много работы? – Да. 8. Экзамены начнутся 1 июня. 9. Фильм будет очень интересным. 10. Мы увидимся с ним на следующей неделе.

Ex. 25. (**A, B, C**) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Они не начнут совещание, пока не придет главный инженер. 2. Если вы встретите их, попросите их позвонить нам. 3. Вы сразу узнаете Джемму, как только увидите ее.

4. Интересно, когда они вернутся. 5. Не переходите улицу, пока не зажжется зеленый свет. 6. Как только он приедет, он позвонит вам. 7. Он будет очень счастлив, когда ты приедешь в Нью-Йорк. 8. Если вы будете пить эту воду, вы заболеете. 9. Я не могу сказать вам, когда они вернутся. 10. Если вы сейчас не возьмете такси, вы опоздаете на самолет. 11. Когда вы захотите увидеть меня, позвоните. 12. Вы не будете знать английский язык, пока не начнете упорно заниматься. 13. Я загляну к вам перед отъездом. 14. Когда наступит зима, я уеду в Индию. 15. Я не знаю, когда я его снова увижу.

6. THE CONTINUOUS FORMS

to be + - ing (Participle I)

6.1 THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE			NEGATIVE				INTERROGATIVE		
I	**am**	**reading**	I	**am**	**not**	**reading**	**Am**	I	**reading?**
He	**is**	**reading**	He	**is**	**not**	**reading**	**Is**	he	**reading?**
She	**is**	**reading**	She	**is**	**not**	**reading**	**Is**	she	**reading?**
It	**is**	**reading**	It	**is**	**not**	**reading**	**Is**	it	**reading?**
We	**are**	**reading**	We	**are**	**not**	**reading**	**Are**	we	**reading?**
You	**are**	**reading**	You	**are**	**not**	**reading**	**Are**	you	**reading?**
They	**are**	**reading**	They	**are**	**not**	**reading**	**Are**	they	**reading?**

I'm	**reading**		
She**'s**	**reading**	She	**isn't reading**
We**'re**	**reading**	We	**aren't reading**

The Present Continuous may denote:

1. An action going on at the present moment:
- ❑ Why **are** you **wearing** that funny hat?
- ❑ What's that smell? – Something**'s burning.**
- ❑ Andrew**'s reading** up for his examinations these days.

2. A future action when it is planned:
- ❑ I **am leaving** tonight.
- ❑ They **are getting** married in June.
- ❑ We **are playing** tennis tomorrow.

3. A continuous process (with the adverbs *always, constantly*):
- ❑ The Earth **is** *always* **moving.**

4. An action thought of as a continual process (with the adverbs *always, constantly*):
- ❑ He **is** *always* **grumbling.**
- ❑ She **is** *constantly* **laughing.**

VERBS NOT USED IN THE CONTINUOUS FORM

The following groups of verbs do not express a process, that is why they are not used in the Continuous form:

1. Verbs denoting sense perception – ***to see, to hear;***
2. Verbs denoting mental activity – ***to know, to believe, to think (=have an opinion), to doubt, to feel (=have an opinion), to guess, to imagine, to mean, to realize, to recognize, to remember, to suppose, to understand;***
3. Verbs denoting wish – ***to want, to wish;***
4. Verbs denoting feeling – ***to love, to like, to dislike, to hate, to prefer;***
5. Verbs denoting abstract relations – ***to be, to have, to contain, to depend, to belong, to concern, to consist of, to deserve, to fit, to include, to involve, to lack, to matter, to need, to owe, to own, to possess, to appear, to resemble, to seem;***
6. Verbs denoting physical properties of objects – ***to measure (=have length, etc.), to taste (=have a flavour), to smell (=give out a smell), to sound, to weigh (=have weight);***
7. Verbs denoting affect or influence – ***to astonish, to impress, to please, to satisfy, to surprise.***

NOTE: *Such expressions as:*

– ***to see the sights of;***
– ***to see somebody home/off;***
– ***to have dinner (lunch, supper)***

can be used in the Continuous form.

- They **were seeing the sights** of London when I met them.
- He **is having lunch.**

to think
- denoting an opinion – *cannot be used* in the Continuous form
- denoting a process of thought – *can be used* in the Continuous form

- **I think** you are right.
- **I am thinking** of what you have just said.

to admire
- meaning *"восхищаться"* – *cannot be used* in the Continuous form
- meaning *"любоваться"* – *can be used* in the Continuous form

- **I admire** this man very much.
- What are you doing here? **Admiring** the moon?

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Continue in the negative.

Example: Mother is talking on the phone. (sleep) *She isn't sleeping.*

1. John is standing. (lie down) _____
2. Father is shaving. (wash) _____

3. The boys are playing. (fight) _____
4. We are dancing. (jump) _____
5. They are speaking. (shout) _____
6. Mary is running. (walk) _____
7. I am eating. (drink) _____
8. The teacher is speaking. (read) _____

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Answer the questions using the words in brackets.

Example: Are you drawing? (write a story)
– *No, I'm not. I'm writing a story.*

1. Is he writing a letter? (watch television) _____
2. Are you reading Byron's poems? (learn them by heart) _____
3. Is Dad smoking in his study? (read a newspaper) _____
4. Are they listening to the radio? (talk with a friend) _____
5. Are you hurrying to work? (go home) _____
6. Is Joan playing the piano? (listen to a concert) _____
7. Are you working at your essay? (write a film script) _____
8. Is she washing up? (cook) _____

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Answer the questions using the words in brackets.

Example: Is Mother very busy just now? (type a report)
– *Yes, she is. She is typing a report.*

1. Is Jerry very busy just now? (study) _____
2. Are the students very busy just now? (read) _____
3. Is Susan very busy just now? (have breakfast) _____
4. Are the Greens very busy just now? (shop) _____
5. Is Miss Black very busy just now? (sew) _____
6. Is Jane very busy just now? (wash up) _____
7. Is Henry very busy just now? (skate) _____
8. Are the girls very busy just now? (rehearse) _____

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Answer the questions using the words in brackets.

Example: What are you doing? (daydream)
– *I'm daydreaming.*

1. Why is Father making such a terrible noise? (teach the dog to bark) _____
2. What are you doing with the scissors? (cut out a dress) _____
3. Where are you hurrying to? (run to catch my bus) _____
4. What are you doing in this shop? (buy a mink coat) _____
5. Why are you leaving so soon? (go to the University) _____
6. Why is she playing the violin so late? (rehearse for a concert) _____
7. Why are the children listening so attentively? (listen to a favourite fairy tale) _____
8. What is George doing in the kitchen? (bake an apple pie) _____

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Answer the questions using the words in brackets.

Example: Are you busy tonight? (Yes/meet a friend)
– *Yes, I am. I'm meeting a friend.*

1. Is Ivy busy this afternoon? (Yes/go to the library) _____
2. Are they busy this evening? (No/have a rest) _____
3. Is Mary busy after tea? (No/have a nap) _____
4. Are you busy today? (Yes/have visitors) _____
5. Is Kate busy after lunch? (No/stay at home) _____
6. Are the Browns busy today? (No/have a holiday) _____
7. Is Fred busy tonight? (Yes/go to the concert) _____
8. Are you busy this afternoon? (Yes/do up the flat) _____

Ex. 6. (**A, B**) Put the verb into the correct form.

Examples: Please be silent for a while. I *am listening* (listen) to the news.
Don't speak so loud. The child *isn't sleeping* (not/sleep) yet.
Listen to those girls. What language *are they speaking* (they/speak)?

1. Please be quiet. I _____ (try) to sleep.
2. Look! It _____ (rain).
3. Why _____ (you/look) at me like that? Am I green or something?
4. You _____ (make) a lot of noise. Can you be a bit quieter?
5. Excuse me, I _____ (look) for a phone box. Where can I find one?
6. (in the theatre) It's a good play, isn't it? _____ (you/enjoy) it?
7. Listen! Can you hear these children next door? They _____ (cry) again.
8. Why _____(you/wear) your fur coat today? It's very warm.
9. I _____ (not/go) to school this week. I'm on holiday.
10. I want to lose weight. I _____ (not/eat) sweets now.

Ex. 7. (**A, B**) Complete these sentences using some of these verbs:
get, become, change, improve, fall, increase, rise.

Example: The water level *is rising* very fast.

1. The prices for food _____ at the moment.
2. He is still weak but he _____ stronger slowly.
3. These days life _____ more and more expensive.
4. The weather _____ every moment: now cold, now hot.
5. The cost of living _____ . Every year things are more expensive.
6. Victor has gone to work in America. When he arrived, his English wasn't very good but now it _____ .
7. The environment is already very bad and it _____ worse.

Ex. 8. (**A, B**) Read this conversation between Molly and Fanny.
Put each verb into the correct form. The first one has already been done for you.

Molly: Hello, Fanny. I'm so glad to see you. What *are you doing* (you/do) these days?
Fanny: I (1) _____ (train) to be a secretary.
Molly: Really? (2) _____ (you/enjoy) it?
Fanny: Yes, it's quite interesting. How about you?

Molly: Well, I (3) _____ (get married) soon and I'm very busy.
I (4) _____ (look for) a house.
Fanny: Really? (5) _____ (you/do) it alone?
Molly: No, my fiancee (6) _____ (help) me.

Ex. 9. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

1. На кого вы сейчас смотрите? – Я смотрю на эту старую даму. 2. С кем разговаривает Ваш друг? – Он разговаривает с нашим преподавателем. 3. О чем вы рассказываете своим друзьям? – Я рассказываю им о своем отпуске. 4. Вы сейчас пишете диктант? – Нет, мы делаем упражнение 9. 5. Куда вы идете вечером? – Мы идем в цирк. 6. Когда они приезжают в Москву? – Они приезжают утром. 7. Мы уезжаем в Минск. 8. Эти студенты делают упражнение или переписывают текст? 9. Кого встречают эти студенты? – Они встречают иностранных студентов. 10. Куда вы идете? – Я иду на фотовыставку.

Ex. 10. (**A, B**) Translate the jokes.

A
Капитан корабля кричит своим матросам: "Кто внизу?" "Это я, Билли, сэр," – отвечает один. "Что ты там делаешь, Билли?" "Я делаю ... мм ... ничего, сэр." "А Том там?" "Да, сэр." "А что ты там делаешь, Том?" "Я помогаю Билли, сэр."

B
– Почему ты идешь под зонтом? (carry an umbrella). Ты думаешь, идет дождь?
– Нет.
– Но солнце тоже не печет (shine).
– Нет.
– Тогда почему же ты идешь под зонтом?
– Видите ли, когда идет дождь, папа берет зонт; когда печет солнце, мама хочет использовать его. Сейчас единственный случай (the only time), когда я могу использовать зонт.

6.2 THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS AND PRESENT INDEFINITE (SIMPLE)

COMPARE:

Present Continuous (**I am doing**)
some action which is happening at or around the time of speaking:

- ❒ The wind **is blowing** hard.
  Shut the window, please.
- ❒ I can't understand him.
  What language **is** he **speaking**?
- ❒ It's too late.
  What **are** you **writing**?

Present Simple (**I do**)
actions in general or those which happen repeatedly:

- ❒ Strong wind often **blows** here in winter.
- ❒ What language do they **speak** in Switzerland?
- ❒ I **write** letters to my mother twice a month.

We use **the Present Continuous** for a temporary situation.
❒ They **are staying** at the hotel until their house is ready.

We use **the Present Simple** for a permanent situation.
❒ In summer they usually go to the South and **stay** at a hotel near the sea.

EXERCISES

Ex. 11. (**A, B**) Say whether the underlined verbs are right. Correct those which are wrong.

Examples: I don't go there often. *RIGHT.*
Please don't interrupt. He talks sense. *WRONG – is talking*

1. Look! Someone is coming up to the back door. _____
2. Do you talk about my book? I hope you like it. _____
3. Are you believing in ghosts? _____
4. Listen! Somebody tries to start the car. _____
5. He always goes there in the springtime. _____
6. I'm thinking he is a good chap. _____
7. The people are worried that the traffic is increasing. _____
8. We're usually going to Hampton by train. _____

Ex. 12. (**A, B**) Put the verb into the correct form, *the Present Continuous* or *the Present Simple*.

Examples: I'm planting (plant) a cherry-tree. Will you help me?
How does she keep her children in line (she/keep)?
He doesn't feel well (not/feel). He hasn't been well for quite a time.

1. These things _____ (not/belong) to my parents.
2. Look! He _____ (come). I (want) to speak to him.
3. This stream _____ (flow) to the lake at the bottom of the valley.
4. Today the river _____ (flow) much faster than usual.
5. _____ (it/ever/rain) on Madeira?
6. They usually _____ (grow) vegetables in their garden but this year they _____ (not/grow) any.
7. A: Can you ride a bicycle?
   B: No, but I _____ (learn). My brother _____ (teach) me.
8. You can borrow my dictionary. I _____ (not/need) it at the moment.
9. I usually _____ (enjoy) music but I _____ (not/enjoy) this record very much.
10. I _____ (not/believe) this man's story.
11. My brother _____ (live) in Cardiff. He has always lived in Wales. Where _____ (your sister/live)?
12. Vladimir is in England now. He _____ (stay) with some friends.
13. She _____ (look for) a new flat at the moment.
14. A: What _____ (your husband/do)?
    B: He's a broker but he _____ (not/work) at the moment.

Ex. 13. (**A, B**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Indefinite* and *the Present Continuous*.

I

1. Mr Smith (teach) us at present. He (substitute) for Mr Reese, who (be) our regular teacher.
2. "I (go) to visit Peter tonight. He (leave) tomorrow morning." – "He (come) back the same day?" – "I (not/know)."
3. John often (stay) at a hotel when he (come) to town, but tonight he (stay) with us.
4. The fourth class always (meet) on the 18th floor, but our class (meet) on the 17th floor. However, since they (paint) our regular classroom now, we (go) to meet in the club-room today.
5. "Nick (leave) today." – "What train he (take) for his journey?" – "He (catch) the 5.50 train."
6. The mechanic (repair) my car today. So I must go to work by the underground.
7. "You (write) him tonight?" – "Yes, I always (write) him on his birthday. You (want) to send any message?" – "Certainly."
8. John (say) he (leave) for Chicago on the fifteenth.
9. I (go) to the seaside on my holiday.
10. My brother (come) to see me next week
11. Whenever I (call) at the Smiths' home, they (play) cards. I really (think) they (play) every night.
12. Jack (make) at least ten spelling errors in every lesson.

II

1. A: Where (be) Andrew?
   B: He (smoke) on the terrace.
   A: I (think) he (smoke) too much.
   B: Yes, he (be) a chain-smoker.
2. A.: What (be) this music?
   B: It (be) Ann. She (play) the piano.
3. – You (come) with us?
   – I'd love to come. Where you (go)?
   – We (drive) to the Lake District.
   – You (take) the children along?
   – No, we (leave) them with our parents.
   – You (mind) if I (bring) my dog?
   – No.
4. – Mike (come) tonight?
   – No, he (work) hard at present.
   – What he (do)?
   – He (read up) for his examinations.
   – But it (be) Saturday. I (be) sure he (not/go) to take his examination on Sunday.
   – No, but he (say) he (meet) his girlfriend on Sunday, and the examination (be) on Monday, so he (have) only tonight for his studies.

Ex. 14. (**A, B**) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form, *the Present Indefinite* and *the Present Continuous*.

1. "Where is Andy?" – "Mary _____ (read) her a bed-time story."
2. Modern trains _____ (go) very fast.
3. "I'm afraid I must go now." – "Where you _____ (go)?" – "I _____ (go) to have lunch with my partner."

4. It _____ (be) the early bird that _____ (catch) the worm.
5. Every cloud _____ (have) a silver lining.
6. "Why you _____ (laugh)?" she cried. – "Because you _____ (talk) nonsense."
7. He _____ (laugh) best, who _____ (laugh) last.
8. Actions _____ (speak) louder than words.
9. Eric _____ (speak) to the dean, and they both _____ (smile).
10. "I've got a headache," Milly moaned. "Get me some painkiller. My head _____ (split)."
11. That's the way she always _____ (react).
12. I'm so careless. I always _____ (forget) my keys.
13. They _____ (be) in the cafeteria. They _____ (have) their breakfast.

Ex. 15. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

1. В этой части света солнце садится рано. 2. Джойс едет в Лондон завтра, потому что ее дядя хочет ее видеть. 3. Некоторым людям больше всего нравится лето, некоторые любят весну или осень, а другие предпочитают зиму. 4. "Где Лиззи?" – "Она катается верхом на лошади." 5. "Что делают дети?" – "Они слушают сказку и рисуют." 6. Джейн прекрасно рисует. 7. Отец обычно ездит на работу поездом, но сегодня он на машине. 8. Каждый год он проводит каникулы в горах. 9. Я пишу, чтобы пригласить вас к нам на лето. 10. Я сижу у окна и смотрю на море. Какое-то судно уходит (sail away) в вечернее золото горизонта.

Ex. 16. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

1. "Когда он обычно приходит домой?" – "Он обычно приходит домой в 7 часов вечера." 2. Каким поездом вы уезжаете в Петербург на следующей неделе? 3. В следующее воскресенье ко мне приезжают друзья из Шеффилда. 4. Алекс делает новую полку для книг. Он всю мебель для своей комнаты всегда делает сам. 5. На ней сегодня шляпа и голубое платье. 6. Я не могу сейчас дать вам эту книгу, потому что я ее читаю. 7. "Вы много читаете?" – "Да, много." – "Вы покупаете книги или берете их в библиотеке?" – "Я обычно беру по пять книг в центральной библиотеке и меняю их через месяц." 8. "Что вы делаете под столом?" – "Я ищу иголку." 9. "Что у вас обычно на завтрак?" – "Я обычно ем бутерброд и выпиваю чашку кофе." 10. "Куда ты так бежишь?" – "Я бегу на десятичасовую электричку. Я встречаюсь сегодня с Ником. Он не любит, когда я опаздываю." 11. В следующее воскресенье я уезжаю в Данию.

6.3 THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE
I **was reading** We **were reading**	I **was not reading** We **were not reading**	**Was** I **reading?** **Were** we **reading?**
	I **wasn't reading** We **weren't reading**	

The Past Continuous denotes a temporary action taking place at a given moment in the past:

❑ **I was writing** a letter to my friend — *at 5 o'clock yesterday.* / *from 5 to 6 on Sunday.* / *when Mum came.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 17. (**A, B**) Here is a page from Mr Cook's diary.

8.00 – collect the car from the garage
10.30 – meet the manager
2.00 – lunch with Peter
4.30-5.30 – visit the dentist
7.30 – the organ concert at the Cathedral
10.00 – walk the dog
11.00 – drive Mother home

Write sentences saying what he was doing at these times:

1. At 8 o'clock *he was collecting his car from the garage*.
2. At 10.45 he _____
3. At 2.20 _____
4. At 5 o'clock _____
5. At 8 o'clock _____
6. At 10.05 _____
7. At 11.10 _____

Ex. 18. (**A**) One evening there was a concert in the park near your house. Use the words in brackets to make sentences saying what each member of your family was doing at the time.

Example: (Don/have/a bath) *Don was having a bath.*

1. (Mother/cook/in the kitchen) Mother _____ .
2. (Father/make/a phone call) Father _____ .
3. (I/get ready to go out) I _____ .
4. (My sister/wash some clothes) My sister _____ .

6.4 THE PAST CONTINUOUS AND PAST INDEFINITE (SIMPLE)

We often use *the Past Continuous* and *the Past Indefinite (Simple)* together to say that *something happened in the middle of something else*:

❑ **I saw** Irene in the park. She **was sitting** on the bench and waiting for somebody.
❑ Jensa broke her leg when she was skiing in Switzerland.

EXERCISES

Ex. 19. (A, B) Answer the questions using *when* and the verb of the subordinate clause in *the Past Continuous Tense.*

Example: When did she meet Helen? (walk along the street)
She met Helen when she was walking along the street.

1. When did you catch that cold? (skate on a frosty day) _____
2. When did he write those nice poems? (have a holiday) _____
3. When did she learn the language? (live in England) _____
4. When did she hear that song? (listen to a concert on the radio) _____
5. When did you buy that book? (read up for my exams) _____
6. When did the boy hurt himself? (ride the bicycle) _____
7. When did Philip lose his camera? (walk about the city) _____
8. When did he ring you up? (have supper) _____

Ex. 20. (A, B) Make sentences from the words in brackets.
Put the verbs into the correct form, *the Past Simple* or *the Past Continuous.*

Example: (He/come/when/I/clean/my flat).
He came when I was cleaning my flat.

1. (the postman/bring/the letter/when/I/have/breakfast) The postman _____ _____.
2. (it/start/to snow/when/I/go/downstairs) _____.
3. (the doorbell/ring/when/they/enter/the dining room) _____ _____.

Ex. 21. (A, B) Put the verbs into the correct form, *the Past Simple* or *the Past Continuous.*

Example: While Sean was *finishing* (finish) the letter, the night *fell* (fall).

1. Dan _____ (fall) off the tree while he _____ (rescue) the cat.
2. Last night I _____ (read) in the bed when suddenly I _____ (hear) a voice downstairs.
3. _____ (you/have) a bath when I phoned you?
4. They _____ (wait) for a taxi when I _____ (arrive).
5. I _____ (not/drive) very fast when I _____ (see) her.
6. I _____ (break) a plate last night. I _____ (do) the washing-up when it _____ (slip) out of my hand.
7. Bob _____ (take) a nap while I _____ (paint) the ceiling.
8. We _____ (not/go) out because it _____ (get) dark.
9. What _____ (you/do) at this time yesterday?
10. We _____ (see) Amanda in the gallery. She _____ (wear) her new necklace.

Ex. 22. (B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite* and *the Past Continuous.*

1. Mary (play) the piano; John (read); my wife (sew) when suddenly we all (hear) a shout.
2. When the doctor (leave) the hospital, he (catch) a glimpse of himself in the glass front door.
3. When her father (come) in she (sit) before a red tea-table, finishing a very good tea. 4. Next

day, while he (shave) he (cut) himself slightly. 5. The door of his room (be) open; his mother still (stand) at the window. 6. And, smiling to himself, he (begin) to make plans, fantastic plans for the future. He still (smile) when he (walk) up the rock-cut steps. 7. I (sleep) soundly when the phone (ring). 8. We (sit) on our front porch when Mr Smith (drive) up in his new car. 9. Crosby (cross) the street when the car (strike) him. 10. It (drizzle) when they (come) out of the house. 11. When the World War (break), John (live) in Holland. 12. It (get) dark and I (suggest) that we should go down. 13. John (come) in, (look) at the fire, (stand) a moment, (turn) and (go) away. 14. As I (walk) home yesterday, I (meet) a beggar who (ask) me for some money. 15. We (come) into the dining-room while our parents (eat) supper. 16. She (run) down the stairs and (go) to the library, where her husband (stand) with his mother. 17. Mike (raise) his eyes from the book and (look) out of the window. It still (snow). 18. We (drive) at about forty miles an hour when the accident (happen). 19. You (have) a good time at those parties? 20. A fortnight later Holt (fall) and (hurt) himself when he (ride) his motorcycle. 21. He (go) into the kitchen and (get) himself a cup of coffee. 22. Eric (go) into the library and (sit) down to read the letter. The fire (crackle) merrily in the fireplace, and outside the wind (howl). 23. He (take) a cushion, (put) it behind and (lean) back. 24. At half past four I (put) on the lights. 25. When I (be) a boy, I (want) to be an actor. 26. While he (wait) to cross Fifth Avenue, a man standing beside him (cough) painfully. 27. She (draw) aside the curtains and (look) out into the Square. Two cats (stand) in the light of a lamp – narrow, marvellously graceful. 28. When I (hear) his knock I (go) to the door and (open) it, but I (not/recognize) him at first because I (not/wear) my glasses. 29. When they (walk) up the street together they (begin) to talk. 30. Your telegram (come) just as I (leave) home. 31. John (talk) with his boss when I last (see) him. 32. When he (arrive) home, he (go) straight to the sitting room and (take) off the picture.

Ex. 23. (B, C) Open the brackets. Use *the Past Indefinite* in case of permanent, repeated, one-time actions. Use *the Past Continuous* if the action is a temporary one taking place at a given moment in the past.

Examples: ❑ He (turn) the car and (start) back towards Delphi.
He <u>*turned*</u> the car and <u>*started*</u> back towards Delphi.
One-time action.

❑ The local businessmen (like) something solid with their luncheon coffee.
The local businessmen <u>*liked*</u> something solid with their luncheon coffee.
A permanent action.

❑ I (glance) at the terrace below the balcony. He (sit) under one of the plane-trees, smoking.
I <u>*glanced*</u> at the terrace below the balcony. He <u>*was sitting*</u> under one of the plane-trees, smoking.
A temporary action taking place at a moment in the past.
The moment in the past is indicated by an independent sentence "I glanced at the terrace."

1. I (open) the shutters and (look) out. The car (stand) where I had left it.
2. Suddenly I (realize) that they (not/pay attention) to me any longer. They (mutter) something and all (look) in the same direction. I (turn) my head and (look) where they all (look). A man (come) slowly down a steep little street that (lead) uphill between the houses on my right.
3. On my left I (see) the lights of the first house of the village, and I (hurry) towards it through the wood when a sudden flash of light (make) me stop.
4. At that time I (look) for a job.

5. Miss Nobbs (not/see) him leave the office. At half past four she (make) herself a cup of tea in a small recess off the main corridor.
6. The idea first (occur) to me that afternoon as I (back) the car into the garage.
7. I probably (drop) the key when I (fish) for small change in my bag at the news-stand.
8. All through the night I (hear) them work, open drawers, drag cases over the floor. They (pack).

Ex. 24. (**A, B, C**) Translate into English.

I

1. Я посидел на скамейке с полчаса, а потом начал читать книгу. 2. Я окончила университет, когда мне было 23 года. 3. "Когда вы были здесь последний раз?" – "Года полтора тому назад." 4. Грэй кивнул головой и пошел наверх. 5. Я встретила Лену около трех лет назад благодаря своим родителям. 6. Он остановился и сорвал розу. 7. Я навещала их год тому назад. 8. Я видела его в Лондоне неделю назад. 9. Я не видел его, когда был в С.-Петербурге. 10. Что с вами случилось в тот вечер? 11. Они вернулись в дом, когда пошел дождь.

II

1. "Ты видел его этим утром." – "Да, он стоял у машины." 2. Он вошел и увидел Нелли, которая рисовала странную картину. 3. Он побежал к воротам, где стояла Анна. 4. Я взглянул на Дженни, которая все еще дрожала от холода. 5. Мы как раз говорили о нем, когда он вдруг вошел. 6. Они пришли в то время, когда я работала в саду. 7. Вчера в шесть часов она накрывала на стол. 8. Что ты играл, когда я вошла? 9. Вода в чайнике кипела, когда мои друзья вернулись в лагерь. 10. Когда я приехал, Елена, к сожалению, как раз уходила. 11. Он вдруг понял, что едет не в ту сторону. 12. Я сидела в саду вчера, когда пришел брат и принес щенка. 13. Когда я вошел, они сидели в гостиной. Старший брат решал кроссворд, мама вязала, остальные читали. Мама улыбнулась мне и сказала: "Входи, пожалуйста, и садись." 14. Когда она проснулась, в саду весело пели птицы. 15. "С кем вы разговаривали по телефону, когда я вошла?" – "Я разговаривала с сестрой." 16. К ним подошел какой-то мужчина, когда они переходили улицу, и спросил дорогу к Дворцовой площади. 17. Я делала уроки, когда он пришел.

Ex. 25. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Вчера, когда я шел по Невскому проспекту, я встретил Виктора, моего старого друга. Он сразу узнал меня, хотя на мне были большие темные очки, потому что у меня болели глаза.
2. Он сказал: "Я собирался навестить тебя пару недель назад, но, к сожалению, не смог найти времени зайти к тебе." Все время, пока он говорил это, я пытался вспомнить что-то, что хотел сказать ему.
3. Наконец, я вспомнил и сказал ему: "Перед тем, как мне выйти, мне позвонил Олег. Он хотел поговорить с тобой вчера на вечере у Бориса. Но ты так оживленно разговаривал с Алисой, что он не осмелился прерывать."
4. В это время я увидел другого своего друга. Он махал мне с другой стороны дороги. Я сказал Виктору: "До свидания,"– и начал переходить дорогу.

Ex. 26. (**C**) Translate the jokes.

I

Однажды утром в лондонском автобусе ехал в школу мальчик. Он был очень простужен (have a bad cold) и чихал (snif) все время так громко, что все пассажиры смотрели на него и качали (shake) головами. Рядом с мальчиком сидел пожилой джентльмен. Он спросил мальчика: "У тебя есть носовой платок (handkerchief)?"

"Да, у меня в кармане есть чистый носовой платок, – ответил мальчик. – Но я не могу дать его вам. Мама говорит, что невежливо просить у кого-либо носовой платок. Вы должны пользоваться своим собственным."

NOTE: handkerchief [ˈhæŋkətʃɪf]

II

Озорник

Однажды пожилой джентльмен прогуливался по улицам. Он увидел маленького мальчика у двери одного из домов. Мальчик стоял у двери и пытался дотянуться (reach) до звонка (door-bell), который находился слишком высоко для него. Пожилой джентльмен был добрым человеком, поэтому он остановился, чтобы помочь мальчику. "Я позвоню в звонок за тебя," – сказал он и дернул (pull) за звонок. Маленький мальчик посмотрел на него и сказал, смеясь: "А теперь нам надо убегать."

Пожилой джентльмен не понял, что происходит. Мальчик исчез (disappear) за углом, а старику пришлось объяснять (have to explain to) рассерженному хозяину (owner of the house), почему он звонил в звонок.

6.5 THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE
I **shall/will be reading**	I **shall/will not be reading**	**Shall/Will** I **be reading?**
He **will be reading**	He **will not be reading**	**Will** he **be reading?**
She **will be reading**	She **will not be reading**	**Will** she **be reading?**
It **will be reading**	It **will not be reading**	**Will** it **be reading?**
We **shall/will be reading**	We **shall/will not be reading**	**Shall/Will** we **be reading?**
You **will be reading**	You **will not be reading**	**Will** you **be reading?**
They **will be reading**	They **will not be reading**	**Will** they **be reading?**
I'll be reading	I **won't be reading** (**shan't**)	

The Future Continuous denotes a temporary action taking place at a given moment in the future.

❑ He **will be writing** a letter to his friend
- *at 5 o'clock tomorrow.*
- *from 6 to 7 on Sunday.*
- *when I come.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 27. (**A, B**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Future Continuous.*

1. Don't ring her up at 12 *o'*clock. She (have) her music lesson.
2. At this time tomorrow the boys of our group (play) football.
3. When we arrive in St.-Petersburg, it probably (rain).
4. It is late autumn, soon the leaves (fall).
5. Let's wait here; the Palace Bridge (open) in a minute to let that ship through.

Ex. 28. (**A, B**) Answer the questions in *the Future Continuous Tense,* using the given suggestions.

Example: What will he be doing tomorrow afternoon ? (drive to the seaside)
He *will be driving* to the seaside.

1. What will she be doing on Sunday? (make a dress)
2. What will you be doing at this time next week? (bathe in the Black Sea)
3. What will grandfather be doing when we arrive? (work in the garden)
4. What will he be doing at the University for five years? (study law)
5. What will they be doing at this time tomorrow? (fly to Kiev)
6. What will she be doing at the concert tonight? (sing Russian folk-songs)
7. What will he be doing at this time the day after tomorrow? (interview a foreign delegation)
8. What will she be doing next term? (lecture at the Institute of Foreign Languages)

Ex. 29. (**A, B**) Extend the statements in *the Future Continuous Tense,* using the words in brackets.

Example: Don't call for me at six. (have a bath)
Don't call for me at six, I *shall be having a bath.*

1. Don't ring them up at seven in the morning. (sleep)
2. Don't send us any letters in June. (travel)
3. Don't call on us tonight. (pack)
4. Don't come to see her after lunch. (type)
5. Don't leave the child alone. (cry)
6. Don't tell Granny about it. (grumble)
7. Don't expect him to come next Saturday. (work)
8. Don't wait for Maggie tomorrow. (keep to her room)

Ex. 30. (**A, B**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Indefinite, the Future Indefinite* and *the Future Continuous.*

1. When I (get) home, my animals (sit) at the door waiting for me. 2. It (be) the middle of June. They (come) soon. 3. If you (want) to see us, come to Tom's on Sunday. We (wait) for you there at midday. 4. At this time next week they (board) the plane to London. 5. They (have) English from nine to ten in this room. 6. I (wait) for you when you (come). 7. "I (call) for her at eight." – "No, don't; she still (sleep)." 8. They are so angry. A few more words and they (quarrel) again.

Ex. 31. (**B, C**) Open the brackets. Use *the Future Indefinite* if the action is permanent, repeated or it is a one-time action. Use *the Future Continuous* to show that the action is a temporary one, taking place at a given moment in the future.

1. You (know) her. She (stand) at the news stand. She (wear) a scarlet rain coat. 2. I (tell) her everything and I (show) her the papers. I promise you she (not/smile) this time. 3. There (not/be) anyone in when we (come). The secretary (have) lunch. 4. It (rain) when we (get) there. 5. Go straight up the street. The car (wait) for you at the entrance to the department store. 6. We are much too early. There (be) no one there. 7. Of course, I (be) still here when you (return). I (mark) the papers. 8. Come and speak to me about it in your lunch hour. I (type) your stuff. 9. I don't think she (be) there at that time. She (sketch) somewhere along the coast. 10. No one (see) us come. They (have) tea on the terrace. 11. At this time she (do) her shopping. 12. When you (come) to Athens I (cross) the border.

Ex. 32. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Мы не должны опаздывать. Они будут беспокоиться. 2. Мы сегодня идем в кино. Вы будете сидеть рядом со мной. 3. Нам нужно вернуться в 10 часов. Мама будет ждать нас. 4. "Вы будете обедать со мной в понедельник?" – "Я бы очень хотел, но боюсь, что в это время я буду сдавать экзамен." 5. "Что они будут делать, когда мы приедем домой?" – "Я думаю, они будут читать." 6. "Я недостаточно хорошо себя чувствую, чтобы ехать в аэропорт и встречать Элис." – "Я встречу ее. Скажите, как я ее узнаю?" – "На ней будет ярко-зеленый костюм." 7. Интересно, что мы будем делать через год и будем ли мы еще встречаться друг с другом. 8. "Мой сын в будущем году будет в девятом классе." – "Значит, моя мама будет учить его английскому языку." 9. Не говорите ей об этом, через минуту она будет плакать. 10. "Что вы будете делать в это время в следующую пятницу?" – "Как всегда, буду работать в саду."

6.6 REVISION

EXERCISES

Ex. 33. (**A, B, C**) Open the brackets, using the appropriate tense forms.

1. I wondered why he (laugh). I could see nothing funny in what (go on).
2. What you two (talk) about? You (discuss) his plan?
3. You (leave) the town early this summer?
4. When you (speak) to her about her lessons?
5. She (wear) dark spectacles. They are not just sun glasses. She (not/see) very well.
6. Why you (wear) sun glasses on a gray day like this?
7. He (live) with his parents now. I think, he (look) for a job.
8. I could not see his face, he (sit) so that his face was in shadow.
9. When I (see) her last she (try) on hats at Angela's.
10. For some fifteen minutes he (write) in silence without once raising his eyes from what he (write).
11. We (walk) for some time. The road (get) worse, just a narrow goat trail.
12. You (leave) us soon. It (get) colder every day.
13. We were friendly at school. I still (see) him from time to time.

14. You (hear) from me one of these days.
15. Phone as late as you can. I (be) up. I (watch) the football game on TV. It's the semi-finals tonight.
16. The rain started when I (wait) for my bus.
17. Why did you speak to him so? He only (try) to help.
18. I hate the place in autumn. It always (rain) there. It (rain) when we came and it (rain) when we left.

Ex. 34. (**A, B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Вы сегодня пойдете на лекцию по истории языка? 2. Нина пишет что-нибудь? 3. Вы долго ждали его вчера? 4. Почему вы в свитере и брюках? У вас сегодня урок ходьбы на лыжах? 5. Обычно он ждет меня у входа в метро, и мы едем домой вместе. 6. Вечно ты возражаешь. 7. Я не могу с Вами встретиться: завтра приезжает мама. 8. Ты что, целую библиотеку несешь в портфеле? Он очень тяжелый. 9. У нее обычно пять или шесть книг в сумке, поэтому она такая тяжелая. 10. День был очень холодный. На мне был свитер и лыжная куртка, и все же мне было очень холодно. 11. Ты увидишь ее сегодня в институте? 12. Звонок раздался, когда я заканчивала писать сочинение. 13. Он вошел в комнату, где его ждал экзаменатор. 14. Кто-нибудь читает эту газету? Я хочу ее взять. 15. Где он сейчас работает? 16. Приходи сегодня, я буду ждать.

7. THE PERFECT FORMS

to have + Participle II

7.1 THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE			NEGATIVE				INTERROGATIVE		
I	**have**	**worked**	I	**have**	**not**	**worked**	**Have**	I	**worked?**
He	**has**	**worked**	He	**has**	**not**	**worked**	**Has**	he	**worked?**
She	**has**	**worked**	She	**has**	**not**	**worked**	**Has**	she	**worked?**
It	**has**	**worked**	It	**has**	**not**	**worked**	**Has**	it	**worked?**
We	**have**	**worked**	We	**have**	**not**	**worked**	**Have**	we	**worked?**
You	**have**	**worked**	You	**have**	**not**	**worked**	**Have**	you	**worked?**
They	**have**	**worked**	They	**have**	**not**	**worked**	**Have**	they	**worked?**

I've worked	I **haven't worked**
He**'s worked**	He **hasn't worked**

The Present Perfect is always connected with the present:
Present Perfect = Past + Present.

1. *It denotes a completed action connected with the present.*

❑ I am a little frightened for I **have lost** my way.

❑ He **has recovered** from his illness (he is better now).

The only thing which matters here is the result: the time when the action took place is of no importance.

❑ I **have seen** this film (I can discuss it with you now).

Questions in *the Present Perfect* never start with **when**:

❑ **When** *did* you *see* this film?

2. *The Present Perfect is frequently used with:*

a) the adverbs: ***ever never just already yet of late/lately/recently***

❑ I **have** *never* **seen** him.

❑ I **have** not **spoken** to her *yet*.

b) ***this morning/evening, today, this week, this year***

(when these periods are not finished at the time of speaking):

❑ **Has** Ann **had** a holiday *this year*?

❑ **Have** you **seen** him *today*?

c) the prepositions ***for, since***:

❑ I **have known** her *for two years*.

❑ He **has not seen** his friends *since last September*.

❑ I **haven't seen** him *since he left for Moscow*.

d) the expression: ***This (it) is the first time:***

❑ *This is the first time* he **has driven** a car.

3. *The Present Perfect* ***is not used*** *in:*

❑ Что Вы сказали? – What did you say?

❑ Я не слышал вашего вопроса. – I did not hear your question.

❑ Я забыл. – I forgot.

❑ Теперь я понял. – Now I understand.

❑ Где Вы купили эту книгу? – Where did you buy the book?

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Perfect.*

1. I don't know this girl. I never (meet) her before. 2. "Where is Mother?" – "She just (go) out." 3. "Don't you know what the film is about?"–"No, I (not/see) it." 4. Don't worry about the letter. I already (post) it. 5. "Is he a good teacher?" – "Oh yes, he (help) me a lot." 6. I know London perfectly well. I (be) there several times. 7. I can't find my umbrella. I think, somebody (take) it by mistake. 8. "Do you speak Spanish?" – "No, I never (study) it." 9. "Do you know where they have gone?" – "No, they (sell) their house and (not/leave) their new address."

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Answer the questions. Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Perfect.*

Example: Is his article ready? (write)
Yes, he *has written* it.

1. Are her rooms clean? (do)
2. Is our dinner ready, Mother? (cook)
3. Does she know the poem? (learn)

4. Do you know this sort of pencil? (use)
5. Does he know how nice the cake is? (eat)
6. Do you know that your gloves are on the table? (find)
7. Is Bobby's face clean? (wash)
8. Do you know how beautiful these songs are? (hear)

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Indefinite* and *the Present Perfect.*

1. Look! They (stop). 2. I (want) to see you. I (not/see) you for ages! 3. "What (be) your name?" – "My name (be) always Cole." 4. "You (read) this book?" – "Yes." – "What you (think) of it?" 5. I (not/be) to a zoo before. It (be) a nice feeling to go somewhere you never (be) before. 6. "You (know) Nick?" – "Yes." – "How long you (know) him?" – "I (know) him for 10 years." 7. There (be) a lot of things I (want) to do for a long time and I (not/do) them. 8. You (realize) we (know) each other for quite a period of time now? And this (be) the first occasion you (ask) me to come with you. 9. "You (know) the girl who just (leave) the shop?" – "Yes, that (be) Bella York." – "She (be) a customer of yours?" – "Not, exactly. She (be) here several times, but she never (buy) anything." 10. Come in, I (be) awake since sun-up. 11. I (not/see) your pictures for a long time. Can I look round? 12. It'll be good to see him again. How long he (be) away? It (seem) ages. 13. I (know) you nearly all my life, but I never (see) you so excited about anything.

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) You are talking to a friend about the events in your family.
Make sentences from the given words according to the pattern.

Example: My brother Greg/graduate/from the University.
My brother Greg has graduated from the University.
You know, Elinor, a lot has changed in our family since we last met.

1. Father/get/a new job/in South Africa.
2. He and Mother/leave/for Cape Town.
3. Mary/marry/an architect/from Canada.
4. I/pass/my/law/exams.
5. I/meet/the man/for me.

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Read the situation and then write a suitable sentence. Use the verb given in brackets.

Example: Hugh is listening to some music. It is a new cassette. (buy)
Hugh has bought a new cassette.

1. Andrew is sleeping soundly. It is late morning. (oversleep) _____
2. You are going to sit down to dinner and discover there is no bread in the house. (run out of)
We _____
3. Last weekend Gen went mountain-walking. Now she is in bed. (to catch a bad cold)
_____
4. Your neighbours were playing their VCR very loud. Now it's quiet. (switch off)
_____

Ex. 6. (**A, B**) Use *just.* Answer the questions using the words given.

Example: Could you lend me your dictionary? (sorry, I/just/give/it/to Mike)
Sorry, I've just given it to Mike.

1. Has Mother come from the market? (yes/she/just/come/from the market) _____
_____
2. Have you phoned Jack yet? (yes/I/just /phone/him) _____
_____
3. Would you like some coffee? (no thanks/I/just/have/a cup) _____
_____

Ex. 7. (**A, B**) Put in *been* or *gone*.

Example: Where's Paul? – He has **gone** to the library.
We've **been** to the country today. Look, we've brought some flowers.

1. Where have you spent your holidays? – I've _____ to Italy.
2. Are you going to the shops? – No, I've just _____ to the shops.
3. Is Alex home? – No, he's _____ to the park.
4. Are they both out? – Yes, they've both _____ to the market.

Ex. 8. (**A, B**) Make sentences with *already* and *yet*.

Example: Don't forget to pack some warm clothes. – ***I've already packed them.***
Have you typed the letters yet? – *Yes, I've* ***already typed*** *them.*
Have you bought that dress? – *No, I* ***haven't bought it yet****, but I'm going to buy it.*

1. Why don't you have a bath? – _____
2. Shall I buy some newspapers? – No, _____
3. Have you asked Jim yet? – Yes, _____
4. Have you invited Larry and Sue? – No, I _____ , but I am _____
5. Has the manager arrived yet? – Yes, _____
6. Has Jill written to Dad? – No, she _____ but she _____ tonight.

Ex. 9. (**A, B**) Use the words in brackets to make questions according to a pattern.

Example: (he/ever/paint/people) *Has he ever painted people?*

1. (you ever/be/to Scotland?) _____
2. (your parents/live/here all their lives?) _____
3. (you/hear/this concert?) _____
4. (how many times/you/ be married?) _____
5. (he/ever/meet/the President?) _____
6. (you/ever/visit/the White House?) _____

Ex. 10. (**A, B**) Use the verb in brackets to complete the answers to the questions.

Example: Is he handsome? (seen)
Yes, he is the most handsome man I've ever seen.

1. Is it a fast car? (drive)– Yes, it's the fastest _____
2. Is it a warm coat? (have) – Yes, it's the _____
3. Are they nice people? (meet) – Yes, they are the _____

Ex. 11. (**A, B**) Write questions and answers.

Example: You and your friend are swimming in the open sea.
You ask: Is this the first time you've swum in the open sea?
Your friend: Yes, I've never swum in the open sea before.
No, it's the second time I've swum in the sea this year.

1. Kate is skating. She's doesn't feel very confident.
   You ask: Is this the first time _____
   Kate: Yes, I've _____
   No, _____
2. You are playing volley-ball. Ivy's not very good and isn't sure about the rules.
   You ask: _____
   Ivy: Yes, _____
   No, _____
3. You met Nat at a party in London. He's from America.
   You: _____
   Nat: Yes, _____
   No, _____

Ex. 12. (**A, B**) Make questions using the words given.

Example: (anything/happen/recently?)
Has anything happened recently?

1. (you/read/any books recently?) _____
2. (you/hear/from Tom in the past few days?) _____
3. (you/buy/any new records recently?) _____
4. (you/eat/anything today?) _____
5. (you/see/any good films recently?) _____
6. (it/snow/here this year yet?) _____

Ex. 13. (**A, B**) Translate the questions and answers.

Example: Когда ты в последний раз видел Аню? – Я не видел ее с мая.
When did you last see Ann? – I haven't seen her since May.

1. Когда в последний раз шел дождь? – Дождя не было целую вечность.
2. Когда они навещали вас в последний раз? – Они не навещали нас с июня.
3. Когда ты в последний раз играл в теннис? – Я уже давно не играл в теннис.
4. Когда ты в последний раз ела кокос? – Я никогда не ела кокос.
5. Когда ты в последний раз водил машину? – Я не водил машину шесть месяцев.
6. Когда ты в последний раз ездил в Канаду? – Я никогда не ездил в Канаду.
7. Когда она тебе писала в последний раз? – Она не писала с прошлого лета.

Ex. 14. (**A, B**) Translate into English using *the Present Perfect Tense*.

1. Они построили новый дом. Ты его видел? 2. Ты показал маме свою картину? – Нет, она еще не готова. 3. Я посмотрел этот фильм. А ты? – Да. Это интересный фильм. 4. Ты был в Лондонском зоопарке? – Да. 5. Отец только что вернулся с моря. 6. Возьмите эти журналы. Я уже прочитал их. 7. Вы были когда-нибудь в Греции? – Да, это очень красивая страна. 8. Мы еще не сделали опыт. 9. Она никогда не переводила такие

трудные статьи. 10. Я звонил ему три раза сегодня. 11. Сегодня он уехал в Нью-Йорк. 12. Ты видел директора сегодня? – Нет.

Ex. 15. (B, C) Translate into English. The first sentence is done for you.

1. Я звоню тебе уже третий раз за вечер.
   It's the third time I've phoned you this evening.
2. Ты опоздала уже второй раз на этой неделе.
   _____
   _____
3. Машина ломается уже третий раз за месяц.
   _____
   _____
4. Я выпила уже пятую чашку кофе за вечер.
   _____
   _____

7.2 THE PRESENT PERFECT AND PAST INDEFINITE (SIMPLE)

a) Do not use *the Present Perfect* (**I have done**) when you are talking about a finished time in the past (for example: **last Tuesday, seven years ago, in 1995, when I was a student**). Use *the Past Indefinite:*

- ❑ **I lost** my English book *yesterday*. (not 'has lost')
- ❑ **Did** you **see** the football match on television *last night*? (not 'have you seen')
- ❑ Father **retired** from his job *a year ago*. (not 'has retired')
- ❑ **I swam** in the lake *when I was a child*. (not 'have swum')

To ask when something happened, use *the Past Indefinite Tense*:

- ❑ *What time* **did** they **start**? (not 'have they started')
- ❑ *When* **was** he born? (not 'has he been born')

COMPARE:

❑ **I have lost** my English book. *(Present Perfect)*
Here I am not thinking of the past action; I am thinking of the present result of the action: I am without an English book now.

❑ **I lost** my English book *yesterday*. *(Past Indefinite)*
Here I am thinking of the action in the past. I don't say whether I am still without a book.

b) Now compare these sentences:

Present Perfect (**I have done**)	Past Indefinite (**I did**)
❑ **I've seen** Margaret **today**. *Today* is a period of time which continues up to present. It is not a finished time. So we use *the Present Perfect*.	❑ **I saw** Margaret **yesterday**. *Yesterday* is a finished time in the past. So we use *the Past Indefinite*.

today
past ----- (unfinished time) -------present

- ❑ I **haven't had** holidays *this year*.
- ❑ **Have** you **spoken to** Jill *this morning*? (It is still morning).
- ❑ **Have** you **been** ill *recently*?
- ❑ Brian **has lived** in Ireland *for 6 years* (He still lives there).
- ❑ I **have** never ridden a horse (in my life).

The Present Pertect always has a connection with the present.

yesterday
past ----- (finished time) ----- present

- ❑ I **didn't have** holidays *last year*.
- ❑ **Did** you speak to Jill *this morning*? (It is afternoon now)
- ❑ **Were** you ill *last week*?
- ❑ Brian **lived** in Wales *for 10 years* (He no longer lives there).
- ❑ I **didn't** ride when I **was** on holiday *last summer*.

The Past Indefinite tells us only about the past.

EXERCISES

Ex. 16. (A, B) Read the situation and then write a sentence.

Example: Ten minutes ago Granny lost her glasses. Now she has them on her nose.
(lose/find) *Granny lost her glasses but now she has found them.*

1. Harry went to Egypt but now he is back in Ireland again.
   (go/come back) Harry _____ but now _____
2. I lived in the centre but now I live in a new district.
   (live/move) _____
3. I had long hair. Now I wear it short.
   (have/cut) _____
4. Ten years ago I met Fran. We are great friends now.
   (meet/become) I _____ and we _____
5. He travelled to the North last year. You can read about it in his book.
   (travel/write) _____
6. They bought a house three years ago. Now other people live in it.
   (buy/sell) _____

Ex. 17. (A, B) Read the sentences below and correct those which are wrong.

Example: Have you written to Barry Lane yet? *RIGHT.*
B. Shaw has written the play *Pigmalion*. *WRONG – wrote.*

1. Newton has been an English physicist. _____
2. Oh, you have come just in time. We're beginning in a moment. _____
3. Who *has invented* telephone? _____
4. Have you heard? Paul bought a new car! _____
5. Oh, I broke my pencil. Can you lend me yours? _____
6. My great-grandfather travelled to India once. _____

Ex. 18. (**A, B**) Put the verb in brackets into the correct form.

Example: A.: There's a cat in the room. Who has let (let) it in?
B.: Well, it *was* (be) Ben, I'm sure.

1. **A.**: Your hedge is so trim now. _____ (you/cut) it?
   B.: Yes.
   A.: _____ (you/cut) it yourself?
   B.: No, Mr Barry _____ (cut) it for me.

2. **A.**: _____ (you/speak) to Ellen yet?
   B.: Yes. I _____ (phone/she) this morning. (It's evening now)
   A.: What _____ (she/tell) you about her trip?

Ex. 19. (**A, B**) Make sentences using the words given.

Examples: (I/write/letters/yesterday) I wrote five letters yesterday.
(How many letters/you/write/today?) How many letters have you written today?

1. (they/not/phone/so far/today) _____
2. (how many times/phone/you/him/yesterday?) _____
3. (he/come/to see us/three times/this month) _____
4. (it/not/rain/so far/this summer) _____
5. (how many shoes/you/buy/this season?) _____

Ex. 20. (**A, B**) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form, *the Present Perfect* or *the Past Indefinite.*

Example: I first saw (see) him when he came to visit his aunt.

1. Mr Hayes _____ (work) as a solicitor when he lived here.
2. The Darcies live in Shancarrig. They _____ (live) there for 5 years now.
3. My grandparents are old. They _____ (be) married for 55 years.
4. When I last saw him, he _____ (be) 10 years old.
5. The summer _____ (be) very hot so far, don't you think?
6. Mr Blake died 10 years ago. I _____ (never/meet) him.
7. He doesn't know my husband. He _____ (never/meet) him.

Ex. 21. Put the verb in brackets into the correct form, *the Present Perfect* or *the Past Indefinite.*

I. (**A, B**)

1. *A.:* You ever (visit) Chicago?
   B.: Yes, I (be) there several times.
   C.: Yes, I (be) there a few years ago.
2. *A.:* You (be) at the Ryan's lately?
   B.: Yes, I _____
   C.: Yes, I (go) there last night.
3. *A.:* He (speak) to you about his plans recently?
   B.: No, he _____
   C.: No, he (go) to Vilnius last week and (not / arrive) yet.

4. *A.:* You (see) your brother this morning?
   B.: Yes, I _____
   C.: No, I (not / see) him since last Monday.
5. *A.:* You (be) here before?
   B.: Yes, I _____
   C.: Yes, I (be) here last year.
6. *A.:* You (go) to the theatre last week?
   B.: Yes, I _____ . I (go) to the Bolshoi Theatre.
7. *A.:* You (see) the new monument in that street?
   B.: No, I _____ (not / see) it yet.
   C.: No, I _____ (be) there on Friday but I _____ (not / see) the monument.
8. *A.:* You ever (show) your water-colours to anybody?
   B.: Yes, I _____
   C.: Yes, I _____ (show) them to my friends a few days ago.

II. (A, B)

1. I just (call) him. 2. I (not/call) him yesterday, I was busy. 3. My parents just (go) away. 4. She already (answer) the letter. 5. She (answer) it on Tuesday. 6. My friends (go) away five minutes ago. 7. I (read) that book during the summer holidays. 8. The fisherman (sell) all his fish now. 9. He (sell) the last one half an hour ago. 10. I (not / see) him for three years. 11. I (meet) him last week. 12. The newspaper (come)? – Yes, Ann is reading it now. 13. You (wear) your hair long when you were at school? – Yes, my mother (insist) on it. 14. He (not / smoke) for two weeks. He is trying to give it up. 15. When he (arrive)? – He (arrive) at 2.00. 16. You (shut) the window? 17. I (read) his books when I was at school. I (enjoy) them very much. 18. You (be) here before? – Yes, I (spend) my holidays here last year. – You (have) a good time? – Yes, the sun never (stop) shining. 19. The clock is slow. – It isn't slow, it (stop). 20. Here is your dress; I just (mend) it. 21. I (leave) home at 8.00 and (get) here at twelve. 22. You (have) breakfast yet? – Yes, I (have) it at 8.00. 23. You (see) the stars last night? 24. We (miss) the bus. Now we'll have to walk. 25. The lecture just (begin). You are a little late. 26. He (break) his leg in a skiing accident last year. 27. I can't go out because I (not / finish) my work.

III. (B, C)

1. He showed her inside the house. "Oh! How lovely!" she exclaimed. "And you (do) it all by yourself? When you (buy) the house?" 2. I understand you (have) an unpleasant experience at the week-end? What (happen) exactly? 3. You remember the shell you (find) on the beach? 4. "How many children you (teach) in that family?" the girl asked her new governess. 5. "What is going on here?" Mel sighed, "We (have) a storm for three days. It (ruin) everything here." 6. "Can we get dinner here?" – "Of course, we can. Have you got enough money? I (spend) my last dollar on the taxi." 7. As we got into the taxi my brother asked, "Well, you (speak) to Harry?" – "I (speak) to him for a moment." 8. "Hello", the little girl said to her mother and looked at her companion. "Come and say 'How do you do' to Mr Zappa." – "I (see) him already." – "You can't have done, dear. He only just (arrive) here." – "I (see) him in the hall this afternoon." – "I'm sure you didn't. You (see) my little daughter yet, Mr Zappa?" 9. "I say, your cheek is like a grater (терка)! You (not/shave) today."10. You (not/hear) what the pilot (say)? 11. At school I (be) never good at languages, but here I (pick) up a bit of French. 12. "Good night. It (be) nice to meet you," he (say) and (go) off to his car.

Ex. 22. (**A, B**) Open the brackets using *the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous, the Past Indefinite* or *the Present Perfect Tense*.

1. In the morning, coming downstairs, Rosemary (see) Tony lying in the sitting room: What you (do) here? – I (sleep) here. – I am sorry we (take)your room. 2. He's a night watchman. He works at night and (sleep) in the daytime. It's noon now, and he still (sleep). 3. I first (meet) Richard a month ago, and I (meet) him several times since then. 4. I usually (go) to bed before midnight. 5. I (sit) here all night and I swear I (not/doze) for a moment. 6. What's your brother doing? – He (play) tennis with our neighbour, they (play) it every day. 7. He wants to buy a car, but first he must learn how to drive, so he (take) driving lessons. 8. I (write) to my parents a fortnight ago, but I've not had a reply, so I just (write) again. 9. Where is my daughter? – She (talk) to a policeman. – What (happen)? – She has been driving without a license. 10. It's 3 p.m. and he (not/eat) anything today, but he (eat) a good dinner last night. 11. Is Mary ready to come out? – No, she still (dress). 12. I (read) this book several times. I first (read) it in 1990. 13. He often (read) detective stories; he (read) a very good one now. 14. She (not/have) a holiday since 1996, but she (have) a very long holiday in 1995. 15. We (stay) here for nearly a week. – I hope you (not/think) of leaving.

Ex. 23. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

1 Я потеряла иголку. Я нигде не могу найти ее. 2. Ты смотрел вчера фильм по телевизору? 3. Ее родители купили ей машину на 21 день рождения. 4. У нее теперь очень короткие волосы. Она сделала новую стрижку. 5. Вчера вечером он пришел домой очень поздно. Он принял ванну и потом лег спать. 6. Вы посетили много музеев, когда были в Лондоне? 7. Книги нет на полке. Кто-то взял ее. 8. Когда твой отец бросил курить? 9. Я не завтракал утром, потому что мне не хотелось есть. 10. Почему ты не хотел играть в шахматы вчера? 11. Машина выглядит очень чистой. Ты вымыл ее? 12. Молли: Привет, Джеймс. Алан здесь?

Джеймс: Нет, боюсь, он вышел.

Молли: Какая жалость! Когда точно он вышел?

Джеймс: Около двадцати минут назад.

Ex. 24. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Рад с вами познакомиться! Я читал все ваши статьи. 2. Я закончила картину. Взгляните на нее, пожалуйста. 3. Сегодня я еще не читал газеты. 4. Вы принесли мне еще одну книгу? – Нет, я пришел за вашим советом. 5. Сколько раз вы уже были в Лондоне? Я знаю, что вы ездили в Лондон в прошлом году. 6. Вас недавно навещал ваш внук? – Да, он приходил сегодня днем. 7. Лена дала мне очень интересный фильм на прошлой неделе, но я еще не посмотрел его. 8. Вы послали за доктором? – Да, он скоро придет. 9. Вы давно знаете Майю? – Я знаю ее всю жизнь. 10. Я очень люблю путешествовать. Я побывала во многих столицах Европы. 11. Я не была в Новгороде с тех пор, как мы переехали в С.-Петербург. Я очень люблю этот древний город. 12. За последнее время я встречал ее несколько раз. Она очень изменилась. 13. Семь лет назад он уехал в Америку, и с тех пор я его не видела. 14. Я встретилась с Томом у своих друзей три года тому назад, и с тех пор я о нем ничего не слышала. 15. Утро было холодное и дождливое, но с десяти часов погода изменилась, солнце ярко сияет. 16. Вы хорошо знаете этот город? – Нет, я никогда здесь раньше не была. 17. Вы не навещали нас с тех пор, как приехали.

Ex. 25. (A, B, C) Translate into English, using *the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous, the Past Indefinite* or the *Present Perfect Tense*.

1. В пятницу на прошлой неделе шел сильный дождь. 2. Я обычно завтракаю в половине восьмого. 3. Он уже построил дачу? – Нет, он все еще строит ее. 4. Почему вы идете так быстро? – Я иду быстро, потому что я боюсь опоздать на электричку. Я всегда хожу быстро утром. 5. Моя сестра никогда не носит шубу. 6. В тот вечер я смотрел телевизор. 7. Почтальон обычно приходит в восемь часов вечера. Сейчас уже половина девятого, а он все еще не пришел. 8. Каждый вечер я смотрю телевизор. 9. Когда я пришел к Пете в прошлое воскресенье, он читал новую книгу. Как только он закончит читать ее, он даст мне эту книгу. 10. Боюсь, я проиграл эту партию в шахматы (this game of chess). Я играл очень плохо. Обычно я играю намного лучше. 11. Лекция еще не началась, и студенты разговаривают. Обычно лекция начинается в девять часов. 12. В школе он играл в баскетбол. 13. Я не играл в волейбол с 1983 года. 14. Автор еще молодой человек. Он написал свою первую пьесу в 1985 году. 15. Сейчас 9 часов вечера. Ребенок уже заснул. Вчера вечером он лег спать гораздо раньше.

7.3 THE PAST PERFECT TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE
I had worked	**I had not worked**	**Had I worked?**
I'd worked	**I hadn't worked**	

The Past Perfect Tense denotes *an action completed before a certain moment in the past.*

1	+	2
Past Perfect		Past Indefinite

❑ He **had finished** his work — *when I called him.* / *by 5 o'clock yesterday.*

❑ When we came to the station the train **had** already **gone**.

The Past Perfect is not used to denote a succession of actions. In this case *the Past Indefinite* is used.

Past Indefinite

❑ He **got up, went** to the bathroom, **had** breakfast and **left** for work.

The Past Indefinite is used with the conjunctions **after, before, when** if the succession of actions should be expressed.

❑ He **had** a short rest *before* he **went on** with his work.

❑ *When* I **wrote** the letter, I **posted** it.

The Past Perfect is used with the conjunctions:

Hardly...
Scarcely...
Nearly...
Barely...

+ Past Perfect ... **when** + Past Indefinite

No sooner + Past Perfect ... **than** + Past Indefinite

- He **had** *hardly* **done** it *when* they came.
  (*Hardly* **had** he **done** it *when* they came.)
- *No sooner* they **had arrived** *than* it started to rain.
  (*No sooner* **had** they **arrived** *than* it started to rain.)

EXERCISES

Ex. 26. (**A, B**) Use *the Past Perfect Tense*.

Examples: Why didn't you listen to that play on the radio?
a) *Because I had heard it before.*
b) *I didn't listen to that play on the radio, because I had heard it before.*

1. Why didn't you see Fred when you came to Moscow? (leave)
2. Why didn't Kate want to go to the cinema? (see the film)
3. Why didn't you tell him my new address? (forget)
4. Why didn't Jeff hear about Kate's examination? (pass)
5. Why did Fred come home so soon from his holiday? (spend all the money)
6. Why couldn't you get into your flat at once? (lose the key)
7. What did you learn about Bob? (get married)
8. What did she read in the newspaper about the expedition? (return)
9. What did he learn about Helen from the letter he received? (be ill for a month)

Ex. 27. (**A, B**) Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. You visited a friend and learned a lot of news about his family and other friends.

Example: His father didn't work in the bank anymore. He *had retired* (retire).

1. His parents didn't live there any longer. They _____ (go) to live in the country.
2. His sister wasn't there either. She _____ (get) married.
3. His house was larger. He _____ (build) the third storey.
4. Your friends, Mike and Brenda, were away. They _____ (leave) for Sweden.

Ex. 28. (**A, B**) Complete the sentenses, using the verb in brackets.

Example: I was very excited about visiting London because I (be) had never been there before.

1. The little boy couldn't wait to get to the sea. (see) He _____ before.
2. The teacher was late that morning. The class didn't know what to think. (be/late) She _____
3. Yesterday Larry taught Nell to play the guitar. She felt very unsure because she (play) _____
4. It was Miss Kelly's first day at school. She was very nervous because she (teach) ___ _____

Ex. 29. (**A, B**) Make sentences using the words in brackets.

Example: His hair was wet. (He/just/have/a shower) He had just had a shower.

1. There was nobody at the platform. (the train/just/leave) _____
2. We didn't find anybody at home. (everybody/already/go out) _____
3. The children were playing in the garden. (they/just/come/from school) _____
4. Bob wasn't at home when I arrived. (he/arrange/to meet/some friends/at the club) _____
5. I couldn't recognize the child after all that time. (I/not/see/her/for seven years) _____

Ex. 30. (**A, B**) Put the verb into the correct form, *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Simple*.

Examples: Was Father at home when I phoned? – No, he had already left.
Was Father at home when I phoned? – Yes, but he left soon afterwards.

1. The flat was empty when he arrived. Everybody _____ (go) to the party.
2. There were voices heard from the kitchen, so I _____ (go) straight there.
3. He cannot take part in the competition. He _____ (break) his leg yesterday.
4. There was an accident at the mountain top. Some skier _____ (break) his leg and the ambulance men were carrying him to the road. So we _____ (stop) to let them pass.

Ex. 31. (**A, B**) Use *the Past Perfect Tense* of the verbs given in brackets to complete the sentences.

Example: When John and I got to the river, the boat race (start already) *had already started*.

1. When she went to bed, she remembered that she (not/switch off the light) _____
2. She felt tired because she (walk a lot/that day) _____
3. She went for a holiday after she (pass the exams) _____
4. I didn't know what to do when they (show/me/the picture) _____
5. I didn't look at the present until after she (go) _____
6. I was very sorry to hear that he (die) _____
7. He didn't start speaking until the children (leave/the room) _____
8. When I met Helen, I understood why Bill (marry her) _____
9. He understood the book only after he (read it/again) _____

Ex. 32. (**A, B**) Unite the following pairs of sentences. Use the conjunctions
after, as soon as, before, until, till, when.

Example: **a)** They went to England. They left school. (after)
They went to England after they *had left* school.
b) The sun set. They finished their work. (before)
The sun *had set* before they finished their work.

1. The sun rose. He woke up. (before)
2. He died. He was very ill. (before)
3. I understood the problem. He explained. (as soon as)
4. She wrote the letter. She went to the post office. (after)

5. I drove to the airport. The plane took off. (when)
6. She read the message carefully. She wrote the reply. (before)
7. He left the room. I turned on the radio. (as soon as)
8. He had dinner. He went to the cinema. (after)
9. The man didn't leave. He didn't receive a definite answer. (till)
10. We didn't say a word. He finished his story. (until)
11. We reached the football ground. The game started. (when)
12. John worked as a skilled builder. He began to study architecture. (before)
13. Harold couldn't leave for home. He completed everything. (till)
14. The snow was very deep. It snowed heavily. (after)

Ex. 33. (**B, C**) Put the verb in brackets into the required tense form.

1. They hardly (go) when aunt Julia (wander) slowly into the room. 2. He hardly (reach) the door of his office when he (encounter) two young men. 3. He scarcely (take) a few steps along the street, when three men (appear) from around the corner. 4. No sooner he (start) to play than one string on the violin (break). 5. They barely (leave) the room when the chaos (break) out. 6. No sooner they (arrive) at Rougemont than her sister (ring) up from home about an accident with her little daughter. 7. No sooner the curtains (fall) than he (rise) to go. 8. Hardly he (ask) his questions when she (answer) them. 9. He scarcely (take) off his coat when he (begin) to read the letter. 10. Nell scarcely (settle) herself on a little heap of straw in the corner, when she (fall) asleep. 11. The rain nearly (stop) when he (reach) his hotel. 12. He scarcely (say) the first words when she (interrupt) him.

Ex. 34. (**B, C**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Indefinite* and *the Past Perfect*.

I

1. She realized that she was going to faint. She (eat) nothing since the picnic. 2. His wife (not/be) in. She (go) out a quarter of an hour before. 3. After dinner Mr Grag proposed a game of cards. He (not/play) cards since his illness. 4. Dr. Lecter (be) English, though he (live) in America for thirty years. 5. His smile (be) something she never (see) before. 6. He decided to wait till he (talk) to the man himself. 7. He (come) into the room a moment after I (get) there. 8. When he (return) at eleven o'clock the telegram (arrive). 9. When they (go) I (get) busy at the desk. 10. When evening (fall) their son (leave) the house. 11. I hardly (be) there five minutes when Mrs Brown (come) in with the coffee. 12. He (promise) to ring me up when he (get) a definite answer. 13. Scarcely they (move) into the new house when their friends (come). 14. The evening (go) off easier than she (expect). 15. But the village he (show) her (be) the best she ever (see). 16. Just at that moment a boy and a girl (come) and (sit) down where the old couple (be) before. 17. I (keep) silence for a little while, thinking of what he (tell) me. 18. Soames (spend) the night at Winchester, a place he often (hear) of but never (see). 19. She (know) why he (come). 20. Within a week she (know) the fearful mistake she (make).

II

1. We (sit) down to the table only when all the guests (arrive). 2. There (be) a curious expression on his face I never (see) before. 3. Almost opposite (be) that gallery where she first (meet) him and John. 4. He (be) a teacher at the University, as his father (be) before him. 5. There (be) silence after she (go). 6. From downstairs (come) the sound of a radio playing a song he never (hear) before. 7. And, paying for what he (not/eat),

he (go) out, passing two acquaintances without sign of recognition. 8. Very deliberately and carefully Poirot (retell) the conversation he (hold) with Saitrana at Wessex House. 9. Julia, who (go) half way down one flight, (come) back. 10. There (be) something vaguely familiar about her face but I couldn't remember where I (see) her before. 11. He (re-read) what he (write). 12. When Val (leave) them, Soames and Winifred (make) their way to the Cheshire Cheese.13. She (be) ill for two days when we (learn) about it. 14. About twenty people already (arrive) when they (enter) the hall. 15. We (not/go) far when we suddenly (notice) the dark clouds on the horizon.

Ex. 35. (B, C) Insert *the Past Indefinite* or *the Past Perfect*.

1. We hardly _____(leave) town, when it _____(begin) to rain. 2. The moon _____ (not / rise). There was nothing to dispel the dark of the night. 3. On glancing at the address, he observed that it contained no name. The stranger _____ (not / go) far, so he followed him to ask it. 4. When at his house , they _____ (tell) me that he _____ (leave) an hour ago. 5. No sooner he _____ (take) a drink himself, than Mrs Fettle (look) in. 6. When I _____ (come) to see my friend, I _____ (find) him lying in bed. He _____ (look) very pale as he _____ (be) seriously ill for a whole month. 7. He hardly _____ (light) another cigarette, when the general _____ (come) into the courtyard. 8. Gemma went slowly down the stairs, Martini following in silence. She _____ (grow) to look ten years older in these few days, and her hair _____ (become) gray. 9. Presently the sounds of voices and footsteps approaching along the terrace roused her from the dreamy state into which she _____ (fall). 10. She was a woman of nearly fifty who _____ (be) obviously pretty once. 11. Moreover, to him (the doctor) the affair was the commonplace; it was just a hysterical woman who _____ (quarrel) with her friend and _____ (take) poison. 12. I _____ (leave) home at 8 o'clock, but I _____ (not/go) far when I _____ (remember) that I _____ (forget) to lock my door. 13. When Alison _____ (disappear) the first strains of the orchestra came stealing out to me from inside the hall. 14. Scarcely I _____ (close) the door when a gust of wind _____ (open) it again.

Ex. 36. (B, C) Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Indefinite*, *the Past Continuous* and *the Past Perfect*.

I

1. He (close) the window and (sit) in his armchair, reading a newspaper. 2. When I (arrive) the lecture already (start). 3. The rain (stop) and the sun (shine) brightly. 4. Unfortunately when I arrived Ann just (leave), so we only had time for a few words. 5. I (watch) his eyes pretty closely while we (exchange) these remarks. 6. When we (reach) the field, the game already (start). 7. He suddenly (realize) that he (travel) in the wrong direction. 8. When I (look) for my passport, I (find) this old photograph. 9. You looked very busy when I saw you last night. What you (do)? 10. He (not / be) there five minutes, when the storm (begin). 11. He (not / allow) us to go out in the boat yesterday as a strong wind (blow). 12. I (call) Paul at 7.00 but it wasn't necessary because he already (get) up. 13. When I (hear) his knock I (go) to the door and (open) it, but I (not / recognize) him at first because I (not / wear) my glasses. 14. When he (seal and stamp) the envelope, he (go) back to the window and (draw) a long breath. 15. I (see) you yesterday from the bus. Why you (use) a stick? – I (use) it because I (hurt) my leg that morning. 16. We (return) home at nightfall and we (be) very glad

to get home again, but we (have) a wonderful day. 17. As they (walk) along the road they (hear) a car coming from behind them. Tom (turn) round and (hold) up his hand. The car (stop). 18. When I (arrive) at the station Mary (wait) for me. She (wear) a blue dress and (look) very pretty. 19. When I (see) him he (paint) a portrait of his wife. 20. While he (water) the flowers it (begin) to rain. 21. While I (say) goodbye to the rest of the guests Isabel (take) Sophie aside. 22. The men (say) that they (work) on the road outside my house and that they (want) some water to make tea.

II

1. I just _____ (finish) washing the boy, and _____ (wrap) him in a warm blanket, when Jill came in with a tray in her hands. 2. They _____ (reach) the peacock door and stood there, talking. 3. She _____ (come in) and _____ (untie) her bonnet strings when Chris entered. 4. She could see their faces in a looking-glass. They evidently _____ (enjoy) themselves. 5. He _____ (cycle) along a narrow path when he _____ (fall) and _____ (hurt) himself badly. 6. I led her to the sitting-room. Antonia _____ (dry) her tears and _____ (powder) her nose again. She greeted Rosemary. 7. It already _____ (begin) to grow dark; the cold autumn wind _____ (whistle); clouds _____ (creep) over the sky. 8. When I looked up again I saw that she _____ (move), and _____ (stand) with her hand on the handle of the door. 9. Then, quite suddenly, I noticed a movement in the garden: someone _____ (enter) from the gate at the far end of the lawn and _____ (move) rapidly across towards the house. 10. When I _____ (look) out of the window, the sun _____ (approach) the horizon and dark clouds _____ (overspread) the sky. 11. Elinor _____ (not / take) more than half a dozen steps when a hand fell on her arm from behind. 12. The moon _____ (not/rise) yet and only two stars _____ (shine) in the dark blue sky.

Ex. 37. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Войдя в комнату, он увидел Анну там, где ее оставил. 2. Я заметил, когда вошел, что кто-то забыл свой зонтик на крыльце. 3. Он не прочел и полкниги, как заявил, что она ему не нравится. 4. Когда гости ушли, она вошла в гостиную и выключила свет. 5. Она сидела на диване и думала, почему еще не пришло письмо от отца. 6. Дождь прекратился, но в воздухе был еще легкий туман. 7. Я не знала, когда он ушел. 8. Он не помнил его имени и не помнил, чтобы встречал его когда-либо раньше. 9. Мы ехали часа два, когда наконец увидели озеро. 10. Прошло некоторое время, прежде чем они поняли, что ему нечего было сказать. 11. Приехав домой, он узнал, что его сестра только что ушла. 12. Когда экспедиция вернулась, они рассказали, что они видели в Арктике.13. Она закончила паковать вещи к тому времени, когда ее сестра постучала в дверь. 14. Последние дни было очень холодно, но снег не шел.15. Когда все ушли, она подошла к телефону и быстро набрала номер. 16. Когда родители вернулись, я показала им, что я сделала. 17. Мама пыталась успокоить меня после того, как вы ушли. 18. Я удивился тому, какие успехи она сделала, учитывая, как мало времени прошло с тех пор, как я видел ее в последний раз.19. Не успел он подойти к двери, как встретил своих школьных друзей. 20. Он опять вернулся в Москву, где жил с родителями в детстве. 21. Когда они наконец расстались, он вернулся в комнату и пошел прямо к столу. 22. Было гораздо холоднее, чем она предполагала. 23. Я знал, что они встречались еще до войны. 24. Когда все ушли, я осторожно закрыл дверь. 25. Когда рассвело, еще дул штормовой ветер, но снег прекратился.

7.4 THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE		INTERROGATIVE	
I	**shall/ will have worked**	I	**shall/ will not have worked**	**Shall/ Will**	I
He	**will have worked**	He	**will not have worked**	**Will**	he
She	**will have worked**	She	**will not have worked**	**Will**	she
It	**will have worked**	It	**will not have worked**	**Will**	it
We	**shall/ will have worked**	We	**shall/ will not have worked**	**Shall/ Will**	we
You	**will have worked**	You	**will not have worked**	**Will**	you
They	**will have worked**	They	**will not have worked**	**Will**	they

I'll have worked — **I won't have worked (shan't)**

The Future Perfect denotes an action completed before a definite moment in the future.

❑ He **will have finished** his work → *when I call him.* / *by 5 o'clock tomorrow.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 38. (**A, B**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Future Perfect*.

1. I (translate) this letter by 6 o'clock this afternoon. 2. I (make) this doll by her birthday. 3. He (not/learn) his lesson by tomorrow, if he has not yet begun to study it. 4. This work is so arduous, that I (not/complete) it in a year's time. 5. After you finish this book, you (learn) over a thousand words. 6. By the end of the month the commission (come) to some decision. 7. If she returns after July 1, I won't see her since I already (go) to the South by the time.

Ex. 39. (**A, B, C**) Answer the questions in *the Future Perfect Tense*, using the words in brackets.

Example: Will you still be busy if I call you at six? (finish)
Oh, no, we *will have finished* by that time.

1. Will they still be staying at the hotel tomorrow? (move to their new house)
2. Will you be discussing the plan at 2 o'clock? (make a decision)
3. Will your students be writing a test at ten in the morning? (finish)
4. Will your brother still be a student next autumn? (graduate)
5. Will you still remember me in five years? (forget)
6. Will he be at home on Saturday? (leave for Scotland)
7. Will she be expecting your call tomorrow morning? (receive my letter)
8. Will you be having a lesson when I come home? (go to the swimming-pool)

Ex. 40. (**B, C**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Indefinite*, *the Future Indefinite* and *the Future Perfect*.

1. He (be) here for two hours by the time you (come) back. 2. "It (be) very late." – "They (be) back soon." 3. "There (be) no planes tonight." – "Never mind, I (go) by train." 4. You

(be) angry if I (talk) to you about it? 5. By the time you (finish) cooking they (do) their work. 6. "I (be) afraid, my train (leave) by that time." – "(not/worry), I (drive) you home." 7. I hope it (stop) snowing by tomorrow morning. 8. If you (think) it over you (see) I am right. 9. If you (not/take) a taxi, you (be) late. By the time you (get) to the theatre the first act (be) over and you (miss) the most interesting dialogues.

Ex. 41. (**B**) Translate into English.

1. К завтрашнему дню я закончу этот отчет. 2. Мы сделаем эту работу к трем часам дня, а потом пойдем в парк. 3. К 20 июня мы сдадим все экзамены. 4. Строители построят эту школу к 1 сентября. 5. Я напишу это письмо к тому времени, как придет секретарь. 6. Поезд уже уйдет к тому времени, когда мы придем на станцию. 7. Я переведу эту статью к понедельнику.

Ex. 42. (**B, C**) Translate into English using the proper forms of the verbs.
The first two numbers have been done for you.

1. – Твои друзья будут в Англии, когда ты приедешь туда летом? – Will your friends be in England when you come there in summer?	– Я уверен, что они уже вернутся из Южной Африки. – I'm sure, they will have already returned from South Africa.	
2. – Ты будешь готовиться к экзамену в субботу? – Will you be reading up for your exam on Saturday?	– Я уверен, что уже сдам его. – I'm sure I'll have passed it already.	
3. – Ты будешь еще готовить обед завтра в 12 часов?		уже закончу готовку.
4. – Ты поможешь бабушке искать очки, когда вернешься?		она их уже найдет.
5. – Ты увидишься с Джерри в Атланте, когда я вернусь?	– Я уверен, что	он уже приедет.
6. – Кит будет дома, если я позвоню в 8 часов?		он уже придет.
7. – Они будут обедать завтра в 6 часов?		они уже пообедают к этому времени.
8. – Ты еще будешь чинить машину, если я зайду за тобой в пять?		уже починю ее.

Ex. 43. (**B, C**) Translate into English using the proper forms of the verbs.

I

Завтра миссис Коллинз посетит школу своего сына Ника. Когда она придет туда в два часа дня, он будет играть в игры, но это неважно, потому что сначала она пойдет к его учителю. К тому времени, когда они закончат разговор, урок закончится, и Ник примет душ и будет готов идти с мамой домой. Через два часа Ник сделает уроки и будет свободен. Когда я приеду к ним, Ник с родителями будет обедать. После обеда мы будем играть в компьютерные игры. К тому времени, когда мы перестанем играть, миссис Коллинз приготовит кофе. Мы будем сидеть в гостиной и пить горячий кофе. Потом я отправлюсь домой.

II

Брат моего друга закончит занятия в институте к лету, и ему не терпится приступить к преподаванию. После того как он закончит институт, он начнет преподавать в школе. Я думаю, он станет хорошим учителем и дети будут его любить. Сейчас он упорно работает, потому что знает, что время летит быстро, и может случиться, что у него не будет времени повторить все основательно. Вчера мы занимались вместе, и я помогал ему с его дипломной работой. Завтра он будет работать весь день, а вечером мы пойдем в бассейн, потому что, я думаю, к тому времени он закончит всю свою работу.

8. THE PERFECT CONTINUOUS FORMS

have been + -ing (Participle I)

8.1 THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE		INTERROGATIVE		
I	**have been reading**	I	**have not been reading**	**Have**	I	**been reading?**
He	**has been reading**	He	**has not been reading**	**Has**	he	**been reading?**
She	**has been reading**	She	**has not been reading**	**Has**	she	**been reading?**
It	**has been reading**	It	**has not been reading**	**Has**	it	**been reading?**
We	**have been reading**	We	**have not been reading**	**Have**	we	**been reading?**
You	**have been reading**	You	**have not been reading**	**Have**	you	**been reading?**
They	**have been reading**	They	**have not been reading**	**Have**	they	**been reading?**

I've	**been reading**	She	**hasn't**	**been reading**
She**'s**	**been reading**	We	**haven't**	**been reading**

THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Inclusive

denotes an action which began in the past, has been going on up to *the present and is still going on.*

It is usually used with:
– **since,**
– **for.**

- **I have been learning** English for 10 years.
- **I have been learning** Spanish since we last met and have made *some* progress in it.

It is rendered in Russian *by the* **present.**

Exclusive

denotes an action which was recently in progress, but is no longer going on at the present moment.

- There are puddles everywhere. It **has been raining** hard.

It is rendered in Russian *by the* **past.**

NOTE: The verbs not used in the *Continuous form* cannot be used in the *Perfect Continuous form* either.
In this case we use the *Perfect form*:
❑ I **have known** him since last year.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Perfect Continuous*.

1. I (work) on this problem for two months. 2. She (sleep) all this time? 3. You (talk) this nonsense all day long. 4. "Any news about your latest project?" – "I just (tell) about it." 5. He says he (not/feel) well for the past week. 6. You are red all over. How long you (lie) in the sun today? 7. I (try) to get you all day, George! 8. I (not/sleep) well for months. 9. We (see) each other regularly since the party at Helen's. 10. "Jack isn't working now." – "He (not/work) for years."

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Make up sentences using *the Present Perfect Continuous*.

Example: Suzy is in her riding boots. (she/ride) – She has been riding.
You are dirty all over. What (you/do) – What have you been doing?

1. Have a rest now. (you/work too hard/lately) _____
2. You are shivering. (you/stand/in this cold/long?) _____
3. Her hands are red and wet. (she/scrub/the floors/for three hours) _____
_____
4. The children are quite voiceless. (they/sing at the top of their voices/since morning)
_____
_____

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

1. Ты давно меня ждешь? 2. Вы опять дрались? 3. Как давно у вас болит нога? 4. Он занимается уже три часа. 5. Я учу испанский с сентября. 6. Анна ищет работу шесть месяцев. 7. Мой брат курит десять лет. 8. Они работают в Манчестере с 1 марта. 9. Какой глубокий снег! Сколько времени шел снег? 10. У тебя глаза красные. Ты плакала? 11. С какого возраста ты играешь в шахматы? 12. Как давно вы живете в этом городе?

8.2 THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS AND PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

COMPARE:

The Present Continuous
when? – (now)
❑ What **are** you **writing**?
❑ I **am writing** a letter.

The Present Perfect Continuous
how long?
❑ I **have been writing** it for an hour.

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Open the brackets.

1. There is nobody in that room. _____ you (read) detective stories again? 2. What _____ you (do) here? 3. He _____ (do) his lessons since after lunch. 4. "Where's Fred?" – "He _____ (work) in the garden. He _____ (plant) rose bushes since dawn." 5. All things in the drawing-room are out of place. The children _____ (play) hide-and-seek! 6. I _____ (think) of your aunt's proposal since we last met. 7. Where you _____ (swim) at this early hour of the day? 8. We _____ (stay) at the Regent Hotel; won't you come and see us? 9. For a week now those mice _____ (steal) food from the pantry. 10. Down by the pine woods they _____ (lay) out a new road.

Ex. 5. (**B, C**) Use *the Present Continuous* or *the Present Perfect Continuous*.

1. He had barely entered the room when his secretary said: "Somebody (ring) for you for the last five minutes." 2. I (read) Shakespeare in your absence and now I (try) to learn this beautiful sonnet. 3. "What the children (do)?" – "They (play) games all morning and now they (learn) to tell time by the position of the sun." 4. "Our friends (leave)." – "How long they (stay) with you?" 5. "What you (think) about?" – "I (not/think), I (count) the birds in the sky." 6. "Where's my daughter?" – "She (talk) to a policeman." – "What's happened?" – "She (drive) without a license." 7. What you (do) to yourself since I've been away? 8. "Florence, dear, I (look) for you everywhere." – "What's happened?" – "Mr Cusak (wait) for you in the house."

Ex. 6. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

1. "Мужчина у окна смотрит на нас." – "Да, и что из этого?" – "Я его встречаю в библиотеке в последнее время." 2. "Куда ты так торопишься?" – "Мама ждет меня у метро уже пять минут." 3. Вы читаете эту газету? 4. "Которая из девушек Аня?" – "На ней красное платье." 5. Я ношу эти туфли уже два года. Они очень удобные. 6. Кого вы ждете? 7. Давно вы его ждете? 8. Что вы слушаете? 9. Она преподает английский с прошлого года. 10. Она учит меня английскому языку. 11. Я проявлял фотографии весь день. 12. Я проявляю наши летние фотографии. 13. Кому ты машешь (рукой)?

8.3 THE PRESENT PERFECT AND PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

COMPARE :

The Present Perfect
– *denotes a completed action, a result.*
- The bottle is empty. Somebody **has drunk** the lemonade.
- **I have typed** your letter. (=I've done it.)

The Present Perfect Continuous
– *has an implication of incompleteness.*
- Somebody **has been drinking** from this bottle. It's half empty.

Ex. 7. (**A, B**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Perfect* and *the Present Perfect Continuous.*

1. Many people believe that our climate (change) very markedly. 2. I (collect) the pictures with bridges since I graduated from the University. Now I (collect) enough to organize an interesting exhibition. 3. She (read) a fairy tale to the children since breakfast. They (not/ finish) yet. 4. Those people (wait) for a tram for the last fifteen minutes. I'm afraid, they don't know that the electricity (go) out. 5. What (happen) to Mary? John (ring) her up the whole evening and nobody (answer). 6. "You (come) out at last," he said. "Well, I (stand) here long, and (listen) to the nightingale." 7. So, you (arrive). We just (speak) of you. 8. "How long you (know) about it?" – "I (know) it all the time." 9. "Why you (turn) off the music?" – "I (play) the records for hours; I'm tired now." 10. I definitely (decide) to give Pendle up.

Ex. 8. (**A, B**) Decide on the correct form of the verb with each word combination.

Example: (She/clean/the flat/for two hours) – She has been cleaning the flat for two hours.
(She/do/two rooms/so far) – She has done two rooms so far.

1. (I/read/Pushkin's prose/in the garden) _____
   (I/read/three of Belkin's stories) _____
2. (Mother/sew/in the morning room/since lunch) _____
   (She/make/a ball dress/for me) _____
3. (My brother/ski/since childhood) _____
   (He/take part/in many championships) _____
4. (Father/write/children's poems/since he retired) _____
   (He/write/four books) _____

Ex. 9. (**A, B**) Ask a question using the correct verb form.

Example: He trains young athlets.
How many young athlets has he trained?

1. She is travelling in the East. How long _____ ?
2. He translates books. How many books _____ ?
3. He translates from Japanese. How long _____ ?
4. They are visiting the hospital. How many times _____ ?

Ex. 10. (**A, B**) Put the verb into the correct form, *the Present Perfect* or *the Present Perfect Continuous.*

Examples: I've run (run) out of petrol. Can you lend me some?
You are out of breath. Have you been running (you/run)?

1. The secretary _____ (type) the letters you gave her but she _____ (not/finish) them yet.
2. There's sufficient light, you _____ (waste) electricity for nearly an hour.
3. Look! The child _____ (fall) asleep!
4. Open the window. Somebody _____ (smoke) here.
5. She _____ (do) the accounts all evening. But she _____ (go) home already.
6. He is a famous playwright. He _____ (complete) his seventh play.

Ex. 11. Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Perfect* or *the Present Perfect Continuous Tense*.

I. (A, B)

1. We (meet) before? 2. I often (see) his name in the papers this year. 3. I (try) to catch the waiter's attention for about 15 minutes now. 4. She (study) English for a year and (learn) many words and expressions. 5. I (not/hear) about him since yesterday. 6. I (look) for him since I finished my lesson but I (not/find) him. I (be) to his office and to the laboratory but he isn't there. 7. "Hello, Sven. You (see) Alex yet?" – "No, I (not/be) to the shop floor today. I (talk) on the phone to our clients all morning." 8. I (be) up here since about six. I (wander) around for hours. 9. I (come) to you to invite you for a ride in the car. 10. I expect these young men (inform) you who I am. 11. I really don't know what you (do) there all this time.12. I (love) you ever since I first saw you. 13. And that's where they (stay) ever since.

II. (A, B, C)

1. "I know what you (think) of these last days," he said.."You (make) up your mind?" 2. They (struggle) with this problem for about a month and they (solve) it at last. 3. They (discuss) the case for hours but (be) unable to come to any decision. 4. You (see) Harry again. He (put) this idea into your head. 5. You (listen to) gossip. The things you (hear) are quite impossible. 6. I (wait) here since 10 o'clock. Nobody (look) in here. 7. I (tell) you so for years but you never (pay) any attention. 8. She (talk) about it ever since I met her and nothing (come) out of it. 9. She (do) shaping since September and her figure (improve) remarkably. 10. You (ask) him this question for a week and still he (not/ answer) you.

Ex. 12. (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Почему у тебя синие губы? – Я ела чернику. 2. Ты съел весь кекс? 3. Что вы делаете? – Мы собираем яблоки. – Сколько вы уже собрали? – Мы собрали 5 корзин. 4. Я сегодня делала покупки и наконец нашла тебе летние туфли. 5. Какой чудный запах! Бабушка варит варенье. 6. Я полирую этот стол с самого завтрака. Я очень устала. 7. Что ты делаешь в гараже так долго? – Я накачиваю шины (pump the tires). Я уже накачал три. Ты поможешь мне с четвертой? 8. Ты знакома с Томом? – Я знаю его целую вечность. 9. Почему вы так шумите (make a horrible noise)? – Я потерял ключ и пытаюсь разбудить жену, поэтому я бросаю камни в окно спальни.– Вы бросаете камни не в то окно. Вы живете в следующем доме. 10. Он только что продал две свои картины. – Ему повезло. Мой муж рисует уже пять лет и еще не продал ни одной картины. 11. Я все утро занимаюсь домашней работой и еще ничего не сделал. 12. Почему вы не принесли мне письма? Вы их еще не напечатали? 13. Куда ты дела мои ботинки? Я нигде не могу их найти. – Майк только что ушел в них. 14. Тот человек стоит на автобусной остановке последние полчаса. Сказать ему, что последний автобус уже ушел? 15. Мой муж собирает картины современных художников с тех пор, как мы поженились. Он уже собрал так много, что не знает, куда их повесить.

8.4 REVISION

Ex. 13. (**A**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Continuous, the Present Perfect* and *the Present Perfect Continuous.*

1. A.: What you (look) for?
   B.: We (look) for school things. We (not/buy) everything yet.
   A.: I (buy) everything.
2. A.: What you (do), Jane?
   B.: I (read).
   A.: But it (be) late. What you (read) all this time?
3. A.: Where (be) John?
   B.: He (work) in the garden.
   A.: He must be too tired. He (work) there all day.
4. A.: Who you (wait) for?
   B.: I (wait) for Jack. I (wait) for him since 11 o'clock.
5. A.: They (stand) there for the last 20 minutes.
   B.: What they (talk) about all this time?
6. A.: What you (think) of?
   B.: I (think) of our life together.
7. A.: The girls (sing) in the sitting-room.
   B.: They (sing) since I (walk) in.

Ex. 14. (**A, B**) Open the brackets. Use *the Past Continuous,the Past Indefinite, the Present Perfect* or *the Present Perfect Continuous.*

1. Greg (return) at last. Mary (wait) for him so long. 2. Margaret, you (read) my letters. Don't deny it. 3. When I (come) home, Mother (make) breakfast and Father (have) his morning tea. 4. When you (discuss) it? I never (hear) the subject mentioned. 5. No, you can't go to the Smiths'. You (be) there twice this week. 6. Why, you (not/change) at all. I (recognise) you the moment I (see) you. 7. Terry (go) shopping already? 8. When you (go) to bed? 9. I (offer) to buy them out. 10. My dear girl, you (overeat) for years. You (lose) your looks, you (lose) your figure. You can't get back to normal overnight. Remember what doctor Lecter (tell) you on Monday. 11. I (see) her when I (drive) past their house on my way to work. 12. He (not/say) a single word to me yet and he (get) that letter on Sunday. 13. The children (talk) of nothing else for weeks. 14. And we (sing) together ever since that time. 15. Where he (be)? – He (sit) at his desk. He (not/move) since she (leave).

Ex. 15. (**B, C**) Open the brackets. Use *the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous, the Present Perfect* or *the Present Perfect Continuous.*

1. Andy, you (hear) me? I (talk) to you for a minute already. 2. I want to see how much the place (change) since I was there last. 3. We (not/see) them ever since. 4. I don't want to take a cure at all. I am perfectly happy. All my life I (be) perfectly happy. 5. Here's my key. I (leave). 6. I (go) to the shops, (not/begin) cutting the material until I (come) back. 7. Wait till you (see) Moose and (talk) to him. 8. The children (live) with their aunt since their mother (be) ill. 9. I must not let my eyes get all red and swollen, or Henry'll know I (cry). 10. The train (not/arrive) yet but a lot of people (stand) on the platform. 11. I (know) him very well. We (know) each other since I came to live in this

house. 12. He says he (listen) to the same tunes for fifteen years. 13. Earthquakes (rock) the surface in different parts of the world from time to time. 14. What are you going to say to the President, if he (ask). 15. "Dear little Hans," cried Rotten, "I'm in great trouble. My little boy (fall off) a ladder and (hurt) himself." 16. "You (hear) that Walter (ask) Mary to marry him?" – "Again? He (ask) her three times so far. And she obstinately (refuse) him all this time. She (accept) at last?" 17. "This other gentleman," cried Mr.Pickwick, "is, as you will see when you (read) the letter, a very near relative, or I should rather say a very particular friend of your son's." 18. He (be) here for six years. He (do) a lot to help things change. 19. My good man, Signora Lollobridgida (be) a head nurse in general to all of us. She (look) after sick people ever since she was in short frocks, and (do) it better than any sister of mercy I (know). I needn't leave any directions if she (come). 20. Things (not/be) the same since the British went. 21. Your attitude (puzzle) me for some time now. Why you (look) at me like that? I (speak) about your last article. What (make) you write all those awful accusations?

Ex. 16. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Боюсь, вы наслушались разговоров кого-то старше вас. 2. "Как дела у вашего сына?" – "Очень хорошо. Я только что ему звонила по телефону." 3. "Вы давно здесь работаете?" – "Около трех лет." 4. "Вот и вы, – сказал он. – Я давно вас жду." 5. Я со вчерашнего дня думаю о том, что вы сказали. 6. Тэд, я вас ищу повсюду. Что вы делали все это время? 7. Входи, дорогой. Я целое утро пытаюсь найти тебя. 8. Мальчики в саду. Они уже с полчаса наблюдают за птицами. 9. Скажите, когда придет механик? Я жду его с 10 часов. 10. Вот уже тридцать лет, как я изучаю своих собратьев (humankind). 11. Дождь идет уже три дня. 12. Я не сплю уже вторую ночь.

Ex. 17. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

I

1. Я его только что видела. Он переходил улицу. 2. Ты в жизни своей никогда по-настоящему не работал. 3. Когда он приходил? 4. Директор еще не вернулся. 5. Что вы там так долго рассматривали? 6. Последнее время вы меньше работаете. 7. Спасибо, я уже пил кофе. 8. Она мне все рассказала. 9. Вчера, когда мы ехали домой, она мне все рассказала . 10. Они играют в шахматы с самого обеда. 11. Я работаю над этой темой с весны. 12. Я о вас так много слышала. 13. Когда он в последний раз написал вам? 14. Где я видела это лицо? 15. Она все объяснила. Она была тогда больна и не могла позвонить. 16. Ты написала маме?

II

1. Он тренирует эту команду всего полгода, но они сделали большие успехи. 2. Кто взял мой словарь? Я его вчера здесь на полке оставила. 3. Он посмотрел на меня и ничего не сказал. Он ждал кого-то. 4. Они спорят уже полчаса, и я потеряла всякий интерес. 5. Почему ты с ней так разговаривал? 6. Вы давно его знаете? 7. Давно вы меня ждете? 8. Когда вы начали изучать английский язык? 9. У тебя руки красные. Что ты делала? – Я чистила свеклу. 10. Он уехал на прошлой неделе. 11. Он подошел к окну, открыл его и помахал кому-то рукой. 12. Мы ждем здесь с двух часов, и никто не сказал нам, что делать. 13. Боюсь, что она передумала. Она мне ничего не сказала, когда я видела ее в последний раз.

8.5 THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE
I had been reading	**I had not been reading**	**Had I been reading?**
I'd been reading	**I hadn't been reading**	

THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Inclusive

denotes an action which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to that moment and was still going on at that moment.

It is used with:
- **since,**
- **for.**

❒ We **had been climbing** for six hours when at last we reached the summit of the moutain.

Exclusive

denotes an action which was no longer going on at a definite moment in the past, but which had been in progress not long before.

❒ Outside everything was in deep snow. It **had been snowing** hard all night (not at that moment).

EXERCISES

Ex. 18. (A, B) Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Perfect Continuous.*

1. Clouds (gather) all day and now rain came down in sheets. 2. "I'm coming all right," said Mr Dilinger, who (shiver) for the last ten minutes. 3. I realized that he had come away with me in order to discuss once more what he already (discuss) for hours with his sister-in-law. 4. I slowly released a breath and only then realized that I (hold) it for some time.

Ex. 19. (B) Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Indefinite, the Past Perfect* and *the Past Perfect Continuous.*

1. When I (leave) home, the snow already (stop). 2. It (be) 6 p.m. and Jack (be) tired because he (work) hard all day. 3. He clearly (listen) to our conversation and I (wonder) how much he (hear). 4. She (say) she (teach) at this school for twenty years. 5. He (say) he just (finish) the book he (read) all this time. 6. The postman (come) after lunch and (bring) me a letter which I (expect) for a long time. 7. It (rain) since the morning, and the fields (be) quite muddy.

Ex. 20. (A, B, C) Answer the questions.

Examples: Did you work at your English yesterday? *Yes, I did.*
How long had you been working at your English before you went for a walk? (for an hour) *I had been working at my English for an hour.*

1. Did it rain yesterday? _____
How long had it been raining when you left home? (for 3 hours) _____
_____

2. Did she work at the University before she retired? _____
How long had she been working there before she retired? (for 25 years) _____
_____

3. Did you stay at the hotel when you were in London? _____
How long had you been living there when Jane arrived? (for a fortnight) _____
_____

4. Did they study French before they went to France? _____
How long had they been studying it before they went there? (for 5 years) _____
_____

5. Did they work on their book last year? _____
How long had they been working on it before they sent it to the publishing house? (for 2 years) _____
_____

6. Did your brother play football yesterday? _____
How long had he been playing football before he took part in the world championship for the first time? (for 6 years) _____
_____

7. Did he listen to that record yesterday? _____
How long had he been listening to it before he could understand all the words? (for an hour) _____
_____

8. Did the children walk in the wood in the morning? _____
How long had they been walking before you called them back? (for 2 hours) _____
_____

Ex. 21. (A, B) Make up sentences according to the pattern.

Example: You came home. Your children were watching television.
(they/not/do/any work) – They hadn't been doing any work.

1. Brother and sister came home with angry faces.
(they/quarrel/on the way home) _____
2. There was nobody in the flat. But a delicious smell of fresh bread was in the air.
(Mother/bake/bread) _____
3. Mary closed her eyes. She felt very tired.
(she/read/too long) _____
4. You came home from a party. You were nearly dropping on your feet.
(you/dance/all night) _____
5. When I looked at my typewriter, I saw a sheet of paper in it.
(somebody/use/my typewriter) _____

Ex. 22. (A, B) Make up sentences according to the pattern.

Example: I started on my journey. After an hour a tyre went flat.
I had been driving for an hour when a tyre went flat.

1. The lecturer began to speak. After 15 minutes the dean came in.
The lecturer _____ for 15 minutes when _____

2. Larry had arranged to meet Amy at her hotel in London. He had lost the address but he thought it was the Savoy. So he went there. After half an hour waiting he realized that he had come to the wrong hotel.
   Larry _____ when _____
3. My father-in-law went to work in America in 1943. Two years later the war ended.
   My father-in-law _____ when _____

8.6 THE PAST CONTINUOUS AND PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

COMPARE :

The Past Continuous:
– denotes an action going on at a definite moment in the past, *no previous duration is expressed.*

❑ I looked out of the window. It **was raining.**

The Past Perfect Continuous:
– expresses the previous duration.

❑ It **had been raining** for days.

EXERCISES

Ex. 23. (A, B) Put the verb into the correct form, *the Past Perfect Continuous* or *the Past Continuous.*

Examples: Their swimming suits were wet. They had been swimming.
She was in the swimming pool. She was swimming.

1. The boy was leaning against the tree, out of breath. He _____ (run) very fast.
2. He came into the kitchen. His parents stopped talking. They _____ (talk) about him.
3. She came into the room. Her husband was at his desk. He _____ (write).
4. When the newly weds arrived at the restaurant, their guests _____ (wait) for them. They felt rather hungry because they _____ (wait) for a long time.
5. Julia _____ (stand) at the bus stop for twenty minutes when Ivo drove up and got out of the car.

Ex. 24. (B, C) Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous* and *the Past Perfect Continuous.*

1. When I (get) home that evening, my little son (eat) dinner himself for the first time. 2. My sister's wedding (be) the only thing everybody (talk) at home for the last two weeks. 3. They (go) back to the hotel and up to their suite, where they (expect) the inspector at six-thirty. 4. Presently he (turn) to look at the corner where she (stand). 5. Scarlett, who (fan) herself with a turkey-tall fan, (stop) abruptly. 6. He just (leave) for the airport when I (call). 7. "Who are you thinking of?" he (ask) after he (look) at me for a few seconds. 8. They (stand) in the open front doorway, waiting for her to come in out of the rain. 9. Their daughter (not/say) where she (sleep) and she (have) a curiously looking box in her hands.

Ex. 25. (**A, B, C**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous, the Past Perfect* and *the Past Perfect Continuous.*

1. Nobody (know) where Smith (go). 2. A girl who (stand) under the beech tree (come) up to us. 3. Mary (speak) to Mr Boxwell when I (see) her in the corridor this morning. 4. John (park) the car in Fifth Avenue when a young man in black glasses (appear) from nowhere and (stand) before him. 5. He again (come) to the village where he (live) in his childhood. 6. While we (talk), there (come) a loud knock at the door. 7. He (look) into the drawing-room. The old man (sleep) peacefully in the armchair at the fire-place. 8. When their visitor (leave) John and his mother (stand) near the window. 9. When he (dress), he (go) downstairs, (write) a long letter to his parents and another to his sister. 10. She (welcome) her with a bright smile and (turn) back to the offensive dandilions she (fight) with. 11. While she (read) this notice, a middle-aged woman (appear) in the doorway. 12. When he (come) back to the conference room, he (see) that the situation (change). 13. She (sit) at the table only five minutes when a car (come). 14. Their father (be) still silent, even when they (have) coffee. 15.The three (sit) down to the meal that Susan (prepare). 16. He (sit) thinking of his wife whom he (leave) alone in Europe. 17. They (look) over the accounts together and (find) where she (make) her mistake. 18. I (be) surprised at John's failure because he (be) such a good student previously.

Ex. 26. (**B, C**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous, the Past Perfect* and *the Past Perfect Continuous.*

1. How your chief _____ (find out) that you _____ (come) to work late? 2. I _____ (leave) my house yesterday in a hurry, but I _____ (not/go) far before I _____ (discover) that it _____ (be) going to rain and I _____ (leave) my umbrella at home. 3. He told me that his aunt _____ (live) with them for three months. 4. The discovery of the art of writing _____ (enable) the Ancient Egyptians to remember what their ancestors _____ (do) before them. 5. The Romans _____ (destroy) Jerusalem with fire and _____ (kill) many of the inhabitants. 6. He scarcely _____ (get) outside the door when he (hear) Wardle's voice talking loudly. 7. I knew right away that that was the place I _____ (look for) all my life. 8. At nine o'clock that evening a long black Packard roadster _____ (draw) up to her door, and Arnie _____ (step) out of the front seat where he _____ (sit) with the driver and a girl between them. 9. Mrs Monroe put down the telephone receiver. She _____ (ring) twice and each time the answer _____ (be) the same: Miss Marple was out. 10. I _____ (shout) to him to stop, but at that moment he _____ (run) too fast to hear. 11. He _____ (pick) up the book he _____ (read) before I _____ (come) into the room, and _____ (turn) the corner of the page to mark the place where he _____ (stop) reading. 12. He _____ (not / eat) since nine that morning and his stomach _____ (growl) with hunger. 13. No sooner they _____ (arrive) at this point than a most violent and startling knocking was heard at the door.

Ex. 27. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Она смертельно поссорилась с моим мужем десять минут назад. 2. На старой даме было бархатное платье, которое не видело света двадцать лет. 3. Гости ушли.

Теперь они сидели одни перед камином в гостиной. 4. Люди, которых она встречала по дороге домой, улыбались ей и спрашивали, как она провела отпуск. 5. Я думаю, он показал мне около тридцати картин. Это был результат шести лет, в течение которых он рисовал. 6. Она больше не получала от него писем. Он перестал писать за три года до этого. 7. Я переписал письмо от Элизы, положил его в конверт и пошел на почту. Снег прекратился. Когда я вернулся, я выпил чаю и сел к пианино. 8. Она изучала искусство рисования три года, прежде чем стала работать в издательстве. Когда я попросил ее сделать иллюстрации к моей книге, она заканчивала иллюстрировать свою первую книгу. 9. Когда я вчера принимала ванну, как всегда, зазвонил телефон. 10. Перед отъездом мы зашли к миссис Чандлер. Мы не видели ее некоторое время, и моя сестра заметила, что она сильно изменилась. 11. Не успели они проехать и пяти миль, как их остановила полиция. 12. Он путешествовал уже два дня, но выглядел свежим и не чувствовал усталости. 13. Буря утихла, небо прояснилось, и опять светило солнце. 14. Мистер Мэтлок посмотрел на своего сына, его взгляд смягчился. 15. Прошлым летом я посетила места, где я провела детство. Деревца, которые отец посадил, когда я была еще ребенком, стали теперь большими высокими деревьями.

8.7 THE FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

AFFIRMATIVE					NEGATIVE					INTERROGATIVE				
I	**shall**	**have**	**been**	**reading**	I	**shall**	**not**	**have**	**been reading**	**Shall**	I	**have**	**been**	**reading?**
	will					**will**				**Will**				
He	**will**	**have**	**been**	**reading**	He	**will**	**not**	**have**	**been reading**	**Will**	he	**have**	**been**	**reading?**
She	**will**	**have**	**been**	**reading**	She	**will**	**not**	**have**	**been reading**	**Will**	she	**have**	**been**	**reading?**
It	**will**	**have**	**been**	**reading**	It	**will**	**not**	**have**	**been reading**	**Will**	it	**have**	**been**	**reading?**
We	**shall**	**have**	**been**	**reading**	We	**shall**	**not**	**have**	**been reading**	**Shall**	we	**have**	**been**	**reading?**
	will					**will**				**Will**				
You	**will**	**have**	**been**	**reading**	You	**will**	**not**	**have**	**been reading**	**Will**	you	**have**	**been**	**reading?**
They	**will**	**have**	**been**	**reading**	They	**will**	**not**	**have**	**been reading**	**Will**	they	**have**	**been**	**reading?**

I'll have been reading — **I won't have been reading (shan't)**

THE FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

denotes an action which will begin before a definite moment in the future, will continue up to that moment and will be going on at that moment.

❑ By the next August she **will have been teaching** English for 30 years.

EXERCISES

Ex. 28. (**A, B, C**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Future Perfect Continuous.*

1. By the end of this month we (learn) this language for ten years. 2. When my daughter goes to school we (live) here for over five years. 3. When the new century begins, they (reconstruct) this church for nearly 25 years. 4. If nobody stops him, he (grumble) for

hours. 5. We can get there at 7 at the earliest. They will be painting the fence. If we arrive at 8.30, they (paint) it for 3 hours at least; and if we come at 9.30, they will have probably finished the work.

Ex. 29. (**A, B, C**) Translate into English.

1. К тому времени, как он закончит университет, его родители проработают в Южной Африке два года. 2. Мы будем рекламировать эти товары несколько месяцев к тому времени, как они появятся на рынке. 3. На будущий год к этому времени она будет изучать французский уже два года. 4. К тому времени, когда она приедет, я уже буду жить здесь в течение двух лет. 5. К тому времени, как ты вернешься, я буду писать уже третий портрет. 6. Сколько времени они будут показывать этот фильм, пока ты не привезешь новый?

9. THE REVISION ON TENSES

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Continuous, the Present Indefinite, the Past Indefinite, the Present Perfect* and *the Present Perfect Continuous.*

1. He (not/phone) him since he (arrive). 2. What (happen) to you since she (leave)? 3. I (think) your daughter (become) a real beauty since I (see) her last. 4. What you (do) with the knife? The point is broken off. 5. For these last three years I (save) nearly every penny for my trip to that country. 6. Well, dear, what you (do) all day long? You (look) tired. Come and sit here by the fire. 7. "Hello," he (say) holding out his hand, "I (look) for you for a long time. I never (have) the chance to thank you for what you (do) for my brother." 8. You see, I (do) this kind of thing for the last thirty years. 9. I (think) of it ever since Molly (tell) me about your decision to go to sea. 10. You (live) here ever since you (leave) Canada? 11. Do come in and join us. We (have) coffee and (watch) TV.

12. A.: I hear your brother (come) back. He (be) in the East all this time?
    B.: No, he (be) in Europe for the last year.
13. A.: I just (be) to the cinema. You (see) the last film by N. Mikhalkov?
    B.: Yes.
    A.: When you (see) it?
    B.: A week ago.
    A.: Who you (go) with?
    B.: With Tanya.
14. A.: I (want) to go to Switzerland next winter.
    B.: You (discuss) it with your mother?
    A.: No, not yet, why?
    B.: You (ski) together for the last three years.
15. A.: I (be) sorry, I (give) so much trouble and now I (ask) you to excuse me.
    B.: It (be) true that you (put) me to some inconvenience, but in the circumstances I (be) ready to accept your apology.
16. A.: There (be) two gentlemen asking for you.
    B.: Tell them, I (not/be) in.

A.: They (want) to know if you (see) the accident yesterday.
B.: I (dread) these questions all morning, I (not/know) what to say. What you (think), they still (wait)?

17. A.: You (know), where George (be)?
B.: He and Fanny (have) a friendly chat in the library.
A.: They (be) old friends, (not/be) they?
B.: Yes, they (be) friends since childhood.

18. A.: The children (return) yet?
B.: Yes, Tom Burton (bring) them back in his car five minutes ago.
A.: Well, then we can have dinner now.
B.: No, we can't. I (not/cook) it yet.
A.: What you (do) all this time?
B.: Worrying.

Ex. 2. Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous, the Past Perfect* and *the Past Perfect Continuous.*

I. (A, B)

1. Where you (go) when I (meet) you in the street yesterday? – I (go) to tell the watchmaker that he (forget) to send my watch. 2. This, however, (enable) him to add some ideas which he (omit) in the first copy. 3. They (decide) to rebuild the church when they (find) that the cement used (begin) to crumble. 4. He (be) so ill that he (find) himself unable to complete the work he (begin). 5. She (turn) the light back on, (lie) on the sofa and (take) up the book she (read). 6. His secretary (take) the paper from the table where he (put) it, and (go) out. 7. It (be) near midnight when they (come) in from dinner, still laughing at something he (say) in the dining-room. 8. It (be) two o'clock. Eliza (be) suddenly thoroughly awake. She (sit) up in her bed and (circle) her knees with her arms. It (rain), the way it (rain) for days. 9. In his turn Jolyon (look) back at his son. He (want) to talk about many things that he (be) unable to talk about all these years. 10. She (be) at the station after all, standing just as he (imagine), apart from the others. 11. He (come) back on Saturday, as he (promise). They all (wait) for him in the sitting-room. When he (enter), everybody (rush) forward to him to embrace and hug him in greeting. 12. The state of his clothes indicated that he (play) football in the muddy field.

II. (B, C)

1. The woman (busy) herself with cooking, while the man (slice) bacon and (fire) the stove. 2. He was up before the sun on the last day. A gale from the west (blow) all night, making him wakeful. 3. It (be) a cold, harsh, winter day. There (be) snow some hours before, and it (lie), not deep, but hard-frozen on the ground. 4. He (try) to catch what they (say), but they (be) too far from him and (speak) in very low voices. 5. As the wet twilight (deepen), I (stop) in a solitary bridle-path, which I (pursue) an hour or more. 6. He (not/be) so much surprised to see me as I (expect). 7. I (go) to bed and (fall) asleep, when my guardian (knock) at the door of my room and (beg) me to get up directly. 8. I (have) a wash and brush-up before starting out to go to the luncheon Elliot (invite) me to, when they (ring) up from the reception to say that he (be) below. 9. Mrs Bedwin, who (listen) at the parlour door, (hasten) into the corridor in a breathless state. 10. Sara (be right) in her prediction. Madam Sharon's face (be) a picture the next morning when she (find) out that Sara (go).

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous* and *Past Perfect.*

Stifling a huge yawn, Petra (pull) herself up into a sitting position and (try) to free her mind from the clog of sleep. Slowly she (become) aware that Sara (pull) her suitcase from under the bed and (fill) it by the simple method of taking out drawers of clothes and turning them upside down so that the contents (fall) into the case.

(from S. Wentworth)

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite* and *the Past Perfect.*

He (look) at his watch. In a quarter of an hour he (be) due at the General Meeting of the New Colliery Company – one of Uncle Jolyon's concerns; he should see Uncle Jolyon there, and say something to him about Bosinney – (not/make) up his mind what, but something – in any case he should not answer this letter until he (see) Uncle Jolyon. He (get) up and methodically (put) away the draft of his defence. Going into a dark little cupboard, he (turn) up the light, (wash) his hands with a piece of brown Windsor soap, and (dry) them on a roller towel. Then he (brush) his hair, (turn) down the light, (take) his hat and ... (leave) the house.

(After J. Galsworthy)

Ex. 5. (**B, C**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous, the Past Perfect* and *the Future-in-the-Past.*

1. He (go) back into the kitchen and (open) the icebox. He (take) out a bottle of milk and a piece of chocolate cake and (put) them on the table. He (drink) the milk from the bottle and (eat) the cake with his fingers. It (not/be) until after he (finish) that he (remember) he (promise) himself he (not/touch) any sweets in hopes that his skin (clear) up.
2. He (sit) there in a kind of lethargy. He (hear) the bathroom door slam and footsteps leading back to Rina's room. Idly he (wonder) what she (do) at home at this time of the afternoon. Usually she (be) down at the beach already with her giggling girlfriends.
Rina just (cross) the room and (stand) in front of the mirrors, her back to the door.

(After H. Robbins)

Ex. 6. (**B, C**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous, the Past Indefinite* and *the Past Continuous.*

Laying the telephone down on the desk, I (go) to the door and (call) Amos. I (go) back to the couch and (stretch) out as he (pick) up the phone. He (shoot) a peculiar look at me when he (hear) her voice. He (be) silent for a while, listening to her. When he (speak) again, he (smile). "That's wonderful! When you (leave)? Soon I also (fly) to New York when this job (be finished). We (have) a celebration then. Give my love to your daughter."
He (put) down the telephone and (come) over to me. "That (be) Monica," he (say), looking down at me.
"I (know)," I (say).
"She (leave) for New York this afternoon. She (take) her daughter back with her. You (not/see) the kid for a long time now, _____ you?"
"No, I _____ "
"You ought to see her. The kid is turning into a real beauty."

(After H. Robbins)

Ex. 7. (**B, C**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite, the Past Perfect* and *the Past Perfect Continuous.*

He (place) a picture on the easel and (let) me look at it for a minute or two; then he (take) it down and (put) another in its place. He (show) me about thirty canvases. It (be) the result of the six years during which he (paint). He never (sell) a picture. The canvases (be) of different sizes. The smaller (be) pictures of still-life and the largest (be) landscapes. There (be) about half a dozen portraits.

(After S. Maugham)

Ex. 8. (**B, C**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite* and *the Past Perfect.*

It (be) so exciting to be actually at the party again. She (be) pleased also with the warm reception she (receive). When she (enter) the house, everyone (rush) to her with cries of pleasure and welcome, (kiss) her, (shake) her hand, (tell) her they (miss) her dreadfully. Everyone (speak) gently with tears in their eyes and (ask) at length about her children. Everyone (ask) about Melanie and Ashley, demanding the reason why they, too, (not/come) back to Atlanta.

(After M. Mitchell)

Ex. 9. (**B, C**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Indefinite, the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous* and *the Past Perfect.*

We just (finish) lunch. Mrs Leidner (go) to her room to rest as usual. I (settle) her on her bed with plenty of pillows and her book, and (leave) the room when she (call) me back.
"Don't go, nurse, there (be) something I (want) to say to you."
I (come) back into the room.
"Shut the door."
I (obey).
She (get) up from the bed and (begin) to walk up and down the room. I could see that she (make) up her mind to something and I (not/like) to interrupt her. She (be) clearly in indecision of mind.

(A. Christie)

Ex. 10. (**B, C**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous* and *the Past Perfect.*

He (not/cover) the first of those miles, however, when the luck (favour) him at last. He (meet) a cart turning in his direction out of a field and this time he (be) able to beg a lift, though it (take) several minutes to explain to the driver, a little old whiskered fellow nearly as deaf as one of his own sacks, exactly what he (want). And by the time he (make) it plain to his companion that he (travel) about, that he (want) a wash and brush-up and some breakfast, Everwell itself (be) in sight. It (be) a little place that (look) somehow as if it had been dropped there.

(After J. Priestley)

Ex. 11. (**B, C**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous* and *the Present Perfect.*

Later that afternoon Miss MacDonald (tell) Tom that Hopkins would like to see him that evening at 7 o'clock. At two minutes after the hour, Tom (knock) at Hopkins door. Hopkins

(open) it. He (be) alone, and, to Tom's surprise, he (look) tired. He (pace) restlessly up and down the room jingling the change in his pockets and gesticulating as he (talk). The first thing he (say) after greeting Tom (be): "I definitely (decide) to go ahead with this mental health committee."

(S. Wilson)

Ex. 12. (B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous* and *the Past Perfect.*

After Pitty (go), Scarlett (go) wearily into the downstairs hall and (light) a lamp. The house (feel) steamingly hot, as though it held in its walls all the heat of the noontide. Some of her dullness (pass) now and her stomach (clamour) for food. She (remember) she (have) nothing to eat since the night before except a spoonful of hominy and picking up the lamp she (go) into the kitchen. The fire in the oven (die) but the room (be) hot. She (find) half a pone of bread and (eat) quickly while she (look) about for other food. There (be) some hominy left in the pot and she (eat) it with a big cooking spoon, not waiting to put it on a plate. It (need) salt badly but she (be) too hungry to hunt for it. After four spoonfuls of it, the heat of the room (be) too much and, taking the lamp in one hand and a piece of bread in the other, she (go) out into the hall. It (be) so much cooler here, even the night was drowned in soft warmth. She (sit) down on the steps in the circle of faint light thrown by the lamp and (continue) eating the bread.
When she (finish) it, a measure of strength (come) back to her.

(After M. Mitchell)

Ex. 13. (B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite* and *the Past Perfect.*

1. At half past four I (put) on the lights. The shop (look) shabbier in artificial light too, the shelves (be) dusty and the ceiling (be/not painted) since I (go) there. It (be) full of cracks. I (look) in the mirror to see how my hair (be). We were going somewhere that night, my friend Baba and me. My face in the mirror (look) round and smooth. I (suck) my cheecks in, to make them thinner. I (long) to be thin like Baba.
2. He (tell) me that he (win) cups and medals for swimming when he (be) a boy. He (live) most of his life in Dublin, with his mother, and (go) to work at twelve or thirteen. His father (leave) them when he (be) a small boy, and as a child he (comb) the beaches looking for scrap.

(E. O'Brien)

Ex. 14. (B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous* and *the Past Perfect.*

I (not/be) in Tahiti long before I (meet) Captain Nichols. He (come) in one morning when I (have) breakfast on the terrace of the hotel and (introduce) himself. He (hear) that I (be) interested in Charles Strickland, and (announce) that he (come) to have a talk about him. I (ask) the stranger if he (have) breakfast. "Yes," he (answer). When he (smile) he (show) broken and discoloured teeth. He (be) a very lean man, with grey hair cut short and a grey moustache. He (not/shave) for a couple of days.
"I knew Strickland well," he (say), as he (lean) back in his chair and (light) the cigar I (offer) him.
"Where you (meet) him?" I (ask).
"In Marseilles!"

"What you (do) there?"
He (smile) and (say): "Well, I guess I (be) on the beach."

(After S. Maugham)

Ex. 15. (**B, C**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Indefinite, the Future Indefinite, the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous, the Past Perfect* and *the Future-in-the-Past.*

It (be) Ashley's birthday and Melanie (give) him a surprise reception that night. Everyone (know) about the reception, except Ashley. Even his children (know). Everyone in the town who (be) nice (be invited). General Gordon and his family graciously (accept) the invitation. Alexander Stephens (say) he (be) present if his ever-uncertain health (permit). Scarlett never (see) Melanie so excited or so happy.
"You see, dear, Ashley (not/have) a birthday party since we (come) here. And he (work) so hard and he (be) so tired. When he (get) home at night he (be) surprised when everybody (come) in!"
Melanie's house (blaze) lights from every room. It (be packed) with guests. They (overflow) on verandas and many (sit) on the benches in the dim lantern-hung yard.

(After M. Mitchell)

(Ex. 4-15 are borrowed from A.Y. Lebedeva. "Exercises in English Tenses")

Ex. 16. (**B, C**) Use the required *Present* or *Past Tense* forms in the following texts:

I

When Tom (wake), the farmhouse (burn), it (start) burning when the shell (hit). None of the other soldiers who (be) in the farmhouse (be) to be seen. They (be) lucky to escape. In the confusion they (miss) Tom who (sleep) on the kitchen floor. As his leg (be) broken, it (take) him hours to crawl across the room to the window. He (pass) out again and again. But he (be) sure he (not/want) to die and finally he (get) to the window and (pull) himself up so that he (can) look over the sill. Somebody (see) his head above the window and (get) him. Tom (not/remember) any of that. He never (find) out who (save) him.

II

"But when you (meet) him?"
"Tonight. He (pick) me up in a bar in the Champs Elisees and (insist) on taking me to Maxim's. I (have) a wonderful time, the best I (have) since we (come) to work in Paris."
"I (think) you (go) out with Jean-Paul tonight?"
"Well, I did start out with him. But, honestly, Petra, he (get) to be really boring, so when I (see) Carlo giving me the high sign I (decide) to go with him instead."
"Carlo? It (not/sound) very French."
"It (not/be). He (be) Italian. And that (be) where I (go) – to stay in his Palazzo, no less... He (be) the kind of man I (look) for all my life... He just (sweep) me off my feet."
"Most of the men you (meet) seem to sweep you off your feet."

III

At the end of the week, when there (be) still no telephone call or letter from Sara, Petra (wait) until Monsieur and Madam Charron (go) out one evening and the children (be) safely in bed, then she (sneak) into the study, (pick) up the phone and (ask) the operator to give her the number of the Palazzo Berini in Venice.

"Hello. (be) that Carlo Berini?"
"Yes, I (be) Count Berini." The voice (be) authoritative.
"My name (be) Petra Thornton. We (not/meet), but I (be) a friend of Sara's."
There (be) a few seconds of silence before Carlo Berini (say), "I (not/know) who you (talk) about."
"But you do," Petra (protest). "You (take) Sara to Venice with you two weeks ago to stay at your Palazzo. You (meet) her in Paris. You must remember."
His voice (grow) annoyed. "Either you (get) the wrong number or this (be) some kind of joke. I (not/know) your friend and she certainly never (stay) in this house."

IV

He (sit) at a large ornate desk, but (look) up as she (come) in and then (get) slowly to his feet.
"Good morning. You (wish) to see me, I (believe)?"
"Yes, my name (be) Petra Thornton, and I..."
"Ah, yes, the young lady, who (phone) yesterday. About a friend of yours, (not/be) it?"
"Yes, it (be) about Sara."
"So?"
"So where (be) she?"
Carlo Berini (frown) and then (sit) down again.
"I (believe), I (tell) you at the time that I never (hear) of your friend. So why you (come) here?"
"Because I (not/believe) you."
He (lean) forward.
"You (accuse) me of lying?"
"You should know whether you (lie) or not. All I (know) is that Sara (say) she (go) to Venice with you and a few days later she (phone) to say that things (not/work) out and she (come) back to Paris. But she never (arrive). And that (be) a week ago. So I (come) here to find her, because this (be) the last place I (know) that she (stay)."

(after S. Wentworth)

Ex. 17. (**A, B, C**) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Куда вы ходили? – Я ходила в библиотеку. Я забыла там свою книгу и ходила за ней. 2. Куда он ушел? – Я думаю, он ушел в библиотеку. Он обычно ходит туда по пятницам. 3. "Вы давно живете в этом городе?" – "Двадцать шесть лет." – "Где вы раньше жили?" – "В С.-Петербурге." 4. Здравствуйте. Заходите, пожалуйста. Я ждал вас. 5. Что ты делаешь? – Я делаю домашнее задание по английскому языку. – Разве ты готовишь уроки по утрам? – Да, я всегда делаю английский язык после того, как позавтракаю. 6. Мы идем уже шесть часов и очень устали. 7. Вы нашли ключ, который потеряли вчера? – Да, нашла. – А где вы его нашли? – Он все время был в моем кармане. 8. Мы с ним знакомы уже больше года. 9. Мы с ним вместе учились в школе, и мы остались друзьями на всю жизнь. 10. "Ваши гости уже приехали." – "Я знаю." 11. Он окончил свою работу в саду и сидел на балконе, читая газету. Вечер был теплый, а солнце только что зашло. 12. Я здесь с утра жду вас. 13. Когда я напишу письмо, я сейчас же пойду и отправлю его, но я не знаю, когда она его получит. 14. Что у тебя с руками? – Я чистила картошку. 15. Я в этом городе уже пятнадцать лет. Наша семья переехала сюда, когда мне было 10 лет. 16. Они пишут вам? – Да, мы переписываемся уже шесть лет. 17. Я очень много думаю о вас в последнее

время. 18. Я их не видела с тех пор, как переехала в этот город. 19. Я пишу эту книгу полгода и очень устала. 20. Вот и вы! Мы только что говорили о вас! 21. О нем весь город говорит с тех самых пор, как он уехал. 22. Ты опять играл с моей пишущей машинкой!

Ex. 18. (**B, C**) Translate the following sentences into English concentrating on the use of tense-aspect forms.

1. Я все думала о количестве лет, которые мы проработали вместе, и как мало я, фактически, знаю о тебе. 2. Когда они подошли к тому месту, где он уронил кольцо в ручей, он остановился. 3. Тебе нравится готовить? – Я люблю это. Это одно из моих хобби уже много лет. 4. Папа всегда называл меня Кэйти. 5. Давай обсудим это дело здесь, в кафе. В офисе будет постоянно звонить телефон. 6. Они возвращаются. – Я полагаю, они остановятся в гостинице на этот раз. 7. Она заперлась и не сойдет вниз, пока они не уйдут. 8. Я увидел, что момент, которого он ждал, наступил. 9. Расскажи мне, что происходило в мое отсутствие. 10. Я знаю имена всех в деревне. Я живу здесь всю свою жизнь. 11. Я готовила обед, в то время как она прибиралась в комнате. 12. Не успели они войти в дом, как разразилась буря. 13. Она отвернулась, но не раньше, чем он увидел слёзы, которые блеснули в ее глазах. 14. Я решила не идти на выставку. Я пойду сегодня в библиотеку. Я уже три месяца не меняла книги. 15. Как давно ты так себя чувствуешь? 16. Я почти ни разу не поел как следует, с тех пор как я приехал сюда. 17. Он не придет. Я только что разговаривал с ним по телефону. 18. Филипп отнес свой чемодан в вагон и курил на перроне. 19. Они никогда не танцевали вместе прежде. 20. Дождь идет с самого утра, и я думаю, он не прекратится до вечера. 21. К концу недели я закончу этот перевод. 22. Кто открыл Австралию? 23. Едва он открыл окно, порыв ветра разбросал его бумаги по полу. 24. На будущий год в это время мы будем плыть назад в Америку. 25. Ты идешь слишком быстро для меня. 26. Небо побледнело и теперь начало темнеть; засветилась горстка звезд. 27. Его жена, которая только что уложила спать их малышку дочь, сидела в гостиной с книгой. 28. Все в порядке, малышка, не плачь. Тебе просто что-то снилось. 29. Поезд отправляется без четверти два. Если мы не отправимся на вокзал тотчас же, то мы опоздаем. 30. Мы прожили у Харрисонов два дня и вернулись в Лондон поездом. 31. Когда я встал, я подошел к окну. Хотя дождя уже не было, но везде были большие лужи. 32. Я никогда в жизни не чувствовал себя так хорошо, как сейчас. 33. Завтра я уезжаю в город на две недели. 34. Не успел я дойти до угла, как услышал чьи-то шаги сзади. 35. Я расскажу вам все, что узнаю. 36. Погода в тот день была мрачная. Холодный ветер, дувший с утра, прекратился, но дождь все еще моросил. 37. Едва я успел попрощаться с ними, как поезд тронулся. 38. Он открыл окно и курил, глядя на вечернюю реку. 39. Я велю ему принести ключ, когда он осмотрит дом. 40. Мы ехали около часа и потом остановились у небольшого кафе.

Ex. 19. (**C**) Translate the verbs in **bold** type into English.

A

Несчастный случай.

Это **была** очень уютная и чистая кухня. Солнце **сияло** сквозь чистые стекла, пол **блестел**, на плите **кипел** чайник, и толстый черный любимец миссис Браун сладко **спал** на подоконнике. Миссис Браун **сидела** в кресле и **читала**.
Вдруг сильный взрыв **потряс** маленький домик. Миссис Браун **взглянула** в окно. По улице **бежали** люди. Кто-то **крикнул**: "Это на фабрике! Котел **взорвался**!"

Миссис Браун **побледнела**, **закрыла** лицо руками и **опустилась** в кресло.
Ее муж **работал** в котельной.
"Я **была** ему плохой женой," – подумала она. – "Только вчера я **выбранила** его за то, что он **не вытер** ноги, когда **вошел** в кухню. А теперь я его никогда не увижу."
Хлопнула дверь, кто-то **вошел** в комнату.
"Не плачь, Мэри!" – **услышала** она голос мужа. – "Ничего особенного **не случилось**. Никто не ранен."
Миссис Браун подняла голову.
"О, Стивен!" – **сказала** она. – "Сколько раз я тебе **говорила**: вытирай ноги, когда **входишь** в дом."

B

Покупая книги.

В прошлом году я **поссорился** с женой. Она **говорила**, что я слишком много денег **трачу** на книги. Я **понял**, что она **права**, и **пообещал**, что больше этого делать не буду.
Однако, когда я **шел** на работу, я **увидел** очень интересную книгу в киоске.
"На этой неделе я еще ничего **не покупал**," – подумал я. – "Если я **напишу** на этой книге: "За участие в любительском спектакле", то жена ничего **не скажет**."
"Так ты **участвовал** в спектакле?" – удивилась жена. – "Почему я тебя **не видела**?"
"Я **держал** на плечах балкон для Ромео и Джульетты," – **ответил** я.
На следующей книге я **написал**: "С любовью и наилучшими пожеланиями, твой любящий дядя Джордж."
"Что это за дядя?" – **спросила** жена. – "Почему я с ним **не знакома?**"
"Бедный, милый дядя," – **ответил** я. – "Он **дарит** мне книги с тех пор, как я **научился** читать. Он уже 20 лет **живет** в Глазго и ни разу **не выезжал** оттуда из-за своего здоровья."
Потом разные писатели **начали дарить** мне свои книги из любви и уважения ко мне.
Однажды я **пришел** домой с книгой, которую **подарил** мне Золя. Жена **стояла** перед зеркалом. На ней **было** новое платье.
"Ты **купила** платье?" – спросил я.
"Нет," – **ответила** она. –"Мне **подарил** его твой друг."
"Какой друг?" – **закричал** я.
"Тот, который **подарил** тебе столько книг. Чарльз Диккенс."
"Теперь мне ясно, почему последнее время у нас **были** такие плохие **обеды**."

10. TESTS

I

1. Она много путешествует. Летом она ездила во Францию. Она уже вернулась в Москву.
2. Ты читал поэмы Байрона? – Да, мы читали их в прошлом году. – Тебе они нравятся?
3. Ты играешь на пианино? Послушай, Джон играет. Он всегда играет хорошо.
4. Когда мы были в Крыму, мы часами гуляли в горах.
5. Какую книгу ты сейчас читаешь? – Я не читаю книг, я люблю газеты и журналы.
6. Я не видел его в последнее время. – А я только что встретил его. Он шел в библиотеку.

7. Ты часто ходишь в кино? – Нет, я не был в кино с лета.
8. Я купила это платье 3 года назад. Оно было очень дешевое. Цены сейчас растут.
9. Тебе купить билеты в театр? – Нет, спасибо. Мама уже купила. Мы идем в театр завтра.
10. Ты будешь свободна сегодня вечером? – Нет, я встречаюсь со своей подругой в 7.

II

1. Ты сейчас делаешь эту работу? – Да, но я только что ее начал.
2 В последнее время он не заходил в наш магазин. Я знаю, что он покупает продукты в этом магазине. Он стал очень важным.
3. Ты ездил за город в эти выходные? – Нет, мы были очень заняты. Мы убирали дом.
4. Я еще не приготовила обед. – Тебе помочь? – Да, спасибо. Гости приходят в 7.
5. Где ты был вчера? Мы искали тебя весь вечер. – Я сидел дома.
6. Ты позвонишь мне? – Конечно, я ведь всегда звоню тебе по вечерам.
7. Ты знаешь этого человека? – Да, я встречала его до войны, но я не видела его с тех пор.
8. Я думаю, тебе понравится это платье. – О, я мечтала о нем весь год.
9. Я хочу пригласить Джима на обед. – Я уже пригласила его. Ты мне вчера сказала об этом.
10. Я часто встречаю этого человека. Вот и сейчас он идет по улице.

III

1. Вы когда-нибудь бывали в Париже? – Да, я был там в прошлом году. Я часто езжу во Францию.
2. Когда уехала Мэри? – Она уехала до того, как вы позвонили. Она ждала вас целый час.
3. Мы уже встречались. – Когда мы встречались? – Я не помню. По-моему, мы встречались 3 года назад.
4. Мы обедали, когда Джон пришел. Он не хотел обедать с нами. Он сказал, что уже пообедал. Он ел в 5, а мы всегда обедаем в 7.
5. Чем он занимается? – Он играет в теннис. Он играет очень хорошо. Сейчас он играет во Франции.
6. Вчера, когда я выходил из офиса, шел дождь. У меня не было зонта. Я не заметил, что начался дождь.
7. Он закончил работу до того, как мы пришли.
8. Эксперимент будет закончен к концу следующей недели.

IV

1. Он пишет книгу. – Он уже закончил работу? – Да, он закончил ее на прошлой неделе.
2. Что вы здесь делаете? – Я жду своего друга. Он работает в этом институте.
3. Дождь еще не прекратился, когда мы вышли из дома. Дождь шел целый день.
4. Он студент? – Да, он учится в нашем институте. Он работал на нашем заводе до того, как поступил в наш институт. Сейчас он не работает.
5. Вы часто ходите в театр? – Я люблю театр, но в прошлом году я не ходил в театр. Я болел. Вы видели эту новую пьесу?
6. Вы поедете в Москву на следующей неделе? – Я не знаю. Я жду очень важное письмо из Москвы.
7. Моя сестра еще не спала, когда я встал. – Вы встаете рано? Когда начинается ваш рабочий день?
8. Не приходите завтра в 2: я буду стирать. – Когда я могу прийти? – Мы обычно пьем чай в 5. Вы хотите зайти в 5?

V

1. В Англии часто идет дождь? – Да, когда мы приехали, шел дождь. – А мы приехали до того, как начались дожди. – А вы когда-нибудь бывали в Лондоне? – Да, я посетил Лондон в прошлом году.
2. Вы поедете в Крым? – Нет, сейчас я много работаю. Мы всегда ездим в Крым осенью. – А я никогда не был там. Мы поедем туда в следующем году.
3. Бабушка звонила вчера, не так ли? – Да, она говорила целый час. – Что она сказала? – Она спросила, придешь ли ты к ней завтра.
5. Ты был вчера на стадионе? – Да, там было много народу. – Ты любишь футбол?
6. Он ушел, когда я работал, и сказал, что придет в 6. Я уже выполнил всю работу, когда он пришел.
7. Мы уже ждали несколько часов, когда поезд наконец прибыл.
8. Завтра в это же время мы уже будем плыть на пароходе (sail).

VI

1 У вас есть собака? – Да, друзья подарили мне собаку на прошлый день рождения. – Какая это собака?
2. Я поужинал и начал читать книгу. Мой друг дал мне эту книгу неделю назад. – Вам нравится эта книга? Я ее еще не читал.
3. Где он работает? – Он сейчас не работает. Он студент. Он работал на заводе до того как поступил в институт.
5. Он обычно играет в теннис очень хорошо, но сегодня он играет плохо. А вы играете в теннис? – Я играл, когда был студентом.
7. Ты встретил ее вчера? – Я опоздал. Когда я пришел, поезд уже ушел.
8. Вы уже видели этот фильм? – Да, я видела его на прошлой неделе. – Вы пойдете со мной в кино завтра?
9. Когда я пришел домой, они смотрели телевизор. Они всегда смотрят телевизор вечером. А я не люблю смотреть телевизор.
10. Где вы были вчера? Что вы делали в пять часов? – Я работал.

11. TALKING ABOUT THE FUTURE

I.	**– I am doing,**	**– I do..,**	**– I am going to do..,**	**– I'll do..,**
II.	**– be to..,**	**– be about to..,**	**– be due to...**	

There are several ways of talking about the future:

11.1 PRESENT TENSES (I AM DOING/I DO) WITH A FUTURE MEANING

The Present Continuous (**I am doing**) is used when speaking about something that has been arranged to happen.

❑ *A.:* What **are** you **doing** tonight?
B.: **I'm going** to the football match.

- ❑ *A.:* My sister **is leaving** tomorrow.
  B.: Oh, is she? What time **is** she **leaving**?
- ❑ *A.:* **I'm seeing** him tomorrow (= we've arranged to meet).

It is also possible to use *'going to (do)'* in these sentences (though *the Present Continuous* is preferable):

- ❑ What are you **going to do** tonight?

The Present Indefinite (Simple) is used when talking about timetables, programmes, etc.

- ❑ What time **does** the lecture **begin**?
- ❑ The plane **takes off** at 4.30.
- ❑ Tomorrow **is** Christmas.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Write about your friend's plans for the coming summer vacation.

Example: (Ben/go/Siberia/train) – *Ben is going to Siberia by train.*

1. (Lucy/stay/in the South of France/with her aunt) _____
2. (Roy/take/his younger brother/Canada/his parents) _____
3. (Letty/spend/a fortnight/Rome) _____
4. (Peter and John/hike/the Swiss mountains) _____
5. (Miranda/go/round Greek islands/cruising boat) _____

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Your relatives are preparing to leave for the country for summer. Ask them about their arrangements.

Example: (when/leave) *When are you leaving?*

1. (travel/by train?) _____
2. (take/a lot of things?) _____
3. (your animals/go/with you?) _____
4. (let/your flat/for the season?) _____
5. (rent/a car?) _____

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) Put the verb into *the Present Continuous* or *the Present Simple.*

Examples: My daughter is leaving (leave) for Paris next Friday.
Does your train arrive (train/arrive) at 7.00 or 7.30?

1. They _____ (open) a new exhibition next month.
2. I see, you've packed all your things _____ (you/go away).
3. The shops here _____ (open) at 7.00 and _____ (close) at 5.30.
4. The performances at our theatre _____ (start) at 7.30.
5. What time _____ (the plane for Moscow/leave)?
6. Daddy, we _____ (go/for a swim). _____ (you/come) with us?
7. I hear, you _____ (launch) a new programme soon.

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

A.: Давай пойдем в театр завтра.
B:. Извини, мне бы очень хотелось, но я завтра работаю допоздна.
A.: Тогда как насчет среды?
B.: Боюсь, я не могу. Я встречаю родителей в аэропорту.
A.: Ну, а что ты делаешь в субботу вечером?
B.: Я играю в теннис в эту субботу.
A.: Понятно. А в воскресенье вечером ты свободна?
B.: В воскресенье у нас вечер встречи (reunion party) в школе.

11.2 "TO BE GOING TO..."

"going to (do)" is used:
1. when one says what one intends to do in the future.
- ❑ *A.:* **Are** you **going to watch** the ten o'clock news?
  B.: No, I'm too tired, I'**m going to have** an early night.
- ❑ I'**m going to see** this film (= I want to.., I intend to...).
- ❑ I **was going to** phone Eve, but I came home too late.

2. when the speaker knows something is about to happen. Usually there is something in the present situation that makes the speaker sure about what will happen:
- ❑ Look at that little boy at the puddle. He **is going to fall** into it!
- ❑ The sky is overcast with black clouds. It'**s going to rain.**

EXERCISES

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Say when you are going to do something.

Examples: Have you watered the flowers? (in the morning)
Not yet. I'm going to water them in the morning.
Have you washed your hair? (just)
Not yet. I'm just going to wash it.

1. Have you spoken to the manager? (after lunch) Not yet. I _____
2. Have you made the tea? (just) Not yet. I _____
3. Have you bought a car? (soon) Not yet. I _____
4. Have you done your homework? (just) Not yet. I _____

Ex. 6. (**B**) Write questions with *going to*.

Example: I've found a little puppy in the park. (what/with it?)
What are you going to do with it?

1. It's unexpectedly hot today. (what/you/wear?) _____
2. Vlad has given me his latest painting. (where/you/hang it?) _____
3. I've decided to sell this house. (what/you/buy/instead?) _____

Ex. 7. (**B**) Answer the questions using *was/were going to.*

Example: Did you phone him yesterday?
No, I was going to phone him but I changed my mind.

1. Did you ask Melany to help you?
   No, I _____ but I changed my mind.
2. Did they visit the Tate Gallery?
   No, they _____ but they changed their mind.
3. Did he attend the meeting?
   No, he _____ but he changed his mind.

Ex. 8. (**B**) You have to say what you think is going to happen in these situations.

Example: Your friend has decided against going to the concert. (regret) – She is going to regret it.

1. You are my best friend. We've been friends for many years. Now you are going away. (miss)
   I _____
2. The children went to the woods all by themselves. They don't know the area well. (get lost)
   _____
3. There is a hole in Tom's jacket pocket. He's put some small change in it. (lose)
   _____

Ex 9. (B, C). Translate into English.

1. Ты почистил машину? – Нет еще. Я почищу ее завтра.
2. Вы уже пообедали? – Нет еще. Мы как раз собираемся обедать.
3. Небо такое голубое. Будет чудесный день.
4. Я решила устроить званый вечер. – Кого ты собираешься пригласить?
5. Твои друзья ездили в отпуск в Испанию? – Нет, они собирались, но передумали.
6. Экзамен завтра. Ты совсем не занимался. Ты провалишься.

11.3 THE FUTURE INDEFINITE (SIMPLE)

The Future Indefinite (Simple) (**will do**) is used:

1. when one decides to do something at the time of speaking:
- ❑ Did you write the Christmas cards? – Oh, no, I had no time. I'**ll do** it now.
- ❑ There are no train tickets for Murmansk. So, I'**ll fly.**

2. when offering to do something:
- ❑ The shops are far from here. I'll drive you there.
- ❑ (The door bell is ringing). Pete: I'**ll answer** it.

3. when promising to do something:
- ❑ I **won't let** you down. I assure you.
- ❑ I promise. I'**ll send** you those photographs.

4. when speaking about a future fact, predicting something:
- ❑ In two years she'**ll be** his wife. What **will become** of you?
- ❑ Visit us next spring, you **won't recognize** the place.

Ex. 10. (**B**) Decide what to do or not to do in the following situations.

Example: Letters travel too long (phone them). *I think we'll phone them.*
It's too cold today. *I don't think we'll go skating.*

1. What a hot day. _____ (for a swim)
2. You're too tired now. _____ (homework/tomorrow)
3. You forgot to phone Ann. _____ (now)
4. It's late evening. _____ (coffee)
5. It's very hot in Africa in summer. _____ (there/on holidays)
6. You have a lot of work to do. _____ (to the cinema)
7. You like juice more than lemonade. _____ (have juice)
8. It's windy outside. _____ (for a walk)
9. You don't like travelling by train. _____ (by car)
10. You feel sleepy. _____ (TV tonight)

Ex. 11. (**B**) You don't want to babysit with your infant nephew instead of your mother.

Examples: Mother: Oh, I must clean the flat. You: It's all right. I'll clean the flat.
Mother: Oh, I must go to the cleaner's. *You:* No, it's all right. I _____
Mother: Oh, I must buy the food for next week. *You:* _____
Mother: Oh, I must wash the dog. *You:* _____

Ex. 12. (**B**) Agree and promise to do things.

Example: A.: Can you type this letter? B.: *Sure. I'll type it after lunch.*
A.: Do you promise to phone him? B.: *Yes, I promise. I'll phone him tonight.*

1. A.: Can you cook the dinner today? B.: Sure, _____ (in the afternoon)
2. A.: Do you promise to write to me? B.: Yes. _____ (as soon as I get there)
3. A.: Can you wash my sweater? B.: All right, _____ (tomorrow)
4. A.: Please, don't break anything. B.: Don't worry. I _____ (anything)
5. A.: Will you take the children to the Zoo? B.: Okay. _____ (on Saturday)
6. A.: Do _____? B.: Don't worry, I won't tell anyone.
7. A.: Will you come after me? B.: Yes, _____ (as soon as I can)
8. A.: Say that you won't be angry! B.: All right. I _____

Ex. 13. (**B, C**) Decide which form of the verb is correct (or more natural) in these sentences.

1. We will go/are going to a picnic tomorrow. Would you like to come too?
2. The train is starting/starts at 8.00 tonight.
3. I'm sure you will get/are getting the tickets.
4. I'm sorry. I can't come. I will meet/am meeting my sister at the station.
5. They will arrive/are arriving tomorrow morning.
6. Don't worry, I promise I won't hurt/am not hurting you.
7. If I can't make it at 5, I will phone/am phoning you.

Ex.14. (**B**) Answer the questions using the words in brackets.

Example: What do you think he'll do? (think)
I think he'll just forget about it.

1. When do you think she'll write? (probably/never) _____
2. Where do you think they'll stay? (expect/at her aunt's) _____
3. When do you think he'll phone? (I'm sure/tonight) _____
4. How do you think they'll let us know? (think/send a cable) _____
5. Do you think he'll come back? (I'm sure/very soon) _____
6. What do you think she'll give me? (expect/a kiss) _____

Ex. 15. (**B, C**) Translate into English using *will* or *going to.*

1. – Почему ты включаешь телевизор?
   – Я собираюсь посмотреть вечерние новости.
2. – Ой, я забыла деньги дома!
   – Ничего, не волнуйся. Я одолжу тебе.
3. – У меня ужасно болит голова.
   – Да? Подожди здесь. Я принесу тебе таблетки.
4. – Куда ты несешь ведро с водой?
   – Я собираюсь мыть машину.
5. – Я решила перекрасить кухню.
   – В какой цвет ты ее покрасишь?
6. – Смотри! Из того дома́ идет дым. Он горит!
   – Боже мой! Я немедленно вызову пожарных!
7. – Это дерево странно выглядит.
   – Да, оно выглядит, как будто вот-вот упадет.
8. – Боюсь, я не знаю, как пользоваться этим фотоаппаратом.
   – Это совсем легко. Я покажу тебе.
9. – Что бы вам хотелось выпить – сока́ или кока-колы?
   – Спасибо, я буду сок.
10. – Антон решил, что делать после окончания школы?
    – Да, все спланировано. Он отдохнет несколько недель, а потом начнет курс программирования.
11. – Что мы возьмем на обед?
    – Я не знаю. Я не могу решить.
    – Давай же. Поспеши, прими решение.
    – Ладно. Мы возьмем цыпленка.
12. – Нам нужен хлеб на ланч.
    – Да? Я пойду в магазин и куплю. Джейн, я иду за хлебом. Тебе нужно что-нибудь в магазине?
    – Да, мне нужно несколько конвертов.
    – Хорошо, я куплю тебе.
13. – Линда, ты можешь отвезти меня в аэропорт сегодня вечером?
    – Конечно, я отвезу тебя. С удовольствием.
    – Эрик, хочешь, я отвезу тебя в аэропорт?
    – Нет, спасибо, Джон. Линда отвезет меня.

11.4 "BE TO", "BE ABOUT TO", "BE DUE TO"

We use **"be to"** for:
– formal arrangements / duties:
❑ Summit meeting is to take place in Brussels in September.
– formal appointments / instructions:
❑ These letters **are to be posted** immediately.
– prohibitions:
❑ You**'re not to speak** to Granny in this arrogant manner.

"be about to" refers to the immediate future:
❑ Hurry up! The performance **is** just **about to start.**

We often use **"be due"** to refer to timetables:
❑ The plane **is due to land** at 2.15.

EXERCISE

Ex. 16. (**B, C**) Supply the correct forms of the verb phrases in brackets.

Example: The conference delegates *are to* meet again later today (to be to).
1. You _____ take these new tablets four times a day (to be to).
2. They _____ open their instructions until midnight (not to be to).
3. You'll have to hurry. The train _____ leave (to be (just) about to).
4. I can't talk now. I _____ go out (to be (just) about to).
5. There's not much longer to wait. Their plane _____ land in ten minutes (to be due to).
6. Don't be so impatient. She _____ arrive until teatime (not to be due to).

11.5 REVISION

Ex. 17. (**B**) Read the extract from a conversation, fill in the gaps saying whether the speaker is talking about *"a future fact", "an arrangement", "an intention"* or something that is *"about to happen"*.

"It's going to snow again this afternoon *(about to happen)*, so the footbal match will be cancelled (...). I was going to watch it on Tom's television (...), but now I'm going to stay at home (...). I'm playing football next weekend (...) for our local team, but we won't win (...). We never do!"

Ex. 18. (**B, C**) Rewrite these sentences. Keep the same meaning, but use *the Future Indefinite Tense* (**will do**) or *the Present Continuous Tense* (**am/is/are doing/going to.**)

Example: I've arranged to take Harry to the Russian Museum this morning.
I'm taking Harry to the Russian Museum this morning.
1. She intends to buy him a new record for his birthday. _____
2. May 1st (tomorrow). Rain. _____

3. I intended to see this film yesterday, but it turned out that it would be on TV in 2 days.

_____

4. We've arranged to meet at the Milk bar. He says he intends to ring me up at 7.

_____

Ex. 19. (**B, C**) Use either *the Future Indefinite Tense* (**will do**) or **going to** to make an offer or to express intentions in the following situations. Use the words in brackets to make your answers.

Example: Ben says, "Oh, it's cold here!" and offers to close the window.
You: *"I'll close the window."*

1. You can't decide where to go on your holidays next year. Suddenly you have an idea. (to go to Italy)
2. You see someone studying the plan of St.-Petersburg. What do you say? (to show the way)
3. A week ago you decided to visit the Hermitage. Tell your friend about your intention. (to visit the Hermitage)
4. You know that your friend needs your help. What do you say? (to help you)

Ex. 20. (**B, C**) Alice is on her way to St.-Petersburg. Before she left London she had arranged to meet Mike at the airport. She thinks, *"I'm meeting Mike at the airport."*

1. She also arranged to stay at the Astoria Hotel.
2. On the phone Mike said, "Let's go to the Maryinsky Theatre the first evening you are in St.-Petersburg." She agreed.
3. She also arranged to meet her Russian teacher the day after tomorrow.
4. She also arranged to leave St.-Petersburg in a week.

Ex. 21. (**B**)

a. Read these two sentences. Choose the one, where Mike has already planned to invite Daisy to St.-Petersburg.
1. I'm going to invite Daisy to St.-Petersburg.
2. I'll invite Daisy to St.-Petersburg.

b. A man is discussing his day's plans as they appear in his diary. Look at the extract from the diary, and then decide which sentence he should use.
1. I'll have my lecture on Maths at 10 and then I'll meet Harry. (10.00 – lecture)
2. I'm having my lecture on Maths at 10 and then meeting Harry at 12.30. (12.30 – Harry)

c. You are in a hurry. You don't want to be late. You think:
1. I'll take a taxi.
2. I'm taking a taxi.

d. Two friends discuss their plans for the evening. They've decided to go to the concert. They tell someone what they have decided.
1. We are going to the concert today.
2. I think we'll go to the concert today.

Ex. 22. (**B**) Translate into Russian the sentences denoting "future actions":

1. He will take an exam next Wednesday.
2. The train for Prague leaves tomorrow.
3. I shall have finished my essay by this time next month.
4. This time tomorrow Jane will be on a train.
5. Professor Peckinpah is arriving in Moscow one of these days.
6. When you arrive in London, Alfred Hitchcock will meet you at the railway station.
7. Sally is going to re-sit for her Maths exam next week.
8. When will you stop being silly?

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

1. GENERAL RULES

The rule states: if the verb in the principal clause is in one of the past tenses, a past tense (or future-in-the-past) must be used in the subordinate clause. The action expressed in the subordinate clause can be simultaneous with the action expressed in the principal clause, prior or posterior to that of the principal clause. Study how the Rule of the Sequence of Tenses is observed in such clauses.

	Simultaneous Action	***Prior Action***	***Future Action***
I **knew** (that) – He **said**	– he **lived** in Kiev он *живет* в Киеве – they **were waiting** for us они *ждут* нас – he **had been living** in Kiev since 1946 он *живет* в Киеве с 1946 года – he **had known** her for two years он *знает* ее 2 года	– he **had already left** Moscow он *уже уехал* из Москвы – it **had been raining** as it was wet outside *шел дождь,* так как на улице мокро – she **had been ill** for two weeks она *болела* две недели	– they **would arrive** on Sunday они *приедут* в воскресенье – they **would be working** at 6 в 6 они *будут работать* – he **would have translated** the article by Monday он *уже переведет* эту статью к понедельнику

So a useful general rule is: we move the reported clauses "**one tense back**"
'*present* becomes *past*, *past* becomes *past perfect*, *will* becomes *would*'

Study how the tenses are changed according to the rule of the Sequence of Tenses.

Present Indefinite **I do...**	⇨	Past Indefinite **I did...**
Present Continuous He **is doing...**	⇨	Past Continuous He **was doing...**
Present Perfect **I've done...**	⇨	Past Perfect **I had done...**
Past Indefinite **I did...**	⇨	Past Perfect (or stays the same) **I did / had done...**
Past Continuous **I was doing...**	⇨	Past Perfect Continuous **I had been doing...**
Past Perfect **I had done...**	⇨	does not change

will (future)	⇨	**would**
can	⇨	**could**
may	⇨	**might**
must	⇨	**must or had to**
could have done **might have done** **should have done** **needn't have done**	⇨	do not change

TIME AND PLACE CHANGES:

here	⇨	there
this	⇨	that
these	⇨	those
now	⇨	then / at that moment
today	⇨	that day
yesterday	⇨	the day before the previous day
a year ago	⇨	a year before
last night	⇨	the previous night
tonight	⇨	that night

Adverb changes depend on the context. It is not always necessary to make these changes, especially in spoken Indirect Speech.

❑ "I'**ll see** you **tonight**", he said. – He said he **would see** me **tonight.**

NOTES:

1. The main sphere where the Sequence of Tenses is applied is the object clause:

❑ Harris **said** he **knew** what kind of place I **meant.**

2. If there are several subordinate clauses in a sentence the rule is observed in all of them.

❑ I **knew** that he **had told** her that he **received** the letters every week.
– Я *знал,* что он *сказал* ей, что *получает* эти письма каждую неделю.

❑ I **thought** he **would tell** her that he **intended** to go to the Crimea.
– Я *думал,* что он *скажет* ей, что он *намеревается* поехать в Крым.

❑ He **said** that Jack **had told** her that he **was writing** a play.
– Он *сказал,* что Джек *говорил* ей, что он *пишет* пьесу.

3. The Sequence of Tenses is not observed if the object clause expresses a general truth or something is represented as habitual, customary or characteristic.

❑ The teacher **told** the children that water **boils** at 100°C.

❑ Galileo **proved** that the Earth **moves** round the Sun.

❑ He **asked** what time the train usually **starts.**

❑ We **knew** that he **plays** tennis well.

❑ The speaker **said** that the peoples **want** peace.

4. In ***when/if*** clauses we use *Past Indefinite/Past Continuous/Past Perfect* depending on the situation.

❑ I **thought** that we **would discuss** the problem when the manager **returned** from Moscow.

- ❑ He **said** he **would be reading** while she **was writing** the letter.
- ❑ He **said** that he **would go** home after he **had translated** the article.

5. In **attributive clauses**, **adverbial** clauses of **cause** and **comparison** we also use *Present* or *Future*.

- ❑ My brother **told** me about the book you **are writing**.
- ❑ He **was not able** to translate the article because he **doesn't know** English well enough.
- ❑ He **refused** to go to the theatre because he **will have** an exam in a few days.
- ❑ It **was** not so cold yesterday as it **is** now.
- ❑ He **was** once stronger than he **is** now.

6. When we say how long something has been happening the sentence can have double meaning. It depends on the context or situation.

- ❑ **I knew** that she **had been ill for two months.**
  1. Я знал, что она *болеет уже два месяца*.
  2. Я знал, что она *болела два месяца*.

But: ❑ **I knew** that she **had been ill.** – Я *знал*, что она *болела.*

❑ He **said** that it **had been raining.** – Он *сказал,* что *шел дождь*.

7. Past Indefinite can stay the same if we use:

in 1945 2 years ago yesterday last week when he came	⇨	❑ He **said** that he **left** Moscow *5 years ago*. ❑ He **knew** that Peter **was** at home *yesterday*. ❑ She **said** she **was working** when I **rang** her up.

But: ❑ He **said** that he **had left** Moscow **the day before.**
two years before.
the previous night.

8. The Past Indefinite after ***"since"*** generally remains unchanged.

- ❑ She **said**, "**I have been writing** since I **came**."
  – She **said** she **had been writing** since she **came.**

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**B, C**) Say whether the action of the object clause precedes, follows or is simultaneous with the action of the principal clause in the following sentences:

1. He asked me what work I was doing and whether I intended to go to a university. 2. She claimed that she had met Monty on her way home. Monty had told her that I would probably come to his place later. 3. Then I thought about Mother. She would certainly ask me where I had been all day. 4. She said she would be staying in town next day to do some shopping. 5. I will say that we have agreed to provide for a child. 6. I don't think that I shall ever work for your father. 7. Out of the corner of my eye I saw the youths had stopped talking and were watching us. 8. I hope you know what you're doing. 9. In the hotel the waiter told me that an American had been staying there for three months. 10. It was also rumoured that Dan had got married.

Ex. 2. (**B, C**) Explain how the rules of the Sequence of Tenses work in these clauses. Translate the sentences.

1. She called my mother to say that they had just got a telegram from Boston announcing that Henry's brother had been married in Germany. 2. I knew she was itching to tell me what had happened. 3. He knew that his mother would think he was seriously ill and would probably speak to the teacher. 4. He wanted to return to the house to see how Billy was doing and tell him that he would be going out to California in two or three days. 5. Rudy decided that he would have to tell Bogart that it was impossible for him to appear before the board the next day, but that he would offer to do so any other day.

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) Give your reasons as to why the rules of the Sequence of Tenses are not observed in the following sentences.

1. He says he is free tomorrow. 2. He spoke with the satisfaction of a competent workman who knows his job from A to Z. 3. He sought pleasure in the simple and natural things that life offers to everyone. 4. Monty told me that he had no permit for the gun, and that in England it is illegal to own a gun without a permit. 5. I knew I should go; but we sat there because it is difficult to go without any particular reason for leaving. 6. Billy folded his arms and leaned back. "I told you I don't like milk."

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Make the action of the following object clauses simultaneous with those of the principal clauses.

1. I thought you (to have) better sense. 2. She could not imagine what he (to do) there. 3. I forgot what he (to look) like. 4. I did not know whether the doctor (to mean) what he (to say) or whether he (to have) a joke at my expense. 5. What surprised me was that Pat (to be) so much at home here. 6. He asked me what work I (to do) and whether I (to intend) to go to a university. 7. I was surprised you (to know) my name. 8. He told his father that now he (to make) ten dollars a week less. 9. The last two weeks she had been saying to everyone who phoned her that she (to be) unwell and (not to leave) home. 10. When I knew him better he admitted that he (to feel) lonely in London. 11. She wanted Wilfred to forbid my walking in the park alone. She said it (to be) dangerous.

Ex. 5. (**B, C**) Make the actions in the following object clauses precede those of the principal clauses.

1. At ten o'clock he telephoned again, saying that he (to change) his mind. 2. I knew that for the past twenty-five years he (to buy) the same paper each morning. 3. Indeed it was whispered that the headmaster (to receive) a telegram from the boy's father. 4. She seemed to have forgotten what (to happen) a few minutes before. 5. But he was uneasy. His wife would easily find out that he (to go) to Saigon. 6. It was not known where he (to spend) his early childhood. 7. The question was why he (to do) it at all. 8. Then he admitted that he (to live) since the summer in his father's house. 9. What she could not understand was why he (to tell) them such a pack of lies. 10 She wrote that they (to let) their house for a year. 11. Her mother had once confided to her that she (to want) to be an actress. 12. It was probably true that he (to be) quite fond of his late brother. 13. One day she told me why she never (to get married). 14. I wondered what she (to do) there so late at night.

Ex. 6. (**B, C**) Use the required tense-aspect forms in the following sentences, observing the rules of the Sequence of Tenses, where necessary.

1. When I went into the office next morning I already (to formulate) my plan. 2. Well, I don't think I ever (to see) you before. 3. She ended by saying that she (to think) she (to make) a mistake. 4. She knew what (to go) on in their minds. 5. So I went into the living room, where my aunt already (to wait) for me. 6. She telephoned her husband to the office to say that her brother (to return) from abroad. 7. An old friend rang up to ask how Elizabeth (to feel), and whether she (can) go with his wife to the concert on Sunday morning. 8. Most of the trees already (to put) out their leaves and there were buds everywhere. 9. He remembered that he (not to see) Lily for three weeks. 10. She hadn't yet figured out what she (to be) going to do and she (to hope) to be able to wait a little. 11. It was possible that Jack (to hang) around. 12. Everybody thought they (to live) in happiness for nearly thirty years. 13. She didn't know why she (to invent) suddenly the story.

Ex. 7. (**A, B, C**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Он мне говорил, что интересуется историей. 2. Он знал, о чем она думает. 3. Он сказал, что вернется очень скоро. 4. Я знал, что он живет в Лондоне. 5. Я знал, что она жила в Сан-Франциско. 6. Она мне не сказала, что говорила с ними. 7. Я думал, что он получает от нее письма. 8. Я был рад, что он получил от нее письмо. 9. Я думал, что они пригласят нас. 10. Я был уверен, что он работает на этом заводе. 11. Я был уверен, что он работает, и поэтому не вошел в комнату. 12. Он сказал мне, что видел их накануне. 13. Я был уверен, что он сидит в саду. 14. Она говорила,что книга ей нравится. 15. Я был уверен, что он живет здесь уже много лет. 16. Я вчера слышал, что они в Эдинбурге. 17. Мы слышали, что они были в Ливерпуле. 18. Я слышал, что они работают уже несколько месяцев. 19. Мы не знали, что он болен. 20. Мы не знали, что он так давно болен. 21. Он не знал, что мы знаем друг друга с детства. 22. Мне сказали, что они вчера вернулись в Москву.

Ex. 8. (**B, C**) Translate the following into English, observing the rules of the Sequence of Tenses.

1. Я был уверен, что он жалеет, что поссорился с ней. 2. Я подумал, что он устал, и спросил его, что он делал все это время. 3. У меня было впечатление, что он находится там уже некоторое время. 4. Я кивнул и сказал "да", чувствуя, что это именно то, что ей хочется. 5. Она говорила, что не может понять, почему они переменили решение. 6. У меня было подозрение, что она забыла упомянуть, что я жду его. 7. Я не имею понятия, знает ли она, что Фил будет здесь. 8. Кстати, Тед знает, что моя сестра приезжает завтра? 9. Он еще не знал, что будет делать в Нью-Йорке. 10. Он сказал, что они обсудят этот вопрос, как только директор вернется из Москвы. 11. Я думал, что вы позвоните мне, когда получите телеграмму. 12. Я сказал, что прочту эту книгу только после того, как сдам экзамены. 13. Он сказал, что не пойдет домой, пока не закончит эту работу. 14. Я боялся, что он будет сердиться, если я не приду вовремя. 15. Он пообещал мне, что поговорит с профессором, если увидит его в университете.

2. REVISION

Ex. 1. (**B, C**) Use the required tense-aspect forms in the following sentences.

1. She scarcely realized what (to happen). 2. Oh, Jane! I didn't think you (to be) so unkind. 3. Mary (to return) to the room. Al (to sit) beside the gas fire and (to take off) his shoes. 4. Her eyes (to be) puffed, and she obviously (to cry) that afternoon. 5. She realized that he (to try) to tell her how lonely he (to be). 6. His cheek (to be) cut. When she (to see) it she (to say), "Oh, you (to fight) again." 7. I thought I (to sleep) well, being tired. 8. She (to make) me promise to say nothing about it till she (to have) a chance of breaking the news to her father gradually. 9. She asked if Mr Clennam (to tell) her where he (to live). 10. As we (to drive), her eyes (to stare) rigidly out of the car window. 11. Sir Wilfred knew, from the frequency with which she used her handkerchief, that tears (to run) down her cheeks. 12. Delany (to sit) up in bed and (to eat) his dinner when Jack (to come) into the room. His complexion (to be) ruddy. Obviously he (to be) shaved. He (to have) a glass of red wine with his meal. He (to wave) his fork as he (to see) Jack. 13. He (to remain) in his seat, as though studying his programme, till the three (to pass) out into the foyer. 14. Darkness (to fall) when he finally (to return) to the hotel. He (to say) nothing to Pat except that he (to turn) down the job. He (cannot) give her any explanation until he completely (to understand) the meaning of what (to happen). 15. I (to sit) there for about ten minutes, pretending to read, when someone (to sit) down at my table. 16. She (to look) up at him from where she (to sit). Her make up things (to lie) in front of her. She (to do) her face. 17. While his wife (to read) the letter, he (to cross) to the window. 18. As Hugh and I (to come) down the steps we nearly (to run) into my father.

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

I

1. Я думал, что ты занят. 2. Мы сказали, что хотели пойти в оперу. 3. Мы надеялись,что вы умеете плавать. 4. Она заявила (announce), что хочет идти с нами. 5. Том спросил, сколько раз в неделю мы занимаемся английским. 6. Врач сказал, что я должен остаться дома. 7. Мне было жаль, что ему пришлось остаться дома. 8. Она сказала, что любит исторические романы. 9. Я не знал, что он живет на этой улице. 10. Петр сказал, что музей сегодня закрыт. 11. Я думал, что моя сестра хорошо их знает. 12. Он решил, что его товарищи все еще играют в шахматы. 13. Она сказала, что они обычно встают в 8 часов. 14. Я не знала, что вы тоже любите музыку.

II

1. Ты знал, что он уехал за город? 2. Она мне не сказала, что говорила с вами. 3. Мать сказала, что они уже пообедали. 4. Генри спросил меня, где я достал эту книгу. 5. Он позвонил на вокзал и узнал, что поезд уже ушел. 6. Сказала ли вам Ольга, что она приняла ваше предложение? 7. Она отрицала, что говорила с Ниной. 8. Неужели он не знал, что дети ушли в лес? 9. Она думала, что он уже закончил институт. 10. Том сказал, что видел этот фильм.

III

1. Она говорила, что примет участие в работе. 2. Мать надеялась, что сын вернется через неделю. 3. Мы сказали, что вернемся через час. 4. Он полагал, что они будут

работать вместе. 5. Мы надеялись, что вечером сможем пойти в кино. 6. Я не знал, что твои друзья поедут отдыхать без тебя. 7. Отец сказал нам, что мы будем делать в субботу. 8. Они сказали, что лекция начнется в 5 часов. 9. Мы им сказали, что не будем ждать их. 10. Я думал, что у каждого из нас будет месяц отпуска летом.

Ex. 3. (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Она сказала, что была очень занята и давно не была в театре. 2. Я был уверен, что он сказал вам, что получил от нее письмо. 3. Я был удивлен, что вы не сказали им, что собираетесь ехать в Дувр. 4. Я думал, что вы прочтете в газете, что делегация уже прибыла в Москву. 5. Он обещал, что скажет вам, что я уже вернулся и хочу видеть вас. 6. Она боялась, что вы скажете, что не можете помочь ей. 7. Я знал, что он чувствует, что я недоволен результатами его опытов. 8. Я был уверен, что он уже слышал, что мы вернулись с юга. 9. Он сказал, что пошлет телеграмму, если не получит известий от брата. 10. Роберт сказал, что его жена все еще в больнице и он собирается навестить ее вечером. 11. Наш гид сказал, что автобус только что пришел и отправится в Глазго через час. 12. Ваш товарищ сказал мне, в чем дело, и я думаю, что смогу помочь вам. 13. Она сказала, что очень занята и еще не была в театре после каникул. 14. Учительница сказала, что мы должны повторить все правила, если хотим сдать экзамены хорошо. 15. Мой друг обещал достать несколько книг по этому вопросу, как только я начну работать над статьей. 16. Она думала, что завтра будет хорошая погода. 17. Мы слышали, что вы свободны, и решили, что вы сможете помочь нам.

3. TESTS

I

1. Я заметил, что она смотрит на меня.
2. Я знал, что она не вернется.
3. На платформе было мало людей, все уже заняли свои места в вагоне.
4. Она знала, что она права и была права с самого начала.
5. Я надеялся, что кто-то нашел мои ключи и передаст их мне.
6. Было ясно, что случилось что-то ужасное.
7. Он обещал, что все будет сделано.
8. Она скажет, что опоздала на поезд.

II

1. Я знаю, что вам нечего бояться.
2. Я знал, что он пожалеет об этом.
3. Я дам вам ответ, когда я поговорю с отцом.
4. Я хотел знать, как много уже сделано.
5. Она поинтересовалась, куда они собираются ехать.
6. Мама спросила, что мы делали все это время.
7. Все заметили, что он плохо играл во втором сете.
8. В комнате было темно, кто-то выключил свет.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH

1. INDIRECT STATEMENTS

Study the following pairs of sentences in Direct and Indirect Speech. Notice carefully the changes in personal and possessive pronouns. Indirect Speech is formed according to the Rule of the Sequence of Tenses. The verbs most commonly used to introduce the reported speech are: ***to tell, to say, to add, to notice, to remark, to explain, to inform, to remind,*** etc.

NOTE:

to say **smth** (to **smb**) to tell **smb** smth

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
Jimmy said, "My brother **is learning** to drive." *(The Present Continuous Tense)*	Jimmy said that his brother **was learning** to drive. *(The Past Continuous Tense)*
Nick said, "Sometimes I **go** home by tram." *(The Present Indefinite Tense)*	Nick said that sometimes he **went** home by tram. *(The Past Indefinite Tense)*
The teacher told John, "You **didn't write** exercise two." Frank said, "Ron **fell down**, but he **didn't hurt** himself." *(The Past Indefinite Tense)*	The teacher told John that he **hadn't written** exercise two. Frank said that Ron **had fallen** down, but he **hadn't hurt** himself. *(The Past Perfect Tense)*
Bob said, "My uncle **has just arrived** from Paris." *(The Present Perfect Tense)*	Bob said that his uncle **had just arrived** from Paris. *(The Past Perfect Tense)*

If the reporting verb is <u>in the present</u>, the tenses that follow are usually <u>the same</u> as those used in the original statement.

"I'**ve eaten.**"	⇨	He says he **has eaten.**
"I **enjoyed** it."	⇨	He says he **enjoyed** it.

The reporting verb is often in the present when:

- ❑ we are <u>passing on messages</u>: "What does Mother say?" – She **says** you **must** come in now.
- ❑ reading aloud, <u>reporting</u>: The instructions **say** that you **connect** this plug to the set.
- ❑ reporting what <u>someone often says</u>: She**'s** always **telling** me how rich she **is.**

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A**) Change the following sentences into Indirect Speech.

1. Jack told his father, "I hope to pass the examination." 2. Henry said to me, "The teacher is listening to us." 3. Bob said to Tom, "I made no mistakes in the last dictation." 4. I told the policeman, "I saw the thief in the garden." 5. He said, "I haven't read many English books." 6. Jack's father said to him, "You haven't cleaned your shoes." 7. Mary said, "I don't want to wear my old dress." 8. My mother said to me, "I feel very tired, and I have a headache." 9. My friend told me, "We have plenty of time to do our work." 10. I said to my sister, "I haven't seen my uncle for a long time."

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Change the following sentences into Direct Speech.

1. My sister said that she hadn't got a watch. 2. The teacher told his students that he was pleased with their work. 3. I told him that I hadn't seen his brother for a long time. 4. I told my mother that Henry was studying medicine at the University. 5. She told the grocer that she didn't want any sugar. 6. We told the teacher that we didn't understand his question. 7. I told the taxi-driver that he was driving too fast. 8. She said that her children were playing in the garden.

Ex. 3. Choose the correct word from those in brackets.

1. My grandmother always _____ me about her childhood. (says/tells)
2. "Don't do that!" she _____ them. (said/told)
3. Did she _____ you where she had put my books? (say/tell)
4. When I was introduced to the actor he _____ a few words to me. (said/told)
5. That little boy is very bad. He _____ a lot of lies. (says/tells)
6. She _____ to me she didn't know what to do. (said/told)
7. He often _____ things like that. (says/tells)

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Put in the appropriate forms of *"ask"*, *"say"* and *"tell"*.

Who Has the Last Say?

Some people always ... that they don't build cars as they used to. What nonsense! I walked round the beautiful new Ferrari again, admiring the lines, when my thoughts were rudely interrupted. "Will you be long?" a voice ... sharply. "I haven't made up my mind yet," I ... looking up at a sour-faced traffic warden. "Well, you can't stop here," he ... me. "Who ... so?" I ... him cheekily. "I ... so," he ... to me. "It ... here," he added, "in case you can't read, "No waiting." "You read very well. Go to the top of the class," I ... him, "but I'll make my own decisions." "Oh, will you?" the traffic warden ... "Then so will I and I've decided to give you a ticket," he ... to me with relish as he began filling out the form. "Go ahead," I ... him. "This car doesn't belong to me anyway. I wish it did."

(From Alexander L.G. "Longman English Grammar for intermediate students")

2. INDIRECT COMMAND AND REQUEST

An order or request in Indirect Speech is expressed by the Infinitive.
The verbs most commonly used to introduce indirect orders are: ***to tell, to order, to command***. Requests are usually introduced by the verb ***to ask***. More emotional forms are: ***to beg, to implore*** *(умолять)*, ***to urge*** *(настаивать, уговаривать)*.

STUDY THE FOLLOWING CHART

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
The mother said to the lazy son, **"Wake up!"**	The mother ***told*** the lazy son **to wake up**.
Father said to me, "**Remember to post** these letters."	Father *reminded* me **to post** those letters.
I said to Nick, "**Shut** the door, please."	I *asked* Nick **to shut** the door.
Mother said to the children, "Don't ever **enter** this room."	Mother *warned* the children **not to enter** the room.

EXERCISE

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Change the following sentences into Indirect Speech. Decide whether to use *"told"* or *"asked"*, or whether either of these two verbs is suitable.

1. Mary said to her brother, "Take the letter to the Post Office, please." 2. The teacher said to Tom, "Collect the exercise-books and put them on my table." 3. The old man said to the little girl, "Don't run across the street." 4. The teacher said to the pupils, "Learn the poem by heart." 5. I said to my friend, "Meet me outside the cinema at six o'clock." 6. Mary's mother said to her, "Don't go out without your coat." 7. The teacher said to the students, "Open your books at page 60." 8. The doctor said to the sick man, "Don't go back to work for a fortnight." 9. Jack said to the policeman, "Tell me the time, please."

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences from Russian to English.

1. Я попросил Джека дать мне его словарь. 2. Кондуктор сказал пассажирам не выскакивать (get off) из автобуса на ходу. (while/go) 3. Учитель попросил студента стереть с доски. 4. Мама попросила меня закрыть окно. 5. Он напомнил мне отправить письмо. 6. Отец запретил детям входить в его кабинет. 7. Инспектор предупредил (warn) нас, что здесь стоянка запрещена. (to park) 8. Гид посоветовал нам заглянуть и в этот небольшой музей.

3. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

3.1. INDIRECT GENERAL QUESTIONS

1. The inversion in the direct question changes to statement word order.
2. If necessary, the tense is changed at the same time.
3. We use ***if/whether*** *(ли)* after ***ask, want to know, wonder, not know, didn't say/ tell me***.

NOTE:

to ask **smb** *to ask* **a question**

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
Ann's mother asked her, "**Are** you **tired**?"	Ann's mother asked her **if** she **was tired.**
He asked his friend, "**Do** you **like** the wine?"	He asked his friend **if** he **liked** the wine.
I asked Frank, "**Did** you **buy** a new car?"	I asked Frank **if** he **had bought** a new car.
Ann's father asked her, "**Have** you **finished** the work?"	Ann's father asked her **whether** she **had finished** the work.
I asked my sister, "**Will** you **go** to Italy in summer?"	I asked my sister **whether** she **would go** to Italy in summer.

EXERCISE

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Change the following sentences into Indirect Speech.

1. The teacher asked Tom, "Do you come to school by bus or on foot?" 2. A man stopped me in the street and asked, "Have you got a match?" 3. The teacher asked us, "Do you understand the question?" 4. Henry's father asked his son, "Do you want to be an engineer or a doctor?" 5. I asked Peter, "Are you going to play football on Friday?" 6. He asked his secretary, "Has the postman been yet?"

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences.

1. Гид спросил туристов, не устали ли они. 2. Я спросила своих гостей, хорошо ли они спали. 3. Он поинтересовался, часто ли мы ходим в театр. 4. Он хотел узнать, долго ли работает у нас мистер Долби. 5. Она спросила меня, будет ли на вечеринке Элис. 6. Она спросила меня, видел ли я Джона в последнее время. 7. Хозяин отеля поинтересовался, понравился ли мне мой номер. 8. Она спросила, работаем ли мы сейчас.

3.2. INDIRECT SPECIAL QUESTIONS

An indirect special question is introduced by the same adverb or pronoun that introduces the direct question.

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
Peter asked, "Who **has taken** my book?"	Peter asked who **had taken** his book.
I asked the gardener, "What **are** you **planting** here this year?"	I asked the gardener what he **was planting** there that year.
Nina's sister asked her, "Who **did** you **meet** at the theatre?"	Nina's sister asked her who she **had met** at the theatre.
I asked my mother, "What **did** the teacher **say**?"	I asked my mother what the teacher **had said**.
He asked Roger, "When **will** he **come** back?"	He asked Roger when he **would come** back.
Ted asked Ron, "Where **do** your parents **live**?"	Ted asked Ron where his parents **lived**.
The professor asked his student, "Why **haven't** you **done** the home assignment?"	The professor asked his student why he **hadn't done** his home assignment.

A direct subject-question has the same word order as the statement:

❑ *John* **paid** the waiter. ⇨ ❑ *Who* **paid** the waiter?

We keep the same word order when we report a subject-question, though if it is necessary, we change the tense.

❑ The policeman asked, "Who **left** this car here?"
❑ The policeman asked who **(had) left** that car there.

❑ The teacher asked, "What **made** you change your mind?"
❑ The teacher asked what **had made** me change my mind.

EXERCISES

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Change the following sentences into Indirect Speech.

1. Mother asked Jane, "What are you doing here?" 2. Margaret asked Richard, "Where are you going for your holidays?" 3. Ann asked Mary, "What do you usually have for breakfast?" 4. The inspector asked, "Who caused the accident?" 5. The teacher asked Bob, "When did you learn to swim?" 6. Mary's mother asked her, "Where have you put

your shoes?" 7. The teacher asked, "Which number can be divided by three?" 8. Peter asked me, "When are you going to have dinner?" 9. The policeman asked me, "Where did you lose your wallet?" 10. The teacher came into the classroom and asked the pupils, "What are you doing?" 11. I asked Bob, "Why didn't you answer my letter?" 12. There was a crowd in the street. I asked a man in the crowd, "What is the matter?" 13. Father asked, "When will lunch be ready?" 14. The little boy asked his father, "Why does the policeman wear a uniform?" 15. I asked him, "Who are you looking at?" 16. The nurse asked, "Who is the next, please?" 17. The man asked his friend, "When did you buy your car?"

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Они спросили меня, когда начинается мой рабочий день. 2. Он спросил, какую музыку любят мои друзья. 3. Мы спросили его, кто из его друзей знает два иностранных языка. 4. Журналисты спросили писателя, над какой книгой он работает. 5. Она спросила меня, где я был вчера. 6. Они спросили моего друга, как он провел летние каникулы. 7. Я спросила у нее, где ей сшили пальто. 8. Я спросила у него, какие еще французские книги он прочитал за последнее время. 9. Друзья спросили его, куда он ездил в прошлое воскресенье. 10. Родители спросили нас, что мы собираемся делать летом. 11. Жена спросила, почему он не купил хлеб. 12. Мы спросили преподавателя, как мы сдали экзамен. 13. Она спросила его, когда он видел Лену в последний раз. 14. Они спросили меня, когда я позвоню своим родителям. 15. Я спросил его, когда он собирается закончить эту работу.

4. REVISION

Ex. 1. Put the following into Indirect Speech.

I. (**A**)
1. I asked my friend, "How do you feel after your holiday?" 2. "Ernie's an educated man," remarks Florrie. 3. "John never seems low or depressed," says Jane. 4. Jack's father asked him, "Who are you writing a letter to?" 5. "Jack is on the terrace. He is playing chess with his brother," says Nelly. 6. I saw a cloud of smoke and asked, "What is burning?" 7. "I can't understand what he is talking about," replies Bessie. 8. I asked her, "Who gave you that watch?" 9. "I'll tell you when I'll be back," Nora says to Jack. 10. Mr Nyman asked his wife, "How much do you spend on food every week?" 11. "You have known me long," Barbara says to Martha. 12. "You're the best assistant I've ever had, Sheppey," he says. 13. Henry asked Tom, "Who did you visit in the hospital?" 14. "He was born in Moscow," she says. 15. "We didn't have dinner there," the boy says. 16. "I was so thrilled and excited by the opera," Stella says to Maurice. 17. "When I came Jane was playing the piano," says Kitty. 18. "When the doorbell rang I was writing a letter to John," says George.

II. (**B**)
1. "He always has dinner there," she said. 2. "He has a nice voice," she said. 3. "I'm quite prepared to stay up until Mrs Maurice comes in," said Stella. 4. "I'm sorry to disturb you," Tom said to Eliza. 5. "I'm her guest at the moment," he said. 6. "You are the very person we

want, Thornton," said Pearl. 7. "John always comes home to luncheon," said Martha. 8. "I don't think anyone can accuse me of not being frank," said Martha. 9. "I'm learning French," said Florrie. 10. "The taxi is waiting," Bently said to Constance. 11. "Florrie, you'll be all right in a minute," said Bessie. 12. "I'll go in and see him before I go to bed," said Stella. 13. "You won't be able to see me on Tuesday," she said to Jack. 14. "We shall not do that," he said. 15. "I shall wait for Sheppey," said Bolton. 16. "Whatever the future may have in store I shall never forget your courage, your self-sacrifice, and your patience," Mrs Tabret said to Stella. 17. "I'm deeply grateful for all you've done for Maurice," Mrs Tabret said to Stella.

Ex. 2. (**B, C**) Put the verbs in brackets into the required past tense, pay attention to the Sequence of Tenses.

1. She (hear) the band playing and she (know) that in a few moments the curtain (go) up. 2. Myra (think) he (prefer) to be by himself. 3. I (hear) from your mother that you (be) late and so I (order) coffee and sandwiches. 4. Mrs Streep (ask) him if he (have) dinner there. 5. The old man (ask) me if I (have) parents. 6. He (be) very sorry for Jennie, and he (tell) his wife that he (have) to go out and see her. 7. And the other day I (have) a letter from him saying he (be) in Moscow soon. 8. I (say) I (be) back by nine o'clock. 9. You (promise) you (try) to persuade him to stay on for a bit. 10. In a few words I (tell) him what (happen). 11. She (ask) me if I (live) long in that town. 12. When I (ring) her that evening she (say) she (not like) to discuss those problems on the phone. 13. That evening she (tell) me (be) at the hotel number, and about half past eight I (dial) that number, but there (be) no answer. 14. I (put) the papers back where they (belong), (tell) the manager I (do) no clipping or tearing, (return) to the hotel, (treat) myself to a glass of milk in the coffee shop, and (go) to bed. 15. He (write) that he (come) to lunch the following day.

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) Translate the stories from Russian into English, paying special attention to the italicized words.

I

Совет врача.

Медсестра *спросила* меня, *ожидаю ли* я доктора Грея, и *пригласила* меня к нему в кабинет (surgery).

Доктор Грей улыбнулся мне и *спросил*, *что меня беспокоит*. Я *сказал*, что ужасно *переутомлен* (be run down). Он *спросил* меня, поздно ли я *ложусь* спать (stay up late), и я сказал, что нет. Он *поинтересовался*, почему я *не соблюдаю* нормальный режим (keep regular hours), и я *объяснил*, что почти каждый вечер я *встречаюсь* с друзьями. Доктор *захотел узнать, как я провожу время*, и я *сказал*, что в основном (mostly) я *хожу* на вечеринки. Доктор *спросил* меня, *удается ли* (have the chance) *мне отдохнуть* (to recover) в выходные дни, но я вынужден был *признать* (admit), что в выходные дни наши вечеринки *длятся* всю ночь.

Он *спросил* меня, *курю ли* я, и когда я *сказал*, что *курю,* доктор *спросил* меня, сколько сигарет в день я *выкуриваю*. Он был поражен, когда услышал мой ответ. Тогда врач *спросил* меня, *занимаюсь* (take) ли я гимнастикой для поддержания своего здоровья (to keep fit).

Я *ответил*, что для этого у меня *нет времени*.

"Вы поджигаете свечу (burn the candle) с обоих концов,"– сказал доктор Грей и добавил: "но я завидую вам, что вы так весело проводите время."

II

Подарок из Чикаго.

Этой зимой в Чикаго было много снега. Железнодорожные рабочие не знали, *что с* ним *делать*. Начальник станции *приказал очистить* платформы. Он *сказал не оставлять* снег на платформах, так как это опасно для пассажиров. Он *посоветовал сгребать* (shovel) снег в большие кучи, но это была невыполнимая задача.

Вдруг одному из рабочих пришла в голову замечательная идея. "Я знаю, *как избавиться* (get rid of) от снега," – сказал он. "*Давайте погрузим* этот снег на грузовые платформы (freight train). Мы можем послать снег в Миссисипи и Новый Орлеан. По дороге он растает (melt away)." На следующий день пять тонн снега прибыло в Мемфис, Теннесси. "Это замечательный подарок," – сказал рабочий. "Мы знаем, *что делать* с этим снегом здесь. Мы пошлем его на детские площадки (playgrounds). Некоторые дети никогда не видели снега."

Ex. 4. (**A, B, C**) Translate the story. Turn Direct Speech into Indirect Speech with tense changes.

"Я просмотрела результаты ваших анализов," – сказала доктор Лестер.
"Вы очень поправились," – сказала она мне.
"Вы набрали (gain) пять с половиной килограммов за шесть месяцев," – добавила она.
"Если вы будете продолжать в том же духе, вы станете очень толстым (get fat)," – сказала она мне.
"Я вынуждена посадить вас на строгую диету (put on a strict diet); вы должны есть очень мало," – добавила она.
"Хорошо, я должен буду жить на воде и орехах", – сказал я, разозлившись.
"Да, вы можете жить на воде и орехах, но без орехов," – согласилась доктор Лестер.

Ex. 5. Give a free translation of the text.

Пикник на одеяле.

Один профессор Бостонского университета сказал, что современные родители очень мало знают о том, как организовать "досуг в кругу семьи" (family leisure time). В качестве одного из вариантов он предложил устроить пикник во дворе за домом (back-yard): расстелить (spread) одеяло, разжечь костер (make/lay a fire), испечь (bake) картошку, как будто вы на пляже.

Прочитав это, я собрал семью и сказал, что вечером мы устроим пикник во дворе за домом. Мой сын Джордж сказал, что соседи подумают, что мы сошли с ума. А жена поинтересовалась, что я держу под мышкой. Оказалось, что это наше новое одеяло, которое, конечно, нельзя использовать для этой цели.

Дети поинтересовались, что мы будем делать весь вечер на заднем дворе. Я объяснил, что мы будем сидеть и есть печеную картошку. Это должно теснее сблизить нашу семью (make up closer). Мой сын высказал пожелание, чтобы это не связало нас в тугой узел (tight knot), так как он договорился вечером играть в теннис. Моя дочь Нэнси согласилась есть печеную картошку во дворе, но заметила, что потом она должна будет уйти, так как она идет в бассейн со своей подругой.

Мы расстелили одеяло на прекрасном месте за домом напротив гаража и разожгли огромный костер. Заметив выглядывающих из окон соседей, я попросил жену и детей не обращать на них внимания. Моя жена ворчала (grumble), что мы сидим на камнях и что она не может есть сырую (raw) картошку.

Стараясь казаться веселым, я спросил, чувствуют ли они себя так, как будто сидят на пляже. На что дочь ответила, что ей бы хотелось искупаться в океане, и скрылась (disappear) за гаражом. Спросив, в какой стороне океан, Джордж пообещал вернуть ее, даже если на это уйдет весь вечер, и тоже исчез за гаражом. Жена толкнула меня локтем (nudge) и сказала, что к нам пришли. Я поднял глаза и увидел двух полицейских. “Нам сообщили, что во дворе кто-то сидит на одеяле,” – сказал один из них.

(по Джону Бэйли)

THE PASSIVE VOICE

1. THE FORMATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE

to be + Participle II

TENSE		ACTIVE	PASSIVE	NOTE: *the action is done* to the subject
Indefinite	Present	**ask(s)**	**am / is / are asked**	He **asks**/ He **is asked** *Он* спрашивает/ *Его* спрашивают
	Past	**asked**	**was / were asked**	
	Future	**will ask**	**will be asked**	
Continuous	Present	**am / is / are asking**	**am / is / are being asked**	He **is asking**/ He **is being asked** *Он* сейчас спрашивает/ *Его* сейчас спрашивают
	Past	**was / were asking**	**was / were being asked**	
	Future	**will be asking**	–	
Perfect	Present	**have / has asked**	**have / has been asked**	He **has asked**/ He **has been asked** *Он* уже спросил/ *Его* уже спросили
	Past	**had asked**	**had been asked**	
	Future	**will have asked**	**will have been asked**	

MODAL VERBS

can/could may/might must/have to should/would needn't	**be done** **have been done**

STUDY THESE EXAMPLES:

Indefinite	1. A lot of rice **is eaten** in Asia. 2. These houses **were built** about twenty-five years ago. 3. Our class **will be taught** by another teacher next year. 4. He said that our class **would be taught** by another teacher next year.
Indefinite	5. Lions and tigers **can be seen** in Zoos. 6. He spoke very clearly; he **could be heard** by everyone. 7. This letter **must be answered** at once. 8. When he was in hospital, he **had to be fed**; he couldn't eat himself. 9. The books **may be kept** for two weeks. After that they **must be returned** to the library. 10. The librarian said that books **might be kept** for two weeks.
Continuous	11. The little girl has been very ill and the doctor says she mustn't go to school, so she **is being taught** at home. 12. I couldn't use my car last week, it **was being repaired.**
Perfect	13. This room **hasn't been swept** for a fortnight. 14. He said the newspaper **had been thrown** away. 15. He promised that by the end of the year the construction **would have been completed.**

2. USES OF THE PASSIVE VOICE PECULIAR TO THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

1. We use the passive when it is <u>not so important</u> (<u>or unknown</u>) who or what did the action:

- ❑ My article **was published** yesterday.
- ❑ Rome **wasn't built** in one day.
- ❑ The origin of the Universe **will never be explained.**

2. It's wrong to consider the passive to be another way of expressing a sentence in the active voice. We use it only when we don't know or don't want to say who did it:

- ❑ Helen **likes** English (But not *"English is liked by Helen"*. It sounds funny in English).

3. Only the verbs which take an object can go into the passive. <u>Intransitive verbs</u> can't be used in the Passive voice. They are:

- *to fly, to arrive*
- *to be, to become*
- *to have, to lack, to possess, to consist, to belong*
- *to hold, to suit, to resemble, to fit*
- *to appear, to seem, to come, to go, to last*

- ❑ The hall **holds** 500 people.
- ❑ They **have** a nice house.

- ❑ My shoes **don't fit** me.
- ❑ Sylvia **resembles** a Greek goddess.
- ❑ My mother **lacks** tact.

4. There are sentences in the active having a passive meaning:

- ❑ This shirt **irons** well.
- ❑ Your book **reads** well.
- ❑ This coat **will wear** a lifetime.
- ❑ The door **closed** and there was silence in the room.

5. If you want to say who did it or what caused the action, use ***by*** or ***with***:

- ❑ The house **was built** *by* my grandfather.
- ❑ It **was destroyed** *by* fire.
- ❑ The room **was filled** *with* smoke.
- ❑ The wood can **be cut** *with* a knife.

6. We use the infinitive after modal verbs and a number of other verbs. The passive infinitive is ***to be done/to have been done***:

- ❑ **I want to be left** alone.
- ❑ The music **could be heard** far away.
- ❑ My bicycle has disappeared. It **must have been** stolen.

7. If it is possible to make two different passive sentences, it is more usual for the passive sentence to begin with the person:

- ❑ **Ann** *wasn't offered* the job.
- ❑ The job *wasn't offered* to **Ann.**

STUDY THE PATTERN

8. Some verbs can be used only in the following type of passive constructions:

- ❑ The news **was announced** to everybody.
- ❑ Everything **will be explained** to you later.

9. Passive constructions with the verbs ***to advise, to allow, to award, to deny, to forbid, to forgive, to grant, to offer, to order, to pay, to promise, to refuse, to show, to teach*** present some difficulties. In English the subject of such constructions corresponds to the Russian indirect object. The centre of passive construction in English is not changed. Pay attention to the following difference:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Russian	*Я* просил ... *Я* сказал ему ...	*Меня* попросили ... *Мне* сказали ...
English	I **asked** ... I **told him** ...	I **was asked** ... I **was told** ...

- ❑ He **was given** a ten days' leave.
- ❑ **Have** you **been shown** the documents?
- ❑ They **were told** to wait.

10. The verbs which take prepositional objects can form passive constructions of the following pattern: (the list of such verbs is given below)

smb smth	**is** **was** **will be**	⇨	**sent** *for* **spoken** *about* **laughed** *at*

- ❑ The film **was much spoken about.**
- ❑ The doctor **was sent for.**

Mind the place of the preposition in Russian and English:

RUSSIAN	ENGLISH
Над ним часто смеются. *О нем* много говорили.	He is often laughed *at*. He was much spoken *about*.

The verbs taking prepositional objects. It should be remembered that not all of them retain this preposition in Russian.

A

to agree to/with – соглашаться с чем-то
to agree on/upon – прийти к соглашению
to arrive at an agreement – прийти к соглашению
to arrive at a compromise – прийти к компромиссу
to arrive at a conclusion – прийти к заключению
to arrive at a decision – прийти к решению
to call for/on – зайти за кем-то
to count on – надеяться, рассчитывать на кого-либо
to deal with – иметь дело с
to hear of – слышать о
to insist on/upon – настаивать на
to interfere with – вмешиваться в, мешать
to laugh at – смеяться над
to look after – ухаживать за
to look at – смотреть на
to put up with – примириться с
to refer to – ссылаться на
to rely on/upon – полагаться на

to send for – посылать за
to speak about/of, to – говорить о, с
to talk about – говорить о
to think of – думать о
to write about – писать о
to find fault with – придираться к
to make fun of – насмехаться над
to pay attention to – обращать внимание на
to take care of – заботиться о

B

to account for – объяснять
to comment on – комментировать
to listen to – слушать
to look for – искать
to operate on – оперировать
to provide for – снабжать
to lose sight of – потерять из виду
to make a fool of – дурачить
to make use of – использовать
to put an end to – положить конец
to take (no) notice of – (не) замечать

- ❑ The boat **was** soon **lost sight of**.
- ❑ The child **should be taken care of**.
- ❑ His remark **was taken no notice of**.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A**) Practise saying these sentences and answer the questions.

1. a) The secretary will mail these letters tomorrow. b) These letters will be mailed tomorrow, and what about these ones? 2. a) Someone ought to wash those dishes right away. b) These dishes ought to be washed right away, and what about these ones? 3. a) The factory produced 5,000 cars every day last year. b) 5,000 cars were produced every day last year, and what about this year? 4. a) People drink a great deal of tea in England. b) A great deal of tea is drunk in England, and what about your country? 5. a) Craftsmen make many beautiful objects of paper in Japan. b) Many beautiful objects of paper are made in Japan, and what about India? 6. a) They used to sell medicine here. b) Medicine used to be sold here, and where is it sold now? 7. a) You must return these books within a fortnight. b) These books must be returned within a fortnight, and what about those ones? 8. a) A gang of workmen built this house in 1840. b) This house was built in 1840, and what about that one?

Ex. 2. (**A**) Put the sentences into the Passive Voice where possible.

1. Someone will drive you to the airport.
2. Goldfish live in fresh water.
3. The Egyptians built pyramids.
4. We walked 4 miles yesterday.

5. They arrived at 7 last night.
6. They informed me about it.
7. I slept till 8.
8. It's raining.
9. You must obey the rules.
10. He's sneezing again.
11. You can buy videos like this anywhere.
12. Someone has to write the history of this place.
13. They have sold their car to pay the debts.
14. They hold a meeting in the village hall once a week.
15. They have proved that there is no life on the Moon.
16. They owe a lot of money to the bank.

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Indefinite* or *Past Continuous Passive*.

Model: 1. They (shut) the window. *The window* ***was shut.***
2. A beautiful melody (play). *A beautiful melody* ***was being played.***

1. The student (ask) to tell the story again. 2. Such mistakes (make) by even the best students. 3. A modern tune (play) when we came into the hall. 4. Every morning the workers (tell) what they had to do. 5. The houses (build) of stone, brick and wood. 6. At last the problem (solve) to everyone's satisfaction. 7. A new museum then (open). 8. A week ago two students of our group (choose) for jury service. 9. A special rule (make) for students to be taken to the University. 10. Last Friday he (meet) at the railway station. 11. When Tom was young, he (teach) two languages.

Ex. 4. (**B**) Express the following sentences in *the Passive*. Do not mention the subjects of the active verbs. The first sentence has been done for you.

Example: They asked me my name and address.
I was asked my name and address.

1. Someone told us a very funny story yesterday. 2. The people gave him a hearty welcome. 3. They have offered my brother a very good job. 4. The house agents showed us some very nice flats. 5. The secretary didn't tell me the exact time of my appointment. 6. They have never taught that rude boy good manners. 7. The teacher hasn't asked Peter any questions at this lesson. 8. People wished the newly married couple a long and happy life. 9. They never tell me the family news. 10. The examiners didn't give us enough time to answer all the questions. 11. A guide will show the tourists most of the sights of London. 12. He didn't tell me the whole truth.

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Write the sentences in *the Passive*.

Model: (my sister/operate on/a distinguished surgeon)
My sister *will be operated on* by a distinguished surgeon.

1. (a sound of violin/hear/in the hall) _____
2. (he/praise/his father/hard work) _____
3. (Bob/take for/his brother) _____
4. (I/wake up/at 7 o'clock/my mother) _____
5. (the envelope/find/on my desk) _____
6. (this book/buy/a week ago) _____

7. (the picture/paint/great artist) _____
8. (the window/break/the other day) _____
9. (the letter/post/tomorrow) _____
10. (your report/discuss/next week) _____
11. (the time-table/change/in a week) _____
12. (we/meet/at the station/Tom) _____
13. (the letter/bring/recently) _____
14. (milk/spill/just/Jack) _____
15. (this cup/break/my little brother) _____
16. (the room/dust/carefully) _____
17. (she/show/the shortest way/station) _____
18. (the lecturer/ask/question/about Dreiser) _____
19. (I/lend/this book/last Tuesday) _____
20. (the telegram/send/her brother) _____
21. (the doctor/send for) _____
22. (the teacher/listen to/attentively) _____
23. (his speech/speak about/much) _____
24. (this article/refer to/often) _____
25. (the plan/agree upon) _____
26. (his lecture/listen to/with great interest) _____
27. (he/find fault with/always) _____
28. (this house/live in/never) _____

Ex. 6. (**B**) Read the situation and write a sentence. Use the words in brackets.

Model: 1. He seldom keeps his promise. (he/can/ rely on) *He can't be relied on.*
2. He's very sensitive. (he/not like/to laugh at) *He doesn't like to be laughed at.*

1. The child is very ill. (The doctor/send for) 2. The old car is in excellent condition. (it/look after/well) 3. He was speaking for two hours. (he/listen to/in silence) 4. She is going into hospital tomorrow. (she/take good care of) 5. This little boy is always dirty. (he/look after/ properly) 6. She is always breaking things in the kitchen. (she/speak to/about her carelessness) 7. He's a sensible man. (his advice/listen to/carefully) 8. The dentist said her teeth were very bad. (they/take care of) 9. He never broke a promise in his life. (he/can/rely on) 10. Shakespeare was born more that 400 years ago. (he/look upon/as the greatest of English poets).

Ex. 7. (**B**) Put the following into *the Passive*, mentioning the agent where necessary.

1. You can't wash this dress. (it/dry-clean) 2. They discuss unimportant things. (a lot of time/waste) 3. They will type your letters in a minute. (the letters/type/in the other office) 4. I can't play now. (my piano/repair/at the moment) 5. The guests ate all the sandwiches, and drank all the lemonade. (nothing/leave) 6. I can't find my parcel anywhere. (it/post?) 7. I have no information. (I/inform/of the change of the plan) 8. I'm afraid we have sold all our copies but we have ordered more. (more/order) 9. The letter can't be mailed. (it/not stamp) 10. I would like to meet her mother. (I/not introduce/yet) 11.The town is in ruin. (it/destroy/ earthquake) 12. It is difficult to do (it/more easily/do/machine) 13.Umbrellas and sticks are not allowed. (they/leave/in the cloakroom)

Ex. 8. (**B, C**) Give the corresponding passive construction.

1. We looked through all the advertisements very attentively. 2. The gardener gathered all the dry leaves and set fire to them. 3. People will talk much about the successful debut of the young actress, no doubt. 4. You can rely upon your guide's experience. 5. Why didn't the speaker dwell longer upon this question? 6. You should send the sick man to hospital. They will look after him much better there. 7. He was very glad that nobody took notice of his late arrival. 8. He was a brilliant speaker, and, whenever he spoke, the audience listened to him with great attention. 9. Why did they laugh at him? 10. Nobody ever referred to that incident again.

Ex. 9. (**B, C**) Put in the correct forms, active or passive, of the verbs in brackets.

How the Other Half Lives.

Lord Manners was a rich and famous banker. When he (die), he (give) a magnificent funeral which (attend) by hundreds of famous people. The funeral was going to (hold) in Westminster Abbey. Many ordinary people (line) the streets to watch the procession. The wonderful black and gold carriage (draw) by 6 black horses. The mourners (follow) in silence. Lord Manners (give) a royal farewell. Two tramps were among the crowd, they (watch) the procession. As solemn music (can/hear) in the distance, one of them (turn) to the other and (whisper) in admiration, "Now, that's what I call really living!"

(from "Longman English Grammar Practice" by L.G. Alexander)

Ex. 10. (**B, C**) Open the brackets, using the correct form in *the Passive Voice*.

1. Dictionaries may not (use) at the examination. 2. This copy (not read). The pages (not cut). 3. Why the car (not lock) or (put) into the garage? 4. I'm not wearing my black shoes today. They (mend). 5. This room (use) only on special occasions. 6. Bicycles must not (leave) in the hall. 7. He was taken to hospital this afternoon, and (operate on) tomorrow morning. 8. The damaged buildings (reconstruct) now, the reconstruction (finish) by the end of the year. 9. The paintings (exhibit) till the end of the month. 10. She heard footsteps, she thought she (follow). 11. Normally this street (sweep) every day, but it (not sweep) yesterday. 12. She is very selfish; she (spoil) by her parents. 13. This purse (leave) in a classroom yesterday, it (find) by the cleaner. 14. Thousands of new houses (build) every year. 15. Why don't you use your car? – It (repair) now, I had a bad accident a week ago. – Anybody (hurt)? 16. The children are very excited this morning. They (take) to the circus this afternoon. 17. My keys (return) to me yesterday; they (pick up) in the street.

Ex. 11. (**B, C**) Open the brackets. Use the necessary tenses in *the Passive Voice*.

1. The living-room (sweep), (mop) and (dust). It is clean now. 2. We (tell) to wait because the man (question) in the room. 3. If he comes in you (find) looking through his papers. 4. For the first two minutes he (occupy) with eating; then as his appetite (quiet), he took his time. 5. Why nothing (do) about it at the time? 6. You can't go in. She (interview) for the TV. 7. She promised that nothing (do) till he came back. 8. I had a most unpleasant feeling that I (watch). 9. She looked a different girl. Her face (wash), her hair (comb). All traces of tears (remove). 10. We could still see the tracks where the car (drag) off the road.

Ex. 12. (**B, C**) Use the verb in brackets in the appropriate form.

1. You can't use the office at the moment, it (redecorate). 2. A new metro line (construct) now. One of its stations (build) in our street. 3. Like many medieval cities, Moscow developed round the walls of a stronghold. First a brick wall (build) around the merchants' quarter which (know) as Kitaigorod, then, in the 16th century, a new wall (erect) round the so-called Bely Gorod. 4. Maize (use) by many peoples of the world to make their bread. 5. The house (lock) up before they set off. 6. Wherever I went I found evidence that the camp (leave) only a short time before we arrived. 7. Everybody was busy as a welcoming party (prepare) in honour of the distinguished visitors. 8. The place looked wonderful. Everything (prepare) for the ball. The front lawn (floor) and (tent); palms and azaleas (place) round it. 9. Evidently the tea (sweeten) before I put sugar into it.

Ex. 13. (**C**) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form in *the Active* or in *the Passive*.

1. Each of the children (receive) a due share of Mrs Gerhardt's attention. The little baby closely (look) after by her. 2. From the clink of dishes one could tell the supper (prepare). 3. The front door of his house (unlock) as he (leave) it. 4. Mrs Fripp (come) to inform her that dinner already (serve). 5. His phrase (greet) by a strange laugh from a student who (sit) near the wall. 6. A note (bring) in, addressed to Eleanor, and (put) on the table to await her. 7. When the door (close), old Jolyon (drop) his paper, and (stare) long and anxiously in front of him. 8. To his knowing eyes the scene below easily (explain). 9. The door (shut) behind him. 10. Finally, his name (call), and the boy (push) forward to her. 11. Finally he (persuade) by Bass to go away. 12. But when autumn (come) the cows (drive) home from the grass. 13. At lunch nothing (discuss) but the latest news. 14. "Will you work on this new job all your life?" The question (ask) with sincere interest. 15. She (tap) on the door. John (open) it. 16. Look! There's nothing here. Everything (take) away.

Ex. 14. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

1. Кто построил это здание? 2. Где сейчас строят это здание? 3. Как долго строится это здание? 4. Где строятся такие здания? 5. Когда будет построено это здание? 6. Опять обсуждается этот вопрос? 7. Часто у вас обсуждаются подобные вопросы? 8. Давно уже этот вопрос обсуждается? 9. Обсуждался ли где-нибудь этот вопрос до того, как он был передан в комитет?

Ex. 15. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

Use the Pattern:

1. Ее не простили. 2. Меня не спрашивали. 3. Этот вопрос не задавали. 4. Его ошибка была прощена и забыта. 5. Ей много завидовали. 6. Ее успеху завидовали меньше, чем она ожидала. 7. Ее отсутствие можно извинить. 8. Ну, я прощен? 9. Этот вопрос могут задать. 10. Тебя могут спросить. 11. Ее волосам можно позавидовать. 12. Такое нельзя простить.

Ex. 16. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

Use the Pattern:

smb	is / was / will be	told / given / offered / promised / shown	smth

1. Мне показали, как это делается. 2. Ей пообещали хорошую работу. 3. Ему дали новое задание (mission). 4. В отеле вам будут давать завтрак и ужин. 5. Вам покажут эту статью. 6. Никаких объяснений мне не дали. 7. Эту работу дали кому-то другому. 8. Новую модель ему показали на выставке. 9. Нам картину не показали. 10. Мне убрать ничего не обещали. 11. Когда вам рассказали эту историю? 12. Вам показали этот каталог? 13. Вам предложили что-нибудь поесть? 14. Почему мне предложили эту работу? 15. Почему нам этого не сказали? 16. Когда будет показан этот фильм? 17. Почему мне не дали словаря в библиотеке? 18. Каждому студенту дадут стипендию.

Ex. 17. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Лекции этого профессора всегда слушают с большим интересом. 2. Меня прервал Джон. 3. Его всегда любили, и ему всегда доверяли. 4. О ней заботятся ее друзья. 5. Я уверен, что записка была написана карандашом (in pencil). 6. Дверь открыла пожилая женщина, и Джейн ввели в маленькую гостиную. 7. Кровать не была застелена, стул был сломан. 8. Об этом фильме много говорят. 9. Пока готовился завтрак, мать подошла к постели ребенка. 10. Ей продиктовали письмо и задали несколько вопросов. 11. Аню спрашивали, когда я вошла в комнату, где шел экзамен. 12. Ей дадут квартиру в этом доме. 13. "Где врач?" – прошептал он. – "За ним послали." 14. К концу этой недели работа будет завершена. 15. Его давно не видели. 16. Мне сказали, что около железнодорожного моста строятся два новых дома. 17. Мне рассказали, как должно быть приготовлено это блюдо (dish). 18. Он узнает, почему его туда посылают. 19. "Куда он ходил?" – "Мне не сказали."

Ex. 18. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Мне показали, как это было сделано. 2. О ней очень хорошо отзываются. 3. Ей объяснили, как пользоваться этим устройством (device). 4. Вода в квартире была выключена, и послали за сантехником (plumber). 5. В библиотеке ему предложили целый ряд статей на интересующую его тему. 6. Можно ли положиться на эти цифры? 7. Мне много раз повторяли, что мне надо бросить (give up) курить. 8. Задавали ли вам дополнительные вопросы на экзамене? 9. Их тепло поблагодарили за помощь. 10. Ему посоветовали побольше бывать на воздухе. 11. Надо положить конец этим бесполезным спорам. 12. Вас не будут просить выступать. 13. Почему вам запретили играть в футбол? 14. Когда вам продиктовали это письмо?

Ex. 19. (**B, C**) Dictation–translation.

1. Детей часто водят (take) в кино и театр. 2. Ей объявили, что поезд уже ушел. 3. Его попросили не вмешиваться. 4. Ей задали несколько вопросов и велели подождать. 5. Будет ли нам предоставлен отдельный номер в отеле? 6. Его выбор был всеми одобрен. 7. В начальной школе (primary) детей учат читать и считать, с ними играют,

их развлекают (entertain). 8. Ей продиктовали несколько писем. 9. Кому дадут эту работу? 10. Какие меры будут приняты? 11. Тогда как раз строилась школа. 12. Ну, что-нибудь уже решено? 13. Там за ним будет хороший уход. 14. Что говорили на эту тему? 15. Их учат английскому языку около года. 16. Когда это надо сделать? 17. Почему это нельзя сделать сегодня? 18. Когда вам сообщили это известие? 19. Почему ничего еще не сделано? 20. Чей фортепианный концерт сейчас исполняется?

Ex. 20. (**B, C**) Translate into English, using *the Passive Voice*.

I

1. Во время экскурсии по городу нам показали завод, где производится сталь. 2. Со мной так никогда еще не разговаривали. 3. Книги, которые хорошо читаются, редко найдешь на полках библиотеки. 4. Объяснили ли вам, почему вам тогда не разрешили принять участие в соревнованиях? 5. Когда мы приехали в Киев, это здание было только что восстановлено. 6. В прошлом месяце, наконец, вышла книга, которую с таким нетерпением ожидали. Сейчас ее широко обсуждают в прессе. 7. Не говори таких вещей, а то над тобой будут смеяться. 8. Мне еще ничего об этом не говорили. 9. Ваш проект уже принят? – Нет, он все еще рассматривается. – Сколько же времени его уже рассматривают? 10. Вас уведомят по телеграфу, как только чертежи будут посланы. 11. Вчера ему предложили новую работу, а она ему не нужна. 12. Он включил радио. Исполняли Наймана, фортепианный концерт. 13. Я не знал, кому меня представляют. 14. На приеме на профессора не обратили внимания, а вокруг его хорошенькой жены развели суету (make fuss of).

II

1. Что-нибудь делается, чтобы восстановить это здание? 2. Его еще никогда не принимали за англичанина. 3. В твоей комнате ничего не тронули с тех пор, как тебя послали в санаторий. 4. За каждый пенни нужно отчитаться (account for). 5. Вас когда-нибудь учили, как надо вести себя? 6. Детей угостили мороженым. 7. У меня украли коллекцию марок. 8. Со мной так никогда не разговаривали. 9. Надо что-то сделать для этих людей. 10. Боюсь, что эту вазу нельзя починить. 11. О его приятеле хорошо отзываются. 12. Моего дядю произвели (promote to) в капитаны. 13. Тебе скажут, когда отправляется поезд. 14. Она чувствовала, что от нее что-то скрывают. 15. Будет так темно, что меня совсем не будет видно. 16. Почему так прохладно в зале? – Его как раз проветривают (air). Читальный зал, как вы знаете, проветривается несколько раз в день.

III

1. Больного не будут оперировать без его согласия. 2. Телеграмма была принята поздно ночью, и, так как она была очень важной, капитана тут же разбудили и передали ему ее. 3. Факты, на которые ссылался свидетель, заинтересовали адвоката. 4. Было рассмотрено много различных маршрутов, а об этом даже не подумали. 5. Проект был в основном одобрен, но архитектору указали на отдельные недостатки. 6. Советую вам пойти на этот концерт: будут исполнены ваши любимые произведения. 7. Нам объяснили новое правило, затем продиктовали несколько примеров и дали упражнения для домашней работы. 8. Не беспокойтесь, о вашем багаже позаботятся и он будет доставлен в номер. 9. Он не слышал, что в это время говорилось. 10. Мы узнаем, хорошо ли за ним смотрели. 11. Ему дали первоклассное образование.

3. REVISION

Ex. 1. (**B, C**) Supply the required passive forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. Meg (look) upon as a perfect wife for a clergyman. 2. After his brother's departure Paul sat for a long time thinking about what (say). 3. "I'm not prepared," my father said, "to listen to your suggestions that you never (treat) fairly at school." 4. "Remember I (pay) by an hour," grumbled the driver. 5. But there were signs that order (restore) in the town. 6. Well, what (do) about it, Ted? 7. He went into the bedroom. The bed (turn) down for the night by the maid many hours before. 8. Please find out if our father (see) to leave. 9. She could have gone to Cambridge if she had wanted, she (offer) a scholarship. 10. On Friday she (give) two weeks' notice at the Works. 11. Then the voice announced that the passengers (ask) to pass through the Customs. 12. I wondered to what extent she (influence) by his name to accept his offer. 13. Such are the matters that (deal) with in Mr Burroughs's book. 14. I found the idea of going to Hereford very upsetting because I (promise) a very nice job a couple of weeks before. 15. Not far away she noticed the film manager in whose office she once (make) to feel so ridiculous. 16. "You must be very prosperous, Eustace, to own a car like that." – "This car (lend) to me by an American woman."

Ex. 2. (**B, C**) Use the required passive forms.

I

The reception was all that (expect). When we arrived we (show) into some kind of hall where we (detain) with the rest of the actors. Apparently we (not/allow) yet to mingle with the other crowd. As the guests assembled in the room, it was plain to me that they (choose) carefully. Looking around I recognised Anthony Blanche. He (point) out to me often in the streets. I (interrupt) in my observation by a woman reporter whom the manager had led up to me. I (warn) against the dangers of being interviewed by strangers. As we (introduce) I made up my mind to avoid it at any cost.

II

It was Saturday night and Pete sat watching TV. People (kill) for an hour on the screen. Policemen (shoot) in the line of duty, gangsters (throw) off roofs, and an elderly lady slowly (poison) for her pearls, and her murderer (bring) to justice by a cigarette company after long discussions which (hold) in the office of a private detective. Villains holding guns (leap at) by brave, unarmed actors, and ingenues (save) from deaths by the quick-thinking young men.

III

The Connolly children (find) lurking under the seats of a carriage when the train (empty). They (drag) out and (stand) on the platform. Since they could not (leave) there, they (include) in the party that (send) by bus to the village. From that moment their destiny for ever (connect) with that of the village. Nothing ever (discover) about the children's parents.

IV

Bridgehampton. Friday. A disastrous fire broke out on the top floor of the Grand Hotel, Washington Road, in the small hours of the morning.

The alarm (give) by the night porter. His attention (draw) to smoke issuing from one of the top floor windows by a group of young people who were returning late from a dance. Within five minutes the town Fire Brigade was on the spot. The work of fighting the fire, and evacuating the guests seriously (hamper) by the non-operation of the lifts. It (believe) that the fire (cause) by a short circuit in the lift machinery and had extended to the whole floor before it (observe). The flames (bring) under control in two hours. Two of the guests staying at the hotel lost their lives. They (trap) in their rooms and evidently (overcome) by fumes before the rescuers could reach them. A third guest (take) to hospital with multiple burns. His condition (report) as being serious.

Ex. 3. (**C**) Use the required active or passive tense forms.

I

I once (know) a village teacher who (be) partially blind. He (deprive) of one eye as the result of infection. His blind eye (take) out, and a glass one (insert) in its socket instead.
One day the teacher (need) to leave his class of small children alone for half an hour or so. But he (hold) back by one consideration. The children of the class (be) really unruly. He (know) that if they (leave) alone for any length of time they (become) violent and complaints (make) by their parents.
Suddenly he (strike) by an idea. In a moment his glass eye (take) out of its socket, and (place) on the table.
"Now, children," he said, "I (go) out for a few minutes but you (observe) all the time by my eye. If anything (do) which (not approve) by me it (see) by my eye, and the child (punish) when I (return)."
The children (impress) very much, and the teacher (go) off.
But when he (return) an hour later it (seem) that a hurricane (pass) through the classroom. The teacher (astound). "Evidently", he thought, "I (outwit). I wonder how."
In the classroom the tables (overturn), the walls (spatter) with ink from ink-bombs which (throw) during the battle which still (fight) out as a manifestation of high spirits. In fact, a good time (have) by all.
The teacher (wonder) why the presence of his glass eye (not respect). He (look) round for it and (see) that it (cover) by a hat.

II

At the last glow of sunset, they (board) the aeroplane in inverse order of seniority beginning with the sergeant and ending with General Spitz. The plane they (provide) with was luxurious for the wartime. It (fit) with seats. Little lights (glow) along the roof. Soon the doors (shut). The lights (go) out. It (be) now completely dark. What once (be) windows (paint) out. The roar of the engine (impose) silence on the party. Dan, who (put) himself next to the cockpit, (long) for a forbidden cigarette and (try) to compose himself for sleep, though it (be) far from his normal bedtime. He (wear) the same shirt all day without a chance of changing. In the hot afternoon it (be) damp with sweat. Now in the chill upper air it (cling) to him and (set) him shivering. It (not occur) to him to bring his greatcoat. It (be) an unsatisfactory day. He (wander) about the streets of the old town with the Lieutenant. They (lunch) at the club and (order) to report at the airfield two hours before they (need). He (not dine) and (see) no hope of doing so. He (sit) in black boredom and discomfort until, after an hour, sleep (come).

(Ex. 2-3 are taken from "An English Grammar Practice Book" by I.P. Krylova)

Ex. 4. (**C**) Translate the verbs in bold type into English.

A

Молодой писатель **ходил** взад и вперед по комнате. Он **пытался** найти тему для рассказа. Рассказ был давно **обещан** редактору. Срок **подходил**, а ничего еще **не было сделано**. Молодой писатель **посмотрел** на книжные полки. "Сколько уже **написано**, – **подумал** он. – Все хорошие темы уже много раз **использованы**. Вот хотя бы эти рассказы. Они **были написаны** до моего рождения. И это хорошие рассказы. Без сомнения, их в свое время **читали**, они **нравились**, и о них **говорили**. Но сейчас они совершенно **забыты**. А что, если ... "

К концу дня один из забытых рассказов **был перепечатан** и **отослан** в редакцию. На следующий день пришло письмо из редакции журнала.

"Это безобразие, – писал редактор. – Такие поступки нельзя **ни простить, ни понять**. Ведь этот рассказ **был опубликован** в нашем журнале только месяц тому назад."

B

Частная жизнь Хэмфри Богарта.

Наш старый бухгалтер **ушел** на пенсию, и на его место **взяли** нового. Через неделю его уже **знали** все, и всем он **нравился**. **Выяснилось**, что он **женат**, и у него **есть** ребенок. **Было решено**, что он хороший человек, тихий и скромный. Мы тогда и **не думали**, что через несколько недель о нем **будет говорить** вся контора.

Случилось это так. Весна в прошлом году **пришла** рано. В одно прекрасное утро контора была полна перешептываний. Богарта **видели** в ресторане с девушкой. Они **ели** мороженое, и он **смотрел** на нее влюбленными глазами.

Через несколько дней его **видели** с этой же девушкой в самом темном углу парка. Они **целовались**. Через неделю их **встретили** на пляже.

– Что-то надо **сделать**, – было общее решение. – Ему надо **сказать**, его надо **остановить**, ему надо **объяснить**.

Наконец ему **велели** сейчас же идти в кабинет директора. Там его **встретила** целая комиссия.

– Хэмфри Богарт, – сказал директор. – Вас много раз **видели** с молодой женщиной...

Потом Богарту **велели** на следующий же день привести эту молодую женщину к директору для серьезного разговора.

– Но, – сказал он. – Завтра нельзя. Она **поведет** ребенка к врачу.

– Так там уже есть ребенок! – воскликнул профорг.

– Конечно, – ответил он. – Я **думал**, что все уже **знают**.

– Значит, это была ваша жена! – сказали мы. – Почему же Вы этого сразу не **сказали**?

– Меня не **спрашивали**, – ответил он.

(From "Practical English Grammar by Correspondence" by E.A. Nathanson)

4. TESTS

I

1. Покажите мне, где в вашем городе строится новый театр.
2. Зимой свет зажигается рано.
3. За билеты давно уплачено.

4. Его можно было видеть в саду в любую погоду.
5. Нам в лагерь регулярно доставляют провизию и почту.
6. Жаль, что на коференции таких вопросов не касались.
7. Об этой книге уже написано много статей.
8. Над ним всегда смеялись, когда он был школьником.
9. Ничего удивительного, что цветы завяли (fade), их не поливали целую неделю.
10. После ланча я слышал, что за Чарльзом послали.

II

1. Вниз по этой улице строится новый квартал домов.
2. Тебя интересует работа, которую тебе предложили?
3. Его пришлось прооперировать.
4. Посмотри! Разбили наше окно.
5. Уроки нужно делать более интересными.
6. Студентам велели подождать за дверью.
7. Посторонних просят уйти с собрания (leave).
8. Я почувствовал, что ему уже задавали этот вопрос.
9. Об этой картине много говорят. Мне ее очень хорошо описали.
10. Эти недостатки можно легко устранить (eliminate).

III

1. Эта звезда хорошо видна только после захода солнца.
2. Нам сообщили об этом только перед началом собрания.
3. Тетю Дашу в семье моего отца не любили, ее считали глупой.
4. Я прислушался, в зале играли концерт Моцарта.
5. Меня приняли прекрасно и угостили обедом.
6. Я не мог сказать ему, что потратил деньги, которые мне дали на учебники.
7. Он прибыл после того, как погасло (cut) электричество.
8. Мы наблюдали, как разгружались (unload) корабли.
9. Ее нигде не было видно.
10. Я уверен, что за ним последуют многие.

IV

1. Его никогда не приглашали на вечеринки.
2. Многие старые здания в городах сейчас заменяются (replace) новыми зданиями.
3. Если этот процесс не контролировать, города скоро потеряют свой уникальный облик (character).
4. Когда Морган умер, его коллекция картин была распродана (sell out).
5. Этот документ должен быть подписан.
6. Окно было разбито ветром прошлой ночью.
7. Здесь ремонтируют туфли и ботинки.
8. Нам постоянно напоминают об опасности загрязнения (pollution) окружающей среды.
9. Скоро даже самые отдаленные (remote) острова будут посещаться туристами.
10. Этого никто не ожидал (expect).

THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

The Subjunctive Mood shows that the action or state expressed by the verb is presented as a non-fact, as something imaginary or deslred.

1. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Conditional sentences may express real and unreal condition. They are introduced by the conjunctions: ***if, in case, provided, unless, suppose.***

CONDITION		SUBORDINATE CLAUSE	PRINCIPAL CLAUSE	TRANSLATION
Real		If it **looks** like rain, If I **have** more time, If he **is working** on Friday *Present Ind./Cont.*	we**'ll stay** at home. **I'll come** over. he **won't be able** to go with us. *will + Inf.*	~~бы~~
Unreal	**Present/Future**	If I **were** you, If I **had** more time, If you **knew** him better, If it **were not raining**, *Past Ind./Cont.*	I **would go** there myself. I **would come** over. you **wouldn't think** so. I **could go out.** would / could / *might* + Inf.	бы
Unreal	**Past**	If you **had gone** there, If it **hadn't been** so hot last summer, *Past Perfect*	you **would have seen** him. we **could have gone** to the South. would / could / *might* + have + Participle II	

NOTES:

1. "*If*" is the most common. "*In case*" and "*provided*" are chiefly used in sentences of real condition:
   - ❑ **In case** I *don't find* her at home, I*'ll leave* her a note.
     В случае, если я не застану ее дома, я оставлю ей записку.
   - ❑ We*'ll finish* the work on time **provided** you send all the necessary materials.
     Мы закончим работу вовремя, при условии если вы пришлете все необходимые материалы.

   Unless has a negative meaning:

❑ I'*ll come* in time **unless** I *am detained* at the Institute.
Я приду вовремя, *если* меня *не* задержат в институте.

Suppose is more common in sentences of unreal condition:

❑ **Suppose** he *wrote* to you, *would* you *answer?*
Предположим, он написал бы вам, вы бы ответили?

2. In the subordinate clause auxiliary *"should"* can be used. Such sentences are translated by means of *"Если бы случилось так ...", "Случись так ..."*:

❑ If he **should** come, ask him to wait.
В случае, если он придет, попросите его подождать.

3. There are two mixed types of sentences of unreal condition:

a) the condition refers to the past and the consequence refers to the present:

❑ If you **had taken** your medicine yesterday, you **would be** well today.
Если бы вы *вчера* приняли это лекарство, *теперь* вы бы были здоровы.

b) the condition refers to no particular time and the consequence to the past:

❑ If he **were not** so absent-minded, he **would not have missed** the train yesterday.
Если бы он не был таким рассеянным, он *бы не опоздал вчера* на поезд.

4. Unreal conditions may also be expressed in the following ways:

a) But for + noun/pronoun

❑ **But for the rain**, we **would go down** to the country.
Если бы не дождь, мы бы поехали за город.

b) If it were not for + noun/pronoun
had not been for

❑ **If it were not for your help**, I **wouldn't be able** to finish my work in time.
Если бы не ваша помощь ...

❑ **If it hadn't been for me**, they **would have never found** the place.
Если бы не я...

5. In sentences of unreal condition the modal verbs *"might"* and *"could"* are often used instead of *"would";* they fully retain their modal meaning:

❑ If I **had** a big garden I **would / could / might** ⇨ **grow** a lot of flowers.

6. Adverbial clauses of condition containing the verbs *had, were, could, should* are often introduced without any conjunction. In these cases we find inversion:

~~If~~ I **had** time, I would come over.
❑ **Had** I time, I would come over.

~~If~~ she **were** in New York, she would certainly call you.
❑ **Were** she in New York, she would certainly call you.

7. Indirect Speech:

"If I **had** a big garden I **would grow** a lot of flowers".
❑ He **said** that if he **had** a big garden **he would** *(could/might)* **grow** a lot of flowers.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Make sentences. Choose from the boxes.

If +	we don't hurry I can't get a flight you come home late I don't feel well you have any problems		please come in quietly. I'm not going to work. we'll be late. I'll try to help you. I'll fly home on Sunday.
	I can understand you It will be nice You'll be cold What are you going to do I'm sure they'll understand	**+ if**	you don't wear a coat. you don't pass your exam? you explain your problem. you speak slowly. you can come to the party.

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Choose the correct form of the verb: *RIGHT/WRONG*.

1. If I *don't feel/won't feel* well tomorrow, *I stay/i'll stay* at home.
2. If the weather *is/will be* nice tomorrow, we can go to the beach.
3. It will be hard to find a hotel if we *arrive/will arrive* late.
4. The alarm will ring if there *is/will be* a fire.
5. I *am/will be* surprised if they *get/will get* married.
6. *Do/will* you *go* to the party if they *invite/will invite* you?
7. If I *am/will be* late this evening, don't wait for me.
8. What shall we do, if it *rains/will be raining?*
9. I'll be able to understand you, if you *speak/will speak* slowly.

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Practise the following according to the model.

Model: He runs round the park every morning, so he keeps very fit.
If I **ran** round the park every morning I **would keep** fit too.

1. He lives in the South, so he can grow a lot of flowers.
2. They use electric typewriters, so they finish their work soon.
3. He lives near his work, so he is never late.
4. He goes to bed early, so he always wakes up in time.
5. His French is good, so he reads French books in the original.
6. They have a maid, so they can enjoy themselves.

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Look at the warning signs. What would you say to somebody who's ignoring them?

Model:

Danger! Keep away from the edge!

❑ *If you don't keep away from the edge, you'll fall down.*

(to fall down)

Danger! Thin ice!	Danger! No smoking!
(to step on the ice/to be drowned)	(to smoke here/to be a fire)
Dangerous road!	Wet paint!
(to drive fast/to have an accident)	(to ignore the sign/to get dirty)
Beware of the dog!	Horn forbidden!
(to ignore the sign/to get bitten by the dog)	(not obey the sign/to get fined)

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

I

1. If I had this tool, I (give) it to you.
2. If he worked more slowly, he (not make) so many mistakes.
3. I could give you his address if I (know) it.
4. He might get fat if he (stop) smoking.
5. If he knew you were away, he (not come).
6. I (keep) a gardener if I could afford it.
7. What would you do if the lift (get) stuck between two floors?
8. He (not go) there if his family were not invited.
9. The car wouldn't break so often if you (have) it serviced regularly.

II

1. If I (know) her better, I (introduce) you.
2. The journey takes about 3 hours by bus. You (get) there much sooner if you (go) by train.
3. If I (have) money with me then, I (can lend) you some.
4. He couldn't find a job when he came to Germany. If he (like) children, he (work) at school.
5. The teacher told Peter that he (not pass) the exam if he (not work) harder.

Ex. 6. (**A, B**)

I. Use *"might"* instead of *"would"* to give the meaning of *"perhaps"*.

1. She's getting fat. If she (not eat) much sweet, she (lose) weight.
2. I didn't watch the film yesterday. If I (have) some free time yesterday, I (watch) it.
3. She feels very tired in the morning. If she (go) to bed earlier, she (not feel) so tired.
4. He's not a strong man. If he (go) to the fitting center, he (be) stronger.

II. Use *"could"* instead of *"would"* to give the meaning of *"possible"*.

1. We (understand) the English teacher better if she (speak) more slowly.
2. I like reading but we don't have books in our country house. If I (have) books there, I (read) a lot in summer.
3. I don't know where he's living now. If I (know) his address, I (write) to him.
4. Roberta is very pretty but rather short. If she (be) taller, she (be) a model.

Ex. 7. (**A, B**) Answer the questions in complete sentences.

I

1. To which town/city would you go if you didn't need a visa?
2. Who would you ask to dance if you had the choice?
3. Could you come to the Institute on Sunday if the teacher asked you?
4. How would you feel if you won a thousand dollars?
5. Could you wake up at 5 a.m. if none woke you up?
6. Could you cook your own dinner if your mother asked you?

II

1. If you had been born in 1950, what would you be now?
2. If you had been late for this lesson, would you have apologized to the teacher?
3. What would you have done if you had been the Rector of the University?
4. Could you have answered these questions correctly if you had been absent at the last lesson?

Ex. 8. (**A, B**) Replace the infinitives in brackets by the right form of the verb.

Model: ❑ If I were you, I (to read) the book in the original.
If I were you, I *would read* the book in the original.
❑ If I had known how dull the film was, I (not to go) to the cinema.
If I had known how dull the film was, I *would not have gone* to the cinema.

1. They (to go) to the beach if it were warmer. 2. If the poem were not so long, I (to learn) it by heart. 3. Even if it were not so late I don't think I (to go) to the cinema. 4. Even if he knew how difficult the situation was, he (not to stop) the preparations. 5. Even if I had a dictionary, I don't believe I (to be able) to write the test. 6. Even if you had given her your car, she (cannot arrive) in so short a time. 7. Even if I wanted to, I (can do) nothing now. 8. If you really wanted to buy the house, you (can do) it even now.

Ex. 9. (**B, C**) Replace the infinitives in brackets by the right form of the verb.

Model: If I (to know) about it, I (to help) you.
If I *had known* about it, I *would have helped* you.

1. The place was very dull. Even if it (not to be raining) the whole week, we (not enjoy) our holiday. 2. If you (not to interfere), they (to forget) all about it in an hour. 3. If you (to trust) me, I (can lead) you safely through. 4. The dinner (not to be spoiled) if you (not forget) the dish in the oven. 5. She (to know) how to behave if she (to be) a born lady. 6. He (not to take) this case even if he (to be asked). 7. The accident (not to happen) if you (to be) more attentive. 8. She (to go) there even if she (to have) to walk all the way. 9. None (to mind) if he (be dismissed). 10. Someone (may notice) if she (open) the letter.

Ex. 10. (**B, C**) Compose conditional sentences on the basis of the following statements.

Model: ❑ It's raining hard. We can't go out. If it *were* not raining so hard, we *could go out*.
❑ I have no dictionary. I shan't finish the translation today. If I *had* a dictionary, I *would finish* the translation today.
❑ The goal-keeper was hurt early in the game. The team lost. If the goal-keeper *had not been hurt* early in the game, the team *would not have lost*.

1. She thought of her future and refused to marry the young man.
2. He was deep in his thoughts and did not notice the "no parking" sign.
3. I have a lot of work to do, I can't go to the pictures.
4. There is no one to sit with the baby, I have to stay at home.
5. The rain has stopped at last, and we began to enjoy ourselves.
6. She did not think of the consequences and agreed to forge (подделать) the document.
7. There were so many people there that nobody noticed his absence.
8. We don't like cheese. We don't buy it.
9. He lost his temper and said things he did not really mean.
10. I don't know your cousin, I can't meet her at the station.

Ex. 11. (**A, B**) Compose sentences according to the model.
Use **but for + noun/pronoun**

Model: ❑ I don't want to tell you this, but I promised to.
But for my promise, I *wouldn't tell* you this.
❑ He didn't die. The operation saved him.
But for the operation he *would have died*.

1. He wants to go swimming but the water is cold. 2. He couldn't see us off as he was busy at the office. 3. She wasn't alone in the house, her husband was asleep in his room. 4. I want to go but I have an examination tomorrow. 5. In the end he went to see the doctor. His wife made him do it. 6. It began to rain and we didn't go for a walk. 7. We couldn't have a picnic. The weather was too bad. 8. Of course I want to help you but I have a conference today. 9. He had a good guide so he could see all the sights.10. You can't prepare the contract because the computer is out of order.

Ex. 12. (**A, B**) Translate the words in brackets.

1. But for her spelling she (получила бы) an excellent mark for her composition.
2. But for my sister's help I (не смогла бы перевести) the article so fast.
3. But for the neighbour's chickens I (не держала бы) the dog chained.
4. But for your explanation I (не научилась бы) to do it so well.
5. But for the final scene the picture (была бы) quite good.
6. But for his sore throat he (выступил бы) at the meeting.
7. But for the grandmother's operation they (поехали бы) to the Crimea.
8. But for her voice she (была бы) a good actress.
9. But for the heat I (нравилось бы) working in this country.
10. But for the accident he (поставил бы/set) a record.

Ex. 13. (**B, C**) Translate the verbs in brackets.

I

1. If I had known that you were in hospital (я бы навестил тебя). 2. If (я бы знал) that you were coming I'd have baked a cake. 3. If (ты бы пришел) ten minutes earlier you would have got a seat. 4. You would have seen my garden at its best if (ты был бы здесь) last week. 5. I wouldn't have believed it if (я бы не видел) it with my own eyes. 6. (Я бы предложил) to help him if I had realized that he was ill. 7. If (я бы понял) what a bad driver you were I wouldn't have come with you. 8. If I had realized that the traffic lights were red (я бы остановился). 9. (Куры не вошли бы/get) into the house if you had shut

the door. 10. If he had known that the river was dangerous (он бы не пытался) to swim across it. 11. If (Вы бы говорили) more slowly he might have understood you. 12. If he had known the whole story (он бы не разозлился). 13. If (я бы попытался) again I think that I would have succeeded. 14. (Вы бы не попали/get) into trouble if you had obeyed my instructions. 15. If (я была бы готова) when he called he would have taken me with him. 16. If she had listened to my directions (она бы не повернула) down the wrong street. 17. (Я бы взял такси) if I had realized that it was such a long way. 18. If (ты бы не чихнула/sneeze) he wouldn't have known that we were there.

II

1. If (я встретил тебя) you yesterday, of course (я бы предупредил) you. 2. I'm sorry I threw the newspaper away. (Я бы не выбросил ее) if (я бы знал) you had wanted it. 3. Why didn't you ask me to help you? Of course (я бы помог тебе) if (ты бы попросил меня) to. 4. I'm sorry I couldn't come to the cinema with you last Friday. (Я бы пошел) if (я бы не был) so busy. 5. (Я бы не ушел из) the office early yesterday if (я бы не закончил) my work.

Ex. 14. (**C**) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses. Don't forget that there exist mixed types of conditional sentences.

1. I had a sandwich for lunch. If I (have) a proper lunch, I (not feel) so hungry now. 2. He told his friend, "I'm not feeling very well. I (not be) here today if I (not promise) to come." 3. I can hardly keep my eyes open. If I (go) to bed earlier last night, I (not be) so tired now. 4. He looked at his watch while he was driving and thought, "If I (not stop) to get petrol, I (be) home now." (use *'might'*) 5. If Jack (not hurt) his ankle yesterday, he (play) football this afternoon. (use *'could'*) 6. He wasn't a very happy man, and he often said, "If I (follow) my father's advice, I (be) much happier now." (use *'might'*)

Ex. 15. (**C**) Supply the necessary forms for the verbs given in brackets in the following sentences of unreal condition.

1. "Are you still thinking of going on that cruise?" – "It (may be) enjoyable," he said, "if one (to have) just the right person to go with." 2. It (to be) fun if Roberta (to write) a book. 3. I never tried to understand my brother. If I (to try) I (may stop) him from going away. 4. If I (to be) you, Meg, I (not to let) myself believe this hateful gossip. 5. I (to hate) myself if I (to deceive) him. 6. He said he had no pain, and if it (not to be) for the doctor, he (to get up) and (to go) home. 7. She (can go) to Cambridge if she (to want). She had been offered a scholarship. 8. You (to be) horrified if I (to tell) you what I have had to go through. 9. I'm glad I wasn't at home. He (not to get) much help if he (to ask) me. 10. The house looked awful. If I (to be) given to crying I (may cry). 11. "No, I won't tell you," she said. "It (not to be) fair to them if it just (to turn) out to be gossip." 12. It (may be) fatal if she (to learn) the truth. 13. "May I read this?" – "I (not to bother) if I (to be) you." 14. If I (to keep) to my original plan I (to miss) the whole affair. 15. Alice thought it (may be) nice if you (can join) us. 16. It (to look) silly if I (to tell) them the truth. 17. If I (to be) you, I (to try) to rise above it. 18. If I (to be) there, of course, I (to do) something. 19. If it (not to be) for the children I (to leave) you tomorrow. 20. If I (to be) a painter, I (to choose) an entirely different scenery.

(From "An English Grammar Practice Book" by I.P. Krylova)

Ex. 16. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences into English, using **but for + noun/pronoun.**

I

1. Если бы не простуда, я бы тоже поехал. 2. Если бы не плохая дорога, мы бы уже давно приехали. 3. Если бы не она, они никогда бы не ссорились. 4. Если бы не этот юноша, ребенок утонул бы. 5. Если бы не ваша помощь, она бы не догнала группу. 6. Если бы не его диагноз, ее не оперировали бы вовремя. 7. Если бы не погода, мы бы прекрасно провели лето. 8. Это была бы неплохая работа, если бы не орфографические ошибки.

II

1. Если бы не шрам на щеке, я бы его не узнал. 2. Если бы не этот звонок, это был бы прекрасный вечер. 3. Мы бы добрались туда вовремя, если бы не несчастный случай. 4. Если бы не тесные (tight) туфли, я бы получил огромное удовольствие от прогулки. 5. Если бы не ее усталые глаза, вы бы никогда не дали ей больше 30. 6. Если бы не я, ты бы забыл об этом. 7. Если бы не ты, я бы благополучно сидела сейчас дома. 8. Если бы не дети, я бы тоже поехала с вами. 9. Если бы не его нога, он тоже принял бы участие в этой игре.

Ex. 17. (**C**) Translate into English.

1. Даже если бы вы позвонили мне вчера, я бы не смог прийти. 2. В зале было так много народу, что я не смог бы его найти. 3. Даже если бы вы предупредили меня, я бы не успел его повидать. 4. Я не мог бы поговорить с ним, даже если бы я его видел вчера. 5. Даже если бы он очень изменился, я бы узнал его. 6. Если бы вам задали этот вопрос, сумели бы вы на него ответить? 7. Если бы станция не была так далеко, мы бы донесли вещи сами. 8. Он ни за что не оставил бы товарищей в беде, даже если бы ему пришлось рисковать жизнью. 9. Если не застанешь никого из нас дома, оставь записку. 10. Даже если бы ему ничего не сказали, он бы все равно догадался в чем дело. 11. Если бы не цейтнот (timetrouble), он мог бы выиграть партию. 12. Если он станет отказываться, я постараюсь убедить его.

Ex. 18. (**A**) Dictation–translation.

1. Если мы не найдем такси, мы опоздаем на поезд. 2. Если бы ты слушал внимательно, ты бы все понял. 3. Если бы не было ветра, мы бы пошли кататься на лыжах. 4. Если бы я был врачом, я бы помог вам. 5. Если магазины будут открыты, купи что-нибудь на завтрак. 6. Если бы ты пригласил ее на вечеринку, она бы пришла с удовольствием. 7. Если бы ты читал газеты, ты бы знал последние новости. 8. Если бы Бетси не была занята сегодня, мы бы пошли на концерт. 9. Я не закончу эту работу к вечеру, даже если вы мне поможете. 10. Будь я на вашем месте, я бы пошел раньше.

Ex. 19. (**B, C**) Dictation–translation.

1. Если бы дорога была лучше, мы бы доехали значительно быстрее. 2. В случае, если он не придет, я зачитаю его доклад. 3. Как бы вы решили эту проблему, если бы вам пришлось заняться ею? 4. Если бы он поступил в институт четыре года назад, он бы сейчас уже закончил его. 5. Если бы не случай, он никогда не узнал бы об этом.

5. Если бы она вчера достала билет, то завтра бы уехала. 7. Если бы не наш учитель, я бы не узнала так много интересного. 8. Если бы он не проглядел (overlook) этой ошибки, он бы теперь не переделывал весь проект сначала. 9. Если бы мне довелось писать статью на эту тему, я бы не стал приводить (cite) столько цитат. 10. Если бы я хорошо ходил на лыжах, я бы обязательно принял участие в соревнованиях.

1.1 REVISION

Ex. 20. (**B**) Supply the necessary forms for the verbs given in brackets.

1. If I (to realise) it was to be like this, I (not to come). 2. If he (not to tell) us that himself I never (to believe) that. 3. He (to agree) never with you, even if he (be) wrong. 4. I (to be) grateful if you (to keep) the news to yourself. 5. If anyone (to ask) me what his specific gift was, I (not to know) how to answer. 6. She said she (to be) pleased if my mother (to allow) me to spend a month with them. 7. Mary is staying with them. I think it (to be) a good thing if you (to come) and (to see) her. 8. If we ever (to happen) to meet again I (to act) as if this letter never (to write).

Ex. 21. (**B, C**) Replace the infinitives in brackets by the correct form of the verb.

1. If it (to be) all the same to me, I (not to come) and (to talk) with you. 2. If there (to be) some more of us, it (to take) only a few days to get through with it. 3. If anyone (to call), I shall give him the telephone number so that he (to get in touch) with you. 4. Leave a message for me if you (not to find) me in. 5. He (not to understand) it even if he (to be given) a broad hint which none other would miss. 6. If you (to come across) an expression that you do not know, write it out, please. 7. You (not to find) the house even if you (to ask) for directions: it has been pulled down recently.

Ex. 22. (**C**) Supply the necessary forms for the verbs given in brackets in the following conditional sentences referring to the future.

1. If Ed (to learn) about it, he probably never (to speak) to me again. 2. I (to be) in the drawing-room in case there (to be) a telephone call for me. 3. He wondered how he (to feel) if his former wife (to come) into the room. 4. Philip says they (to miss) me if I (to leave) before their wedding. 5. In case any crisis (to arise), let me know. 6. You (to do) it differently, if you (have to do) it over again? 7. If this (to be) our last meeting for some time, I (not to like) you to remember this talk. 8. It (to be) awkward if she (to refuse) to co-operate. 9. What his mother and father (to think) if they (to hear) of what he has done? 10. If the situation (not to change) by Saturday I (to be) in trouble. 11. I (not to be) surprised if he (to offer) an important post under the next government.

Ex. 23. (**C**) Translate into English.

I

1. Если бы не ваша помощь, я не смог бы закончить работу вчера. 2. Если бы он пришел вовремя, этого могло бы не случиться. 3. Если бы пошел дождь, я бы промокла до костей, так как на мне было очень легкое платье. 4. Если бы вы действительно

любили читать, вы всегда бы нашли время для чтения. 5. Куда бы ты пошел, если бы не шел дождь? 6. В случае, если пойдет дождь, я останусь дома. 7. Если бы я сказал что-нибудь подобное твоей тетушке, она сочла бы меня сумасшедшим. 8. Я буду у себя дома на случай, если ты передумаешь. 9. Возможно, что он чувствовал бы и вел бы себя иначе, если бы обстоятельства были иными. 10. Если бы ты не был так занят, мы могли бы пойти куда-нибудь пообедать. 11. Если бы у нас не было багажа, мы могли бы дойти до станции пешком. 12. Вы бы чувствовали себя лучше, если бы не ложились спать так поздно (to keep late hours). 13. Мы бы не опоздали на поезд, если бы взяли такси. 14. Мы могли бы пойти на каток, если бы не было так холодно. 15. Пьеса понравилась бы мне больше, если бы она не была такой длинной. 16. Вы бы себя хорошо сегодня чувствовали, если бы вчера приняли лекарство. 17. Если бы я был на вашем месте, я бы больше проводил времени на открытом воздухе. 18. Вы бы лучше знали язык, если бы читали книги в оригинале. 19. Если бы не моя болезнь, я бы уже окончил университет. 20. Вы бы не разбили вазу, если бы были осторожны. 21. Мы, возможно, не заблудились бы, если бы ночь не была такой темной. 22. Я вернусь в шесть, если меня не задержат в университете. 23. Если бы не дождь, мы могли бы поехать за город. 24. Вы были бы уже здоровы сейчас, если бы вовремя обратились к врачу. 25. Если бы не его болезнь, семья переехала бы в город.

II

1. Если бы миссис Копперфильд не имела намерения выйти замуж, она бы не послала Дэвида к мистеру Пеготи. 2. Дэвид часто думал о том, что, если бы не мистер Пеготи, Эмили была бы несчастным бездомным ребенком. 3. Дэвид сказал Пеготи: "Я думаю, что ваш брат очень добрый; он бы не удочерил (to adopt) маленькую Эмили, если бы не был таким добрым человеком." 4. Маленькая Эмили часто говорила Дэвиду, что если бы случилось так, что она бы стала богатой дамой, она бы подарила мистеру Пеготи золотые часы, серебряную трубку и целый ящик денег. 5. Дэвид не знал, что его мать вышла замуж за мистера Мердстона. Если бы он знал, он не возвращался бы домой в таком хорошем настроении. 6. Если бы мистер Мердстон сказал Дэвиду хоть одно ласковое слово (kind), мальчик бы, возможно, полюбил его. 7. "Как бы мы были сейчас счастливы, если бы матушка не вышла замуж за мистера Мердстона," – часто думал Дэвид. 8. Дэвид был способный мальчик и мог бы хорошо учиться, если бы на уроках не присутствовали Мердстоны.

(From "English Grammar Exercises"
by Kaushanskaya V.L. a. o.)

1.2 TEST

(**A, B**)

1. Не волнуйся, если я потеряю перчатки, я куплю новые.
2. Если бы они были здесь сейчас, я поговорил бы с ними.
3. Мы бы никогда не познакомились, если бы он не пригласил нас на свой день рождения.
4. Если у него будет высокая температура, пошлите за доктором.
5. Если бы я больше зарабатывал (earn), я бы ездил на юг каждый год.
6. Если бы я не был учителем, у меня не было бы такого длинного отпуска.
7. Если бы я тогда хорошо знал английский, меня бы взяли на работу в эту компанию.
8. Если бы вы больше занимались, вы бы не провалили экзамен (fail at) сегодня.

9. Если бы не карта, мы бы не нашли дорогу.
10. Если бы не сигнал тревоги (alarm), я бы не знал, что в отеле пожар.
11. Если бы вы сообщили заранее, я бы обязательно пришел сегодня.
12. Если бы у меня тогда был выбор, я бы сейчас не работал на заводе.

2. MAKING A WISH

You can express wishes about the present, past and future. We use *"wish"* to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it to be.

I wish wished	– I **were/was** beautiful. – *Как бы мне хотелось быть* красивой. – we **knew** Sue's address. – *Как жаль*, что мы *не знаем* адреса Сью. – it **wasn't raining**. – *Жаль*, что *идет* дождь. – you **didn't work** so much. – *Я бы не хотела*, чтобы вы так много *работали*.	**PRESENT**
	– I **had brought** my camera. – *Жаль*, что я не *взял* с собой фотоаппарат. – the hotel **had been** better. – *Жаль* только, что гостиница *была* такой плохой.	**PAST**
	– they **could come** to see us tomorrow. – *Как жаль*, что они *не смогут* зайти к нам завтра.	**FUTURE**
	*– someone **would answer** that telephone! – *Да снимите уж* кто-нибудь трубку! – the music **would stop**! – *Когда же прекратится* эта музыка! – you **would give** her my message. – *Не могли бы* вы *передать* ей мою просьбу.	**complaints** **annoyance** **request**

* It is possible only if the subject of the principal clause (I wish) is not the same as the subject of the object clause (*he, you, it* would do it).

Here are some more examples, underneath each there is a sentence expressing the same wish in the past.

a) I **wish** I **knew** how to drive a car.
I **wish** I **had known** how to drive a car in 1975.

b) I **wish** today **was** a holiday.
I **wish** yesterday **had been** a holiday.

c) I **wish** I **could travel** round the world.
I **wish** I **could have travelled** round the world when I **was** a young man. (*The speaker is not young, so he is speaking about the past.*)

It is rendered into Russian as follows:

❑ I wish he were here.	*(Как) жаль,* что его нет с нами. *(Как) мне хотелось бы,* чтобы он был с нами. *Хорошо было бы,* чтобы он был здесь.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (B, C)

I. Read these sentences, the words in brackets make the meaning fuller.

a) I wish I knew how to drive a car. (At the time of speaking, the speaker doesn't know how to drive a car.)
Or: I don't know how to drive a car. I wish I did.

b) I wish today was a holiday. (But today is not a holiday.)

c) I wish I had more time to read. (At the time of speaking the speaker hasn't got much time to read.)

d) I wish I could travel round the world. (At the time of speaking, the speaker can't travel round the world. Perhaps he hasn't got enough money, or time.)

e) The father told his children, "I wish you wouldn't make so much noise. I've got a headache." (when the father says this, his children are making a lot of noise.)

II. Add to each of the following examples 2 sentences, both beginning: "I wish ... ."

Example 1: I don't understand this question.
Answer: I wish I did. I wish I understood this question.

Example 2: It's still raining.
Answer: I wish it wasn't. I wish it wasn't still raining.

Example 3: My father can't give me more pocket money.
Answer: I wish he could. I wish he could give me more pocket money.

1. My brother doesn't have a very long holiday. 2. I can't play the piano. 3. My tooth is aching. 4. I sometimes make careless mistakes. 5. He's not coming to see me today. 6. I can't swim well. 7. I don't know how to answer this question. 8. He always drives too fast. 9. I don't speak English fluently. 10. I can't go to the cinema this evening. 11. The teacher gives us a lot of homework. 12. My father doesn't come home from work early. 13. I live a long way from the Institute. 14. Our television set is broken. 15. I can't sell my old bicycle.

Ex. 2. (**B, C**) Practise the following according to the models.

Model 1: A. I know five languages.
B. I wish I knew five languages. *(stress on the second "I")*
Or: B. If only I knew five languages! *(this form is much more dramatic and less generally useful then the "I wish" form)*

1. I have a flat here.
2. I live near my work.
3. I have plenty of time for reading.
4. I understand it.
5. My son writes every week.
6. My house looks out on a park.
7. I can take a day off any time.

Model 2: A. I asked Bill.
B. I wish you'd asked Tom too.
Or: B. If only you'd asked Tom too. *("had" is normally contracted here)*

1. I invited Paul.
2. I stopped Mary.
3. I rang Ann.
4. I wrote to Alex.
5. I spoke to John.
6. I warned Philip.
7. I voted for Peter.

Model 3: Take more care. – *I wish you would take more care.*
Don't shout at me. – *I wish you wouldn't shout at me.*

1. Don't throw rubbish on the floor.
2. Listen to me.
3. Don't waste so much time.
4. Try to answer my questions.
5. Get up earlier.
6. Don't be so impatient.
7. Look where you are going.
8. Speak more clearly.
9. Don't open the windows.
10. Don't walk so fast.
11. Write more carefully.
12. Don't come into the room without knocking.
13. Help me to move this cupboard.
14. Keep quiet.

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) Add to each of the following a sentence, beginning: *"I wish ..."*. The words in brackets will help you to form your sentences.

1. We lost the game yesterday. (win) 2. I sat at the back of the hall, and couldn't hear his speech very well. (every word) 3. The sea is rough, we can't sail to the island. (calm) 4. There were no taxis, so I had to walk from the station. (find) 5. I went to bed very late last night, and I'm half asleep this morning. (so late) 6. I could only answer three of the questions

at the last examination. (all of them) 7. The box was heavy, I couldn't carry it. (help me) 8. My father gave me some good advice, but I didn't take it. (his advice) 9. One of my friends went to London for a holiday last summer, but I couldn't go. (with him) 10. Why didn't you watch the cat? It ate all the fish. I'm so angry with you. (more attentive) 11. There was so much noise in the streets last night that I couldn't sleep well. (better) 12. There was a very good film on last week, but I didn't see it. (read the program) 13. We went for a picnic yesterday, but it rained all the time. (so hard) 14. I was lazy and wasted my time when I was at school. (harder) 15. I didn't understand what he said yesterday (louder) 16. This house is very nice and comfortable. I'd like to buy it, but it is very expensive. (less expensive)

Ex. 4. (**C**) Rewrite the following, using a *"wish"* construction (phrases in brackets should be omitted).

1. I'm sorry I don't live near my work. *I wish I lived near my work.*
2. I'm sorry I don't know Finnish.
3. I'm sorry I didn't book a seat.
4. I'm sorry I can't drive.
5. I'd like you to keep quiet. (You are making so much noise that I can't think.)
6. It's a pity he didn't work harder during the term.
7. I'm sorry you didn't see it.
8. It's a pity you are going tonight.
9. I'd like you to wait for me (even though you are ready to start now).
10. I'm sorry I didn't bring a map.
11. I'm sorry I didn't know you were coming.
12. I'm sorry I can't swim.
13. I'm sorry you aren't coming with us.

Ex. 5. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Жаль, что сегодня идет дождь. Если бы погода была солнечной, мы бы смогли провести день в лесу. 2. Я не знаю, где он сейчас живет. Если бы я знал его адрес, я бы обязательно ему написал. 3. Жаль, что я уже вернул вчера в библиотеку учебник. Если бы я знал, что он тебе нужен, я бы принес тебе его. 4. Жаль, что я не живу поблизости от института. 5. Почему вы не попросили тогда меня вам помочь? Я бы обязательно вам помог, если бы вы попросили меня об этом. 6. Жаль, что вы не посмотрели этот фильм. Он довольно долго демонстрировался в кинотеатрах Москвы. 7. Я люблю читать, но у меня мало свободного времени. Если бы у меня было больше времени, я бы смог больше читать. 8. Жаль, что я не смог пойти в театр с вами в прошлую субботу. Если бы я не был занят, я бы обязательно пошел.

3. REVISION

Ex. 6. (**C**) Translate into English.

1. Жаль, что вы пришли так поздно. 2. Обидно, что мы ушли до его прихода. 3. К сожалению, они еще ничего не знают. 4. К сожалению, они уже знают об этом. 5. Жаль, что он такой легкомысленный. 6. Жаль, что он не очень серьезен. 7. Я теперь

жалею, что не послушал его совета. 8. Мне бы хотелось посмотреть этот фильм еще раз. 9. Я бы хотел, чтобы вы все-таки прочли эту книгу. 10. Жаль, что вы не пришли пораньше. 11. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы вы еще раз обдумали мое предложение. 12. Обидно, что мы не дождались его прихода. 13. Жаль, что мы так и не встретились перед отъездом. 14. Я теперь жалею, что последовал его совету. 15. Лучше бы ты не был так упрям и послушал нас. 16. Он пожалел, что пришел и привел с собой друга. 17. На твоем месте я бы не стал делать этого. 18. Если бы он пришел вовремя, этого могло и не случиться. 19. Если бы не ты, я не знаю, что бы я тогда сделал. 20. Если бы ты не был так занят, мы могли бы пойти куда-нибудь пообедать.

4. TESTS

I

1. Если бы не его лукавая улыбка, я бы искренне поверил ему.
2. Если бы я был художником, я бы нарисовал портрет этого человека.
3. Вы бы пошли куда-нибудь сегодня вечером, если бы я пригласил вас?
4. Если бы мы знали, что вам нужна эта книга, мы бы захватили ее с собой.
5. Если он станет отказываться, я постараюсь убедить его.
6. Жаль, что я не могу прочесть эту книгу в оригинале.
7. Вы жалели, что не воспользовались такой возможностью?
8. Жаль, что у нас мало времени.
9. Жаль, что вы не обращаете внимания на свое произношение.
10. Хоть бы он перестал курить в комнатах!

II

1. Они бы заметили эту ошибку, если бы были более внимательны.
2. Будь я на вашем месте, я бы пошел пораньше, чтобы застать его.
3. Что бы вы сказали, если бы я спросил вашего совета?
4. Если бы не важность этого дела, я бы остался дома.
5. Если не застанешь нас дома, оставь записку.
6. Я сожалею, что не смогу пойти завтра на вашу лекцию.
7. Мой брат сожалел, что не присутствовал при проведении этого опыта.
8. Жаль, что ты не сказал мне этого сразу.
9. Жаль, что он не говорит по-английски.
10. Какое красивое платье. Жаль, что у меня нет такого.

III

1. Если бы я жил в Москве, я бы часто ходил в музеи.
2. Что мы будем делать, если они опоздают?
3. Если бы он не был таким рассеянным, он был бы отличным студентом.
4. Если бы вы позвонили вчера, я бы сегодня принес вам эту книгу.
5. Если бы не моя работа, я бы с удовольствием сам был вашим гидом.
6. Как бы я хотела пойти на эту вечеринку! Она должна быть очень веселой.
7. Жаль, что вы не обратили внимания на его предупреждение.
8. Мы пожалели, что не последовали его совету.
9. Как бы я хотела, чтобы они вернулись к Рождеству.
10. Хоть бы кто-нибудь взял с собой карту!

MODAL VERBS

1. DEFINITION

Modal verbs are used to show the speaker's attitude towards the action. We use them with other verbs. There are 10 modals: ***can, may, must, shall, should, will, would, ought to, need, dare.*** Modal verbs are not "complete" verbs. They are called defective because they lack (except *dare* and *need*) component tenses, the passive voice and have some other peculiarities:

1. We can't use them as "to"-infinitives: *to go, to speak.*
2. We don't use the "to"-infinitives after modals:
   - ❑ You **mustn't phone** now. It's late.
3. There is no *-(e)s* in the 3rd person singular:
   - ❑ The boss **can see** you now.

*In their **first use** modal verbs have basic meanings which are given in the dictionaries:*

can/could – ability	❑ *I can lift 25 kg / I can type.*
may/might – permission	❑ *You may leave early.*
shall/will/would – prediction	❑ *It will rain soon.*
should/ought to – duty	❑ *You should do as you are told.*
must – total obligation	❑ *You must be quiet.*
needn't – no obligation	❑ *You needn't wait.*

The second use of modal verbs is to express degrees of certainty or uncertainty.

QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVES

Can you play chess?
Could you swim when you were a child?
I **can't** understand a word.
Must I go there now?

THE CONTRACTED FORMS

can't [kɑ:nt]
couldn't [kudnt]
needn't [ni:dnt]
shouldn't [ʃudnt]
oughtn't [ɔ:tnt]
mayn't [meɪnt]
mustn't [mʌsnt]

2. CAN

FORMS AND MEANINGS

MODAL VERB / Equivalent	PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
can ***to be able to ...***	***can*** ***am*** ***is*** ***are*** | able to ...	***could*** ***was*** ***were*** | able to ...	— ***will be*** able to ...

IN ITS FIRST MEANING *"CAN"* EXPRESSES:

1. *Mental, physical, circumstantial ability*	**Can** you **lift** this box? He **can solve** the most difficult problems. They **can get** there by bus.
2. *Permission* **можете** + *инф.*	You **can go** now. You **can play** with the boys here.
3. *Request*	**Can** you **do** me a favour? **Could** you **get** me a glass of water?
4. *Prohibition* **нельзя** + инф.	You **can't cross** the street here.

NOTES:

1. We use *could/couldn't* to describe *"general ability"* in the past:

- ❑ I **could run** very fast when I was a boy.
- ❑ I **could read** when I was 5.

But if we mean that someone *managed to* do something in the particular situation, you have to use:

was/were able to do smth (not could)

- ❑ The fire spread throughout the building very quickly but everyone **was able to escape (= managed to escape).**
- ❑ They didn't want to come with us at first but in the end we **were able (= managed) to persuade** them.

was/were able to = managed "смог", "удалось"

The negative *couldn't* is possible in all situations:

- ❑ My grandfather **couldn't swim.**
- ❑ We tried hard but we **couldn't persuade** them.

2. We use *could (do)* in a number of ways:

a) it is a past of *can (do)*, expressing general ability in the past:

- ❑ My grandfather **could speak** five languages.

b) sometimes we use *could* to speak about possible future actions. In this case it has a present or future meaning:

- ❑ What **shall** we **do** this evening?
  We **could go** to the cinema.
  Мы *могли бы* пойти в кино.
- ❑ When you go to New York, you **could stay** with Linda.
  ... ты *могла бы* остановиться у Линды.

3. The past of *could (do)* is *could have (done)*. We use *could have (done)* to say that we had the ability or opportunity to do something but did not do it:

- ❑ We didn't go out last night. We **could have gone** to the cinema but we decided to stay at home.
  ... *могли бы* пойти в кино, но решили остаться дома.
- ❑ Why did you stay at a hotel in New York? You **could have stayed** with Linda.

4. We often use *can* + *verb* in place of the simple present with the verbs of perception:

- ❑ **I can see** a bird in that tree. (= I see)
- ❑ **Can** you **see** it? (Do you see it?)
- ❑ I looked up but **couldn't see** anything. (= didn't see)
- ❑ **I can smell** something burning.
- ❑ **I can understand** what he means.
- ❑ **I couldn't understand** what he said.
- ❑ **I can't see** anyone.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Explain the meaning of "can" (ability, permission, request, prohibition, possible action) in the following sentences.

1. She is unwell, she *can't* leave her room. 2. *Can* I smoke here, Mrs Right? 3. The teacher said they *could* all go home. 4. A policeman arrived and told him he *couldn't* park there. 5. My son is not in town; but he'll be here before long. – *Can* I give him any message? 6. We *can* discuss it now. 7. I *could* never understand what made her behave as she did. 8. If you are tired you *can* lie on the sofa for a bit. 9. "Life," the old man said, "*can* only be understood when you are old. Now I see all the mistakes I *could have avoided.*" 10. We are in charge of this great business. We *cannot* leave our responsibility to others. 11. He was surprised that she *could* paint so well. 12. She is not married though she *could* marry anybody she chose.

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Fill in the spaces with *"will be able to"* or *"will not (won't) be able to"*.

1. When her arm is better, she _____ play the piano again. 2. I'm sorry, but I _____ come to your birthday party next week. 3. He _____ eat everything when the doctor allows him. 4. My sister _____ go out to dances until she is seventeen. 5. Why do you sit at the back of the class if you can't hear well? You _____ hear better if you sit in the front. 6. I'm too busy to have a holiday this year, but I hope I _____ have a long holiday next year. 7. The train leaves at five o'clock tomorrow morning. We _____ catch it if we don't get up very early. 8. He was working very hard before he fell ill. He _____ work so hard when he comes out of hospital. 9. Perhaps one day we _____ travel to the Moon. 10. She _____ wear her new dress when it is ready. 11. This is a very difficult problem. I'm afraid you _____ solve it without help. 12. The doctor is very busy; he _____ see any more patients today.

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) Complete the following sentences using *"could"* or *"was/were able to"*.

1. It was a fine day yesterday, so we _____ have a picnic, and we enjoyed it very much. 2. He suddenly felt ill, but he _____ finish his speech, although at the end he could hardly stand. 3. He spoke very little French when he left school, but he _____ understand the language. 4. I got to the station at 9.50 a.m. and _____ catch the 9.55 a.m. train. I was very pleased I didn't have to wait for the next train. 5. He has always been good at Math's. But even he _____ solve this difficult problem. 6. The town was full of visitors, and we didn't know where we would spend the night, but at last we _____ find two vacant rooms in a small hotel. 7. Before his illness, he _____ work fourteen hours a day if he had to. 8. He was very strong; he _____ ski all day and dance all night. 9. I was a long way from the stage. I _____ see all right but I _____ not hear very well. 10. We _____ borrow umbrellas, so we didn't get wet. 11. When the garage had repaired our car we _____ continue our journey. 12. When I arrived everyone was asleep. Fortunately I _____ wake my sister and she let me in.

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Translate the words in brackets.

1. Of course, I (могу) translate this article.
2. I think I (мог бы) show you how to do it.
3. You (можно) go and tell her about it.
4. (Можно) I see the doctor now?
5. He (мог бы помочь) you but he didn't want to bother.
6. You (можете) easily get there in 20 minutes.
7. You (сможете) do it directly on return.
8. (Можно) I have some cream with my tea?
9. You (нельзя) discuss the subject with your friends.
10. She was in a hurry, she (не могла) wait for us.
11. There is a sign. You (нельзя) take pictures here.
12. The swimmer was very tired but he (смог) reach the shore.
13. Before her illness, she (могла) work fourteen hours a day.
14. When they buy a car, they (смогут) visit their friends more often.

Ex. 5. Translate the sentences into English.

I. (**A, B**)
1. Он сможет говорить по-французски свободно (fluently), когда вернется из Парижа. 2. Можно мне взять твою ручку? – Да, пожалуйста. 3. Вы умеете кататься на коньках? 4. Когда он был молодым, он мог пройти 20 километров в день. 5. Никто не мог мне помочь. 6. Ты сможешь сделать эту работу завтра? 7. Я умел плавать, когда мне было пять лет. 8. Ты мог бы перевести этот текст? 9. Эту книгу можно купить в любом магазине. 10. Мы сможем поехать в горы в следующем году.

II. (**B, C**)
1. Я хорошо знал эту страну, и поэтому я смог посоветовать ей, какие достопримечательности посмотреть. 2. Несмотря на шторм, он смог доплыть до берега. 3. Он не мог показать нам расчеты, так как они не были готовы. 4. В комнате темно, я не могу найти свои вещи. 5. Можно мне чаю? 6. Я могу вернуться на автобусе. 7. Морис был настолько безграмотным, что он просто не мог написать ни одного

слова этого доклада. 8. Он даже не представлял, что она может так хорошо рисовать. 9. Там было так душно, что мы едва могли дышать. 10. Почему ты не можешь признать, что был неправ? 11. Вы можете доказать его невиновность? 12. Можно повесить это объявление в коридоре?

THE SECOND WAY WE USE *'CAN'* IS TO EXPRESS *strong doubt* or *astonishment*:

Неужели разве **Can/could** he + **inf**
- **do** (generally) — Present
- **be doing** (at the moment) — Present
- **have done** (then) — Past
- **have been doing** (for 4 hours already) — Past

- ❑ **Can** he **know** it? – *Неужели* он знает это?
- ❑ **Can** he **be working** now? – *Неужели* он сейчас работает?
- ❑ **Can** he **have been waiting** for us all this time? – *Неужели* он ждал нас все это время?

Не может быть, чтобы; вряд ли He **can't** + **inf**
- **do** — Present
- **be doing** — Present
- **have done** — Past
- **have been doing** — Past

- ❑ "Oh!" Cried Fleur: "You **can't have done it**!" – *Не может быть*, чтобы вы это сделали!
- ❑ She **can't be still waiting**. – *Не может быть*, чтобы она все еще ждала вас.

WE CAN EXPRESS STRONG DOUBT ABOUT NEGATIVE STATEMENTS:

"Неужели он не...", "он не мог не ...", "не может быть, чтобы он не..."

Model:

1. *He didn't notice you.*
a) **Can/could** he **have failed** to notice you? – *Неужели* он *не* заметил ...
b) He **can't have failed** to notice you. – Он *не мог не* заметить ...
Не может быть, чтобы он не заметил ...

2. *He doesn't like it here.*
Can he **dislike** it here? – *Неужели* ему *не* нравится?
He **can't dislike** it here. – *Не может быть,* чтобы ему здесь не нравилось.

3. *He didn't see your letter.*
Can he **have never** got my letter? – *Не может быть, чтобы* он *не* получил моего письма.

Ex. 6. (**B**) Express strong doubt about the statements. Translate the sentences.

Model 1: ❒ He knows English well.
a) *Can (could) he know English well?*
b) *He can't know English well.*
❒ He is waiting for somebody.
a) *Can he be waiting for somebody?*
b) *He can't be waiting for somebody.*

1. He understands every word you say.
2. She is really fond of the child.
3. They know how to get there.
4. She is crying.
5. She is looking for somebody.
6. They are always fighting.
7. But they are very fond of each other.
8. Children like to play here.
9. He is telling the truth.

Model 2: ❒ She knew about it.
a) *Can she have known about it?*
b) *She can't have known anything...*

1. He saw the lion move.
2. There was a public meeting in the town.
3. On Friday morning Bill came to my office.
4. He was dismissed.
5. He has greatly changed.
6. I don't believe it. Phil would have never done such a thing.

Ex. 7. (**B, C**) Express strong doubt. Use the appropriate infinitive.

1. Can it (be) so late now? 2. Can he (tell) the truth then? 3. Surely it can't (be) Jim. I know him quite well. 4. But she can't (say) it. I am sure she didn't mean it. 5. I'll try to do it myself. It can't (be) so difficult after all. 6. Who told you about it? You can't (know) about it before. 7. It seems strange. Can somebody (work) against us? 8. I can't believe it. Can he (resent) it? 9. Could it (be) a joke? She felt rather hurt. 10. You can't (see) him at the meeting. He was ill then. 11. He can't (forget) your address, he has visited you several times. 12. Could they (win) the game? They are just an amateur team.

Ex. 8. (**B, C**) Translate into Engish using the verb *"can"*.

1. Не может быть, чтобы он опоздал. Он всегда такой пунктуальный. 2. Он не мог прочитать эту книгу так быстро; она трудна для него. 3. Вряд ли она забыла об этом; я об этом ей напоминала только вчера. 4. Неужели вы не помните, что я возвратил вам эту книгу? 5. Разве мог кто-нибудь подумать, что эта команда займет первое место? 6. Неужели они проиграли? 7. Не мог он этого сказать. 8. Неужели было так холодно? 9. Не может быть, чтобы он был дома сейчас. 10. Неужели он так хорошо знает китайский язык? 11. Неужели он отказался поехать туда? 12. Не

может быть, чтобы он потерял эти документы. 13. Не может быть, чтобы они уехали, не попрощавшись с нами.

Ex. 9. (**C**) Express strong doubt about these negative statements.

Model: ❑ He didn't notice you.
Can he have failed to notice you? – *Неужели* он не заметил ...
He can't have failed to notice you. – Он *не мог не* заметить ...
❑ He doesn't like it here.
Can he dislike it here?
He can't dislike it here.

1. You didn't understand me.
2. She didn't like the play.
3. They don't trust him.
4. They didn't notice the mistake.
5. They didn't receive the telegram in time.
6. They didn't realise the importance of the event.
7. She didn't see you.

Ex. 10. (**C**) Translate into English.

1. Неужели вы его не увидели? 2. Не мог он этого не заметить. 3. Неужели вы об этом не знали? 4. Не может быть, чтобы он не одобрял вашего решения. 5. Не может быть, чтобы она вам об этом не рассказала. 6. Неужели он верит (не верит) этому? 7. Не может быть, чтобы ей не нравились эти картины. 8. Не может быть, чтобы я неправильно вас понял. 9. Не может быть, чтобы она не нашла вашего дома. 10. Неужели вы не нашли мою книгу?

2.1 REVISION

Ex. 11. Translate into English.

I. (**A**)

1. Ты можешь говорить по-французски? – Нет, только по-английски.
2. Ты можешь кататься на лыжах? – Да, но я не смогу принять участие в соревнованиях (competition).
3. Я не смог перевести этот текст, хотя вы объяснили все правила (rules).
4. Ты можешь починить мой телевизор? – Нет, я не умею чинить телевизоры.
5. Ты представляешь, моя мама сама смогла починить утюг.
6. Здесь нельзя останавливаться.
7. Можно задать тебе вопрос? – Да, но боюсь, я не смогу на него ответить.
8. Когда мы сдадим экзамены, мы сможем поехать в деревню.
9. Он не смог сдать последний экзамен, он заболел.
10. Вы не можете идти домой, вы не закончили работу. – Я старалась (try hard), но не смогла ее закончить.

II. (B, C)

1. Я не могу закончить работу сегодня.
2. Можете ли вы перевести эту статью на французский язык?
3. Я думаю, что я смогу помочь вам.
4. Он смог починить свой велосипед.
5. Когда он приехал в Лондон, он смог обойтись (manage) без переводчика.
6. В прошлом году он не мог бегло говорить по-английски.
7. Мы смогли закончить работу в пять дней.
8. Не может быть, чтобы там сейчас было холодно.
9. Я боюсь, что он не сможет вернуться вовремя.
10. Неужели они отправили груз пароходом?
11. Я очень рад, что смог помочь ему.
12. Вряд ли он забыл о своем обещании.
13. Я знал, что он сможет сделать эту работу.
14. Разве вам не сообщили о заседании?
15. Эту работу нельзя сделать в такой короткий срок.
16. Неужели вы не узнали меня? Мы учились с вами в одной школе.
17. Эти цифры можно найти в любом справочнике.
18. Не может быть, чтобы он так и не появился (пришел).
19. Мы могли бы отправить этот груз в конце месяца.
20. Неужели твоим родителям не понравилась эта милая девушка?
21. Вы могли бы найти эту книгу в нашей библиотеке, если бы пошли туда вчера.
22. Почему вы не пришли вчера в контору? Вы могли (могли бы) поговорить с директором по этому вопросу.

3. MAY

FORMS AND MEANINGS

MODAL VERB / Equivalent	PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
may	***may***	***might***	–
to be allowed to...	**am / is / *are* allowed to...**	**was / were allowed to...**	***will be allowed to...***

WE USE *MAY/MIGHT:*

1. *to ask permission/ give permission* **(можно)**	**May I borrow** your umbrella, please? **May I see** your garden, please?
2. *to talk about possible happenings* in the Future **(возможно, может быть)**	I'm not sure where to go for my holiday. **I may go** to Italy. (= perhaps *I will go*) The weather forecast is not very good. It **might rain** this afternoon. (= perhaps *it will rain*)

3. to talk about *possible plans* **(могу, возможно)**	I am going to Italy in July. (For sure) I **may/might go** to Italy in July. (it's possible)
4. *reproach* (only *might*) **(мог бы)**	You are becoming forgetful. You **might have reminded** me about it.

NOTES:

1. We also use *can/could* to ask or refuse permission.

Can is the commonest and most informal:

- ❑ You're visiting your friend and want to make some coffee. You say:
  Can I make myself a cup of coffee?

Could is more polite than *can*:

- ❑ **Could I make** a phone call, please?

2. We refer to "some other authority" that gives/refuses permission like this:

- ❑ You **are allowed to/not allowed to**
- ❑ You **are permitted to/not permitted to** — smoke here.
- ❑ You **mustn't/you are forbidden to**

We can ask for permission like this:

- ❑ **Can/could/may/might** I borrow your umbrella?
- ❑ **Do you think I could/might** borrow your umbrella?
- ❑ **I wonder if I could/might** borrow your umbrella?

3. Permission/prohibition in other tenses than Present or Future.

May is not a "complete verb", so we use *to be allowed/to be permitted* to make up the missing parts:

- ❑ The children **were allowed to** watch TV last night.
- ❑ He **has** just **been allowed to** go home after 3 hours at the police station.
- ❑ His doctor **hadn't allowed** him **to** take any exercises in the year before he died.

4. The negative answer to the question containing a request for permission:

1. No, don't, please I'm afraid not.	*Don't* is less strict than *may not*. It is rather *asking* somebody *not to do something.*
2. No, you may not. (нет, нельзя=не смей)	Actually *prohibiting* something.
3. No, you must not. (запрещено, нельзя)	Means that it is not the person who prohibits the action but there are *facts, rules* or *circumstances* prohibiting it.
4. No, you can't. I'm sorry, you can't.	It denotes *the absence of possibility depending on circumstances, rules, laws,* etc.

5. *Might* instead of *may* is used because of the Sequence of Tenses:

- ❑ **May I read** the letter? He asked if he **might read** the letter.

In its **second meaning** *may/might* is used to express uncertainty, supposition implying strong doubt. *May* denoting uncertainty is used with all forms of the infinitive.

Может быть, возможно	He may/might (not) +	inf	be there be waiting	Present
			have left have been sleeping	Past

There is no important difference between *may* and *might* in this meaning. Sometimes *"might"* expresses greater uncertainty than *"may"*:

- He **may/might be** in his office now. (I'm not sure.)
- I can't find my bag anywhere. – You **might have left** it in the shop.
- He **may not have noticed** you in that crowd.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**B, C**) Analyse the meaning of the verb *may*. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I said to Mrs Micawber, "May I ask what you and Mr Micawber intend to do, now that Mr Micawber is out of his difficulties? Have you settled yet?" 2. He said I might come to him any day I liked. 3. I asked if I might bring my wife down next Saturday. 4. If he walks from the station, he may arrive in the course of the next half-hour. If he drives, he may be here any moment. 5. "May I look around?" he asked. 6. It was some special occasion. I don't remember what. It may have been my birthday. 7. He may not have learned the news, that's why he looks as if nothing had happened. 8. Of course I am too young but I try hard, and one day I may achieve something.

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Fill in the blanks with *"can/could"* or *"may/might"* (or the negative forms).

I

1. _____ we leave the room? Is the lesson over? 2. _____ you stand on your head? – I _____ when I was at school but I _____ now. 3. _____I smoke here? – No, you _____, smoking is not allowed. 4. _____ you type? – Yes, I _____ type but I _____ do shorthand. 5. _____ I come in? – Please, do. 6. Where _____ I buy fruit? 7. He _____ answer the teacher's questions yesterday, but he _____ answer the same questions today. 8. _____ I come and see you this evening? – Of course you _____ . 9. When I first went to Spain I _____ read Spanish but I _____ speak it. 10. He said that we _____ use his flat whenever we liked. 11. There was a lot of noise in the street last night, and I _____ sleep. 12. _____ I borrow your umbrella? 13. The boys _____ wait for him, they have no time for that. 14. It's very cold. _____ I shut the windows?

II

1. I _____ be away from home tomorrow.
2. He _____ have been hurt.
3. It _____ or _____ not be true.
4. It was so dark, we _____ see nothing.
5. _____ you lend me a shilling?
6. _____ you hear what he is saying?
7. You _____ walk miles in this district without seeing anybody.
8. _____ this be true?
9. _____ we go to the pictures after we wash up? – Yes, you _____ .
10. Mother says I _____ not go out.

11. Sorry, sir, you _____ smoke here.
12. No, it _____ be so far as all that.
13. _____ I have some more bread?
14. You _____ ask him to be the chairman.
15. The letters _____ have been written in this very house.

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences.

1. Вы, возможно, встретите его на станции.
2. Может быть, он оставил нам записку.
3. Вы, возможно, забыли свои перчатки дома.
4. Она, возможно, поймет это позже.
5. Может быть, дверь была не заперта.
6. Возможно, они не хотят видеть нас.
7. Она, может быть, напишет вам.
8. Она, возможно, все уже забыла.

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Можно мне здесь подождать? – Да, конечно.
2. Ты мог бы остаться дома хотя бы на один вечер.
3. Может быть, он уже ушел.
4. Может быть, он еще ждет.
5. Студенты могут получить эту книгу в библиотеке.
6. Иногда отсюда можно видеть море.
7. Могу я помочь вам?
8. Можно мне пользоваться словарем?
9. Нельзя пользоваться словарем во время контрольной работы.
10. Вы могли бы приходить вовремя. Вы всегда опаздываете.
11. Я не могу вспомнить его адрес. – Неужели ты даже улицу забыл?
12. Здесь нельзя купаться.
13. Давай позвоним Майку, нам может понадобиться его совет.
14. Они, может быть, приедут завтра.

4. MUST

FORMS AND MEANINGS

MODAL VERB / Equivalent	PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
must	**must**	–	–
have to...	**have / has to...**	**had to...**	***will have to...***
be to...	**am / is / are to...**	**was / were to...**	–

"MUST" EXPRESSES:

1. *obligation, necessity* (= have to...) (должен)	Well, it's 10 o'clock, I **must/have to go** now.
2. *a command, an urgent request* (побудительное предложение)	You **must leave** the room at once. Немедленно выйдите из комнаты.
3. *prohibition* (нельзя, запрещается)	You **mustn't speak** to a prisoner in a foreign language.

"TO HAVE TO" EXPRESSES:

obligation or necessity arising out of circumstances (должен = приходится, вынужден)	I **have to get up** at 6 every day. My working day begins at 8. Last night Den suddenly became ill. We **had to call** the doctor.

"TO BE TO" EXPRESSES:

1. *an agreement or arrangement, part of a plan* (должен)	We **were to meet** at the entrance to the theatre at a quarter to nine. They **are to go** to Spain in July.
2. *a strict order/prohibition* (побудительное предложение)	You **are to go** straight to your room. *Сейчас же иди в свою комнату.* You **are not to get** your feet wet. *Не смей* мочить ноги.
3. *something thought as unavoidable* (предстоит, суждено)	Sally wanted Morris to be friendly with her, but evidently it **was not to be.** He went about thinking of his life and what **was to become** of him.

NOTES:

1. The absence of necessity is expressed by *"needn't":*

❑ **Must I go** there tomorrow? → **Yes**, you **must.** / **No**, you **needn't.** (Нет, не нужно)

2. There is sometimes a difference between *"must"* and *"have to"*. With "must" the speaker is giving his own feelings, saying "he" thinks it necessary:

❑ **I must visit** my friend. He is ill.
❑ **I must write** to Ann. I haven't written to her for ages.

3. We can only use *"must"* to talk about the present and future; *"have to"* can be used in three tense forms:

❑ **I had to go** to hospital.
❑ I am afraid I can't come tomorrow. **I will have to** work late.

We use *do/does/did* with *"have to"* in present and past questions and negative sentences:

- ❑ **Did** you **have to** walk all the way home?
- ❑ No, I **didn't have to** walk, I took a tram.

USE OF MODAL VERBS TO EXPRESS NECESSITY

TIME OF THE ACTION	NECESSITY CAUSED BY CIRCUMSTANCES	ABSENCE OF NECESSITY	NECESSITY AS A RESULT OF PLAN, AGREEMENT, GENERAL ARRANGEMENT, TIME-TABLE
PRESENT	You **must hurry**. It's five to ten already. I **have to leave** you now. Here goes the bell. (I have got to leave you now.)	You **needn't** hurry. There is plenty of time. I **don't have to leave** you yet. The bell won't go for another five minutes.	I **am to meet** Mother at the doctor's at five sharp. When **is** the lecture **to begin**?
PAST	I **had to leave** her as the interval was over.	You **needn't have hurried**. There was plenty of time. I **didn't have to leave** her at once, for the interval was only beginning.	I **was to come** to the Institute an hour before the time and wait for her in the hall.
FUTURE	**I'll have to hurry** to catch the five thirty train.	I **won't have to hurry**. There'll be plenty of time.	

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**B**) Translate the sentences, explain the use of *"must"* or *"have to"* in them.

1. I must go and lay the table myself. 2. We had to walk all the way to the station. 3. She had to change her shoes after walking in the garden. 4. She pretended she didn't understand anything. Mother had to tell her plainly what she thought of it. 5. We'll have to run. 6. The shoes are a size too small. I'll have to go to the shop and have them changed. 7. She was running high temperature. I had to put her to bed at once. 8. You'll have to do something about it. 9. Someone will have to stay and warn them.

Ex. 2. (**B, C**) In each of the following sentences the necessity of some action is stated. Use *"to be"* instead of *"must"/"have to"* to show that the action is not only necessary but also expected or planned. Translate the sentences.

1. I must buy a present for her birthday. 2. We had to take the letters to the post-office. 3. I have to make a report at the conference. 4. They must show us how to organise the

work. 5. She had to take this group of children round the picture gallery. 6. We had to start early. 7. I must do the shopping today. 8. I must explain it all to you.

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) Use the following word combinations to compose sentences expressing *order* or *prohibition*. Translate your sentences.

Model: ❑ to do something exactly the way you are told.
order – *You must do it exactly ...*
❑ not to get one's feet wet.
prohibition – *You mustn't get your feet wet.*

1. not to do anything in a hurry;
2. not to breathe a word about something;
3. to give a faithful account of something;
4. to be reasonable about something;
5. not to cry and bother people;
6. not to worry about something;
7. to take every precaution;
8. not to drink with your meals.

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Replace the infinitives in brackets by *"must", "have + infinitive"* if the action is only necessary; by *"be + infinitive"* if it is expected.

1. This is Dora. She (share) your room. 2. I must leave you now. I (do) the cooking. 3. Who (meet) you there? 4. My feet are wet. I (change) my stockings. 5. I'm afraid you (go) there alone, darling. I've such a headache! 6. When the lecture (begin)? 7. Two more apartment houses (be built) here. 8. Well, children, who (do) the dishes to-night? 9. Sorry, I've got to rush. I (meet) mother at the metro station at 6 sharp. 10. You (leave) at six to catch the train. 11. I (write) a letter to my sister. I am worried about her. 12. She (wear) glasses as her eyesight is very weak. 13. It is raining. You (put on) your raincoat. 14. It was planned that we should wait for them after the performance. We (wait) for them at the entrance.

Ex. 5. (**B, C**) Analyse the meaning of the verb *"to have"*.

1. King Lear had three daughters. 2. Have a look at the picture. I think it is a Magritte. 3. I have to answer many letters. 4. I have some information to pass on to you. 5. During our trip we had an accident in which I had my leg badly hurt. 6. He has just come from abroad. 7. You will have to leave at six to catch the train. 8. I have never made a speech in my life.

Ex. 6. (**A, B**) Change the following into the interrogative and negative.

1. Mother has to cook dinner after work. 2. He had to sit up late with this work. 3. You will have to get up very early to-morrow. 4. The girl had to take care of her younger sister and brothers. 5. She will have to do it once over again. 6. These documents have to be filed. 7. They had to cover the whole distance on foot. 8. We will have to speak to him about it.

Ex. 7. Translate the sentences showing the absence of necessity.

1. Ему не надо приходить сюда каждый день. 2. Мне не нужно будет сдавать этот экзамен. 3. Мне не надо было поливать цветы, потому что ночью прошел дождь и

земля была еще мокрая. 4. Тебе нечего торопиться. Она только что позвонила и сказала, что выезжает. 5. Я хорошо отдохнула в воскресенье, так как мне не надо было заниматься. 6. Мне не надо вставать рано сегодня. У меня сегодня выходной день (day off).

Ex. 8. Translate the words in brackets.

1. Не (пришлось) take the documents to the police station. 2. You (должны) try to find the mistake and correct it. 3. If you want to become a good football player you (должны) be an all round athlete. 4. I (вынужден был) read the letter twice before I understood it. 5. When (должны) they dock? Have they written? 6. You (должны) think of others. 7. The lecture (должна) begin at 8 o'clock. 8. It has been arranged that she (должна) come and help the old lady. 9. It is necessary that you should do it. You simply (должны) do it. 10. If you (должен) meet Mother at six, you must hurry.

Ex. 9. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences into English.

I

1. Мне надо видеть его сегодня же. 2. Мне пришлось идти туда самому. 3. Вам придется немного подождать. 4. Когда же он должен прийти? 5. Сейчас же отдай ей мяч. 6. Не смей с ней играть. 7. Вы должны вставать рано каждый день? 8. Мы должны были встретиться в театре. 9. Мне не пришлось ждать его долго. 10. Вам придется поговорить с ней. 11. Им пришлось очень долго идти пешком. 12. Ему надо переписать сочинение. 13. Когда вы должны быть в институте завтра? 14. Мне надо идти туда сейчас?

II

1. Он должен был стать музыкантом. Это было решено еще до его рождения. 2. Вам придется написать ему еще раз. 3. Им пришлось долго ждать автобуса. 4. Я должен был окончить работу вчера, но не смог этого сделать. 5. Чья очередь? Кто должен идти за водой? 6. Тебе придется взять пальто. Становится холоднее. 7. Я должен отвезти брату его вещи. Так мы договорились, когда он уходил. 8. Было уже поздно, и нам пришлось поехать на метро. 9. Подожди немного, я должна дочитать главу до конца. 10. Мне пришлось оставить все и поехать в больницу.11. Вам придется зайти позже. Ее еще нет. 12. Тебе обязательно надо ехать сегодня? 13. Когда он должен приехать? Мы договорились встретиться в восемь. 14. Отец не разрешает ей приходить домой поздно, она должна быть дома к девяти часам каждый вечер. 15. Вчера вечером автобус был полупустой (half empty), и мне не пришлось стоять.

In its second meaning *"must"* denotes probability or supposition bordering on assurance, almost a conviction. In this meaning it is used in affirmative sentences only.

- He **must be** at home at this hour.
- He **must be writing** about his travels.
- He **must have taken** a lot of photos while he was on the islands.

In negative sentences and sentences referring to the future supposition is expressed by means of the modal words ***"evidently", "probably"*** :

- ❑ *Evidently,* she didn't know my address.
- ❑ She will *probably* come tomorrow.
- ❑ She is *not likely* to come so late.

COMPARE THE FOLLOWING PATTERNS:

TIME OF THE ACTION	NECESSITY	NEAR CERTAINTY
PRESENT	**Must wait** *Должен* ждать **Must know** *Должен* знать	**Must be waiting** *Должно быть,* ждет **Must know** *Должно быть*, знает
PAST	**Had to wait** *Должен был* ждать *Пришлось* ждать **Had to know** *Должен был* знать *Надо было* знать	**Must + have been waiting** *Должно быть,* ждал **Must + have waited** *Должно быть,* подождал **Must have known** *Должно быть,* знал
FUTURE	**Shall/will have to wait** *Придется* ждать **Shall/will have to know** *Придется* знать	

EXERCISES

Ex. 10. (A, B) In the following statements of near certainty change the form of the infinitive to refer to the past. Add appropriate time references.

Model:

- ❑ They *must* know him. *Должно быть,* они его *знают.* ⇨ They *must have known* him, *then.* *Должно быть,* они его *знали.*
- ❑ They *must be waiting* for you. *Должно быть,* они *ждут* вас. ⇨ They *must have been waiting* for you *yesterday.* *Должно быть*, они *ждали* вас вчера.

1. It must be raining. 2. She must be pleased about it. 3. She must be really fond of you. 4. They must be always trying to help him. 5. She must know nothing about it. 6. She must be out shopping. 7. This must be the prettiest garden in the village. 8. She must be the youngest child in her class. 9. Somebody must be trying to get you on the phone. 10. The children must be at school now.

Ex. 11. (B, C) Paraphrase the following sentences using *"must + infinitive"* to express near certainty. Use the indefinite infinitive when speaking about the present, the perfect infinitive when speaking about the past.

Model: ❑ Of course, he is somewhere here. – He *must be* somewhere here.
❑ Certainly, she knew that something was wrong. – She *must have known* that something was wrong.

1. I am sure the information was wrong. 2. She was obviously upset by something. 3. Probably, he recognized you by your photo in the papers. 4. He is sure to be in at this time. 5. Of course, she is trying to help you. 6. She is certain to be waiting for you at home. 7. Probably, the play is over by now. 8. There is little doubt that the first experiment failed. 9. No doubt, she knew what she was about to do. 10. I'm sure she is very fond of the child. 11. They are sure to have taken the wrong turning. 12. Probably, the dog was hungry.

Ex. 12. (**B, C**) Open the brackets using the correct form of the infinitive.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. George must (be) pleased that he has passed his examination. 2. I found this baby bird at the foot of the tree. It must (fall) out from a nest. 3. During the storm, the captain was on the bridge the whole time. He must (be) exhausted afterwards. 4. If Fred left here at four o'clock, he must (be) home by now. 5. Look, there's a tree right across the road! So there is. It must (be) blown down by the gale last night. 6. I sat on a seat in the park and now my coat is covered with green stripes. The paint must (be) wet. 7. As soon as I switched on my new electric cooker there was an explosion. There must (be) something wrong with it. 8. I don't know at what time I went to bed last night, but it was late. It must (be) after midnight. 9. Look, the streets are wet; it must (rain) now. 10. He promised to come at six, but he didn't. He must (forget) his promise. 11. I didn't hear the telephone. I must (be) asleep. 12. He must (be) very careless if he makes such mistakes. 13. The baby woke up when she went into the bedroom. She must (make) noise. 14. The taxi-driver got to the airport in half an hour. He must (drive) very fast. 15. He never got the letter. It must (send) to the wrong address.

Ex. 13. (**B, C**) Translate the following negative sentences into English.

Model 1: ❑ Она, *должно быть, не* дала ему возможности возразить.
She must have given him no opportunity to object.

1. Должно быть, он не сделал ошибки. 2. Должно быть, они не обедали. 3. Должно быть, она не имела опыта. 4. Должно быть, он не дал ответа. 5. Должно быть, они не принимают мер. 6. Должно быть, она не обращает внимания на это. 7. Должно быть, у них нет книг. 8. Он, должно быть, не получил ответа. 9. Должно быть, денег за работу они не получили. 10. Она, должно быть, не старалась (take the trouble) сделать это правильно.

Model 2: ❑ *Должно быть,* он об этом не знал.
Evidently, he didn't know about it.
❑ Он, *вероятно*, не знает.
He probably doesn't know.

1. Должно быть, они еще не пришли. 2. Вероятно, они этого не знают. 3. По-видимому, это не было сделано вовремя. 4. Вероятно, это не здесь. 5. Это, должно быть, не заняло много времени. 6. Должно быть, он придет завтра.

Ex. 14. Translate the sentences.

1. Должно быть, он хорошо знает язык. 2. Должно быть, он еще здесь. 3. По-видимому, он унес бумаги с собой. 4. Очевидно, здесь уже кто-то был. 5. Вероятно, они над нами смеются. 6. Должно быть, они тогда жили здесь. 7. Должно быть, идет дождь. 8. Вероятно, дождь уже прекратился. 9. Должно быть, он как раз чинил пробки (fuse).

Ex. 15. (**B, C**) Translate into English using the verb *"to have"* in its modal meaning.

1. Мне сейчас приходится много работать, так как я болела и отстала от группы.
2. Вам придется поговорить с ним лично.
3. Нам пришлось переждать дождь на станции.
4. Я вынужден был извиниться, хотя мне это и было неприятно.
5. Книгу необходимо переплести, иначе некоторые страницы могут потеряться.
6. Вам приходится очень рано вставать, не так ли?

4.1 REVISION

Ex. 16. (**B, C**) Paraphrase the sentence using the verb *"must"*.

1. Probably that building in the distance is the station. 2. The boy was evidently reading something funny. He was smiling all the time. 3. They have most likely not realized what opportunity they were losing. 4. I shan't bother you any longer; no doubt you are tired of my talking. 5. I see something is eating him. He looks worried. 6. It was clear the family were expecting some guests: mother was bustling about the house tidying up the rooms. 7. He surely did not find out the real reason for their silence. 8. I am sure he has got all he needed.

Ex. 17. (**B, C**) Combine the verb *"must"* with the proper form of the infinitive in brackets.

1. I feel I must (to do) something before it is too late. 2. You must (to follow) my advice. There is no other way out for you. 3. He saw an old woman sleeping soundly in Green Park. A shower was falling all the time, she must (to get) drenched to the skin. 4. "The hotels must (to do) a tremendous business," old Jolyon thought. "A few years ago there had been none of these big hotels." Then he thought of his son. "... If Jo were only with him. The boy must (to be) forty by now." 5. She must (to be) angry with you. She does not even look in your direction. 6. She must (to get) angry with me. She left without saying good-bye. 7. Mary must (to be) ill, otherwise she would have come. 8. She turned pale. She must (get frightened).

Ex. 18. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Я должна прочесть эту книгу. 2. Она, должно быть, читает эту книгу. 3. Мама была больна, и мне пришлось готовить обед. 4. Должно быть, она готовила обед, когда пришел брат. 5. Я должен был зайти в деканат. 6. Должно быть, он заходил в деканат. 7. Вы должны поговорить с ней. 8. Должно быть, он сейчас разговаривает по-английски. 9. Мне пришлось написать об этом сестре. 10. Она, должно быть, написала сестре. 11. Она, должно быть, писала сестре, когда вы ее увидели.

Ex. 19. (**C**) Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Она, должно быть, ждет нас в институте. 2. Она должна ждать нас в институте. 3. Доктор сказал, что он должен жить на юге. 4. Он, должно быть, живет на юге. 5. Он должен много читать вслух, чтобы исправить свое произношение. 6. Он, должно быть, много читает вслух; у него хорошее произношение. 7. Я должен оставаться здесь до зимы. 8. Она, должно быть, гостит у своих друзей, так как она писала, что проведет отпуск у них. 9. Они, должно быть, ждут меня, а я никак не могу дать им знать о себе.

10. Книга распродана; надо ее поискать в букинистических магазинах. 11. Он, по всей вероятности, забыл, что обещал прийти. 12. Они, наверно, пишут сочинение уже около двух часов и скоро должны закончить.

Ex. 20. (**C**) Translate into English using the verbs *"must", "to be (to)", "to have (to)".* (Dictation-translation).

1. Сказал ли преподаватель, что мы должны выучить этот текст наизусть? 2. Я не знал, что этот текст не надо учить наизусть. 3. Не шумите: дети, должно быть, спят. 4. Никто, наверно, не сказал ему об этом. 5. Они должны были прийти в 5, а уже 6 часов. 6. Они, наверно, забыли, что должны были прийти в 5 часов. 7. Надеюсь, вам не пришлось долго ждать, да? 8. Надеюсь, нам не придется ждать.

Ex. 21. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Спектакль должен был начаться в шесть часов, но его пришлось отложить, так как один актер заболел. 2. Мне надо было (пришлось) остаться дома вчера, так как у меня было очень много работы. 3. Вы должны вставать рано каждый день? 4. Мы договорились встретиться в театре. Он должен был приехать к половине восьмого и ждать меня у входа. 5. Он вчера был дома, так как ему не нужно было идти в институт. 6. Я вернулся домой раньше обычного, так как мои друзья должны были зайти ко мне в семь часов. 7. Я должен был закончить эту работу вчера, но не смог этого сделать. Мне придётся закончить её сегодня. 8. В котором часу вы должны быть в институте завтра? 9. Вам долго пришлось ждать его? – Мне пришлось ждать его недолго. 10. Директор ещё не пришёл. Он должен быть здесь в 11 часов. Вам придётся подождать немного. 11. Ей пришлось перепечатывать письмо несколько раз. Она, должно быть, устала и сделала много ошибок. 12. Это, должно быть, магазин, там много людей. 13. Вы бледны, вы, вероятно, устали. 14. Вода холодная, озеро, должно быть, очень глубокое. 15. Мне придется выучить это стихотворение к среде. 16. Выхода не было, и ему пришлось заплатить штраф.

5. SHOULD AND OUGHT

There is hardly any difference between these verbs, very often they are interchangeable. There is a difference in construction: *ought* is always followed by the *to-infinitive*. Moral obligation or duty is more often expressed by *ought to*. It is a little stronger than *should*.

FORMS AND MEANINGS

MEANING	EXAMPLES
1. *moral obligation*	A man **should help** his parents when they become old.
2. *advice*	You **should be** more careful.
3. *disapproval*	You **shouldn't treat** me like this.

MEANING	EXAMPLES
4. *criticism* of the past action, disapproval	She was feeling unwell yesterday, she **shouldn't have gone** to her office.
5. *reproach*	You **can't remember** what I said, you **should have listened** more carefully.
6. *regret*	It was his birthday yesterday. I **should have sent** him a birthday card.

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
The policeman said to Tom, "You **should be** more careful when crossing the street."	The policeman told Tom that he **should be** more careful when crossing the street.
The teacher told Jack,"You **ought to help** the old."	The teacher told Jack that he **ought to help** the old.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**B**) Analyse the meaning of the modal verb *"should"* and translate the sentences into Russian.

1. He looked more than ever out of place; he *should have stayed* at home. 2. The children were out dancing when they *should have been learning* their lessons. 3. "It is very wicked of you," she said. "You *ought to be ashamed* of yourself." 4. "I am having trouble with my leg." – "I see. Well, I think you *should go and see* the doctor I know." 5. I'll see and speak to Maurice. He *should not behave* like that. 6. He came out of the water, smiling. "You *should have come* earlier," he said. 7. You *should have chosen* a more suitable time to tell me that dreadful news.

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Put *"should"* or *"shouldn't"* in the spaces. Translate the sentences into Russian. Watch the meaning of *"should"/"shouldn't"*.

1. You _____ work more; you _____ miss the lessons. 2. Mothers _____ look after their children. 3. What are you doing here? You _____ be in bed. It is very late. 4. That hat doesn't suit you; you _____ buy another. 5. There are too many accidents. Everyone _____ be much more careful. 6. You _____ have followed the instructions of your coach. Then you would have won the game. 7. Tom was often late and his father told him that he _____ wake up earlier. 8. She told her children that they _____ always say "Please" and "Thank you". 9. It is dark in the room, you _____ switch on the light.

Ex. 3. (**B**) Make remarks according to the model.

Model: A.: I only told Peter.
B.: *You shouldn't have told anyone.*

1. I only asked Mike. 2. I only invited Jack. 3. I only argued with Tom. 4. I only discussed it with Alec. 5. I only talked about it with Arthur. 6. I only wrote to Bill. 7. I only complained about Mark. 8. I only woke George.

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Open the brackets using the correct form of the infinitive. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. I don't feel well now. I should (remember) to take the medicine yesterday. 2. Children should (obey) their parents. 3. It's three o'clock and I'm feeling very hungry; I should (eat) more for lunch. 4. The little boy was playing with his father's typewriter and of course he broke it; he shouldn't (allow) him to play with it. 5. You have a weak heart. You shouldn't (run). 6. I was very tired last summer and I should (take) a holiday, but there was too much work to do. 7. When he went for a walk he should (take) his umbrella, it looked like rain (but he didn't). 8. The workmen are very slow; the job should (finish) a week ago. 9. You shouldn't (eat) so much bread, now you've gained weight. 10. You shouldn't (go) out yesterday without a coat. No wonder you caught cold. 11. You should (cross) the road by the subway (but you didn't). 12. He should (check) that his brakes were working properly (but he didn't). 13. You should (warn) him that the ice was dangerous (but you didn't). 14. Tom's had another accident. It sounds like Tom's fault. He should (wait) till the main road was clear.

Ex. 5. (**C**) Fill in the blanks with *"must", "should"* or *"ought (to)"*. Use the correct form of the infinitive.

1. Your questions surprise me, you _____ (know) this. 2. You _____ (to be) absent for such a long time. Everyone forgot you. 3. Though it is a very unpleasant mission, I feel I _____ (tell) you the truth. 4. We had a wonderful time at that party. You _____ (to be) there. 5. Let's tell him all as it is. He _____ (understand). 6. You _____ (apologize) when you saw that his feelings were hurt. 7. She is a very experienced doctor. You _____ (to consult) her. 8. She _____ (not to say) such things in the child's presence. Now you see the results. 9. I _____ (know) that it might come to that. 10. If they had been warned in time, they _____ (be) there by now. 11. He gave you just the feeling of assurance, of confidence that a doctor _____ (to give).

Ex. 6. (**C**) Fill in the blanks with *"ought", "to be (to)", "to have (to)"*.

1. Don't contradict her, you _____ to respect her age. 2. She is not a bad sort, if somewhat capricious; so you sometimes _____ to put up with her whims. 3. The situation grew awkward. He felt that something _____ to be done, or else the party would break up.

Ex. 7. (**C**) Fill in the blanks with either *"should"* or *"must"*. Translate into Russian.

1. a) You look fresh! You _____ have had a good sleep at night.
   b) You look tired! You _____ have a good sleep at night.
2. a) They _____ have studied the subject more thoroughly; they will regret it later on.
   b) They _____ have studied the subject thoroughly; they answered every question.
3. a) You _____ have ignored the traffic regulations. That's why you were fined.
   b) You _____ have followed the traffic regulations, then you would not have been fined.
4. a) He _____ be working at his problem now.
   b) He _____ work at the problem, it hasn't been solved yet.
5. a) I _____ have taken Grandfather's spectacles. I cannot see anything through them.
   b) I _____ have taken my opera-glasses. I don't see anything.

Ex. 8. (**C**) Use *"should"* or *"had (to)"* with the correct form of infinitive in brackets.

1. I _____ (to send) a telegram because it was too late to send a letter. You _____ (to remind) me to do it earlier. 2. I _____ not (to tell) him the news; he was so much upset, but I really _____ (to do) so, for the circumstances demanded it. 3. The agreement was that if Johny White could not repay the money he had borrowed, then Luke Flint _____ (to have) the right to sell the land. 4. It was very hard work but we _____ (to do) it. 5. She _____ (not to let) it pass like that, she _____ (to explain) to him that he was wrong. 6. Although it was unpleasant to her, she _____ (to tell) him that he was wrong.

Ex. 9. (**C**) Translate into English using *"must", "to be (to)", "have (to)"*, or *"should", "can"*.

1. Ты, должно быть, пропустил его. Ты должен был быть более внимательным. 2. Вы, должно быть, с ним уже поговорили. Я вижу, вы все знаете. 3. Он не должен был так грубо разговаривать. Это могло обидеть его. 4. Она не должна была закрывать окно так быстро, надо было проветрить комнату получше. 5. Это должно было случиться. Всем известна его рассеянность. 6. Тебе надо было прочесть свое сочинение еще раз, там, должно быть, есть ошибки. 7. Нам не пришлось тащить вещи на себе: нам попалась попутная машина. 8. Вы не должны так расстраиваться по пустякам. Надо держать себя в руках. 9. Простите, что я опоздал. Вам долго пришлось ждать меня? 10. Надеюсь, ты не должна теперь так рано вставать; ты ведь теперь работаешь в десяти минутах ходьбы от дома. 11. Она, очевидно, была очень приятной женщиной. Все говорят о ней с такой любовью. 12. Я никуда не выходил в тот вечер, так как после работы ко мне должен был зайти Джордж. 13. Это лекарство можно получить только по рецепту врача. 14. Там, наверно, идет дождь: смотри, какое темное небо. 15. Тебе не надо сегодня готовить обед, так как мы обедаем в гостях. 16. Они, вероятно, что-то горячо обсуждали; они даже не заметили, как мы вошли. 17. Вам следовало бы найти специалиста, который мог бы дать вам хороший совет.

6. NEED

Need expresses necessity. It is mostly used in negative and interrogative sentences.

FORMS AND MEANINGS

MEANING	EXAMPLES	EQUIVALENTS
absence of necessity	She **needn't get** up early. The lessons begin at ten. **(Можно не ...)**	***don't have to ...*** She **doesn't have to** do it.
something that has been done, was unnecessary	The water was clean. You **needn't have boiled** it. **(Можно было и не ... ; зря; напрасно)**	***Didn't have to*** is no longer an equivalent. It denotes the absence of necessity without implying that the action was performed.

NOTES:

1. When *"need"* is used in the meaning *"to be in want of something"* it is treated as a normal verb:
❑ He **needs** a pair of shoes.

2. *"Need"* as a modal verb has only one tense form – the Present.

STUDY THE FOLLOWING CHART. TRANSLATE THE SENTENCES INTO RUSSIAN.

Needn't **(the meaning: absence of necessity)**	
with **a non-perfect infinitive**	with **a perfect infinitive**
1. He **needn't** get up early. His work begins at nine. **(Не нужно ...)** 2. I **needn't go** to the shops today. There is plenty of food in the house.	1. He must be in his office at nine o'clock, but he got up yesterday at six. He **needn't have got** up so early. **(Не надо было ...)** 2. The water was clean and fit to drink; it **needn't have been boiled**.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Practise the following according to the model.

Model: A.: You took the lift, I suppose? (walk up the stairs)
B.: *No, I walked up the stairs.*
C.: *You needn't have walked up the stairs. You could have taken the lift.*

1. You went by bus, I suppose? (walk) 2. You borrowed the books, I suppose? (buy) 3. You phoned him, I suppose? (write) 4. You went by taxi, I suppose? (take a bus) 5. You went second class, I suppose? (go first class) 6. You left your heavy case at the station, I suppose? (take it with me) 7. You sent the sheets to the laundry, I suppose? (wash them myself)

Ex. 2. (**B, C**) Open the brackets using the correct form of the infinitive.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. You needn't (send) the car for us, we could have walked. 2. She washed up all the plates, she needn't (wash) them up, because they had a dishwasher. 3. Why do you want to press the skirt? It is not creased at all. You needn't (press) it at all. 4. I knew I had to be at the office on Saturday; I needn't (remind). 5. You needn't (help) him. (You helped him but he didn't need your help.) 6. He was wide awake when his mother called him at seven o'clock this morning; she needn't (call).

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) Paraphrase the following using the modal verb *"need"*.

Model: Was it quite necessary for you to do the work instead of him?
Need you do the work instead of him?

1. It is not necessary to copy the composition. I can read it as it is. 2. It was not necessary for her to carry the bags all by herself: there were porters at the station. 3. Why do you want to buy a new bag? I could have lend you mine. 4. There is no use worrying about her;

she is quite able to take care of herself. 5. What's the use of reproaching yourself? 6. I don't think there is any need to bother them.

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Use *"should"* or *"need"* with the correct form of the infinitive in brackets.

1. We _____ (not to hurry) we have half an hour before the train starts. 2. You _____ (not to come) so early, now you will have to wait. 3. You _____ (not to give) the child so much money. It will spoil him. 4. You _____ (not to return) the money so soon. I could wait. 5. You _____ (not to help) him with this work. He could have managed it himself. 6. You _____ (not to go) into this at present. They've clean forgotten about it.

Ex. 5. (**C**) Translate into English using *"(don't) have to", "needn't (have)".*

1. Можете сегодня туда не ходить. Товар еще не доставили. 2. Вам незачем идти на улицу: у соседей есть телефон. 3. У нас теперь построили стадион, и детям не придется ездить далеко. 4. Им незачем ездить так далеко, можно заниматься в нашем читальном зале. 5. Можете не оставаться, если не хотите. 6. Не обязательно вам ходить самому. Можете прислать кого-нибудь. 7. Я мог это сделать только потому, что мне не надо было идти в институт в среду. 8. Нам не нужно было ходить в библиотеку. У нас были все необходимые книги. 9. Ни к чему было покупать эту книгу, она есть в библиотеке. 10. Те, кто сделал эту работу, могут не оставаться в аудитории. 11. Оказалось, что у меня есть этот словарь, так что не пришлось покупать новый. 12. Вам не нужно было покупать этот словарь, у меня есть лишний экземпляр, и я с удовольствием дал бы его вам, если бы вы только попросили. 13. Он мог и не приходить, все уже было сделано. 14. Ему ни к чему было вдаваться в подробности: это все равно не помогло. 15. Все слова в тексте были знакомы, и им незачем было пользоваться словарем; это только отняло у них больше времени. 16. Все слова в тексте были настолько хорошо знакомы, что мне даже незачем было пользоваться словарем.

7. REVISION

Ex. 1. (**B, C**) Put *"can", "may", "must", "should", "ought to", "have to", "be to", "be able to"* (or the negative forms) and *"needn't"* in the spaces.

1. "Oh, Nurse, _____ I stay here?" – "Stay here? Of course, you _____ ." 2. A man _____ help his parents when they become old. 3. There are no buses or taxis, so we _____ walk. 4. No, Moira, you _____ have another potato. You've had two already. 5. We _____ live without food and water. We _____ eat and drink. 6. I _____ get up too early tomorrow, so I _____ go to bed late tonight. 7. You _____ not walk all the way to the station. You _____ take a bus round the corner. 8. Tom's father told him that he _____ ask silly questions. 9. You _____ switch off the light if you are afraid of the dark. 10. The matter _____ be discussed in tomorrow's debate. 11. You _____ sit there in your wet clothes; you will catch cold if you do. 12. They _____ do all the exercises; it will be sufficient if they do four of them. 13. You _____ do whatever you like. 14. Sooner or later one _____ choose. 15. I _____ read to the end of the story, because I want to see who gets the treasure. 16. Go right in. You _____ report at once. 17. She _____ sing quite

well. 18. You _____ say anything. Just nod your head and he will understand. 19. _____ I use your phone? – You _____ ask for permission; you _____ use it whenever you like. 20. Is she waiting? She _____ wait for me at home. We've arranged so. 21. You _____ take a horse to water but you _____ make him drink. 22. The ice is quite thick. We _____ walk on it. 23. If you don't know the meaning of a word you _____ use a dictionary. 24. The day we _____ start, it rained worse than ever.

Ex. 2. (**B**) Complete the sentences using the modal verbs *"can", "may", "must"*.

1. The performance _____ (be over) as there are many people leaving the theatre.
2. I don't believe that he said it. He _____ (say) such a thing.
3. I am sure they knew everything about it. Mary _____ (tell) them. She can't keep her word.
4. I am sure that she did not do anything of the kind. They _____ (take) her sister for her.
5. It is impossible that they should have refused to help you. They ____ (break) their promise.
6. Perhaps it was true, I am not sure. She _____ (be ashamed) to tell you the truth.
7. There was probably some misunderstanding. They _____ (sent) the contract to the wrong address.
8. _____ you really mean it?
9. There is no doubt that it was all prepared beforehand. He _____ (watch) you.
10. It is impossible. They _____ (leave) already. I was watching the door of the house.
11. I don't believe that they didn't recognize you. They _____ (fail to recognize) you.
12. His teacher _____ (help) him; his English is quite decent now.
13. My students _____ (be) at a lecture now. They never miss classes.
14. I don't believe it. He _____ (write) the letter but the signature is certainly not his.
15. _____ this old man (be) your brother?
16. The message _____ (be delivered) in time as we received an immediate answer.
17. _____ you (not remember) our talk?

Ex. 3. (**C**) Translate into English.

1. Он должен быть там завтра. 2. Он может быть там завтра. 3. Он, возможно, будет там завтра. 4. Он, возможно, был там вчера (не был). 5. Он, по всей вероятности, был там вчера. 6. Он должен был быть там вчера. 7. Не может быть, чтобы он был там вчера. 8. Возможно ли, чтобы он был там вчера? 9. Неужели он там был вчера? 10. Не может быть, чтобы это была правда. 11. Неужели это правда? 12. Это, должно быть, правда. 13. Возможно, это правда. 14. Кто знает? Может быть, это и правда. 15. Возможно, это была правда. 16. Это, очевидно, была правда. 17. Вы, вероятно, ошиблись. 18. Вы, должно быть, ошибаетесь. 19. Не может быть, чтобы вы ошиблись. 20. Неужели (возможно ли, чтобы) вы ошиблись? 21. Не может быть, чтобы они меня не поняли.

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Translate into English the parts of the sentences given in brackets using modal verbs.

1. I know he (мог бы) read classics. He (не обязательно) change to something else. 2. If you help me now I (может быть смогу) help you later. 3. (Могу ли я сделать) as I like or (я дожна делать) as you like? 4. "Now listen to me!" he said; "I'll tell you a few things that you (должен был бы спросить) before starting out." 5. If your mother calls, tell her I (возможно придется) be a little late. 6. When you came here I told you you were free to come and go as you please, but you (не должна была навещать) Old Tante. 7. "I shall wait to hear what

Lily (может) say about it." "You (может быть придется) wait a long time." 8. Mr Zappa, the carrier (должен был заехать) for me in the morning at nine o'clock. 9. That book was one of those that one (должен был бы прочитать). 10. Somebody has been talking; (кто бы это мог быть)? 11. (Незачем было волноваться), everything has turned out all right. 12. Frequently he (можно было застать) in the garden bent over his flowers. 13. I believe he was always afraid they (могут посмеяться) at him.

Ex. 5. (**C**) Translate into English. (Dictation–translation)

I

1. Мне очень жаль, но я должен идти. Я должен встретить Бетти у кино. Уже без четверти семь! Она, должно быть, уже ждет меня. Мне придется сесть на автобус. 2. Их дом должны были снести (knock down), и ему пришлось переехать в другой район. 3. Вы могли бы предупредить меня, что не придете; мне не пришлось бы так долго вас ждать. 4. Незачем вам было ходить туда, они могли бы сами прийти. 5. Не надо было так раговаривать с ним: все же он постарше вас. 6. Надо было подумать об этом раньше; теперь этого уже не исправишь. 7. Ты зря заказал номер в гостинице. У нас есть комната для гостей. 8. Нельзя ли мне задать вам несколько вопросов? 9. Погода хорошая, и мы могли бы прокатиться за город. 10. Неужели вы им поверили? Они скорее всего пошутили над вами.

II

1. Он должен был подвинуться поближе, чтобы услышать ее. 2. На следующий день Барт взял меня с собой на прогулку, а вечером мы должны были обедать с Гринами. 3. Тебе придется много заниматься. Если бы ты мог приходить ко мне по воскресеньям, я бы с удовольствием занимался с тобой. 4. Он, должно быть, не сказал им ничего, и они, возможно, упаковывают вещи. 5. В прошлом году я жил близко от института, и мне не приходилось вставать так рано, как сейчас. 6. Я думаю, что вам не следует обращать на это внимания. Незачем беспокоиться о пустяках. 7. Вы, должно быть, все читали эту книгу. Если нет, то вам следовало бы ее прочесть как можно скорее, чтобы вы могли обсудить ее на занятиях нашего кружка. 8. Зря ты так разговаривал с ним. Он мог обидеться. 9. В понедельник я еще не смогу дать вам определенный ответ.

Ex. 6. (**C**) Translate into English.

1. Вы, наверное, положили ключ не на то место, и я не смог войти в дом. 2. Я был удивлён, увидев так много народа в зале, где я должен был выступать. 3. Может быть, она и была на концерте, но я ее не видела. 4. Ваше лицо кажется мне знакомым. Мы, должно быть, где-то встречались. – Возможно, мы встречались летом во время каникул. 5. Напрасно ты сказала ей об этом. Тебе надо было промолчать. 6. Не может быть, чтобы он не слышал о нашем решении, но я все же скажу ему об этом сама. 7. Он, должно быть, не успел еще прочитать эту книгу или, возможно, не достал ее. 8. Он просил предупредить, что вам, возможно, придется подождать еще дня два–три, прежде чем он сможет вас принять. 9. Больного должны были оперировать 10-го, но ввиду его плохого состояния операцию пришлось отложить на неопределенное время. 10. Не может быть, чтобы она этого не знала. 11. Он, должно быть, приготовил перевод заранее. 12. Он, должно быть, не готовил перевод заранее. 13. Он, вероятно, не успел подготовить перевод и был (будет) вынужден потратить на него все

воскресенье, так как его нужно закончить к следующей неделе. 14. Не могли бы вы помочь мне закончить работу? Мне, может быть, придется уехать завтра вечером.

Ex. 7. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

1. Я должен сделать это сегодня?
   а) Нет, вы можете сделать это завтра, если хотите.
   б) Да, это нужно сделать сегодня.
2. Можно мне посмотреть вашу работу?
   а) Пожалуйста.
   б) Нет, она еще не готова.
3. Доктор, можно мне купаться в море?
   а) Нет, нельзя: вы можете опять заболеть.
   б) Конечно, можно. Это принесет вам только пользу.
4. Мне нужно переписать всю работу или я могу только исправить ошибки?
5. Когда мне можно прийти за остальным материалом? – Вам незачем приходить самому. Мы вам пришлем его, когда он будет готов.
6. Не можете ли вы зайти ко мне вечером?
7. Нельзя ли попросить вас зайти ко мне вечером?
8. Не могли бы вы зайти немножко позже?

Ex. 8. (**C**) Translate the words in bold type into English.

A

Новое платье Луны.

Молодой Луне пришла в голову прекрасная мысль: "**Почему бы мне не сшить себе** новое платье? Я **могла бы** в нем **гулять** по небу," – и она отправилась к портному. "**Не могли бы вы сшить** мне новое платье? – спросила она. – Но оно **должно хорошо сидеть**."
"**Можете не беспокоиться**," – ответил портной. – "Оно **будет** прекрасно **сидеть**. Вы такая молодая, такая тоненькая. **Позвольте мне снять мерку**."
Когда он снял мерку, Луна спросила: "**Когда мне приходить** на примерку?" И он велел ей прийти через неделю.
Однако платье оказалось слишком узким. "**Должно быть, я плохо снял мерку**," – подумал огорченный портной. – "Теперь **придется все делать сначала**."
Он опять снял мерку и велел Луне прийти через десять дней.
Платье снова оказалось узким, да и Луна выглядела теперь совсем иначе. "**Неужели я опять ошибся**? Или, **может быть, она так потолстела**?" – огорчился портной, снимая мерку в третий раз. – "Ну, теперь все **должно быть в порядке**."
Когда Луна пришла опять, это была уже полная луна. "Это безобразие!" – завопил портной. – "**Надо было предупредить меня**, что у вас такая неустойчивая фигура. **Не стану** я для вас работать!"
Так Луне **пришлось обойтись** без нового платья.

B

Персики.

Это был их медовый месяц (honeymoon).
Молодая жена сидела в кресле в своей уютной квартирке и думала, что, **вероятно, сейчас все только и говорят** об их свадьбе.

Свадьба Малыша МакГарри – лучшего боксера Нью-Йорка – **была, возможно**, самым замечательным событием в жизни их соседей.
"Милый," – сказала она, – "я бы, пожалуй (I'd rather), съела персик."
Разве мог Малыш **отказать** (refuse) ей? Он даже и не подумал о том, где **он может достать** персик в самом начале весны. **Он должен был найти** его. **Он, вероятно, забыл**, что персик – это дар (gift) золотого лета.
Он начал с лавки итальянца на углу, но там были только горы (pile) золотых апельсинов. Затем он побежал к своему другу в ночной ресторан. **Они, должно быть, едят** такие фрукты круглый год (all year round). Но ему опять не повезло (be unlucky). Правда, его друг предложил (offer) заменить персики на замечательные апельсины из Испании, но МакГарри не хотел об этом и слышать (wouldn't hear).
"**Не может быть, чтобы** на Бродвее **не было** персиков," – подумал Малыш. **Неужели** чемпион Нью-Йорка **не может забыть о** сезонах, календарях и климатах?
План родился мгновенно. Персики, **несомненно, есть** в клубе у его врага – Денвера Дика, – и он добудет их любой ценой (at any price). **Не может быть, чтобы** Дик **отказал** своим богатым клиентам (visitors) в персиках в марте.
Малыш ворвался в клуб вместе с полицейскими, которые давно мечтали заполучить (get hold of) Денвера Дика и его клиентов. Как только Дик увидел Малыша, они начали драться (fight), но Малыш **должен был победить**: ведь его ждала самая красивая девушка в мире.
И он победил.
Но нашел только один случайно оставшийся персик. Счастливый Малыш помчался домой.
Он заскочил в аптеку почистить костюм. Аптекарь испугался:
– Вы, **должно быть, упали** с небоскреба (skyscraper), – сказал он.
Она ждала его. А он, довольный победой (victory), вкладывает в ее руку персик.
– **Разве я просила** персик? Я бы гораздо охотнее съела апельсин.

(By O.Henry)

8. TESTS

I

1. Вам приходится очень рано вставать, не так ли?
2. Я не должен был говорить с ней таким тоном, мой тон, должно быть, обидел ее.
3. Вероятно, родители запретили ему ехать на юг с вами. Вам следовало самим поговорить с ними.
4. Ты напрасно спрашивала соседей, я нашел эту книгу на твоем письменном столе.
5. Возможно, какая-нибудь срочная работа задержала его, или, может быть, он забыл, что должен прийти сюда.
6. Вы могли бы ему подробно объяснить ваш план. Неужели вы забыли, что он не знаком с этим вопросом?
7. Почему ты вернулся так рано? – Нам не пришлось долго обсуждать этот вопрос.
8. Может быть, она и была на концерте.
9. Он не должен быть в это время дома, он, очевидно, еще работает.
10. Группа туристов должна прибыть завтра утром.

II

1. Нам не пришлось провожать их в гостиницу, они сами хорошо знали дорогу.
2. Мы, должно быть, пропустили его; мы должны были придти пораньше, мы ждем его целый час.
3. Он должен был придти в 5, а он еще не пришел.
4. Не обязательно (не нужно) вам приходить самому, вы можете прислать кого-нибудь.
5. Он не так уж застенчив; возможно, ваш вопрос был неожиданным, и он не смог на него ответить.
6. Вы могли бы предупредить его заранее, что он должен был придти в 5.
7. Почему ее нет? Неужели она обиделась и решила не приходить?
8. Мне не пришлось долго искать твой дом, так как я встретил твоего соседа и мы пошли вместе.
9. Несмотря на шторм, он смог доплыть до берега.
10. Я должен был дать ответ до двух часов дня.

III

1. В темноте я не могла разобрать, сколько там людей.
2. Не может быть, чтобы он забыл свое обещание. Он, вероятно, очень занят сейчас.
3. Неужели вы не встретились с ним на конференции на прошлой неделе?
4. Может быть, она уже приехала. Тебе следует позвонить ей.
5. Кто должен был вас встречать?
6. Вам пришлось взять такси, не так ли?
7. Должно быть, она проводит там много времени.
8. Напрасно ты торопился. Она еще не приехала.
9. Тебе следует встретиться с ним и подробно обсудить этот вопрос.
10. Вы не могли бы дать мне еще один пример?

IV

1. Посидите здесь, пока он занят. Я думаю, вам не придется долго ждать.
2. Неужели мы с вами встречались на конференции в прошлом году?
3. Возможно, он забыл о нашей встрече. Он должен был прийти в 10 часов, а сейчас уже 12 часов.
4. Зря вы бросили эту работу. Вы были так близки к цели.
5. Тебе следует пробыть в Санкт-Петербурге дольше, чтобы осмотреть весь город.
6. Он мог бы сходить туда сам; ему незачем было посылать вас.
7. Несмотря на то, что у нас было мало времени, мы смогли подготовить этот доклад.
8. Не может быть, чтобы она была на конференции.
9. Ему пришлось поговорить с ней, не так ли?
10. Тебе нечего торопиться. Она только что выехала.

THE NOUN

The noun is a word expressing substance in the widest sense of the word.

1. FORMATION OF NOUNS

I. NOUN-FORMING SUFFIXES

PRODUCTIVE		UNPRODUCTIVE	
-er	*reader, teacher, worker*	**-hood**	childhood, manhood
-ist	*telegraphist, dramatist*	**-dom**	freedom
-ness	*carelessness, madness*	**-ship**	friendship, relationship
-ism	*socialism, nationalism*	**-ment**	development
-ess	*heiress, hostess, actress*	**-ance**	importance
-(a)ion	*suspicion*	**-ence**	dependence
-tion	*formation*	**-ty**	cruelty, property
-sion	*admission*	**-ity**	generosity
(-ess is practically only one gender-forming suffix, expressing feminine gender)		**-ure**	culture, structure
		-age	passage, marriage

II. THE MOST COMMON PREFIXES

re- *reconstruction, reduction*
co- *co-author, coexistence*
dis- *disarmament*
mis- *misunderstanding*
over- *overestimation*
under- *under-secretary*
sub- *subdivision*
inter- *interaction*

III. COMPOUND NOUNS

When a noun has two or more parts (e.g. *classroom*), we call it *a compound noun*. We can make *compound nouns* with the **-ing** form: e.g. *dancing-shoes*.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A**) Form nouns from the given words with the help of suffixes *"-er"* and *"-or"* and use them in your own sentences.

Model: to read ⇨ reader; to sail ⇨ sailor.
Paint, talk, drive, manage, dream, research, compute, strike, lead, visit, design, invent, buy, direct, translate, interpret.

Ex. 2. (**A**) Form nouns from the given words with the help of suffixes *"-ment"*, *"-ant"*, *"-ness"* and *"-ist"*.

Model: to employ ⇨ employment; to type ⇨ typist.
Appoint, move, enjoy, mad, science, advertise, judge, entertain, govern, develop, improve, material.

Ex. 3. (**B**) Point out suffixes of the given derivative nouns. Form, wherever possible, other derivative nouns with the help of some other suffixes.

Model: direction = *direct* + *ion* ⇨ director ⇨ directness ⇨ directorship.
Examination, imagination, consideration, dictation, collection, direction, co-operation, isolation, concentration, operation, construction, contribution; happiness, coldness, darkness, cleverness, carefulness; linguist, dramatist, telegraphist, scientist; minority, priority, majority, publicity, relativity, popularity, personality; musician, technician, mathematician; leadership, friendship, dictatorship; brotherhood, neighbourhood.

Ex. 4. (**B**) Give the nouns which describe people who do things or who come from places. Use these noun suffixes: *-an, -ant, -ar, -er, -ian, -ist, -or*.

1. A person who takes professional photographs _____*photographer*_____
2. A person who smokes a lot _____
3. I can't play the piano. I'm not a _____
4. A person who acts in amateur theatre _____
5. Manuel assists me. He's my _____
6. A person who donates his blood to sick people _____
7. Anna is studying history. She's a fine _____

Ex. 5. (**B**) Use these suffixes to form nouns from verbs, adjectives or other nouns: *-hood, -(a)tion, -(a)ence, -ness, -al, -(er)y, -ment, -ism, -(i)ty, -ship, -ian.*

1. She is very *beautiful*. Everybody admires her *beauty*.
2. Don't be so excited. Control your _____
3. He is my bosom friend. This is a strong _____
4. We all want to be happy. We all seek _____
5. The Club refuses to admit anyone not wearing a tie. The Club refuses _____
6. Who discovered this? Who made this _____ ?
7. This firm produced a lot in recent years. It increased its _____
8. I was a child then. That was in my _____
9. He is a journalist. His profession is _____
10. Be more efficient. Improve your _____
11. We'll arrive at noon. We informed about our _____
12. Plants and factories pollute our plant. You should fight _____
13. Can you explain it? Is there an _____ ?
14. He has been studying music for years. He is a _____

Ex. 6. (**B**) Form nouns from the *italicised* words with the help of the suffixes. Mind the consonant alteration.

Model: 1. Many people *visited* us during summer. ⇨ We had many *visitors*.
2. He *suggested* that I study French. ⇨ I like his *suggestions*.

1. We couldn't *agree*. We couldn't reach an ____ . 2. The detective *investigated* the murder. During his ____ he questioned dozens of people. 3. She *described* her trip. Her ___ was very full and interesting. 4. His health has *improved* since he's been in the clinic. The ___ is very noticeable.

Ex. 7. (**B**) Complete the table.

VERB	PERSON NOUN	ABSTRACT NOUN
inspect		
oppress		
compose		
produce		
conduct		
support		

Ex. 8. (**A**) Form nouns from the given words with the help of the prefixes: *un-, in-, mis-, dis-, de-, inter-, pre-, re-* .

Model: understanding ⇨ *misunderstanding*
1. employment, 2. connection, 3. honesty, 4. interpretation, 5. difference, 6. fortune, 7. dependence, 8. importance, 9. security, 10. election, 11. construction.

Ex. 9. (**A**) Form compound nouns from two or more stems. Use these nouns in your own sentences.

Model: sun, glasses ⇨ *sunglases*.
A road, workers; tea, a pot; a bed, a room; a post, a man; a week, an end; news, paper; a class, a room; a fountain, a pen; a foot, a man; a side, a board; a man, craft; a horse, work; milk, a man; a chair, a man; trade, union.

Ex. 10. (**A, B**) Read the compound nouns. Translate them into Russian.

Foreman, ship-yard, man-of-war, milestone, birthday, record-player, taperecorder, typewriter, layman, marpleleaf, handicraft, space-craft, household, housekeeping.

Ex. 11. (**B**) Answer the following questions using a compound noun formed by the two nouns.

Model: He gave her *a ring* for their *engagement*. ⇨ *An engagement ring*.
What ring did he give her?

1. I drank some *tea* from *the cup*. What cup did I drink tea from?
2. This *store* has a lot of different *departments*. How can we call such a store?
3. A small *boat* saved his *life*. What boat was this?

4. Metal rings joined by a chain, fastened around prisoner's *hands* like *cuffs* (манжеты). What are they called?

Ex. 12. (**B**) Translate the following questions into English choosing the appropriate nouns given below. Let your friends answer the questions.

1. В какой аудитории вы обычно занимаетесь? 2. Сколько времени уходит у вас на приготовление домашнего задания? 3. Вы предпочитаете делать домашнюю работу один или вместе с товарищами? 4. Часто ли вы ходите в читальный зал? 5. Вы обычно обедаете в столовой или берете с собой завтрак? 6. Какие газеты вы читаете каждый день? 7. Где вы обычно проводите субботу и воскресенье?

Hometask, weekend, newspaper, classroom, reading-room, dining-room, homework.

2. CLASSIFICATION OF NOUNS

I

1. **Collective nouns** are usually singular and are used with singular verbs, when they denote a thing as a whole. But sometimes a plural verb is used, when it denotes a number of people or elements:
   - ❑ The Russian **team** was playing well.
   - ❑ The hockey **team** are coming tonight.
2. *Some collective nouns* have singular and plural:
   - ❑ My **family** is small.
   - ❑ The two **families** were very friendly.
3. **Nouns of material** are uncountable and are generally used in the singular. They are used in the plural to denote different sorts of a given material:
   - ❑ *wine – wines*
   - ❑ *fruit – fruits*
   - ❑ *glass – glasses*
   - ❑ *ice – ices*
4. **Abstract nouns** are usually uncountable though some of them may be countable (*idea, hour*). But they may change their meaning and become class nouns. In this case they are used with the article and may be plural.
   - ❑ *beauty – a beauty – beauties*
   - ❑ *sight – a sight – sights*

II

NOUNS

Countable

Denote things that can be counted
- ❑ *a book – 5 books*
- ❑ *a boy – many boys*

Uncountable

Denote things we can't count; they have no plural.
We can't use *a/an* before them.
We use *the/some/any/this/his*, etc. before them.
- ❑ *the music, some bread, his blood,* much excitement
- ❑ *This ring is made of silver.*

1. Many nouns can be used as countable and uncountable nouns.
   Usually there is a difference in meaning:

❑ *Paper*
- I bought **a paper.** (countable = a newspaper)
- I bought **some paper.** (uncountable = material)

❑ *Hair*
- She has beautiful **hair.** (uncountable)
- There is **a hair** in my soup. (countable = one single hair)

2. Some nouns are usually uncountable in English but often countable in other languages.
   Here are the most important of these:

accommodation	*behaviour*	*information*	*scenery*
advice	*bread*	*news*	*traffic*
baggage	*chaos*	*permission*	*travel*
luggage	*furniture*	*progress*	*trouble*
	money		*weather*
			work

- ❑ I'm looking for **accommodation**.
- ❑ Tom gave me **some** good **advice**.
- ❑ Where did you buy your **furniture**?
- ❑ I'm looking for **work**.
- ❑ The **news is** very depressing today.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A**) Write the countable and uncountable nouns into two different columns:

Wall, pen, air, chalk, picture, water, match, tea, time, hour, bread, river, friend, copper, cigarette, tobacco, cheese, teacher, glass (стакан), glass (стекло), paper (бумага), paper (газета), music, coffee, armchair, gold, ship, milk, shop, idea, ice, furniture, butter, happiness, wood, tree, word, ink, money, coin, university, hero, assistance, assistant, darkness, meat, machine, instrument.

Ex. 2. (**A**) Underline the noun in each sentence and write *'C'* or *'U'* to show whether the noun is countable or uncountable.

I

1. I bought an excellent *iron*. *C*.
2. She has wonderful hair. ___
3. How many photos did he take? ___
4. Add a little more salt. ___
5. Did you buy a paper this morning? ___
6. Hope keeps me going. ___
7. It is made of iron.____
8. We've got plenty of coal. ___
9. There is a hair in my soup.___

II

1. *Trade* with China has increased. *U*.
2. Do you like ice cream? ___
3. I eat two eggs every day. ___
4. Too much cake isn't good for you. ___
5. I need a cloth to wipe the table. ___
6. Would you like an ice? ___
7. I need two clean glasses. ___
8. Don't throw stones. ___
9. Be careful! There is broken glass on the road. ___
10. Can I have a cake, Mum? ___

Ex. 3. (**B**) State whether the nouns in *italic* type are collective nouns or nouns of multitude.

1. It is a new *company*. 2. *The company* are rehearsing a new production. 3. Then one by one the worn out *crew* were helped on board. 4. The *crew* of the ship consists of twenty seamen including the captain and his mate. 5. No one had seen him since and the *police* were searching for him. 6. The *band* were changed, and in the gallery already. 7. And Stilleveld, in company with the many other places like it, had also been the birthplace of a new *people*. The *people* who were neither white nor black.

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Choose between a singular or a plural verb to use it in the following sentences.

1. The play is witty and the cast (be) wonderful. 2. The cast (be) all amateurs. 3. All the family (to be) gathered to see the dog. 4. Monty's family (to be) of about the same social status as my own. 5. Do you know what the family (to get) into their heads about this business? 6. Everybody says the Swiss police (to be) great at finding people. 7. The public (not to think) so. 8. The public (to request) not to leave litter in these woods. 9. When he came the baseball team (to practise) on the school field. 10. The team (to have) baths at the moment and then (to come) back here for tea. 11. The team (to play) tomorrow morning. 12. The clergy (to be) generally dressed in black. 13. The Government (to discuss) the matter for a long time but they have shown no signs of reaching agreement. 14. The Government (to decide) to pass the bill. 15. In the meantime the young couple (to be) to live in the old house. 16. That day the committee (to be) to meet at her friend's house. 17. I had to find out whether the committee (to be) competent enough to consider the project. 18. The board (to be) extraordinarily kind to you. 19. The board (to be) going to consider your application at the next sitting. 20. You've bought yourself a nice car. Your money (to be) well spent. 21. His advice (to be) always useful for me.

Ex. 5. (**C**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Полиция – не дураки. Этот человек не поверил ни одному моему слову. 2. Команда обычно прекращает погрузку (loading) в 12.00, и все собираются на палубе. 3. Ты знаешь, каковы новости? 4. В письме важная информация. 5. Вся компания сидит в кафе. Они собираются здесь обедать. 6. У комитета сложилось мнение, что этот вопрос нужно решить немедленно. 7. Когда директор пришел, весь штат уже собрался. 8. Штат очень небольшой, я не знаю, как он справляется.

3. THE CATEGORY OF NUMBER

English countable nouns have two numbers: *the singular* and *the plural*.

THE RULES FOR FORMING THE PLURAL OF THE ENGLISH NOUNS

RULES	EXAMPLES	NOTES
1. The general rule for forming the plural of English nouns is by adding the ending **-s** to the singular	*tables, books, ties, plans* And also: *baths, paths, smooths, doths, months*	**-s** is pronounced: [z] after voiced consonants and vowels: *flowers, beds, boys* [s] after voiceless consonants: *caps, books, hats* [iz] after sibilants: *noses, horses, bridges, houses*

2. If the noun ends in *-s, -ss, -x, -z, -sh, -ch, -tch, -o* the plural is formed by adding **-es** [*iz*], [*z*] after *-o*	*buses, glasses, boxes, brushes, benches, matches, cargoes, potatoes*	**But:** *pianos, photos, cuckoos, videos, zoos*
3. There are seven nouns which form the plural by changing the root vowel	*man – men* *woman – women* ['womən] – ['wɪmɪn] *foot – feet* *tooth – teeth* *goose – geese* *mouse – mice* *louse – lice*	
4. There are two nouns which form the plural in **-en**	*ox – oxen* *child – children*	
5. In some nouns the plural form does not differ from the singular	*deer, sheep, swine, fish, trout, dozen, score, aircraft, salmon*	**But:** Pack the books in *dozens; scores* of people.
6. Some words borrowed from Latin or Greek keep their Latin or Greek plural forms	In the technical languages of science: *phenomenon – phenomena* *datum – data* *crisis – crises* *stimulus – stimuli* *formula – formulae* *index – indices* *antenna – antennae*	In fiction and colloquial English some of these nouns have acquired English plural forms: *memorandums, formulas, indexes, terminuses.*
7. In compound nouns the plural is formed in different ways: a) adding *-s* to the head-word b) the final element takes the plural form c) if the compound begins with the words *man/woman* both words are plural d) if there is no noun-stem in the compound *-s* is added to the last element	a) *editors-in-chief* *brothers-in-law* *lookers-on* b) *lady-birds* *hotel-keepers* *housewives* *postmen* c) *men-servants* *women-doctors* d) *forget-me-nots* *merry-go-rounds*	

SPELLING RULES

RULES	EXAMPLES	NOTES
1. If the noun ends in *-y* preceded by a consonant, *-y* is changed into *- i* – before *-es*	*fly – flies* *army – armies* *lady – ladies*	In proper names there is no change: *Mary – Marys*
2. If the final *-y* is preceded by a vowel there is no vowel change	*day – days* *boy – boys* *play – plays* *toy – toys* *key – keys*	
3. The nouns ending in *-f, -fe* change it into *-v* (both in spelling and pronunciation)	*wife – wives* *leaf – leaves* *knife – knives* *thief – thieves* *life – lives* *half – halves*	*scarf* < *scarfs*, *scarves* *wharf* < *wharfs*, *wharves*

There are, however, many peculiarities

1. Nouns consisting of two or more parts are used only in the plural (as in Russian). They are:

trousers ❑ Your **trousers are** too long.
spectacles ❑ Where **are** my **spectacles**?
scissors ❑ **These scissors are** sharp.
scales
tongs

2. Remember the nouns which are used in the plural in English whereas they are singular in Russian:

wages ❑ His **wages are** high.
contents ❑ The **contents have** not been changed.

3. There are nouns which are used in the singular in Russian, but they are plural in English.

clothes ❑ His **clothes were** wet as he had been caught in the rain.
arms
stairs ❑ The **stairs are** steep.
riches
goods ❑ The **goods have** arrived from France.
potatoes ❑ **Potatoes are** very cheap in autumn.
onions ❑ Spanish **onions are** sweet.
carrots ❑ **Carrots are** very healthy.
oats

But: *a potato (one)*
an onion
a carrot

4. The noun *vacation* is used only in the singular in English (it is plural in Russian).

❑ Our summer **vacation lasts** 2 months.

But: We have **two vacations** a year.

5. In English the nouns *gate, sledge, watch, clock* are used both in the singular and in the plural (in Russian they are only plural):

- ❑ The **gate is** open.
- ❑ All **the gates were** closed.
- ❑ My **watch (clock) is** slow.
- ❑ He has **two watches (clocks)**.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A**) Write the plurals of these nouns in the columns below to show their pronunciation.
Shop, glass, friend, bottle, cinema, clock, guitar, hotel, island, lake, light, month, office, park, piece, smile, space, tape, village, box, match, beach, address.

[s]	[z]	[iz]
1. *shop*	7. *friend*	13. *glasses*
2. _____	8. _____	14. _____
3. _____	9. _____	15. _____
4. _____	10. _____	16. _____
5. _____	11. _____	17. _____
6. _____	12. _____	18. _____

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Give the plural of the following nouns.

A
Toe, city, hero, piano, calf, cliff, proof, chief, stitch, bath, belief, life, shelf, berry, valley, roof, pen, window, wall, week, clock, ship, library, watch, dress, country, glass, day, party, play, bus, leaf, life, colony, fox, half, mass, eye, language, place, key, thief, ray, bush, mouth, journey;

B
foot, boot, ox, fox, man, woman, month, mouse, child, ship, goose, deer, cheese, sheep;

C
crisis, phenomenon, datum, nucleus, basis, apparatus, criterion, series, analysis, formula;

D
room-mate, fellow-worker, court-martial, man-of-war, boy-messenger, onlooker, passer-by, sister-in-law, postman, son-in-law, fisherman, schoolgirl, text-book, pocket-knife, statesman, editor-in-chief.

Ex. 3. (**B**) Change the number of the noun in *italic* type where possible and make all other necessary changes.

I
1. Put the box on the *shell*. 2. I was presented with a *dozen* handkerchiefs. 3. The boy must have two *teeth* pulled out. 4. The hunter got a prize for killing the *woll* that had caused much damage to the village flock. 5. The *child* was bitterly crying over the broken toy. 6. He showed me a *photo* of his country house. 7. The scout brought some valuable *information*. 8. I bought a *pair* of nylon gloves. 9. I saw a *mouse* in the kitchen. 10. The *ox* drove a cart of hay. 11. A very strange *phenomenon* was observed by astronomers yesterday. 12. Her *hair* was soft and curly.

II

1. Boy drove *the sheep* to the village. 2. I have hurt my *foot*. 3. This is *a lady-bird.* 4. Where is the *knife?* 5. This *factory* has a good *laboratory*. 6. The last *leaf* fell from the *tree*. 7. This *story* is very long. 8. The *speech* was very interesting. 9. He left the *key* on the *table*. 10. Where is the *brush*? 11. I like his new *play*. 12. The *roof* of the *house* was covered with snow. 13. The *wife* of the *sailor* stood on the shore. 14. My aunt has *a goose.*

III

1. *The mice* live behind the stove. 2. The *keys* to the *boxes* were lost. 3. The *wolves* have been shot. 4. The *fish* were caught. 5. We have good *postmen* in our area. 6. The *cargoes* will be discharged tomorrow.

Ex. 4. (**B**) Supply the missing words.

1. The stairs _____ worn by thousands of visitors. 2. Where _____ the scissors? – _____ are in the first drawer on the left. 3.The scales_____broken. 4. How much did you pay for _____ trousers? – _____ were very expensive! 5. If your clothes _____ dirty, please put them in the laundry basket. 6. His old grandfather's watch_____ made of gold. 7. All their belongings _____ been destroyed in a fire. 8. My earnings (not) _____ high, but at least they _____ regular. 9. These shorts _____ fit me at all!

Ex. 5. (**B**) Use the appropriate form of the verb.

1. "There _____ money in my pocket," I said to the porter (is, are). 2. I know my hair _____ beautiful, everybody says so (is, are). 3. These white swine _____ not live (does, do). 4. ... this watch _____ a special favourite with Mr Pickwick, having been carried about ... for a greater number of years than we feel called upon to state, at present (was, were). 5. The deer _____ ravaging the man's fields (was, were). 6. Money _____ so scarce that it could fairly be said not to exist at all (was, were). 7. I was here before the gates _____ opened, but I was afraid to come straight to you (was, were). 8. The papers _____ dull, the news _____ local and stale, and the war news _____ all old (was, were). 9. At Capracotta, he had told me, there _____ trout in the stream below the town (was, were). 10. Her hair _____ loose and half-falling, and she wore a nurse's dress (was, were). 11. The nurse's wages _____ good (was, were).

Ex. 6. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

A

1. Эта лестница ведет к морю. 2. Он дал мне хороший совет 3. Все сведения были очень важные. 4. Мы получили такие же сведения. 5. Эти деньги не мои. 6. У меня было мало денег. Я не мог позволить себе покупать такие дорогие вещи. 7. Его познания в математике поразили нас. 8. Ваших знаний недостаточно, чтобы сдать экзамен. 9. Какая интересная работа! 10. Какие вы нам принесли новости? 11. Эти новости уже всем известны.

B

1. Я купил эти часы в Лондоне. Они очень хорошие. 2. Ваши часы спешат. 3. Я не мог войти в сад, так как ворота были закрыты. 4. Сани стоят у ворот. 5. Экспорт этого товара значительно увеличился.

C

1. Какие из этих овец будут посланы на выставку? 2. Этот груз прибыл на прошлой неделе. 3. Его одежда совсем новая. 4. Там было очень мало людей. 5. Картофель очень хороший в этом году. 6. Морковь очень дешевая осенью. 7. Фрукты в нашем саду уже созрели. 8. Его заработная плата очень высокая. 9. Содержание его письма было совсем неожиданным. 10. Франция славится своими винами.

D

1. В аквариуме пять рыбок. Одна рыбка золотая. 2. Эти новости очень интересные. 3. Кому принадлежат деньги? – Я не знаю, кому они принадлежат. 4. Фермеры довольны. Они вырастили много свиней и овец. 5. Ваши деньги на столе. Возьмите их. 6. Наши зимние каникулы кончаются 6-го февраля. 7. Вы получили эти сведения несколько дней тому назад. 8. Ваши советы мне очень помогли. 9. Витрина привлекала внимание всех прохожих.

4. THE CATEGORY OF CASE

English nouns denoting living beings (and some lifeless things) have two cases: **the common case** and **the genitive (or possessive) case**.

THE GENITIVE

1. We show possession in English with the genitive form of a noun. This means we normally use **'s** or **s'** for people and some living creatures. We put the possessive before the noun it refers to:

- ❑ **Frank's** car. (Not "the car of Frank/the car of Frank's").

2. The simplest rule to remember is: Add **'s** to any personal noun unless it is in the form of a plural ending in **-s**, in which case just add an apostrophe (**'**). This means:

- ❑ add *'s* to singular nouns and names not ending in *-s:*
  a **boy's** tie; **Tom's** hat.
- ❑ add *'s* to singular nouns ending in *-s:*
  an **actress's** career; a **waitress's** job.
- ❑ add *'s* to irregular plural nouns:
  children's games; the **men's** club; **sheep's** wool.
- ❑ add an apostrophe *(')* after the *-s* of regular plurals:
  the girls' uniforms.
- ❑ add *'s* to names ending in *-s*:
  Charles's address; **Doris's** panty; **St.James's** Park.
  Famous names ending in -s just add (**'**): **Yeats'** poetry (pronounced [s] or [iz]).
- ❑ add *'s* to the last element of the word group:
  My friend Peter's watch; my father-in-law's house.

APOSTROPHE *S ('S/S'),* COMPOUND NOUN, OR *'OF'?*

1. When we want to show possession with things, we can use *'of' : the leg of the table.* However, we often prefer to use a compound noun instead of *'of' : the table leg.*

2. We must use *'of'* when we can't form a compound noun: *the book of the film* (Not 'the film's book'); *the top of the box* (Not 'the box's top'). You can only learn these from experience. If you are in doubt, use 'of'.

THE USE OF *'S* AND *S'* WITH NON-LIVING THINGS: *"AN HOUR'S JOURNEY"*

We use *'s* and *s'* with some non-living things:

- ❑ fixed phrases: *the earth's surface, journey's end, the ship's company;*
- ❑ time phrases (singular): *an hour's journey, a day's work, a month's salary;*
- ❑ time phrases (plural): *two hours' journey, two days' work, two months' salary.*

It's also used with nouns expressing space and weight, with the names of countries, cities and ships and with the nouns *world, country, city, ship*:

- ❑ *the river's edge*
- ❑ *Moscow's theatres*
- ❑ *world's best museums*
- ❑ *our country's best opera house*
- ❑ *the ship's crew*

We can use *'s* when the first noun is an organisation:

- ❑ *the government's decision*
- ❑ *the company's success*

The Genitive is used in some set expressions:

- ❑ *for Heaven's sake / for God's sake*
- ❑ *at one's wit's end*
- ❑ *a hair's breadth*
- ❑ *at a stone's throw*

OMISSION OF THE NOUN AFTER *'S*

We generally omit the noun after *'s* when referring to work-places, shops, and houses: *the doctor's* rather than *the doctor's surgery*, *my mother's* rather than *my mother's house*.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Use *'s* or *s'* only where possible with these nouns.

1. the clothes of the boys *the boys' clothes*
2. a journey of two days _____
3. the walls of the room _____
4. the days of the week _____
5. the birthday of my daughter Helen _____
6. the pages of the book _____
7. work of seven years _____
8. the surface of the Earth _____
9. the orders of the Commander-in-Chief _____

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) What could we use in place of the words in brackets?

1. Your father has gone to (the shop owned by the butcher) *the butcher's*.
2. I'll meet you at (the shop owned by the chemist) _____ .

3. I'm going to spend the night at (the house owned by my aunt) _____ .
4. We always buy things at (the department store owned by Emma Hart) _____ .

Ex. 3. (**B**) Rewrite these sentences using *'s, s'*, or just an apostrophe *(')*.

1. The books for children. These are *children's books*.
2. This bag belongs to my friend. _____ .
3. He described the career of the actress. _____ .
4. This is the signature of Mr Brown. _____ .
5. The mistakes which students make. _____ .
6. This is a club for women. _____ .
7. It's a school for girls. _____ .
8. The room is for the guests. _____ .
9. This umbrella belongs to James. _____ .
10. I liked the dinner we had yesterday at the cafe belonging to Mike. _____ .

Ex. 4. (**B**) Only where possible, use *'s* or *(')* to show possession in these sentences.

1. The book of this author. *The author's book*.
2. I can't see the bottom of the box. _____ .
3. The crew of the ship was small. _____ .
4. It's the fault of no one. _____ .
5. Do you like the poetry of Eliot? _____ .
6. That's the leg of the table. _____ .
7. Where's the key of the car? _____ .
8. The sound of carriage was heard. _____ .

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Supply a phrase with *'s* or a compound noun in place of the phrases in *italics*.

1. He is *the son of Mr Right*. *Mr Right's son*.
2. Where's *the surgery of the doctor*? _____ .
3. *The keyboard of the piano* was damaged. _____ .
4. She is *the secretary of our director*. _____ .
5. It was in *the reign of Queen Elizabeth*. _____ .
6. It's *the responsibility of no one*. _____ .
7. Polish *the knob of the front door*. _____ .
8. *The journey of Scott* is historic. _____ .
9. I spoke to *the manager of the company*. _____ .
10. *The cover of the book* is torn. _____ .
11. *The gate of the factory* was shut. _____ .
12. I've lost *the book of my mother*. _____ .
13. *The phone in the office* is out of order. _____ .
14. *The critic of the film* was wrong. _____ .
15. Who's *the mother of the twins?* _____ .
16. That's *the sister of my* husband. _____ .

Ex. 6. (**B**) In this exercise you have to join two nouns with *'s*, an apostrophe *(')*, or a compound noun. Sometimes you have to use ... *of* ... .

Model: Ann's mother; stident's club; the door of the room; car key.

1. the photo/my son _____
2. the eyes/the dog _____
3. the top/the page _____
4. the club/students _____
5. the newspaper/today _____
6. a month/holiday _____
7. the name/your wife _____
8. the name/this street _____
9. the car/Mike's parents _____
10. Rosa/love _____
11. the new manager/the company _____
12. the leg/table _____
13. the ground floor/the building _____
14. the children/Don and Mary _____
15. the economic policy/the government _____
16. the house/my aunt and uncle _____

Ex. 7. (**B**) Read each sentence and write a new sentence using *'s* with the words in *italics*.

Example: The surface of *the Earth* looks wonderful from space.
The Earth's surface looks wonderful from space.

1. I had dinner in the house of my *friend.*
   _____ .
2. The theatres in *Moscow* are the best in the world.
   _____ .
3. Exports from *Britain* to the United States have fallen recently.
   _____ .
4. I always buy newspapers in the *evening.* I like to read them.
   _____ .

Ex. 8. (**B**) Use the information to complete the sentences.

Example: I started cleaning my house at 9 o'clock and finished at 12 o'clock.
So it's about *three hours'* work.

1. I need two days to do the work.
   It is _____ .
2. She had a rest from two to three.
   So she had _____ .
3. If I leave my house at 8.50 and walk to work, I get to work at 9 o'clock.
   So it's only _____ walk from my house to work.

5. TESTS

I

1. Сын моей сестры хорошо учится.
2. Мне нравится квартира Марии.
3. Она много пишет сестрам Анны.
4. Вчера нас навестили дети наших друзей.
5. Комната Бесс большая и светлая.
6. Учитель вернул тетради студентов.
7. Я не помню имени сестры моего друга.
8. Друзья моего брата хорошо говорят по-немецки
9. Это книги коллег моего сына.
10. Вам нравится новая книга этого писателя?

II

1. Где ключ от машины?
2. Мальчишки взяли велосипед почтальона.
3. Он сломал кончик (nib) пера.
4. Ручка чемодана была неудобной.
5. Дверь гаража была закрыта.
6. Мы выучили слова десятого урока вчера.
7. Поверхность дороги была скользкой.
8. Я не знаю результат вчерашнего матча.

THE ARTICLE

The article is a structural part of speech used with nouns. The use of articles depends on the type of noun, context or situation, it is sometimes influenced by the syntactic relations in which the noun occurs (see pp.169-170).
There are two types of articles in modern English: the indefinite **(a/an)** and the definite article **(the)**. The absence of articles also has its grammatical significance: it shows that the nouns are used in a general sense.

1. THE USE OF ARTICLES WITH COMMON NOUNS

1.1 THE USE OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE *(A/AN)**

The indefinite article is used:

1. When the speaker presents the object (expressed by the noun) as belonging to a certain class. In this case it has the meaning of *"какой-нибудь", "какой-то, один", "некий"*. In the plural no article is used in this case.
- ❑ It happened in **a small town** in Siberia.
- ❑ He bought **a book** yesterday.

2. When a person or a thing is introduced for the first time. That shows that the reader (listener) doesn't know what we are referring to. After this first reference we use **"the"**.
- ❑ I watched **a** car as it came up our road. **The** car stopped outside our house and **a** man got out. **The** man was carrying **a** case in his hand. With **the** case, **the** man looked like a salesman.

3. With a predicative noun, then we say that the object belongs to a certain class. Usually such nouns denote a profession or characteristic.
- ❑ He is **a doctor**.
- ❑ She works as **(a) chemist**.
- ❑ Miss Sharp's father was **an artist**.
- ❑ Your brother is **a nice man**.

4. When the noun is used in a general sense and has the meaning of *"every" (любой, всякий, каждый)*.
- ❑ **A drowning man** catches at a straw.
- ❑ **A child** can understand it.

5. **A/an** preserves its old original meaning of **"one"**.
- ❑ He had hardly spoken **a word** since we left the house.

With nouns denoting time, measure, weight, frequency:
- ❑ **A week** or two passed.
- ❑ I'll be back in **a minute**.
- ❑ It is 80 p **a kilo**.
- ❑ The car makes 120 km **an hour**.
- ❑ I go to the library twice **a week** (once **a month**).

But: We don't use *a/an + noun* and *one + noun* in the same way.

---

* It is used only with countable nouns in the singular.

a/an + **noun** means *"any one"*
❑ I'd like **a coffee**, please.
one + **noun** when we are *counting*
❑ It was **one coffee** I ordered, not two.
We use **a/an** or **one** with:
a) whole numbers and fractions: a/*one hundred, thousand; a/one half, quarter;*
b) money: *a/one pound/dollar;*
c) weights, measures: *a/one kilo/foot;*
We use **one** with day, morning, evening when telling a story:
❑ **One day** when I was staying at the Hilton I received a strange telephone call.

6. We use **a/an** in some grammatical structures:
a) **It is a** book. **This is a** picture.
b) She **has a** cat.
c) **There is a book** on the table.
d) **What a** clever man! **What a** fine building!

But: What nice **weather** we are having today! *(Mind uncountable nouns)*
e) She **saw a** wonderful flower.

7. When we talk about people or things *"in general"* (with plural no article is used).
❑ **A cat** is a domestic animal.
❑ **Cats** are domestic animals.

8. We use **a/an** in detached apposition:
❑ My friend, **a history teacher**, knows a lot about it.

But: Pushkin, **the great Russian poet, ...**
Ivanov, **the inventor of this machine, ...**

9. We use **a/an** after the attributes *such, rather, quite*:
❑ He is **such a** clever man.
❑ She is **quite a** young girl.
❑ It was **rather a** difficult job.

10. **A/an** with price, distance and frequency:
price/weight: 80 p **a kilo**
distance/fuel: 30 miles **a** (or to the) **gallon**
distance/speed: 40 km **an hour**
frequency/time: twice **a day**

11. **A/an** or **zero** with reference to illness:
1. use **a/an** with these illnesses: *a cold, a headache, a sore throat.*
2. use or omit **a/an** with these: catch *(a) cold*, have *(a/an) backache/earache/ stomach-ache/toothache.*
3. **no article** at all with these plurals: *measles, mumps, shingles.*
4. **no articles** with these: *(high) blood pressure, flu*, gout, hepatitis.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Supply *a/an* where necessary. Note where you can use *a/an* or *zero (-)*.

1. I'm going to bed. I've got _a_ headache.
2. I was awake all night with _____ toothache.

* Flu – short for influenza

3. I think Gillan's got _____ flu.
4. The children are in bed with _____ mumps.
5. Mind you don't catch _____ cold.
6. _____ measles can be very unpleasant.
7. Don't come near me. I've got _____ sore throat.
8. I think I've got _____ cold!
9. I've had _____ terrible backache.
10. I often suffer from _____ backache.

Ex. 2. (**A, B, C**) Translate the words in brackets.

1. The apples are (90 рублей за 1 килограмм).
2. I take these pills (два раза в день).
3. We are going (100 км в час).
4. I do the dishes (1 раз в день).
5. Rubbish is collected (три раза в неделю).
6. Olive oil costs (20 рублей за литр).

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) Say what articles you would use for the *italicized* nouns in this text.

Вот это здоровье!*

"Я думаю, это все, миссис Грант," – сказал *доктор Колд*[1] и протянул ей список предписаний. Список был очень длинным, и миссис Грант чуть *удар*[2] не хватил пока дочитала его *до конца*[3]. У нее *болела голова*[4], у нее была *простуда*[5], у нее начинался *грипп*[6]. В довершение всего, у одного из ее детей была *свинка*[7]. "Я также прописал вам таблетки от *повышенного давления*[8]," – сказал доктор Колд. "Сколько таблеток я должна принимать?" "*Одну таблетку*[9] после каждого *приема пищи*[10], то есть три таблетки *в день*[11]." Миссис Грант поблагодарила *доктора*[12] и *с трудом*[13] дошла *до аптеки*[14]. Она протянула свой длинный список *аптекарю*[15] – мистеру Вайту. Мистер Вайт весело приветствовал ее. "Вот это здоровье!" сказал он, взглянув *на список*[16].

1.2 THE USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE *(THE)*

The definite article is used:

1. When the speaker and the listener know what particular object is meant:
- ❑ How did you like **the play?**
- ❑ Where is **the key**?

NB! There is a difference between knowing what object is spoken about and knowing the object itself.
- ❑ **A.** I can't speak to **the girl.** I have never seen her. Won't you speak to her?
  B. But I don't know **the girl** either.

2. When the speaker uses an attribute pointing out a particular object – a particularising attribute.
- ❑ This is **the** house **that Jack built.**
- ❑ Show me **the** telegram **you received yesterday.**

---

* Here's Health

- ❑ **The** pictures **in this book** are very interesting.
- ❑ **The** walls **of my room** are painted blue.

NB! A particularising attribute should not be confused with a descriptive attribute, which is used to describe an object or to give some additional information about it. A descriptive attribute does not affect the use of the article:

- ❑ I have **a** wonderful clock **which is 100 years old.**
- ❑ We went to **the** lake **which was stormy** that day.
- ❑ We've received **a** letter **containing interesting information about ...**

3. When the situation (context) itself makes the object definite:

- ❑ The wedding looked sad. **The bride** was too old and **the bridegroom** was too young.

4. When the noun denotes a thing unique: *the Sun, the Moon, the Earth, the Universe, the Galaxy, the Solar system,* etc.

- ❑ **The sun** was getting warmer.
- ❑ **The earth** doesn't belong to us.

NB! The indefinite article can be used when we mean a certain state or aspect of *the sun, the moon, the sky*:

- ❑ **A pearl-white moon** smiles through the green trees.

5. With nouns used in a generic sense (as a type or a genre):

- ❑ **The tragedy** and **the comedy** appeared in Greece.
- ❑ **The pine** grows in the North.
- ❑ When was **the telephone** invented?

NB! In a generic sense:

– With the noun *man* no artticle is used.
- ❑ His trust in **man** has been destroyed.

– With the noun *woman* the definite article or no article is used.
- ❑ He had always been interested in that mysterious being – **the woman.**

6. With the nouns modified by:

a) adjectives in the superlative degree
- ❑ Moscow has **the best underground** in the world.
- ❑ **The highest mountains** are in Asia.

b) the pronouns *same, all* and the adjectives *wrong, right, very, next, following, last, only, whole:*
- ❑ I found him in **the last carriage** of the train.
- ❑ You're **the very person** I need.
- ❑ We sat in **the first** row.
- ❑ We'll have more time **the following week.**

NB! *"Next"* meaning *future* and *"last"* meaning *past* are used without articles – *next month, last week.*

c) the ordinal numerals ***first, second****, etc.*

7. With substantivized adjectives and participles: *the old, the dead, the rich, the poor, the blind, the wounded, the sick,* etc.

- ❑ There are special schools for **the blind and the deaf.**
- ❑ Do you think **the rich** should pay more taxes?

8. We use **the** when there is only one of something: *the President, the manager, the director, the captain.*

- ❑ Paris is **the capital** of France.
- ❑ **The captain** was standing on the deck.
- ❑ **The president** is elected every 4 years.

9. We use **the** with the words: *the country, the mountains, the seaside, the weekend,* the cinema, the theatre, the radio, the police, the firebrigade, the army, the post office, *the bank, the doctor, the dentist,* though we don't necessarily mean something in particular:

- ❑ I must go to **the bank** to change some money.
- ❑ John is not very well. He went to **the doctor**.
- ❑ We are spending the weekend in **the country/in the mountains/at the seaside**.
- ❑ We went to **the cinema** last night.
- ❑ Do you often go to **the theatre?**
- ❑ I heard the news on **the radio**.

But: We **watch television** (*without* **the**).

10. We also use **the** for musical instruments:

- ❑ Can you play **the guitar**?
- ❑ **The piano** is my favourite instrument.

11. We use **the** in front of the nationality nouns (in general).

They can be divided into four groups:

a) **the + -ese/ss**: *the Chinese, the Japanese, the Portuguese, the Swiss;*

b) **the + plural ending**:

-ians: *the Austrians, the Belgians, the Brazilians, the Egyptians, the Russians;*

-ans: *the Americans, the Koreans, the Mexicans;*

-s: *the Arabs, the Germans, the Greeks, the Poles, the Scots, the Turks;*

c) **the Danes/the Danish**, *the Spaniards/the Spanish, the Swedes/the Swedish;*

d) **the + ch/sh**: *the British, the English, the French, the Irish.*

But: We say: *She is* ***an American.***

12. **the** is used to refer to "things that are unique":

- organisations: *the United Nations* (**but** Congress, Parliament)
- ships: *the Titanic*
- documents: *the Constitution*
- public bodies: *the police, the Government*
- climate: *the weather*
- historical events: *the French Revolution*
- political parties: *the Labour Party*
- the press: *the Times*

1.3 THE ZERO ARTICLE

BASIC USES OF THE ZERO ARTICLE (–):

No article (zero) is used:

1. In front of plural countable nouns used in general statements, e.g. for:

- people: **Men** are fond of hunting.
- animals: **Dogs** should eat meat.
- food: **Oranges** are good for you.
- places: **Cities** are polluted by cars.
- products: **Shops** are open on Sundays.

2. In front of uncountable nouns (always singular) used in general statements, e.g. for:
   – food: I like **ice-cream.**
   – colours: **Red** is my favourite colour.
   – abstract: No **news** is good news.
   – substances: **Coffee** is produced in Brazil.
   – activities: **Smoking** is not allowed here.
   – languages: **Chinese** is difficult to study.

3. In front of most proper nouns (names spelt with a capital letter):
   ❑ **Tolstoy** is my favourite writer.
   ❑ This was made by **Fassbinder and Son.**

   By comparison, we use **the** when the reference is specific, not in general statements:
   a) in front of plural countable nouns: **The oranges** from Spain are sweet.
   b) in front of uncountable nouns: I used all **the butter** that was in the butter dish.
   c) in front of proper nouns: I mean **the Tolstoy** who wrote "Peter I".

EXERCISES

Ex. 4. (**A, B, C**) Say what articles you would use for the *italicized* nouns in these situations.

1. – Кем ты хочешь быть, Майк?
   – Я хочу быть *учителем.*
   – Почему?
   – Я люблю *детей.*
2. К вам подбегает мальчик с газетами и спрашивает:
   – Вы не купите *газету*, пожалуйста?
   – Купите *одну из газет*, пожалуйста.
3. Вы видите у сына новую ручку и говорите: "Где ты купил *ручку*?"
4. Ваш брат идет в библиотеку и вы его просите: "Принеси мне, пожалуйста, *английский словарь.*" – "Я не думаю, что в нашей библиотеке есть *английские словари.*"
5. На вопрос по телефону, что делает ваша сестра, вы ответили: "Она читает *книгу*. Она любит читать *книги.*"
6. На столе тарелки с *пирожными*. "Можно мне взять *пирожное*, мама?"
7. Вчера мы купили *новый стол*. Я попробовала работать за ним. *Стол* неудобен для письма.
8. Староста напоминает дежурному: "Сегодня твоя очередь мыть *столы.*"
9. Вы видите в руках у мальчика *камень* и просите: "Отберите у мальчика *камень*, пожалуйста."
10. Решив разбить *палатку*, вы говорите: "Найди где-нибудь *камень*, будем забивать колья."
11. Вы получили *комнату*. В ней абсолютно нет *мебели*. "Прежде всего мне необходим *стол*," – думаете вы.
12. *Мальчик* говорит своим родителям: "В следующем году у нас будут *столы* вместо *парт*."
13. "Посмотри на *дуб*. Ему, наверное, сто лет."
14. "Давайте посадим *дуб*. Он дает много тени."
15. "Наш парк преобразился: там посадили *много новых деревьев*. В основном это *дубы* и *липы.*"

16. *Дубы*, которые мы посадили в *парке*, уже выросли.
17. Не можете ли вы одолжить мне *конверт*? Мне срочно нужно отослать *письмо*, а *почта* закрыта.
18. "Где ты купила *плащ*? Мне тоже нужен *плащ*, но я не могу найти ничего подходящего." – "Сходи в *магазин* на улице Мира, там сегодня продают красивые *плащи*."
19. *Девочка* ищет *сестру*. Вы ей говорите: "Посмотри *во дворе*. Она, вероятно, играет там с *детьми*."
20. *Учительница* входит в *класс* и, увидев там только *девочек*, говорит: "А где же *мальчики*?"
21. Вы просите помочь вам: "Вы не можете передвинуть *стол*?"
22. Ваша сестра готовится к экзаменам, но к вам пришли гости, вы просите ее перейти *в спальню*. Ее подруга спрашивает: "А в спальне есть *стол*?"
23. Учительница говорит: "Не пишите на *столах* и следите за тем, чтобы всегда был мел у *доски*."
24. Посмотрите на *доску*, пожалуйста.
25. Вы пришли за ребенком в детский сад в *середине дня*, вам говорят: "Вы не можете забрать *ребенка*, пока *дети* спят. Они отдыхают."

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Supply *"the"* or *"-"*.

1. She served _____ cold meat and cheese.
2. _____ meat we had for lunch last Sunday was very tough.
3. Where did _____ life come from?
4. I don't know much about _____ life of Salvador Dali.
5. I can't call it _____ running. It's _____ jogging.
6. I ought to be fit with all _____ running I do, but I don't feel fit.
7. I think _____ red dress will suit you best. _____ red is more your colour.
8. _____ watches have become very cheap and very attractive.
9. Most of _____ watches you see today work on _____ quartz.
10. What has been the longest period of _____ peace in _____ history?
11. If you study _____ history, you've got to read a lot.
12. _____ journeys to unknown places require a lot of preparation.
13. _____ lives of _____ poets and _____ musicians have often been unbearably difficult.
14. I'm not interested in buying _____ silver or _____ gold.
15. _____ time is _____ money.
16. I can never forget _____ time I've spent in Paris.

Ex. 6. (**A, B**) Supply *"a/an"*, *"the"* or *"-"*.

1. We have _____ nice apartment in _____ centre of St. Petersburg. It is on _____ third floor of _____ new building. It is _____ three room flat with _____ kitchen.
2. _____ individual has every right to expect personal freedom. _____ freedom of _____ individual is something worth fighting for.
3. I've got _____ appointment this afternoon. I've got to go to _____ doctor's.
4. We have seen what _____ Earth looks like from _____ Moon.
5. This is the front room. _____ ceiling and _____ walls need decorating, but _____ floor is in good order. We'll probably cover it with _____ carpet.
6. Look at this wonderful small computer. _____ top lifts up to form _____ screen; _____ front lifts off to form _____ keyboard and _____ whole thing weighs only 5 kilos.

7. _____ history of _____ world is _____ history of _____ war.
8. Is there _____ moon round _____ planet Venus?
9. _____ exercise is good for _____ body.
10. Could you pass me _____ salt, please?

Ex. 7. (**A, B**) Supply *"the"* or *"-"*.

1. Because of "the greenhouse effect" _____ climate of the world is changing.
2. We can't be sure about the history of _____ human race, but _____ man developed earlier than we think, though we certainly weren't around at the time of _____ dinosaurs.
3. The Ancient Greeks believed in _____ gods. The idea of _____ God was not known to them.
4. _____ Mr Stocks has shown that _____ Egyptians used _____ saws and drills. _____ saws and drills were made of _____ copper.
5. My eldest son joined _____ Navy and now my youngest wants to join _____ Army.
6. In many countries the head of state is called _____ President.
7. Do you know who killed _____ President Lincoln?

Ex. 8. (**A, B**) Put in *"a/an"* or *"the"*.

A Bad Customer.

(1) man went into (2) shop and asked for (3) pound of apples which cost one shilling. (4) shopkeeper gave them to him. Then (5) man asked, "Can I exchange (6) apples for (7) pound of plums? (8) price is (9) same." (10) shopkeeper agreed, took back apples and gave him plums. (11) man took them and was going to leave (12) shop. (13) shopkeeper asked him for (14) money.
"(15) money for what?" asked (16) man.
" (17) money for (18) plums," said (19) shopkeeper.
"But I gave you (20) apples for (21) plums," answered (22) man.
"Well, then, (23) money for (24) apples."
"But you still have your apples," said (25) man and walked out of (26) shop.

Thank You, I Feel Much Better.

(1) doctor whose medical skill was much better than his handwriting, sent (2) invitation to (3) patient who was his friend to spend (4) evening with him. He said that there would be music and other things.
(5) friend did not come, and did not sent any explanation. When they met (6) following day, (7) doctor asked whether he had received (8) note.
"Yes, thank you," replied (9) other. "I took it to (10) chemist, he made up medicine and I feel much better already."

Ex. 9. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Они вошли в вагон, в котором не было свободных мест. 2. В вагоне, в который они вошли, не было свободных мест. 3. Сегодня группа туристов, которая состоит из студентов, отправляется в горы. 4. Группа туристов, которая отправилась в горы, состоит из студентов. 5. Роль Анны играла молодая талантливая актриса, которая недавно окончила театральный институт. 6. В газетах очень много писали о молодой талантиливой актрисе, которая сыграла роль Анны. 7. Она посмотрела на часы на

углу и поняла, что опоздает на поезд. 8. На углу вашей улицы висят часы, которые приводятся в действие электричеством.

Ex. 10. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Мне нужно снять комнату. 2. Проветри комнату. 3. Нож не режет. 4. У тебя нет ножа? 5. Возьми нож и отрежь хлеба. 6. Мы не знали, что здесь есть озеро. 7. Озеро глубокое. 8. Замок сломался. 9. Кому мне отдать починить замок? 10. Ты знаешь, где чинят замки? 11. Не забудь купить замок. 12. У нас сегодня апельсины на третье. 13. Апельсины в буфете. 14. Возьми себе апельсин. 15. Апельсин не кислый?

Ex. 11. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Дверь закрыта. 2. У тебя есть телефон? 3. Телефон не работает. 4. В холле темно. 5. Ты любишь собак? 6. Не мучай (to tease) собаку. 7. Никогда не пытайся погладить (to stroke) собаку, если ты ее не знаешь. 8. Ручка не пишет. 9. У вас есть ручки в продаже? 10. Где можно купить пальто? 11. Где тебе сшили пальто? 12. Где ключ? 13. Сколько квартир в доме? 14. Сколько стоят эти сервизы? 15. Сколько предметов в сервизе? 16. Сколько стоят сервизы сегодня?

Ex. 12. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

I

1. Это очень хороший совет. 2. Совет хороший. 3. Ты слышал эти новости? 4. Новости из дома плохие. 5. Он привез хорошие вести. 6. Такие сведения всегда нужны. 7. Сведения уже поступили? 8. Не стоит трогаться в путь в плохую погоду. 9. Мы не тронемся, пока погода не переменится. 10. Дай деньги мне. Ты ведь их всегда теряешь.

II

1. Это не дружеский совет! 2. Ты любишь такую погоду? 3. Какая была скверная погода! 4. Был чудесный день. 5. Какой неожиданный визит! 6. Это такая неожиданная новость! 7. Он нашел такую хорошую работу! 8. Какая интересная работа! 9. Группа сделала такие успехи! 10. Какой успех имела книга!

Ex. 13. (**B, C**) Translate into English, paying special attention to the words in *italic* type.

1. Кто у *двери*? – Это *почтальон*.
2. Мы ходили вчера в *театр*. *Пьеса* была замечательная.
3. Я предпочитаю проводить каникулы в *горах*, у *моря* или в *деревне*.
4. Чем занимается Джон? – Он *почтальон*.
5. В *центре* города строится *новый рынок*.
6. Где мама? – Она на *кухне*.
7. *Португальцы* очень отличаются от *испанцев*.
8. *Немцы* и *японцы* много работают.
9. Будьте внимательнее: вы сделали *ошибку*.
10. Я не знал, что недалеко от нашего дома есть *рынок*.
11. *Рынок* был уже закрыт, и мы пошли в магазин.
12. В этом году я первый раз был в *лагере*.

13. *Лагерь* был расположен в лесу.
14. *Почта* – важное государственное учреждение.
15. Его уведомили об этом *письмом*.
16. Мой друг написал мне об этом в *письме*.

1.4 REVISION

Ex. 14. (**A, B**)

1. There is _____ bridge over the river. 2. Do you have _____ pens and _____ pensils? 3. Would you like _____ cup of tea? 4. He met _____ nice girl at _____disco. 5. Yesterday I spoke to _____ man who had just returned from _____ Arctic expedition. 6. Yesterday I met _____ old friend whom I recognized at once. 7. _____ person who is sitting next to you is _____famous painter. 8. I saw _____ beautiful hat in _____ shop but _____ hat was too expensive for me to buy. 9. They bought _____ table. _____table is made of oak. 10. My son has _____ very good German teacher who knows _____ language perfectly. 11. What _____ strange answer! 12. What _____ wonderful news! 13. We usually have _____ breakfast at eight. 14. Let me give you _____ piece of _____ advice. 15. From _____ back of _____ house came _____ sound of _____ vacuum-cleaner. The mother turned off _____ machine and looked at _____ boy.

Ex. 15. (**C**) Insert articles where necessary.

1. Not _____ word was spoken in _____ parlour.
2. _____ room itself was filling up, so was _____ staircase.
3. Not _____ word was spoken, not _____ sound was made.
4. _____ sky outside _____ window was already dark, secretaries had gone home, all was quiet.
5. I tell you, he is as brave as _____ man can reasonably be.
6. You know I never cared for _____ drama.
7. He looks older than he is, as _____ dark men often do.
8. Roger looked at him, without _____ word, took out his wallet and gave him _____ ten shilling note.
9. As _____ man sows, so shall he reap.
10. It was Sunday afternoon, and _____ sun, which had been shining now for several hours, was beginning to warm _____ earth.
11. It was _____ cottage built like _____ mansion, having _____ central hall with _____ wooden gallery running round it, and _____ rooms no bigger than _____ closets.
12. He was _____ short, plump man with _____ very white face and _____ very white hands. It was rumoured in London that he powdered them like _____ woman.
13. To him she would always be _____ loveliest woman in _____ world.
14. Even _____ strongest have their hours of depression.
15. Her aunt, in _____ straw hat so broad that it covered her to _____ very edges of her shoulders, was standing below with two gardeners behind her.
16. _____ rich think they can buy anything.
17. _____ room has three doors; one on the same side as _____ fireplace, near _____ corner, leading to _____ best bedroom.

18. He arrived half _____ hour before dinner time, and went up to _____ schoolroom at _____ top of _____ house, to see _____ children.
19. There is something in _____ very expression of his face that tells me so.
20. Far away in _____ little street there is _____ poor house. One of _____ windows is open and through it I can see _____ woman sitting at _____ table. She is _____ seamstress.
21. _____ man who entered was short and broad. He had black hair, and was wearing _____ grey flannel trousers with _____ red woollen shirt, open at _____ neck, whose collar he carried outside _____ lapels of his dark tweed jacket.
22. Then it was night and he was awake, standing in _____ street, looking up at _____ dark windows of _____ place where he lived. _____ front door was locked and there was no one in _____ house.
23. I believe I can tell _____ very moment I began to love him.
24. Mr Boythorn lived in _____ pretty house with _____ lawn in front, _____ bright flower garden at _____ side and _____ kitchen-garden in _____ rear, enclosed with _____ wall. _____ house was _____ real old house.
25. _____ bartender was _____ pale man in _____ vest and _____ apron, with _____ pale, hairy arms and _____ long, nervous nose.
26. During _____ country house parties one day is very like another. _____ men put on _____ same kind of variegated tie, eat _____ same breakfast, tap _____ same barometer, smoke _____ same pipes and kill _____ birds.
27. _____ old man quitted _____ house secretly at _____ same hour as before.
28. We are told that _____ wicked shall be punished.
29. _____ arm in _____ arm we walked on, sometimes stumbling over _____ hump of earth or catching our feet in _____ rabbit-holes.
30. Clare was _____ most vivid member of _____ family. She had dark fine hair and _____ pale expressive face, of which _____ lips were slightly brightened. _____ eyes were brown, with straight and eager glance, _____ brow low and very white. Her expression was odd for _____ girl of twenty, being calm and yet adventurous.

(From "English Grammar Exercises" by V.L. Kaushanskaya a.o.)

Ex. 16. (**C**) Translate sentences from Russian into English.

1. Хотя земля была холодной и мокрой, небо было ясным. Вставало яркое солнце.
2. Ему подарили полдюжины рубашек, которые кто-то привез из Англии.
3. Компас был изобретен в древнем Китае.
4. Эдвард остался на неделю в коттедже.
5. Дэнни посмотрел на дом, и вдруг в окне он увидел лицо.
6. История, которую я собираюсь тебе рассказать, длинная. Садись на диван и давай поговорим.
7. Какая красивая бабочка здесь на стене.
8. У нее был свой собственный ключ.
9. Старики не могут помочь молодым.
10. Спасибо, Стефан. Я знал, что ты дашь мне правильный совет.
11. Иногда посетители звонили не в тот звонок.
12. Я просто хотела взглянуть на дом и задать тебе несколько вопросов.
13. Роджер посмотрел на него, не говоря ни слова, и дал ему стодолларовую банкноту.

2. THE USE OF ARTICLES WITH NOUNS OF MATERIAL AND ABSTRACT NOUNS

Nouns of Material	In a general sense – **NO ARTICLE**	When modified by a particularizing attribute or the situation makes it definite – **THE**	**NOTES**
Butter, tea, iron, water, honey, *wine, snow,* etc.	❑ **Blood** is thicker than **water.** ❑ She was wearing a little hat of black **straw.** ❑ He doesn't like **coffee.** ❑ She was as pale as **snow.**	❑ Rosa tasted **the wine.** It was good. ❑ **The coffee** she made was better than he had hoped and very hot. ❑ She looked with hungry eyes at **the bread** and **meat** the landlady brought her.	**1.** When <u>an indefinite part of the substance</u> is meant, ***some/any*** are used. ❑ I bought **some bread** and **cheese.** ***2.*** We use **a/an** when: *a)* <u>sorts of food</u> are meant ❑ They give **a good coffee** here. *b)* <u>a portion</u> of something is meant ❑ He drank **a brandy** and went out. ❑ I'll buy you **an ice.** *c)* the noun indicates an object made of a certain material ❑ There is **a tin** of sardines on the table.
Abstract Nouns Anger, beauty, curiosity, freedom, happiness, love, modesty, pride, respect, time, work, strength, weather, etc.	❑ While there is **life** there is **hope.** ❑ What fine **weather** we're having! ❑ They walked in **silence** along the path.	❑ Last night I heard "Carmen" and enjoyed **the music.** ❑ We enjoyed **the stillness** of the air. ❑ He was in a state of **the greatest excitement.**	***A/an*** is used with uncountable abstract nouns <u>when modified by a descriptive attribute</u> which brings out <u>a special aspect</u>. ❑ **A hot anger** rose in his chest. ❑ She had **a natural grace** that was very attractive. ❑ There was a wonderful **happiness** everywhere.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Say, what articles you would use for the nouns in these situations.

1. У киоска "Соки-воды" вы говорите: "Я, пожалуй, возьму *томатный сок*."
2. Вы заинтересовались, из чего изготавливают строительные блоки. "Из *цемента* и *камня*," – ответили вам.
3. "Мама, купи мне *мороженое*," – просит девочка.
4. При выходе из магазина вас спросили, есть ли там *апельсины*.
5. Сосед интересуется, из чего сделан ваш сервант. "По-моему, это *красное дерево*."
6. Расхваливая костюм, вы замечаете: "Непохоже, что это *хлопок*, можно подумать, что это *шерсть*."
7. На просьбу купить мороженое вы отвечаете: "Здесь не продают *мороженое*."
8. Проходя мимо киоска, вы спрашиваете: "Хочешь, я тебе куплю *мороженое*?"
9. "У тебя все лицо *в яйце*, иди умойся."
10. На завтрак я ем вареное *яйцо* и чашку *кофе*.
11. Вы выпьете *черный кофе*? Да, и без *сахара*.

Ex. 2. (**C**) Insert articles or *"some"* where necessary (articles with nouns of material).

A

1. "We shan't have _____ fish," Robin said. 2. " _____ fish is very fresh," the waiter assured us. 3. He bought _____ cold beef, and _____ ham, and _____ French bread and butter, and came back with his pockets pretty heavily laden. 4. There were two bottles of _____ wine, _____ plate of _____ oranges with _____ powdered sugar. 5. Dinner began in _____ silence. In silence _____ soup was finished. It was _____ excellent soup. And _____ fish was brought. Nobody took it and _____ fish was taken away. Then the maid brought _____ champagne. 6. She made _____ coffee. 7. _____ coffee without _____ bread could never honestly serve as supper. 8. _____ rest of us had finished eating, but Dave had cut himself another slice of _____ cheese. 9. You've caught cold; I saw you shivering, and you must have _____ gruel to drive it out. 10. She did not answer, but her face was hard and pale as _____ stone.

B

1. She hurried in again and found _____ water almost boiled away. 2. _____ blood is thicker than _____ water. 3. Rosa tasted _____ wine. It was harsh but refreshing. 4. You drank _____ wine with breakfast, dinner, and supper, and fifty people always drank it with you. 5. She looked with _____ eager, hungry eyes at _____ bread and _____ meat and _____ beer that _____ landlady brought her. 6. She had _____ brown shining hair which hung down on either side of her face. 7. _____ coffee was better than Dinny had hoped and very hot. 8. Without giving her _____ opportunity to protest any more, he went to _____ telephone and ordered _____ coffee and several sandwiches. 9. Barber went to _____ bar and ordered _____ coffee, then changed it to _____ brandy because _____ coffee wasn't enough after _____ talk like that. 10. Her face was yellow in colour and her skin resembled _____ leather. 11. The maid brought in _____ pears, _____ cold chicken, _____ tongue, _____ cheese. 12. My heart felt as heavy as _____ lead. 13. I'm going to cut _____ grass in _____ garden. It is _____ hard work but it has to be done.

Ex. 3. (**C**) Put in *"a/an"*, *"the"* or *"–"*.

The Luncheon.

"I never eat anything for luncheon," she said. " _____ little fish, perhaps. I wonder if they have _____ salmon. And unless they have _____ caviar. I never mind _____ caviar."
For myself I chose _____ cheapest dish on _____ menu and that was _____ mutton chop.
"I think you are unwise to eat _____ meat," she said.
Then came the question of _____ drink.
"I never drink anything for luncheon, except _____ white wine. My doctor won't let me drink anything but _____ champagne. And what are you going to drink?"
" _____ water."
She ate _____ caviar and _____ salmon. She talked gaily of _____ art, literature and _____ music.

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Вода в реке очень холодная. 2. Вода необходима для жизни. 3. Принеси мне воды, пожалуйста. 4. Снег был глубокий. 5. Очень трудно ходить по глубокому снегу. 6. Чай горячий. 7. Я люблю чай. 8. Положи сахар в чай. 9. Купи лимон к чаю. 10. Лимон полезен. 11. Нарежь лимон. 12. Сок вкусный. 13. Я предпочитаю апельсиновый сок. 14. Сок, которым я тебя угощу, сделала моя мама. 15. Я попросил купить хлеба и масла. 16. Дайте мне, пожалуйста, молока. 17. Молоко необходимо детям. 18. Положите масла в суп. 19. Поставьте масло на стол. 20. Я не пью молоко, я пью чай или кофе. 21. Вчера я купил очень хороший чай и кофе. 22. Кофе я пошлю матери. Она любит кофе. 23. Где масло? Оно на столе. 24. Есть нефть или газ в этом районе? 25. Официант принес мне мясо и овощи. Я съел овощи, но не стал есть мясо. 26. Обычно я пью кипяченое молоко. Но молоко, которое дает наша корова, не надо кипятить.

Ex. 5. (**B, C**) Dictation–translation.

1. Погода была такой теплой, что мы решили поплавать.
2. Какая замечательная сегодня погода.
3. Какие новости?
4. Ты слышал новость?
5. Я ему одолжил пять фунтов на прошлой неделе. Ты думаешь, он отдаст мне деньги?
6. Джеймс попросил воды и жадно (thirstily) ее выпил.
7. Я знаю, что работа, которую я выполнил, это хорошая работа, лучшая в моей жизни.
8. Совет, который он получил от своих друзей, был – отказаться от работы.
9. Они покупают новую мебель.
10. Отец начал резать горячее мясо.
11. Она учила детей работать с бумагой и ножницами.
12 Земля была покрыта свежим снегом.
13. Кофе подали с настоящими сливками.

3. THE USE OF ARTICLES WITH PROPER NOUNS

3.1 GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Geographical Names	NO ARTICLE	The Definite Article THE	NOTES
1. *Continents, countries, cities/ towns, villages*	*a)* as a rule **Africa, Asia** **France, London** *b)* when modified by a prepositional attribute **Latin America, Central Asia** **Petrovka** **But** **the** village of **Petrovka**	When having a particularizing attribute. ❑ **The Philadelphia** he was born in... ❑ Gone is **the Moscow** of the merchants and aristocrats. ❑ In his book W.Scott described **the England** of the Middle Ages.	the word groups are always used with ***the***: *the United States* *the Soviet Union* *the United Kingdom of Great Britain* *the Netherlands* *the Hague* *the Crimea* *the Caucasus*
2. *Oceans, rivers, seas channels/ canals deserts*		**the Pacific** **the Black Sea** **the Neva, the Sahara** **the (English) Channel** **the Suez Canal**	
3. *Lakes*	**Lake Baikal** **Lake Ontario**	**the Baikal** **the Ontario**	
4. *Mountains*	◆ peaks: **Elbrus** **Everest**	◆ mountain chains: **the Urals** **the Alps**	
5. *Islands*	◆ a single island: **Madagascar** **Corfu** **Sicily**	◆ island groups: **the Bermudas** **the British Isles** **the Bahamas**	
6. *Regions*	**North America** **Latin America** **Central Asia**	**the Middle East** **the Far East** **the north of England** **the south of France**	**BUT:** **western Canada** **southern Spain**
7. *Four cardinal* points of the compass		**the South,** **the North,** **the West,** **the East**	**BUT:** from **East** to **West** from **North** to **South**

3.2 NAMES OF PERSONS

Names of Persons	NO ARTICLE	The Definite Article THE	The Indefinite Article A/AN
1. *Names of Persons*	*a)* as a rule **no article** is used ❑ There was a letter from **Susan** inviting me to a party. *b)* modified by attributes old, young, little, *dear, poor, honest* ❑ **Young Jolyon** was standing by the piano. ❑ ... she is a widow of **poor George**...	*a)* with a name in the plural to indicate <u>the whole family:</u> ❑ He is very different from the rest of **the Kents.** *b)* with the name modified by a particularizing attribute: ❑ Is he **the Sheldon** who is a writer? ❑ She was no more **the Julia** of the first years of their marriage.	*a)* <u>one member of a family:</u> ❑ I have often wondered if Tim was really **a Burton.** *b)* when names of persons <u>become countable nouns</u> indicating typical features of a well-known name: ❑ Why, you are quite **a Monte Cristo.** ❑ She felt like **an Alice** in Wonderland. *c)* names of persons when meaning *"a certain..."*: ❑ I heard it from a (certain) **Mr. Jagger.**
2. *Nouns of* ***relationship***	*a)* followed by a proper name: **uncle Jolyon** **aunt Polly** *b)* not followed by a proper name and used only by the members of <u>the family:</u> ❑ She went into the hall: "Is **Mother** back?"	*a)* If other people's relations are meant: ❑ **The son** was as clever as **the father.** *b)* Mind the expressions: ❑ Lomonosov was the son of **a** fisherman. ❑ Becky was the daughter of **an** artist.	
3. *Nouns* denoting **ranks, titles, profession** followed by a proper name	*academician* *professor* *doctor* *count* *lord* *colonel* *Mr/Mrs* Brown	Nouns denoting <u>profession</u> followed by a proper name: ❑ **The painter Warhol** left many fine pictures.	

3.3 THE USE OF ARTICLES IN THE NAMES OF PLACES, SOME BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ORGANIZATIONS, ETC

Names of Places, Buildings, Public Organizations, etc.	The Definite Article THE	NO ARTICLE
◆ Historical events	❐ **the** French Revolution	
◆ Public/Political Organizations	❐ **the** Senate, **the** Houses of Parliament, **the** United Nations, **the** Government	❐ NATO*, Parliament, Congress
◆ Public/historical buildings, Churches	❐ **the** Bank of England, **the** Winter Palace, **the** Tower of London	❐ Westminster Abbey, St. Paul's Cathedral, Buckingham Palace
◆ Documents	❐ **the** Constitution	
◆ Parties	❐ **the** Labour Party, **the** Tory	
◆ Names of newspapres and periodicals	❐ **the** Times, **the** Washington Post	❐ (foreign) Pravda, Der Spiegel
◆ Businesses and Chains of Shops		❐ General Motors, Sony, Shell
◆ Ships, Trains, Spacecrafts	❐ **the** Orient Express, **the** Titanic	❐ Apollo, Challenger
◆ Theatres, Cinemas	❐ **the** Globe, **the** Bolshoy, **the** Odeon, **the** Arbat	❐ Her Majesty's
◆ Museums	❐ **the** British Museum, **the** Hermitage, **the** Tate Gallery	
◆ Parks		❐ Hyde Park, St. James's Park
◆ Schools, colleges, Universities	❐ **the** University **of** London**	❐ Carnegy College, London University Manchester Grammar School
◆ Restaurants	❐ **the** Cage Royal	❐ Leoni's
◆ Hotels	❐ **the** Hilton	❐ Brown's
◆ Stations and Airports		❐ Heathrow, Sheremetyevo
◆ The names of counties, states, streets		❐ Yourkshire, Texas, Oxford, High Street

* If an abbreviation is pronounced as a word, there is no article. (OPEC [əu'pek])
** "The" is used when the two nouns have "of" in between.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (B, C) Supply *"the"* or *"-"*.

1. I haven't the least idea how many rooms there are in _____ Ritz (hotel).
2. What's your address? – I live in _____ Montague Road, number 27.

3. I could never afford to stay at hotes like _____ Brown's or _____ Hilton.
4. You can't visit _____ London without seeing _____ Buckingham Palace.
5. We had an early dinner at _____ Leoni's and then went to play at _____ Globe theatre.
6. Go down _____ Oxford Street till you come to _____ Oxford Circus, then turn right.
7. Do you know the song about _____ London Bridge?
8. Look at the percentage of lawyers in _____ Senate.
9. Two famous works of art are recently acquired by _____ Tate Gallery, _____ London.
10. He spoke about the role of _____ Labour Party during the election period.
11. And eventually _____ Queen Elizabeth was put to sea.
12. The Kings and Queens of England were crowned and buried in _____ Westminster Abbey.
13. There is an interesting article in _____ Times.
14. He never read _____ Pravda.
15. He attended _____ Congress only nine times.
16. Governmental offices line _____ Whitehall, and on the right is _____ Downing street.

Ex. 2. (**B, C**) Insert articles where necessary.

1. When you are in _____ sky, you see only snow in – Arctic or – Greenland. You have glimpses of _____ Andes or _____ Pacific.
2. _____ Riviera in _____ Caucasus is the most popular place in summer.
3. _____ Lake Baikal is the deepest lake in the world.
4. _____ Elbrus is the highest peak in _____ Europe.
5. _____ Hague, a city in _____ Netherlands near _____ North Sea, is the seat of the Dutch Government.
6. The home ownership rate in _____ South East of _____ England is higher than in ____ North.
7. _____ Suez Canal was blocked.
8. _____ Sahara is the greatest desert in _____ North Africa, extending from _____ Atlantic Ocean to _____ Nile.
9. _____ Philippines is an archipelago which consists of thousands of islands.
10. _____ West Indies is a chain of islands between _____ North and _____ South America.
11. The surface of _____ Mediterranean is never so blue as that of _____ Adriatic.

Ex. 3. (**C**) Insert articles where necessary.

I

1. _____ "Queen Mary" was launched by _____ Queen Mary in 1938.
2. There was a little sentimentality about _____ Forsytes.
3. He is the nearest we have to _____ English Leonardo da Vinci.
4. He has the humour of _____ Chekhov.
5. To feel more comfortable you should have taken _____ Pullman.
6. He predicted the victory of _____ Mrs Thatcher in the 1979 election.
7. I know very little about him as you do – he is _____ Mr Tarantino.
8. One of the correspondents handed McCartney the paper and asked, "Are you _____ McCartney who wrote this?"
9. "I'll run to _____ Mother", he said in _____ loud whisper.

II

1. _____ Willowbys left town as soon as they were married.
2. This wasn't _____ Beatrice she knew.
3. _____ father and _____ daughter appeared at last.
4. _____ professor Keitel is _____ man to whom you'll be responsible for your undergraduate teaching.
5. This Pat wasn't like _____ Pat of his memories.
6. If you are _____ Napoleon, you'll play _____ game of _____ power, if you're _____ Leonardo you'll play for _____ knowledge.
7. Elsie said she would ring up _____ Doctor Hitchcock.
8. _____ poor Edward muttered something, but what it was nobody knew.
9. _____ gentle, tender-hearted Amelia sadly was _____ only person to whom Becky could attach herself.
10. I am _____ Mr Keaton to whom you were to come.

3.4 REVISION

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Кордильеры находятся в Северной Америке.
2. Берега Рейна очень живописны.
3. Эльбрус – очень красивая гора.
4. Они купили дом в Марлоу, который выходил окнами на Темзу.
5. Средиземное море находится между Европой, Азией и Африкой.
6. Венеция расположена на берегу Адриатического моря.
7. Ливингстон погиб в Центральной Африке.
8. Они любили гулять в Гайд-парке.
9. Она показывала мне фотографию замечательной долины в Баварии.

Ex. 5. (**C**) Translate into English.

1. Вас ждет какой-то Медников.
2. Она вышла замуж за Кормана, с которым нас познакомили у Кэмеронов.
3. Константиновы поселились здесь два года назад.
4. Она была Клэптон, и, как все Клэптоны, очень умна.
5. Крылова называли русским Лафонтеном.
6. Москва наших дней – это не Москва XIX века.
7. И.В. Мичурин родился в 1855 г. в деревне Долгое, недалеко от Козлова. Мичурины всегда были садовниками.
8. Крым и Кавказ расположены на берегу Черного моря.
9. Вам нравится эта картина? Это Шемякин.
10. Про какого Толстого вы говорите? – Про Толстого, который написал роман "Петр Первый".

4. SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES IN THE USE OF ARTICLES

THE USE OF ARTICLES WITH THE NAMES OF MONTHS AND DAYS, SEASONS, MEALS, LANGUAGES, NOUNS: *DAY, NIGHT, EVENING, MORNING, ETC.*

The Nouns	As a rule, usually **NO ARTICLE**	When modified by a particularizing attribute, situation: **THE**	When modified by a descriptive attribute: **A**	**In Set Expressions**
1. The names of months and days *May, Monday*	**May** is a spring month. I met her on **Monday**.	We'll always remember **the May** of 1945. She came on **the Friday** when David was born.	**A cold May** is a usual thing in St.-Petersburg.	
2. The names of seasons *summer, winter*	I like **winter.** It was **summer** when we first came here.	It happened in **the spring** of 1930.	It was **a beautiful spring.** But: **no article** *early/late* spring winter	
3. Nouns: day, night, morning, evening, afternoon	**Day** is meant for work, **night** for sleep. It was **evening.**	He'll never forget **the day** when he met her. **The night** was warm and beautiful.	I spent a sleepless **night.** But: **no article** *early/late* morning afternoon	– **by** day/night; – **at** night, **at** dawn/ daybreak/ sunrise/sunset/ noon/night; – from morning till night; – in **the** morning (evening,afternoon)
4. The names of languages French, German, *English*	She knows **French** well.	**The English** of America differs from **the English** of Great Britain. **the English** language		What is the *English* for ...
5. The names of meals lunch, dinner, *tea*	Did you have **dinner**? **Lunch** is ready.	**The dinner** we had today was very good. **The lunch** was a success.	After **a heavy breakfast** we started for...	to *have breakfast* (lunch, dinner, tea, coffee)

THE USE OF ARTICLES WITH THE NOUNS
SCHOOL/COLLEGE, PRISON/JAIL, BED, TOWN, CHURCH

The Nouns	When the nouns lose the concrete meaning and express the purpose for which they serve: **NO ARTICLE**	When the nouns denote concrete objects the articles are used in accordance to the general rules
School/college university	*to be at school/college/university* *to go to school/college/university* *to leave school/college* ❑ After I **left school** I **went to university.** (as a student) ❑ Why aren't the children **at school** today? (as pupils)	to go *to the school* (the building is meant) to leave *the school* (to leave the building) ❑ Mr Kelly went to **the school** to meet his daughter's teacher. ❑ Excuse me, where is **the university**, please?
Church	*in church/at church* ❑ Mrs Kelly goes **to church** on Sundays (for a religious service).	❑ **The church** was built in the 17th century. ❑ There is **a church** in the village.
Prison/jail	to be *in prison* to be *sent to prison/jail* to be *put in prison* ❑ Ken's brother is **in prison** for robbery. ❑ Fred robbed a bank but he was caught and sent **to prison**.	❑ Ken went to **the prison** to visit his brother. ❑ They lived near **a prison**.
Bed	to go *to bed* to be *in bed* to stay *in bed* ❑ It's time **to go to bed**. ❑ Is Tom still **in bed**?	❑ Her portrait was on the wall beside **the bed**. ❑ There is a table, 6 chairs, **a bed** and a cupboard in the room.
Work	to go *to work* to be *at work* to start *work* ❑ Why isn't Ann **at work** today?	❑ I like **the work** I'm doing now. ❑ **A new work** of modern art ❑ **The works** of Shakespeare (products of the intellect or imagination)
Home	to go *home* to come *home* to be *at home* to stay *at home*/to feel *at home* ❑ Will you be **at home** tonight? ❑ Let's **go home**. ***no preposition***	Institution or place: **an** orphans home, **a** nursing home, ***a** maternity home*. Place where an animal or a plant is native: ***the** home* of the tiger.

Town	with prepositions: *to/in town* ❑ You can't go **to town** tomorrow. ❑ What are you going to do **in town**? ❑ He spent 20 years **in town**, he is not used to country life (as opposed to the country).	❑ I want to go to **the town** I was born in. ❑ Would you rather live in **a town** or in **the** country? ❑ **The whole town** was talking about it.
Hospital	to go *to hospital* to be *in hospital* ❑ Jack had an accident. He had to go **to hospital**. He is still **in hospital** now.	❑ When Ann was ill we went to **the hospital** to visit her. (as visitors, we mean a particular hospital).

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**B, C**) Insert articles where necessary.

Names of Seasons.

1. _____ day had been fine and warm; but at _____ coming on of _____ night, _____ air grew cool. 2. All _____ nature was very calm and beautiful. 3. You see, _____ winter was _____ very bad time for me, and I really had no money at all to buy _____ bread with. 4. _____ summer drew to _____ end, and _____ early autumn. 5. It was _____ lovely evening in _____ spring time of _____ year. 6. It was pretty late in _____ autumn of _____ year. 7. _____ declining sun looked brightly upon _____ little Wiltshire village. 8. There was going to be _____ election soon, we all knew: this was _____ spring of 1955. 9. It was _____ cold fall and _____ wind came down from _____ mountains.

Bed, School, Prison, Town.

1. Maycomb was _____ old town. 2. Dolores said nothing at all on _____ way to _____ town. 3. Before that she had taught history in _____ girls' school. 4. _____ school was not _____ particularly good one. 5. I never knew _____ lawyer yet who didn't threaten to put me in _____ prison sooner or later. 6. In all probability he was already in _____ town. 7. Among other public buildings in _____ certain town ... there is one anciently common to most towns, great or small ... _____ workhouse. 8. _____ hospital where Amy worked was in the East End. 9. They went to _____ church every Sunday morning. 10. He told with _____ perfect truth ... how he had in time been released from _____ prison. 11. You take your man home, Mrs Douglas, and get him to _____ bed before eleven. 12. I'm going to be out of _____ town for few days. 13. Unless we can give _____ rector _____ bed, he had nowhere to lay his head this night. 14. Who could be in _____ prison _____ quarter of _____ century, and be prosperous!

Ex. 2. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences.

I

1. Для лета это был очень теплый вечер. 2. Казалось, что осень в этом году наступит раньше. 3. Была ранняя весна, день был чудесный, и у нас было хорошее настроение. 4. Это был первый день лета. 5. Весна в этом году пришла рано. 6. Она поехала в

деревню на лето. 7. В этом году весна была короткой. 8. "Ты не мог бы подождать до зимы?" – спросил Сэм. 9. Зимой и летом мы проводили выходные за городом. 10. Зима заканчивалась, в воздухе пахло весной.

II

1. Хотя было одиннадцать часов, Софья все еще была в постели. 2. Стефан сидел на краю кровати и улыбался. 3. Он и мой брат вместе ходили в школу. 4. Когда почти стемнело, он посетил городскую тюрьму. 5. После окончания школы он начал работать в конторе своего отца. 6. Год назад она закончила институт и начала работать в школе в деревне недалеко от Москвы. 7. Эта мысль впервые пришла ко мне, когда я лежал в постели во время бессонной ночи. 8. В деревне есть больница. 9. Мы закончили работу в полночь, мы слишком устали и легли спать даже без ужина. 10. Книги, газеты, журналы лежали на столе, стульях, кровати. 11. Он живет в одном крыле дома, остальную часть дома он превратил в госпиталь. 12. Утром, как обычно, я пошел в школу.

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) Insert articles where necessary.

Day, Night, Morning, Evening.

1. I payed my first visit to his house on _____ clear February night. 2. It was nearly _____ sundown. 3. _____ night outside seemed very quiet. 4. During _____ evening we played innumerable games of piquet ... 5. It was _____ evening, and he was walking across the school grounds on his way home. 6. He wondered what hour it was. _____ sun seemed to indicate _____ late morning ... 7. _____ morning was cold and sharp and sunny. 8. It is _____ early morning. 9. We are going to have _____ ideal night. 10. _____ night being sharp and frosty, we trembled from _____ head to _____ foot. 11. It was early in _____ afternoon. 12. _____ night came and he sent his sadness into his sleep. 13. I was up at six in _____ morning. 14. She has had _____ bad night, probably _____ rather delirious night. 15. Arthur did not pass _____ sleepless night; he slept long and well. 16. It was about ten o'clock at _____ night. 17. _____ fine September afternoon was dying fast. 18. It was _____ morning after Roger had talked to me in _____ Park, and Margaret and I were sitting at _____ breakfast. 19. On _____ bright January morning _____ telephones kept ringing in my office. 20. I cannot describe to you _____ intense silence of _____ night.

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Insert articles where necessary.

Names of Meals.

1. The invitations to _____ dinner for sixteen people were sent out. 2. He came in one morning when I was having _____ breakfast on _____ terrace of _____ hotel and introduced himself. 3. I saw to it that he had _____ good dinner. 4. He was giving _____ big lunch on _____ following day and at _____ end of _____ week _____ grand dinner. 5. Mr Wayne settled back in his chair, savouring his drink, expecting _____ good dinner. 6. _____ dinner was very sound. 7. But _____ hot bath and _____ good dinner fixed him up. 8. They had _____ supper in silence. 9. " _____ dinner will be ready in _____ few minutes," she said.

Ex. 5. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Утро было холодное и ветреное.
2. Был теплый летний вечер.

3. Настала ночь, и путешественники решили отдохнуть.
4. Он пишет с утра до ночи.
5. Он переночевал у приятеля.
6. Он провел бессонную ночь и был очень бледен.
7. Приятно поехать за город в ясный летний день.
8. И днем и ночью он думал об одном.
9. Было прекрасное утро, солнечное и тихое.
10. Было раннее утро, все в доме еще спали.
11. На дворе (outside) была ночь.
12. Была теплая летняя ночь.
13. Я думаю, день будет ясным и теплым.
14. Машины на фабрике работали день и ночь.
15. Я убедил его провести ночь в нашем доме и отдохнуть.
16. Я никогда не забуду вечер, который мы провели в Лондоне.
17. Вечер был холодным и туманным.

5. THE USE OF ARTICLES WITH NOUNS IN SOME SET EXPRESSIONS

I. THE USE OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE WITH NOUNS IN SET EXPRESSIONS

1. in a hurry – второпях
2. to have a mind to do smth – иметь желание что-либо сделать, быть склонным ...
3. to fly into a passion – прийти в бешенство
4. to fly into a fury (rage) – прийти в ярость
5. to take a fancy to – проникнуться симпатией, почувствовать расположение
6. in a low (loud) voice – тихо (громко)
7. a great many (with countables) – много; a great deal (with uncountables) – много
8. it's a pity – жаль
9. it's a shame – стыдно; жалко
10. it's a pleasure – приятно
11. as a result – в результате
12. to have a good time – хорошо провести время
13. to be at a loss – быть в растерянности (недоумении)
14. at a glance – сразу, одним взглядом
15. to tell a lie – говорить неправду

II. THE USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE WITH NOUNS IN SET EXPRESSIONS

1. it's out of the question – об этом и речи быть не может
2. to take the trouble to do smth – потрудиться
3. in the original – в оригинале
4. to play the piano (the violin, the harp) – играть на пианино, скрипке, арфе
5. to keep the house – сидеть дома, не выходить (особ. по болезни)
6. to keep the bed – соблюдать постельный режим
7. on the whole – в целом
8. the other day – на днях
9. on the one hand – с одной стороны; on the other hand – с другой стороны

10. to tell the truth – говорить правду
11. to be on the safe side – для верности, на всякий случай
12. at the bottom/top of – внизу/вверху

III. NOUNS IN SET EXPRESSIONS USED WITHOUT AN ARTICLE

1. out-of-doors – на дворе, на улице, вне дома
2. to take to heart – принимать близко к сердцу
3. at heart – в глубине души
4. to take offence – обижаться
5. to give (to get, to ask) permission – дать (получить, попросить) разрешение
6. to lose heart – терять мужество
7. from morning till night – с утра до вечера
8. from head to foot – с головы до ног
9. from beginning to end – с начала до конца
10. at first sight – с первого взгляда
11. by chance – случайно
12. by mistake – по ошибке
13. for hours – часами
14. for ages – целую вечность
15. by land, by sea, by air – сушей, морем, по воздуху
16. to go to sea – стать моряком, выходить в море
17. on deck – на палубе
18. on board – на борту
19. to keep house – вести хозяйство
20. at sunrise (at dawn) – на рассвете
21. at sunset – на закате
22. at work – за работой
23. by name – по имени
24. in debt – в долгу
25. to play football/hockey – играть в футбол

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**C**) Insert articles where necessary.

1. "Are you _____ bad sailor?" she asked. "About as bad as is possible in spite of having been at _____ sea so much." 2. The parcel came by _____ post. 3. On his trip round the world with Fleur he had often put his nose out and watched the dancing on _____ deck. 4. He decided that he would not at _____ present explain to her who he was. 5. I saw _____ good deal of him during _____ war. 6. He has taken her death very much to _____ heart indeed. 7. She went by _____ coach because it was cheaper. 8. All seemed perfectly at their ease, by no means in _____ hurry. 9. _____ little car in _____ question now stood outside _____ front door. 10. Am I dealing, young people, with _____ case of _____ love at _____ first sight? 11. We've had some tea already on _____ board _____ yacht. 12. Rosa was well aware that she had never taken _____ trouble to get to know Annette. 13. You will go to _____ sea and forget all about me in _____ month. 14. He is beginning to lose _____ heart, they say. 15. She burned like _____ fire from _____ head to _____ foot. 16. I got into conversation with him by _____ chance at _____ concert. 17. She's taken

quite _____ fancy to you, Ridgeon. 18. I returned at once, and found Ada sitting at _____ work by _____ fireside. 19. Somewhere _____ great many men were singing. 20. It is _____ pity to worry her if she has _____ talent for _____ uneasiness. 21. Behind _____ house was _____ large garden, and in summer, _____ pupils almost lived out-of-doors. 22. _____ rain had stopped and we went on _____ foot to _____ Ebury Street. 23. They started at _____ dawn, and _____ boy I sent with them didn't come back till _____ next day. 24. All of _____ sudden, his face had become stony. 25. Dear, dear! It seems only _____ other day since I took you down to school to Slough!

Ex. 2. (**C**) Translate into English.

1. Он всегда говорит очень тихо.
2. На днях я случайно встретила Нину.
3. Если вы так ответите, он придет в ярость.
4. По правде говоря, я так и не поняла, почему она обиделась.
5. Она читает с утра до ночи.
6. Мы всегда заставали его за работой.
7. Приходите ко мне завтра. – Об этом и речи быть не может, я очень занята.
8. Он даже не потрудился встретить нас на вокзале.
9. Мы уже можем читать Диккенса в оригинале.
10. Мой брат очень хорошо играет на скрипке.
11. Вы по ошибке принесли не тот журнал.
12. Я полагаю, ты сказал мне чистую (bare) правду.
13. Она смотрела налево и направо и говорила тихим голосом.
14. Она вела хозяйство своего овдовевшего брата.
15. Они любили путешествовать морем и пешком.
16. Рада (просто удовольствие) видеть тебя.
17. Он любил играть на флейте (flute).
18. Он был постоянно в долгах.
19. Ему позволили повидаться с нею на несколько минут.
20. Услышав это, он впал в страшную ярость.
21. Я наткнулся на эту книгу совершенно случайно.
22. Он был в растерянности, он не мог соврать.
23. Я могу привести ряд примеров.
24. Во время обеда он по ошибке назвал меня Мэри.

6. TESTS

I

1. Она уже целую вечность ищет работу.
2. Родители купили мне гитару. Гитара была из прекрасного дерева.
3. Вы именно тот самый человек, которого я хочу видеть.
4. Он довольно хороший художник.
5. Знания – это сила.
6. Я только что приготовил суп. Хочешь супа?
7. Была весна. Весна была очень теплой.

8. Мы никогда не ужинаем, но вчера после театра у нас был легкий ужин с друзьями.
9. Напротив нашего дома больница. Я не люблю лежать в больнице.
10. Было уже одиннадцать, а она была еще в постели.

II

1. Я нашел на улице котенка.
2. Это был милый домик. Перед домиком было много роз.
3. Он задал ясный вопрос и ждал такого же ответа.
4. Она такой хороший учитель, что все ребята ее любили.
5. Он послал нам важную информацию.
6. Принесите воды. Вода в этом пруду очень чистая.
7. Зима в том году началась очень рано.
8. Она трудится с утра до вечера.
9. Когда Аня была больна, ее забрали в больницу. Мы часто ходили к ней в больницу.
10. Летом я живу за городом, но по воскресеньям езжу в город.

III

1. В молодости она была красавицей.
2. В нашей школе новая учительница. Что ты думаешь о новой учительнице?
3. Он дал неправильный ответ.
4. Это довольно глупый вопрос.
5. Мне нравится музыка этого композитора.
6. Добавь соли в суп. Соль на полке.
7. Была поздняя осень, а мы еще жили на даче.
8. Сегодня мы завтракали поздно. Завтрак был как ланч.
9. Сколько людей посещают университет в вашей стране?
10. После работы мой дядя обычно идет домой.

IV

1. Его попросили произнести речь.
2. На правой стене есть полка. На полке много английских книг.
3. Это правильный ответ на вопрос?
4. Он довольно вежливый человек. Он не мог так поступить.
5. В комнате было много света и воздуха.
6. Дайте мне льда. Сок теплый.
7. Лето в этом году пришло уже в мае.
8. Они пригласили нас на обед. Обед был превосходным.
9. Он большой мальчик, он ходит в школу.
10. По воскресеньям вся семья ходила в церковь. Церковь в нашей деревне была очень красивая.

THE PRONOUN

We use pronouns instead of nouns.

1. CLASSIFICATION OF PRONOUNS

Pronouns fall under the following groups:

1. **PERSONAL:** *I, he, she, it, we, you, they.*
2. **POSSESSIVE:** *my, his, her, its, our, your, their.*
3. **REFLEXIVE:** *myself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourself (yourselves), themselves.*
4. **RECIPROCAL:** *each other, one another.*
5. **DEMONSTRATIVE:** *this (these), that (those), such, the same.*
6. **INTERROGATIVE:** *who, whose, what, which.*
7. **DEFINING:** *each, every, everybody, everyone, everything, all, either, both, other, another.*
8. **INDEFINITE:** *some, any, somebody, anybody, something, anything, someone, anyone, one.*
9. **NEGATIVE:** *no, none, neither, nobody, no one, nothing.*

1.1 PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

Personal pronouns have two cases; there are corresponding possessive pronouns and their absolute forms.

NOMINATIVE	OBJECTIVE	Possessive PRONOUNS	Absolute FORMS
I	*me*	*my*	*mine*
he	*him*	*his*	*his*
she	*her*	*her*	*hers*
it	*it*	*its*	–
you	*you*	*your*	*yours*
we	*us*	*our*	*ours*
they	*them*	*their*	*theirs*

NOTES:

1. We don't have singular and plural forms of *you*. We can say *"You're right"* to someone we don't know at all (*Вы*) or we know very well (*Ты*), to a child or to an adult.

2. We use *it* for things, to refer to animals, a baby or a child. We use *he, she, who* when we refer to pets, ships, cars, motorbikes, a country if a reference is "affectionate":
- ❑ Roger is a good dog. **He** is my best friend.
- ❑ Bessie's a fine cow. **She** gives a lot of milk.
- ❑ My old car is not fast, but **she** does 50 ml to the gallon.
- ❑ In 1941, America assumed **her** role as a world power.

3. We use objective pronouns after *"to be"*, *"than"* and in answer to questions *"Who?"*:
   - ❑ Who is it? – It's **me/him/her/us/them.**
   - ❑ Who told him? – **Me/not me.**
   - ❑ He is taller than **me/him/her** (= *I am*).
4. Possessive pronouns are dependent. They must go in front of nouns:
   - ❑ He is **my** son.
   - ❑ Is it **your** name?
   - ❑ The cat drank **its** milk.
5. Absolute forms stand on their own or they can be used in such constructions as: *"a friend of mine"*, *"that car of yours"*:
   - ❑ This book is **mine.**
   - ❑ That brother **of yours** is always in trouble.
   - ❑ That music **of hers** drives me crazy.
6. Possessive pronouns are often used before the names of the parts of the body, clothing, things belonging to a person, etc. In this case they are not translated into Russian:
   - ❑ He rose and held out **his** hand to help **his** father up.
   - ❑ The girl dropped **her** handkerchief and he picked it up.
   - ❑ He always puts **his** hands into **his** pockets.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A**) Fill in the blanks with personal pronouns.

Model: I see a girl, I see *her.*
1. I see a teacher, I see _____ .
2. Please, read this letter, read _____ .
3. I know the boy, I know _____ .
4. I'm glad to meet both Tom and Ann, I'm glad to meet _____ .
5. Give me the book, give _____ to me.
6. I don't like Ann's brother, I don't like _____ .
7. This task was given to you and to me, it was given to _____ .

Ex. 2. (**A**) Answer the questions, using *"my–mine"*, *"her–hers"*, etc.

Model: This book belongs to me. ⇨ This is *my* book. The book is *mine*.
1. Do these shoes belong to your husband? 2. Will this new flat belong to them? 3. This umbrella doesn't belong to you, does it? 4. These books belong to us, don't they? 5. Do these things belong to him or to her?

Ex. 3. (**A**) Use the absolute form of the possessive pronoun in brackets.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

Model: The pleasure was all (my). The pleasure was all *mine*.
1. Our house is in that street. (His) is round the corner. 2. It was through no fault of (her). 3. You can very well do without my help but not without (their). 4. Her handbag is on the chair. (My) is on the sofa. 5. (Our) was the last turn.

Ex. 4. (**A**) Fill in the blanks with missing possessive pronouns.

1. This doesn't look like _____ book, it must be _____ . 2. Tell him not to forget _____ ticket, she mustn't forget _____ either. 3. Tell me, isn't that _____ girl-friend over there? 4. I see that he has lost _____ pencil, perhaps you can lend him _____ . 5. He has come to see me, _____ father and _____ are school friends. 6. This is ____ work, I did it without any help at all.

Ex. 5. (**B**) Re-word the following sentences. Pay attention to the indefinite article before nouns in the singular.

Examples: a) He is *my* cousin. ⇨ He is a cousin *of mine*.
b) They are *our* friends. ⇨ They are friends *of ours*.

1. She is their relative.
2. He's her friend.
3. We are your former students.
4. She is his niece.
5. I am your colleague.
6. They are her pupils.
7. She is our neighbour.
8. He is her former school-friend.
9. I am his student.

Ex. 6. (**B, C**) Choose the correct form of the pronouns in brackets.

I

1. It may be (our, ours) dictionaries. 2. He has not read a line of (your, yours). How can he criticise (your, yours) poems? 3. His composition is much more interesting than (your, yours) or (my, mine). 4. (Their, theirs) knowledge of the subject is not much superior to (our, ours). 5. I'm afraid they will take (her, hers) advice not (your, yours). 6. All (our, ours) clothes were extremely dirty, and (my, mine) especially so. 7. Will you help me to sort out the things? I cannot tell which are (your, yours) and which are (my, mine). 8. This is (your, yours) note-book, but where is (my, mine)?

II

1. She got to (her, hers) feet and took (his, him) hand. 2. "Let me see your passports," I gave him ___ and Catherine got ___ out of ___ handbag (my, mine; her, hers; her, hers). 3. Mind ___ own business and I'll mind ___ (your, yours; my, mine). 4. Mr Black gave (his, him) wife a leather bag for (her, hers) birthday. 5. The next voice to speak up was not the Lieutenant's but ___ (my, mine). 6. I looked at (her, hers) ___ and at none other from that moment. 7. ___ was not a marriage that could last (their, theirs). 8. ___ nerves are as bad as ___ (your, yours; my, mine). 9. His eyes were as bright as ____ (her, hers). 10. After all, this is ___ home just as much as ___ (your, yours; my, mine). 11. My sister likes much sugar in ____ tea, but I like little in ____ (her, hers; my, mine). "Who can drink tea as sweet as ____ (your, yours)," I wonder. 12. His own hand shook as he accepted a rose or two from ___ and thanked her (her, hers).

Ex. 7. (**B, C**) Use the appropriate form of personal pronouns in the following sentences.

1. He patted Jack heartily on (he) shoulder. 2. He put (he) hand in (she). 3. "This foolish wife of (I) thinks I'm a great artist," said he. 4. (They) say there's been a great earthquake in the

Pacific. 5. Then he stopped and pointed and said, "Those are peas." I said, "We've got some peas, too." "I expect (you) are bigger than (our)," he said politely. 6. Don't show this letter to (you) brother. 7. There's a ghastly article of (he) in the evening's paper. 8. She folded the letter and replaced it in (it) envelope. 9. The children had had (they) tea. Kate was late for (she) as usual, Mary and Paul were having (they). 10. This demand of (they) is quite ridiculous. 11. She makes all (she) clothes herself. 12. There was a cold wind blowing so I put on (I) heavy coat.

Ex. 8. (**B, C**) Translate into English, paying attention to the *italicized* words.

1. Машина мистера Брауна в гараже, а *наша* напротив дома. 2. Вчера они взяли *наши* журналы и оставили нам *свои*. 3. Этот чемодан не *мой*, это *их*. 4. *Ее* родители живут в центре города, а *его* – на окраине. 5. Я знаю *ваш* адрес, но я не знаю *их* адрес. 6. Это *мое* мнение, я вижу, оно отличается от *твоего*. 7. Это *ваша* записная книжка, а это *его*, но где же *моя*? 8. Она взяла мои руки в *свои*. 9. Он, должно быть, перепутал ключи и взял ключ соседа вместо *своего*. 10. После всего, что произошло, мы не могли верить ни одному *ее* слову. 11.*Твой* билет на столе, а *ее* билет – в сумке. 12. Результаты показали, что *наш* план был более правильным, чем *их*. 13. Самое лучшее предложение – *ваше*. 14. Построена новая дорога; *ее* длина более тысячи километров. 15. *Его* мама сейчас в деревне, а *моя* – в городе.16. Я предпочитаю Крым Кавказу из-за *его* более сухого климата. 17. Этот автомобиль очень небольшой, но мотор у *него* относительно мощный. 18. Где *твоя* фотография? – *Она* в альбоме.

1.2 REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

MYSELF/HIMSELF/HERSELF/ITSELF/OURSELVES/YOURSELF (YOURSELVES)/THEMSELVES

We often use reflexive pronouns <u>with</u> these <u>verbs</u>: *amuse/blame/cut/dry/enjoy/hurt/introduce*:

- ❑ I **enjoyed myself** very much at the party.
- ❑ We **amused ourselves** playing football on the beach.
- ❑ Jim **prides himself** on his cooking.

We can use reflexive pronouns <u>after prepositions</u>:

- ❑ Look **after yourself**! Take care **of yourself**.
- ❑ She lives **by herself** (= alone). She made the dress **by herself** (= without help).

We <u>don't use</u> *"myself"*, etc. <u>after</u> *feel/relax/concentrate/wash/dress/shave/behave*:

- ❑ I **feel great** after having a swim.
- ❑ You must try and **concentrate**.
- ❑ I got up, **washed, shaved** and **dressed** quickly.

But:
- ❑ Wash/dress/shave **yourself**! – Помойся/оденься/побрейся!
- ❑ Behave **yourself**! – Веди себя прилично!

COMPARE:

<u>... selves</u> *(себя)*

❑ Tom and Ann stood in front of the mirror and looked at **themselves**.

<u>each other/one another</u> *(друг друга)*

❑ Tom and Ann stood in front of the mirror and looked at **each other (one another)**.

(Tom looked at Tom,
Ann looked at Ann.)

(Tom looked at Ann and Ann looked at Tom.)
"Each other" generally implies only two,
"one another" – two or more.

Remember set expressions meaning ***alone***:

on my (her/his/its/our/their) own	
by	**myself/yourself/himself/itself** (singular) **ourselves/yourselves/themselves** (plural)

- ❑ I like living **on my own/by myself**.
- ❑ Did you go on holidays **on your own/by yourself?**
- ❑ Learner-drivers are not allowed to drive **on their own/by themselves**.

EXERCISES

Ex. 9. (**A**) Extend the statements following the example given in the pattern.

Example: The children like to cook dinner. They always do it *themselves.*
1. I never ask my mother to buy my clothes.
2. My sister likes to make cakes.
3. The boys built this boat.
4. We want to repair the bicycle.
5. I like to clean my flat.
6. Nobody helped him correct the mistake.

Ex. 10. (**A, B**) Insert a reflexive pronoun where necessary.

1. He shaves _____ every other day. 2. Go and wash _____ . 3. She washed _____ quickly and went to prepare breakfast. 4. He likes his wife to dress _____ well. 5. Behave _____ ! 6. You can't behave _____ . 7. The child fell and hurt _____ badly. 8. The book was ever so interesting that I could not tear _____ from it. 9. Be careful with the knife, you may cut _____ . 10. I tried to make _____ agreeable. 11. He thinks too much of _____ . 12. Sit down and make _____ at home. 13. I am sure they will succeed in the aim they've put before _____ . 14. We established _____ in a hotel. 15. She was beside _____ with anger. 16. She looked in the mirror and could not recognize ____ .

Ex. 11. (**B**) Complete these sentences using *myself/yourself,* etc.

Example: Here is the money, go and buy *yourself an ice-cream*.
1. Be careful! That pan is very hot. Don't burn _____ .
2. I want to know you better. Tell me about _____ .
3. It isn't her fault. She really shouldn't blame _____ .
4. Did you make the dress _____?
5. The boy was lucky when he fell down the stairs. He didn't hurt _____ .
6. Tom cut _____ while he was shaving this morning.
7. He spends most of his time alone, so it's not surprising that he talks to _____ .
8. Don't worry about us. We can look after _____ .

Ex. 12. (**B**) Complete these sentences, using *myself,* etc. only where necessary.

1. Tom is growing a beard because he doesn't like shaving _____ .
2. The telephone rang while I was taking a shower. I dried _____ and ran into the room.
3. I tried to study but I just couldn't make _____ .
4. Jack and I first met _____ at a party five years ago.
5. You're working too much. Why don't you relax _____ more?
6. It was a lovely holiday. We really enjoyed _____ very much.
7. The routine is the same every morning: I wash _____ and have breakfast.

Ex. 13. (**B**) In these sentences you have to write *-selves* or *each other*.

Example: Look at *yourself.* Your face is dirty.
How long have Tom and Ann known *each other*?

1. At Christmas friends often give _____ presents.
2. I enjoyed _____ very much at the party.
3. Jack and Jill are very happy together. They love _____ very much.
4. She has no reason to blame _____ .
5. I think this poor dog has hurt _____ .
6. Nora and I don't see _____ very often these days.

Ex. 14. (**B**) Complete these sentences using *on my own/by myself,* etc.

Example: Learner-drivers are not allowed to drive *on their own*.

1. She hated being in the house on _____ . She was afraid to be alone.
2. The box was too heavy for me to lift by _____ .
3. You can't expect them to do everything by _____ .
4. Very young children should not be allowed to go swimming by _____ .
5. Mothers shouldn't leave children in the house on _____ .
6. We've often made that mistake _____ .
7. Do you like working with other people or do you prefer working by _____?
8. If the rest of you can't help we'll have to do it on _____ .

Ex. 15. (**B**) Finish these sentences, using reflexive pronouns.

Example: If you want a job done well, do it _____ .
If you want a job done well, do it *yourself*.

1. The chairman announced the news _____ .
2. I never do anything until I have checked everything _____ .
3. She says John broke the vase, but really she did it _____ .
4. Next year we shall live all by _____ .
5. Did the boys build this boat _____?
6. You cannot leave the baby in the house all by _____ .
7. We built most of the house _____ .
8. The girl stood at the fire, warming _____ .
9. He made a mistake, then he corrected _____ .
10. There can be no doubt that Shakespeare _____ wrote this play.
11. They went swimming, but they didn't enjoy _____ . It was too cold.
12. Pat, stop laughing and behave _____ .

13. I hope you didn't hurt _____ .
14. What are you doing here? Explain _____ !

Ex. 16. (**B, C**) Translate into English using reflexive pronouns.

1. Он был вне себя от радости. 2. Он увидел это сам. 3. Он не узнал себя в том страшном лице, которое смотрело на него из воды. 4. Она живет одна. 5. Вы поставите себя в очень неловкое положение, если расскажете об этом. 6. Он на себя не похож (look) сегодня. 7. Будьте осторожны, вы можете ушибиться. 8. Он был совершенно один в комнате. 9. Мы представились как корреспонденты вечерней газеты. 10. Вы сделали это совершенно самостоятельно? 11. Возьмите себя в руки. 12. Когда мы приехали, сам губернатор встретил нас в аэропорту. 13. Через несколько минут он снова был самим собой. 14. Девушка шла, тихо напевая. 15. Ведите себя как следует. 16. Они слишком много о себе думают. 17. Вы можете разделить это между собой. 18. Я очень горжусь собой, что нашел выход из этой трудной ситуации. 19. Ты можешь сделать это самостоятельно? 20. Вам не надо приходить самому, можете прислать секретаря.

1.3 DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

THIS (THESE)/THAT (THOSE)/SUCH/THE SAME

Singular	Plural
this	**these**
that	**those**

Both *this* and *that* can be applied to persons or things:

- ❑ "I like **that** fellow," – he said to his brother.
- ❑ Other people were anxious to get **this** soap at **this** price.

The pronoun *same* is always used with the definite article:

- ❑ Martin's Sunday was **the same** as before.
- ❑ We were in **the same** class.

EXERCISES

Ex. 17. (**A, B**) Insert *this, that, these, those* or *it*.

1. All _____ is very interesting. 2. _____ will do. 3. None of _____ present expressed any surprise on hearing _____ . 4. Try one of _____ . 5. What is this? – _____ is a computer. 6. _____ are the TV sets of the latest type. 7. Suddenly I felt something soft and warm on my knees. _____ was a cat. 8. Who were you talking with? – _____ was a friend of mine.

Ex. 18. (**B, C**) Substitute *that* or *those* for the repeated noun.

Model: There are no richer art museums in this country than *the museums* of St.-Petersburg.
There are no richer art museums in this country than those of St.-Petersburg.

1. The pictures painted by Rembrandt can't be compared to *the pictures* painted by Rubens. 2. The language in this textbook is easier than *the language* in the original novels. 4. The invisible riches lying in the Urals may be still greater than *the riches* discovered. 5. The stories written by O'Henry are as full of life as *the stories* written by Mark Twain. 6. Natural sugar is of higher quality than *the sugar* produced artificially.

Ex. 19. (**B**) Use one of the demonstrative pronouns in the following sentences.

1. _____ is cooking oil,I always buy _____ one. 2. She gave me the _____ present as a year before. 3. What do you want me to do with _____ thing? 4. He was one of _____ men whom women all like. 5. Do you see _____ bushes on the other side of the river? 6. Let us leave _____ subject. 7. He continued to frequent the _____ cafe as when he had stayed at the hotel. 8. I believe you but there are _____ who wouldn't. 9. _____ is what I thought last year. 10. _____ is life. 11. _____ is what I want you to do. 12. I have divided the books into two piles. _____ are to be kept. _____ are to be sold. 13. Our house was next to _____ of June's.

Ex. 20. (**B**) Translate into English paying attention to the use of personal and demonstrative pronouns as the subject.

1. Чьи это брюки? – Это мои брюки. 2. Я принес вам важные новости. Это самые последние новости. 3. Кто-то постучал в дверь. Это был мой сосед. 4. Куда вы положили деньги? – Они в кошельке, на полке. 5. Вы помните его? Какой это был мужественный человек! 6. Это были самые красивые розы, какие я когда-либо видел. 7. У нее прекрасные волосы. Они длинные и волнистые. 8. Что с вашими часами? – Они отстают на 5 минут. 9. Посмотрите, кто это? – Это один из наших студентов. 10. Я где-то видел этого человека. – Это один из наших спортсменов. – Да, теперь я узнаю, это он. 11. Кто там? – Откройте, это я. 12. Какие эти цветы чудесные! 13. Достаточно, можете прекратить работу.

1.4 INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

WHO/WHOSE/WHAT/WHICH/WHOM

They are used to form special questions.
Who refers to human beings, *what* usually refers to things (it may be applied to people when inquiring about their occupation):

- ❑ **Who** was that? – It was my friend./ It was Tom Waits.
- ❑ **What** are you looking for? – I'm looking for a pen.
- ❑ **What** is he? – A painter.

Which has a selective meaning (*"который из"*).
It may refer to persons or things:

- ❑ **Which** of us does he mean?
- ❑ **Which** side do you prefer?
- ❑ **Which** would you like? This or that?

MIND THE DIFFERENCE:

Who is he? – This question inquires about ***the name*** of some person.
What is he? – about ***the occupation*** of the person.
Which is he? – about ***some particular person*** out of the group.

EXERCISES

Ex. 22. (**B**) Insert interrogative pronouns.

1." _____ of the two of them is right?" he asked me. 2. _____ do we call the sea between England and France? 3. _____ are your intentions for the summer? 4. _____ would you like to see as your assistant? 5. _____ turn is it now? 6. _____ is speaking? 7. _____ can I do for you? 8. _____ is he? Is he a lawyer? 9. _____ are you talking about? 10. _____ problem are you working at now? 11. We serve coffee and tea. _____ would you like? 12. _____ of you did it? 13. _____ did you meet at the theatre? 14. _____ is that man over there? 15. _____ is Sergeyev? Is he an engineer? 16. _____ bag is this? Yours or John's? 17. _____ do you prefer: tea or coffee? 18. ____ sort of films do you like best? 19. ____ does the avocado taste like? 20. _____ city do you live in: London or Manchester? 21. _____ do you usually do at week-ends?

Ex. 23. (**B**) Translate into English.

1. Кто знает этого человека? 2. Кто из вас разбил эту вазу? 3. Кого из них вы спрашивали об этом? 4. Кого вы ждете здесь? 5. Кому вы дали свой словарь? 6. Какой это цвет? 7. На каком этаже вы живете? 8. Что вы купили? 9. Какой месяц самый короткий? 10. О чем вы разговаривали, когда я вас встретил? 11. Какой метод вы используете? 12. Кто этот высокий человек?

1.5 DEFINING PRONOUNS

ALL/EACH/EVERY/EVERYBODY/EVERYTHING/EVERYONE/EITHER/ BOTH/OTHER/ANOTHER

ALL/EVERYBODY/EVERYTHING/EVERYONE

All (все, весь, вся, всё) is a generalizing pronoun, it takes a group of things or persons as a whole. It can be used as a subject, predicative, object, attribute:

- ❑ ... when **all** was said and done ...
- ❑ He loved me, that's **all.**
- ❑ And Martin forgot **all** about it.
- ❑ ... if **all** the doors are closed ...

Everybody/everyone (каждый, всякий, все) refer to all the members of the group of persons or taken one by one.
Everything (всё) may be applied to things in the same meaning.

"ВСЕ"

with countable *nouns plural* **all (the) ...**	*with countable nouns singular* **(the) whole ...**	*subject/object* **everybody, everyone, everything**
All the books have been sold out. ***All plants*** require water.	Have you read ***the whole book?*** He didn't say a word ***the whole evening***.	***Everybody (everyone)*** reads this book. Ann knows ***everyone*** in her street. He thinks that he knows ***everything***. ***Everything*** went wrong.

NOTES:

1. We use *all (весь, вся, всё)* with uncountable nouns:
   - ❑ He spends **all his free time** in the library.
   - ❑ I've got **all the information** I want.
2. We use *all* in the expression *all about*:
   - ❑ He told us **all about** his trip.
3. We can use *all day/the whole day (morning, evening, night, week)* meaning the complete day:
   all day (not "all the day")
   all week (not "all the week")
   all morning, the whole morning
4. *All* is often used after pronouns *we, you, they* and the verb *to be*:
   - ❑ **We all** know it. We **are all** glad to see you.
   - ❑ **They all** went there. They **are all** there.

   Mind the place of *all* in such constructions:
   - ❑ We have **all** read his article.
   - ❑ We shall **all** be here tonight.
   - ❑ We must **all** go there.
5. Remember the expressions:
   we all = all of us
   you all = all of you
   they all = all of them
   - ❑ **You** must **all** go there. = **All of you** must go there.
   - ❑ **They all** work here. = **All of them** work here.

   "Мы все трое." ⇨ **All three of us.**
   "Они все четверо." ⇨ **All four of them.**

   Всё, что — ***all (that)*** / ***everything (that)***
   - ❑ That's **all** I want.
   - ❑ I told him **everything** I knew.
6. We use a singular verb after *every / everyone / everybody / everything*:
   - ❑ **Every** seat in the theatre **was** taken.
   - ❑ **Everybody looks** tired today.
   - ❑ **Everything** he said **was** true.

7. We use *"every"* to say how often something happens:

Every	day week Monday ten minutes three days

- ❑ We go out **every Friday**.
- ❑ The buses run **every ten minutes**.
- ❑ Ann goes to see her mother **every three weeks**.

EXERCISES

Ex. 24. (B) Complete these sentences with *all, everything, everyone/everybody, the whole*

Model: I can't lend you any money. *All* I've got is a pound and I need that.
I can't stand him. He disagrees with *everything* I say.
She worked from morning till night. She worked *the whole* day.

1. She is very kind. _____ likes her.
2. They did _____ they could to help us. _____ was very kind to us.
3. Jill doesn't do any of the housework. Her husband does _____ .
4. Janet told me _____ about her trip to Spain. Spain is a wonderful country.
5. He is a great scientist. He devoted his _____ life to the development science.
6. I didn't spend much money in the shops. _____ I bought was a pair of gloves.
7. Why are you always thinking about food? Food isn't _____ .
8. He didn't say where he was going. _____ he said was that he was going away.
9. _____ has got their faults. Nobody is perfect.
10. He opened a tin of sardines. When he finished eating there were no sardines left. He ate _____ tin of sardines.
11. He read the book from beginning to end. He read _____ book.
12. _____ in our family plays the piano. The _____ family likes music.
13. It rained from the beginning of the week to the end. It rained _____ week.
14. Nothing was left of the building after the fire. _____ building is to be reconstructed.
15. _____ in the team played well.
16. We've redecorated _____ rooms of the house. _____ house looks new.

Ex. 25. (B) Say how often something happens. Use *every* with the periods of time: *leap year*; three hours; five minutes; half hour; ten minutes; year.*

Example: The Olympic Games take place *every four years.*

1. We have twenty nine days in February _____ .
2. Tom is ill in bed. He has to take the medicine _____ .
3. There's a good bus service to the centre. The buses run _____ .
4. Old grandfather clock strikes _____ .
5. We live near a busy airport. A plane flies over the house _____ .
6. You should have your car serviced _____ .

Ex. 26. (B) Translate into English.

1. Все мы играем в школе в футбол и волейбол.

---

* leap-year – високосный год

2. Они обыскали весь дом.
3. Весь зал бурно аплодировал.
4. Он, по-видимому, выдумал всю эту историю с начала до конца.
5. Не весь снег еще растаял.
6. Все стены зала были увешаны старинным оружием.
7. Вся книга была разорвана.
8. У нас есть все основания не соглашаться с этим.
9. Все присутствующие должны расписаться здесь.
10. Все здание было разрушено взрывом.
11. Все леса в этом районе были вырублены (cut down).
12. Я сдаю свою одежду в химчистку раз в два месяца.

BOTH – *оба*

- ❑ **Both** (the) **brothers** live in Moscow.
- ❑ **Both my daughters** are married.

We/you/they both – *мы/вы/они оба*

- ❑ **They both** graduated from Cambridge.

We both = both of us

- ❑ **We both** know it. = **Both of us** know it.
- ❑ **You** must **both** go there. = **Both of you** must go there.
- ❑ **They both** work here. = **Both of them** work here.

Both is not used in negative sentences ⇨ ***Neither***

- ❑ Они оба не пришли на собрание. – **Neither of them** came to the meeting.
- ❑ Мы оба не знали об этом. – **Neither of us** knew about it.

There is a conjunction ***Both ... and*** | как ... так и ... / *и ... и*

- ❑ **Both** Peter **and** Mary were there.
- ❑ The coat is **both** good **and** cheap.

EITHER/NEITHER

Either has three meanings:

a) *each of the two (один из двух, любой из двух)*,
b) *one or the other (тот или другой)*,
c) *both (и тот и другой, каждый из двух)*.

- ❑ You may go by **either** road.
  Можете идти по *той* или *другой* дороге (любой из двух).
- ❑ Here are two dictionaries, you may take **either of them.**
  Вот два словаря, вы можете взять *любой* (из них).
- ❑ There were chairs on **either side** of the table.
  С *той и другой* (с каждой) стороны стола стояли стулья.

Neither *(ни тот, ни другой)*:

- ❑ **Neither** of the statements is true.
  Ни то, ни другое заявление не является правильным.

There are also conjunctions: ***either ... or*** *(или ... или)*, ***neither ... nor*** *(ни ... ни)*:

- ❑ He is **either** in Odessa **or** in Kiev now.
- ❑ **Neither** my wife **nor** I liked the story.

EACH/EVERY *(каждый, всякий)*

Each is used for a limited number of persons or things:

- ❑ **Each** person in our group has this book.
  Каждый студент нашей группы имеет эту книгу.

We use ***every*** when we mean an unlimited number of things or persons.

- ❑ I see him **every** day.
- ❑ **Every** university has a library.

EXERCISES

Ex. 27. (**B**) Complete these sentences with *both/neither/either*, using *"of"* if necessary.

1. Ed and Jim were _____ big men.
2. These are very gloomy rooms. I'm afraid _____ will suit me.
3. There are two ways to the city centre. You can go along the footpath by the river or you can go along the main road. You can go _____ way.
4. _____ these pullovers are very nice. The problem was that she liked _____ them. She didn't know which one to choose.
5. _____ my parents is English. My father is Polish and my mother is Italian.
6. "Which of the two newspapers would you like?" – "Oh, _____ will do."
7. "Is today the 18th or the 19th?" – "_____. It's the 20th."
8. By that time _____ his sisters had got married.
9. When the boat started to sink, we were really frightened because _____ us could swim.

Ex. 28. (**B**) Make sentences with *"both ... and ..."*, *"neither ... nor ..."* and *"either ... or ..."* using the words in brackets.

1. We didn't like the hotel. It was _____ (clean/comfortable).
2. I didn't like the film. It was _____ (boring/long).
3. I couldn't remember his name. He was _____ (Robert/Richard).
4. I wasn't able to go on holiday that year. I had _____ (time/money).
5. We have tickets for Saturday or Sunday concert. Which do you prefer? – I don't care, I can go _____ (Saturday/Sunday).
6. He is an ideal husband. He _____ (smoke/drink).

Ex. 29. (**B, C**) Use *both, either* or *neither* in the following sentences:

1. There are oak trees on _____ bank of the river. 2. The man held the axe in _____ hands. 3. The veranda stretched on _____ side of the house. 4. The first apple-pie of the season was on the table and a large dish of purple grapes. Muriel was too angry to touch _____ . 5. I could hear them _____ , but saw _____ . 6. _____ of the two could sing. 7. _____ of them was of the same opinion. 8. _____ his legs were broken in the accident. 9. You may take _____ of the two dictionaries, but not _____ of them. 10. She

had brown shining hair which hung down on _____ sides of her face. 11. "What are you going to have, orange juice or Coke?" – " _____ , I'm not thirsty." 12. "Which job are you going to take?" – "I'm afraid _____ ." 13. Nick and Tom are _____ my friends. But _____ is in the town now. 14. " _____ the jars, the big one and the small one, are empty. You can take _____ of them." – "I'm afraid _____ will do."

Ex. 30. (**B**) Insert *every/each* or *either*.

1. _____ day he comes here, and _____ time he asks me the same questions. 2. There was a huge building on _____ side of the square, _____ having a massive arched gate. 3. There were huge buildings on _____ side of the street and _____ had rows of balconies as its only decoration. 4. Which would you prefer, the Webster or the Oxford dictionary? – _____ will do. Thank you. 5. He shook hands and had a few minutes' talk with _____ of us.

Ex. 31. (**B**) Translate into English.

1. Они ехали по широкой дороге, по обе стороны которой росли деревья. 2. Оба, я и мой брат, были молоды и сильны. 3. Передай это сообщение папе или маме, боюсь, я не увижу ни того, ни другого. 4. Ты не можешь взять с собой оба моих фотоаппарата. 5. Они оба служат в армии. 6. Она либо очень больна, либо ушла. В любом случае мы не можем открыть дверь. 7. Каждую минуту мальчик выглядывал в окно. 8. Я помню каждый дом на нашей улице. 9. Ни тот, ни другой не смогли прийти, но каждый имел серьезную причину. 10. Они осматривали каждый экспонат в музее с большим интересом. 11. В гостинице есть две свободные комнаты, можете занять любую. 12. В каждом конце коридора была дверь. 13. Какую мне взять книгу, я не читал ни ту, ни другую. – Возьмите любую, обе интересные.

OTHER/ANOTHER

Other *(другой, в смысле "остальной")* can be used both in the singular and in the plural. In the singular it refers to particular things.

Other

The second of the two:
- ❑ The twins are so much alike that people can't tell one from **the other.**
- ❑ One of them is mine, **the other** is my sister's.

The others (pl) when the reference is to two or more:
- ❑ Six of them are mine, **the others** are John's.
- ❑ Where are **the others?**

One after the other – один за другим.
The other day *– на днях, недавно.*

Another *(другой, еще один)*. It is used only in the singular. It doesn't refer to anything in particular.

Another

A different (one) – "другой":
- ❑ Come **another** day.
- ❑ We can do that **another** time.

An additional (one) – "еще один":
- ❑ We need **another** day to finish this.
- ❑ Can you give me **another** cup of tea?

A similar (one) – "второй":
- ❑ This young man is very clever, he may be **another** Edison.

One way or another *– так или иначе.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 32. (**B**) Supply the appropriate word out of those given in brackets.

1. The shoes do not fit me. Will you kindly give me _____ pair? (another, the other)
2. They haven't met for twenty years, neither of them has seen even a photo of _____ . (another, the other)
3. I read the novels by O.Henry one after _____ . (another, the other)
4. There were many people on the beach; some were bathing, _____were basking in the sun. (others, the others)
5. I met him at the club _____ night. (other, the other)
6. I see only five copies here. Where are _____ ones? (the other, the others)
7. I have lost my fountain-pen. I must buy _____ one. (another, other)
8. They are going to get punished one way or _____ . (another, other)

Ex. 33. (**B, C**) Use *other(s)* or *another*.

1. Without _____ word he left the room.
2. It was not a large garden, but it was long and narrow. John and I walked right to _____ end of it in silence.
3. Would you like _____ cup of tea?
4. Then I read the novels of William Burroughs one after _____ .
5. _____ day I made an epigram. I hope you'll like it.
6. Why are you alone? Where are _____?
7. The bar was kept by two very nice girls, one was American and _____ English.
8. _____ people have told me the same thing.
9. The house on _____ side of the river was built of grey stone.
10. He was always somewhat indifferent to the feelings of _____ .

Ex. 34. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Пришлось ехать через поле: другой дороги не было. 2. Дайте мне, пожалуйста, другой номер этого журнала. 3. Если вам не нравится этот костюм, я могу вам предложить другой. 4. Собака ела мясо, но отказывалась от другой пищи. 5. Они были похожи как две капли воды, только один был немного выше другого. 6. В комнату вошли двое. Одного я никогда не видел, лицо другого показалось мне знакомым. 7. Это тупой (dull) нож, дайте мне другой. 8. Когда увидишь остальных, напомни им о нашем уговоре. 9. Другого пути не было. 10. Нам не пришлось долго ждать, машины подходили одна за другой.

1.6 INDEFINITE AND NEGATIVE PRONOUNS

USES OF *"SOME", "ANY", "NO", "NONE", "ONE"*

When used with nouns of material ***some/any*** have the meaning of indefinite quantity *("некоторое количество", "немного", "сколько-нибудь")* but usually they are not translated into Russian:

- ❑ Give me **some** water, please. – Дайте мне воды, пожалуйста.
- ❑ Have you bought **any** sugar? – Купили ли вы сахар?
- ❑ There isn't **any** milk in the fridge. – В холодильнике нет молока.

Before countable nouns in the plural ***some/any*** are translated as *"несколько", "какие-то", "какие-нибудь":*

- ❑ He asked me **some** questions. – Он задал мне несколько вопросов.
- ❑ Have you got **any** interesting books? – Есть у вас (какие-нибудь) интересные книги?
- ❑ I saw **some** strange people near your house. – Я видела каких-то незнакомых людей у вашего дома.

"SOME/ANY" OR ZERO IN RELATION TO QUANTITY

Countable Nouns

The plural of *a/an* is normally *any* or *some* when we are referring to quantity:

- ❑ Is there **a** *present* for the children? ⇨ Are there **any** *presents* for the children?
- ❑ Here is **a** *present* for the children. ⇨ Here are **some** *presents* for the children.

Sometimes we don't use *any* and *some*, even if we are referring to quantity.
The meaning is exactly the same, though we generally prefer to use **any** or **some**:

- ❑ Are there **any** *presents* for the children? ⇨ Are there *presents* for the children?
- ❑ Here are **some** *presents* for the children. ⇨ Here are *presents* for the children.

Uncountable Nouns

In the same way, we sometimes don't use *any* and *some* when referring to quantity:

- ❑ "Is there **any** *milk* in the fridge?" is the same as: "Is there *milk* in the fridge?"
- ❑ "There is **some** *milk* in the fridge," is the same as: "There's *milk* in the fridge."

BASIC USES OF *"SOME"* AND *"ANY"*

Some	***Any***
1. Affirmatives: I want **some** *eggs*. 2. Questions + *"yes"*: Do you want **some** *tea*? 3. Requests: May I have **some** *tea*? 4. *(= certain)*: **Some** *people* believe anything.	1. Negatives: I don't want **any** *eggs*. 2. Uncertain questions: Is there **any** ... ? 3. With *"hardly"*, etc.: There's **hardly any** *ink*. 4. With *"at all"*: I haven't **any** *idea* **at all**. 5. After *"if"*: Buy some pears **if** you see **any**.

OTHER USES OF *"SOME"* AND *"ANY"*

Some and *any* also have special uses:

- ❑ I haven't seen Tom for **some** *years*. (= I haven't seen Tom for several years.)
- ❑ **Any** *fool* knows the answer to a question like that.
  (= "It doesn't matter who" – "любой, всякий").

"NOT ... ANY", "NO" AND *""NONE"*

1. We can use *no* instead of *not any*. We use an affirmative verb with *no*:
- ❑ There *aren't* **any** buses after midnight. ⇨ There *are* **no** buses after midnight.
- ❑ There *isn't* **any** milk. ⇨ There*'s* **no** milk.

2. We can also use *no* in place of *not a/an*:
- ❑ I'm **not an** expert. ⇨ I'm **no** expert.

3. *None* stands on its own as a pronoun:
- ❑ We have **no** *bananas*. We have **none**.

"NONE OF" AND *"NEITHER OF"*

The negative of "*All the girls* left early" is "**None of** *the girls* left early".
("Все девочки ...") *("Никто из девочек ...")*
The negative of "*Both girls* left early" is "**Neither of** *the girls* left early".
("Обе девочки ...") *("Ни одна из ...")*

I've seen **none of** them. ⇨ I've seen **no one / nobody**.

EXERCISES

Ex. 35. (**A**) Put in *some* or *any* only where possible.

1. The natives eat _____ meat raw.
2. There wasn't _____ meat in the fridge.
3. _____ life is full of surprises.
4. There isn't _____ life in that girl.
5. Buy _____ bread and cheese for the picnic.
6. We can't do without _____ bread.
7. _____ spices are bad for you.
8. Put _____ spices into the soup.
9. I like _____ bisquits and _____ sweets.
10. I bought _____ bisquits for tea.
11. I don't like _____ boiled cabbage.
12. Would you like _____ boiled cabbage?
13. _____ money has to be earned.
14. Will you lend me _____ money?
15. There isn't _____ news of him.
16. I hate _____ bad news.

Ex. 36. (**B**) Supply *some* or *any*.

1. Go and ask him for _____ more paper. I haven't _____ in my desk.
2. Have you got _____ sugar? – I expect we have. Yes, there's _____ sugar in this bowl.
3. Can I give the child _____ fruit?
4. _____ people just don't know how to mind their own business.
5. Were there _____ objections?
6. I think we've run out of sugar. Is there _____ sugar in that bowl? – No, there isn't.
7. _____ doctor will tell you that it is harmful for you.

8. What book shall I bring you? – _____ you like.
9. There aren't _____ buses after 12.30.
10. There isn't _____ explanation for this.

Ex. 37. (**B**) Supply the appropriate pronoun out of those given in brackets.

1. You can find him _____ time between six and nine. (some, any, no) 2. Is there _____ other choice? (any, no) 3. He can answer _____ question on the subject. (some, any, no) 4. I can only answer _____ questions on the subject. (some, any, no) 5. She has a perfect complexion and _____ colour becomes her. (some, any) 6. Can we have _____ milk? (any, some) 7. Is _____ additional proof necessary? (any, some) 8. Will you have _____ more tea? – Thank you. (any, no, some) 9. Will you have _____ more tea? You've had only one cup. (any, no, some) 10. What material do you need? – _____ that is available. (some, any) 11. Don't bother about the colour. You can buy her a blouse of _____ colour. (any, some) 12. If you have _____ news, call me back. (any, some, no) 13. They understood each other without _____ words. (no, some, any)

Ex. 38. (**B, C**) Supply *some, any* or *no* for the following sentences.

1. I don't want _____ money. 2. She helped borrow _____ more money. 3. There is hardly _____ place in this house where we can talk alone. 4. I am _____ accountant but these figures are wrong. 5. My mother hoped that perhaps the school had _____ funds to give me a grant. 6. Don't let us have _____ nonsense about it. 7. "Let's go back home. It's already late." – "I'd rather stay out a little longer." – "I suppose we've got to go home _____ time." 8. You have _____ fine flowers in your garden. 9. He wants _____ more pudding. You can take it away. 10. _____ time ago I read his story in a magazine. 11. I don't think there is _____ milk left in the jug.

Ex. 39. (**B, C**) Choose between *no one* and *none* to use it in the following sentences.

1. I invited all of them but _____ have come. 2. _____ of us is perfect; we all make mistakes. 3. _____ of us knew how ill she was. 4. That is _____ of your business. 5. _____ had anything to gain by his death. 6. He could find _____ in the village who could tell him what had gone wrong. 7. _____ was able to understand what he meant. 8. We had _____ to give us accurate information, let alone advice. 9. Philip slowly mounted the stairs. _____ of his family was yet up. 10. I looked around the room, expecting to see piles of books; _____ were visible. 11. _____ answered his question, silence fell in the room. 12. He asked for food but his mother said there was _____ . 13. _____ of the new men have been able to pass the test. 14. Of all the girls he phoned _____ were at home. 15. _____ of us were sure of the facts.

Ex. 40. (**A, B**) Translate into English.

I

1. Дайте мне хлеба (мела, чернил). 2. Налейте мне воды (молока, кофе, супу). 3. Хотите кофе (чая, молока, торта)? 4. У вас есть какие-нибудь интересные английские книги? 5. Любой студент знает это. 6. Возьмите любую книгу (которая вам нравится). 7. Приходите в любое время (которое вас устраивает). 8. В стакане есть вода. Вы хотите воды? 9. В кувшине есть молоко. Будете пить молоко? 10. В ящике около доски есть мел? 11. Можно взять немного мела?

II

1. Нет смысла волноваться об этом. 2. У меня нет чая, но есть кофе. 3. У нас здесь нет рек, но есть несколько озер. 4. Я хочу прочесть газеты, у тебя есть какие-нибудь газеты? 5. Есть ли какая-нибудь разница между ними? – Я не вижу никакой разницы. – Думаю, разницы нет. 6. Такси никогда нет, когда тебе нужно такси. 7. Никто из вас не знает, как много он работал в молодости.

USES OF "*SOME/ANY/NO*" COMPOUNDS

1. We use *some* compounds in
- the affirmative:
  - ❑ I met **someone** you know last night.
- questions expecting "yes":
  - ❑ Was there **something** you wanted?
- offers and requests:
  - ❑ Would you like **something** to drink?

2. We use *any* compounds in:
- negative statements:
  - ❑ There isn't **anyone** here who can help you.
- questions when we're doubtful about the answer:
  - ❑ Is there **anyone** here who's a doctor?

3. We use *no* compounds when the verb is affirmative:
- ❑ There's **no one** here. *(= not anyone)*

I *have got* **no** time.	⇨	I *haven't got* **any** time.
I*'ve seen* **nobody/no one.**	⇨	I *haven't seen* **anybody/anyone**.
I*'ve bought* **none** of them.	⇨	I *haven't bought* **any** of them.
I*'ve done* **nothing** today.	⇨	I *haven't done* **anything** today.
I*'ve been* **nowhere** today.	⇨	I *haven't been* **anywhere** today.

We often use *anyone* to mean *"it doesn't matter who"*, especially after *"it"*.
The traditional rule is to use masculine pronouns with *anyone, everyone, no one,* etc., unless the context is definitely female (e.g., a girls' school).
According to this rule, you would address an audience of both sexes like this:
- ❑ If **anyone** wants to leave early, *he* can ask for permission.

But you would address an audience of females like this:
- ❑ "If **anyone** wants to leave early," the headmistress said, "*she* can ask for permission."

EXERCISES

Ex. 41. Supply *anybody/anyone, nothing, anything, nobody/no one, somebody/someone* or *something/somewhere/anywhere.*

I. (A)

1. I want to tell you _____ .
2. Is there _____ in the basket? – No, it's empty.
3. Can _____ translate these sentences?
4. I've prepared _____ for dinner which you'll like very much.
5. I'm afraid he knows _____ about it.
6. Would you like _____ to start with before you order the main course?

7. I know _____ who can help you.
8. I'm sure _____ had taken your bag.
9. Is there _____ here who can speak Japanese?
10. There was _____ in the room. It was dark.
11. Do you live _____ near Jim?
12. They slept in the park because they didn't have _____ to stay.

II. (**B, C**)
1. At the party you'll see _____ you haven't met yet.
2. He left without saying _____ to _____ .
3. Charlie had never seen _____ like that place except in films.
4. I think there is _____ wrong with my watch.
5. There is "No parking" area. _____ who parks their car here will be fined.
6. The door-bell rang but there was _____ there.
7. With special tourist bus ticket you can go _____ you like.
8. If _____ delays you, you must let me know.
9. Where did you go for your holiday? _____ . I stayed at home.
10. The town was still the same when I returned. _____ has changed.

Ex. 42. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences into English.

a) 1. Я хочу вам что-то сказать. 2. Дайте мне что-нибудь почитать. 3. Он что-то знает об этом. 4. Дать вам что-нибудь почитать? 5. Я ничего вам не могу сказать об этом. 6. На столе ничего нет. 7. Она что-нибудь знает об этом? 8. Боюсь, он ничего не знает об этом.

b) 1. В комнате кто-то есть. 2. Кто-то стучится в дверь. 3. Спроси кого-нибудь об этом. 4. Есть здесь кто-нибудь? 5. Может ли кто-нибудь перевести эти предложения? 6. Должен ли кто-нибудь прийти к вам сегодня вечером?

Ex. 43. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Почему ты заглядываешь под кровать? Ты что-то потерял?
2. Еще немного кофе?
3. Фильм действительно замечательный (great). Ты можешь спросить любого, кто его видел.
4. Вы можете дать мне информацию о том, какие достопримечательности стоит осмотреть в этом городе?
5. Впустите всякого, кто позвонит в дверь.
6. Если кто-нибудь будет спрашивать об этом, не говорите ничего.
7. Если кто-то видел этот несчастный случай, позвоните в полицию.
8. В комнате никого не было, она была абсолютно пуста.
9. Я не могла приготовить омлет, потому что у меня не было яиц.
10. Я ничего не сказала. Ни слова.
11. Авария казалось (seem) была серьезной, но никто не пострадал (injure).
12. Мы сделали несколько фотографий, но ни одна из них не удалась (be good).
13. Я нигде не могу найти свои часы.
14. В комнате стояла полная тишина, никто ничего не говорил.
15. Мы хотели пойти в ресторан, но не могли, потому что ни у кого из нас не было денег.

Ex. 44. (**B, C**) Translate into English paying attention to the use of *some, any, no* and their derivatives.

1. Кто-то оставил вам сообщение. 2. Вряд ли есть что-нибудь, чего он не видел. Его ничем не удивишь. Разве что у вас есть что-нибудь особенное. 3. Что, кто-нибудь заходил? – Я никого не заметил. 4. Я ничего не могу вам сказать. Спросите кого-нибудь еще. 5. У вас нет вакантных мест? – К сожалению, ничего не могу вам сейчас предложить. Зайдите в любой день на следующей неделе. 6. Неужели он вам ничего не рассказал? Он знает больше, чем любой из нас. 7. Никто мне ничего не говорит. Может быть, вы мне что-нибудь скажете? 8. Я вижу чье-то мокрое пальто в передней. Кто-нибудь пришел? 9. Не даст ли мне кто-нибудь из вас свои конспекты? (notes) 10. Не хотите ли еще пирога? – Спасибо, но я больше не хочу.

Ex. 45. (**B, C**) Give a free translation of the story, paying special attention to the *italicized* words.

В школе *все* изучали предметы, которые им не очень удавались (be good at). *Никто* не может отрицать (deny), что *некоторые* предметы для них труднее, чем *остальные*. Я никогда не встречал *никого, кто* был бы так умен, что знал все предметы одинаково хорошо (equally well).
Хуже всего у меня обстояли дела с химией (weakest subject). Я учил наизусть формулы и задачи, но *ничего* не могло улучшить (improve) мои знания. "Пора (it's time) тебе делать *что-то* с этим предметом," – говорил мой учитель. Перед последним экзаменом я постарался.Я получил "5", но далее следовало краткое пояснение: "3" – за аккуратность, остальное за знания.

"ONE"

"ONE" AND *"YOU"*

We use *one* as a pronoun meaning *"everyone/anyone"*, to refer to "people in general" only when we want to be formal. In everyday speech, we use ***you*** in an informal way to mean *"everyone/anyone"*. Compare:

❑ A: Is it easy to go camping in this country?
B: Yes, but **one** isn't allowed to camp where **one** likes. **One** can only use camp-sites.
or: Yes, but **you** aren't allowed to camp where **you** like. **You** can only use camp-sites.

Don't use *one, one's* (= your) and *oneself* (= yourself) unless you want to sound formal.

EXERCISE

Ex. 46. (**B**) Rewrite this paragraph so that it sounds "informal". Use *you*.

The moment one gets into the mountains, one is on one's own. One has to rely on oneself for everything. This means one has to carry all one's own food, though, of course, one can get pure drinking water from mountain streams. One won't see any local people for days at a time, so one can't get help if one's lost. One has to do one's best to find sheltered places to spend the night.

The moment you get into the mountains ...

"ONE" AND *"ONES"* IN PLACE OF COUNTABLE NOUNS

1. We can't use an adjective on its own in place of a singular countable noun. We must use a noun after an adjective or we must use *one* to avoid repeating the noun:
- ❑ Don't use that cloth. Use this clean **one.** (Not "Use this clean.")

2. We use *ones* to avoid repeating a plural countable noun:
- ❑ I don't want to wear my old shoes. I want to wear my new **ones.** (Not "Wear my new.")

3. We can use *one* and *ones* for people as well as things:
- ❑ Do you know *John Smith/Jane Smith?* – Is *he/she* the **one** who phoned last night?
- ❑ Do you know *the Smiths*? – Are *they* the **ones** who used to live in this house?

4. We do not use *one* in place of an uncountable noun. We repeat the noun or use no noun at all:
- ❑ Don't use that *milk*. Use this *fresh milk*. Or: Use this *fresh*. (Not "this fresh one.")

"WHICH ONE(S)?" – "THIS/THAT (ONE)"

1. We use *one/ones* to refer to people and things after *"Which?"*, *this/that* and adjectives:
- ❑ **Which one** would you like? **This one** or **that one?** – I'd like the **large one**/the **red one.**

We can also say:
- ❑ **Which** would you like? **This** or **that?**

2. We sometimes omit *one* and *ones* after superlatives and in short answers:
- ❑ Which one/ones would you like? – I'd like the **best (one/ones).**
- ❑ Which one/ones would you like? – **The large/the red.**

3. We usually avoid *ones* after *these/those*:
- ❑ I want **these.** I want **those.** (Not "these ones.")

4. We normally use ***one/ones*** after *this/that/these/those + adjective*:
- ❑ I want **this/that white one.** I want **these/those white ones.**

5. We cannot omit *one/ones* in structures like:
- ❑ Which woman? – **The one** in the green dress.

EXERCISES

Ex. 47. (**A, B**) Use *one* or *ones* instead of the nouns in *italic* type:

1. This copy is torn. Bring me another *copy.*
2. I've read all the books, may I take the other *books* too?
3. These cherries are sour. Have your got sweeter *cherries*?
4. He's fond of nearly all games, but tennis and football are *the games* he likes best.
5. Which is my glass here? –Take *the glass* nearest to you.
6. Galileo showed that the small weight dropped as quickly as the large *weight.*
7. There are two vacant tables here. Which *table* will you take?

Ex. 48. (**A, B**) Supply *one* or *ones* only where necessary.

1. I simply took this book because it was the first _____ I chanced to see.
2. Which actresses did you like? – The _____ who appeared in Act I.

3. I've had enough soup. Give me no more _____ .
4. Which computer did you use? – The _____ that is in your office.
5. We shouldn't have taken this wireless. It seems to me that _____ is better.
6. Pour away that dirty water and get some clean _____ .

Ex. 49. (**B**) Supply *one* or *ones*.

1. I need that plate. – Do you mean *the small one?*
2. Which shoes fit you best? – The big _____ .
3. Have you got a rain-coat? – Yes, I have got a blue _____ .
4. Which jeans are you going to buy? – The most expensive _____ .
5. Has Paul got a silk tie? – Yes, he has got _____.
6. Two of those coats suit you very well. – Which _____?
7. If I were you, I'd sell that old car and buy a new _____ .
8. I'd like to see some rings, please. – These _____ in silver or those _____ in gold?
9. I'd like to try one of these shirts. Please pass me that white _____ .
10. Kate has a new dress. – Do you mean the red_____?

Ex. 50. (**B**) Translate the sentences.

1. Какие перчатки ты хочешь купить? – Те, что на витрине. 2. Какой пуловер ты предпочитаешь? Красный или синий? 3. Пожалуйста, передай мне ту тарелку. – Какую? 4. Я хочу проверить (test-drive) одну из этих машин. – Эту или ту? 5. У тебя есть новая сумка? – Да, черная. 6. Дай мне, пожалуйста, нож. – Какой? – Тот, длинный. 7. Принеси мне книгу с моего стола. – Какую? – Новый роман. 8. Мне нужен словарь, тот, что стоит на полке.

1.7 "MUCH/MANY", "LITTLE/FEW", "A LITTLE/A FEW"

Много

Much *+ uncountable nouns:*
- ❑ I haven't got **much** time.
- ❑ Is there **much** milk in the fridge?

Many *+ plural countable nouns:*
- ❑ He has lived here for **many** years.
- ❑ Have you got **many** problems?

A lot of/plenty of + plural countable nouns
+ *uncountable nouns*
- ❑ I've got **a lot of** books.
- ❑ I know old Mr Hopper has **a lot of** money.
- ❑ There are **plenty of** eggs in the house.
- ❑ We have **plenty of** time to get to the station.

THE BASIC USES OF *MUCH/MANY* ARE:

1. in negative statements:
   - ❑ There is*n't* **much** space in this flat.
   - ❑ There are*n't* **many** pandas in China.
2. in questions:
   - ❑ Is there **much** demand for silk stockings?
   - ❑ Will there be **many** guests at the party?
3. in formal statements *(= a lot of)*:
   - ❑ **Much** money is spent for defence.
   - ❑ **Many** teachers retire early.
4. in time references:
   - ❑ I've lived here for **many** years.
5. with *"as ... as"*:
   - ❑ Take **as much as** you like.
6. *not much/not many* to begin a sentence:
   - ❑ **Not many** know about this.
   - ❑ **Not much** happens around here in winter.

WE USE *A LOT OF (LOTS OF)*:

1. in the affirmative:
   - ❑ She spends **a lot of** money on clothes.
   - ❑ There were such **a lot of** people in the shops.
2. in negative statements for emphasis:
   - ❑ I haven't got **a lot of** time for people like him.

Мало

Little *+ uncountable nouns:*
- ❑ He gained **little** advantage from the scheme.
- ❑ I have very **little** time for reading.

Few *+ plural countable nouns:*
- ❑ He has got very **few** friends.
- ❑ There seem to be very **few** people in this area.

THE BASIC USES OF *LITTLE/FEW, A LITTLE/A FEW*:

1. ***a little*** means *"some but not much", "a small quantity" ("немного")*:
   - ❑ He knows **a little** French.
   - ❑ **A little** care would have prevented the accident.
2. ***a few*** *– "a small number" ("несколько")*
   - ❑ We are going away for **a few** days.
3. ***little/few*** are negative *(= hardly any)*; *a few/a little* are positive *(= some)*.

EXERCISES

Ex. 51. (**B, C**) Choose between *much* and *many*, *(a) little* and *(a) few* to use in the following sentences.

1. Last week there was so _____ rain that I was not able to go out. 2. He knows _____, but the _____ he knows he knows well. 3. He is a man of _____ words. 4. My dear, I'm

afraid I have not _____ news to convey but still there are _____ things I should like to add. 5. _____ is spoken about it, but _____ believe it. 6. The forces were unequal, they were _____ we were _____ . 7. My engagements were _____ and I was glad to accept the invitation. 8. We shan't get all into the car. We are one too _____ . 9. He was so happily absorbed in the building of his house that events outside it affected him _____ . 10. He has very _____ knowledge of the matter. 11. There isn't _____ harm in it. 12. _____ was said but _____ done. 13. I suggested that he should get _____ plums and some bread. 14. At the bar _____ men were discussing the coming elections in loud barking tones. 15. I have so _____ things to do that I don't know which to do first. 16. Aunt Florrie had _____ money while none of the other family had inherited as _____ as a pound. 17. Very _____ people know about it. 18. My sister spends so _____ money on her clothes that she has none left for holidays. 19. I began to miss London: it was not so _____ that I had _____ close friends there, for I have _____ friends, but I missed variety. 20. Tom has eaten so _____ that he can't move. 21. Say _____ and do _____ . 22. Adeline had slept _____ last night and she had a headache. 23. She was glad to see me because I was English and she knew _____ English people. 24. He knew he was not a good teacher, and he intended to do _____ of that. 25. _____ heard about the book, but _____ read it. 26. Nowadays he was very busy and he saw _____ of his old friends. 27. Virginia returned to England at the moment when _____ were leaving it.

Ex. 52. (**B**) Make the following sentences affirmative and replace *many* and *much* by suitable expressions.

1. Is there *much* water in the kettle? 2. Mary hasn't got *much* work to do today. 3. I drove along the edge of the sea. There were not *many* people about. 4. Do you have *much* time this week? 5. There isn't *much* I can do to help you. 6. Dick doesn't smoke *much*. 7. There isn't *much* time to catch the train. 8. I didn't get *much* to eat when I had dinner with the Greens. 9. I haven't *much* time for watching TV. 10. There isn't *much* snow in Moscow this winter.

Ex. 53. (**B**) Translate into English.

1. В бутылке есть немного лимонада. 2. У нее не много платьев. 3. Кто из них переводит много статей с русского на английский? 4. Сколько иностранных языков вы собираетесь учить? 5. В университете много абитуриентов (applicants) на одно место. 6. Каждый день мы получаем много иностранных журналов и газет. 7. Извините, у меня мало времени, и я не могу долго разговаривать с вами. 8. Мы будем обедать через несколько минут. 9. В комнате много света. 10. Вы пригласили много гостей? 11. Ты увидишь его через несколько дней. 12. У вас много бумаги. Дайте мне немного, пожалуйста. 13. У вас сегодня много или мало работы? 14. В субботу в магазинах много народа. 15. У нас сегодня было много посетителей. 16. Он зарабатывал мало денег и не мог жить в большом городе. 17. Мама дала мне много поручений (things to do), но я смог выполнить только несколько. 18. Я прочел много книг по этому вопросу. 19. По воскресеньям в парке много народа. 20. Ты знаешь много французских слов? 21. Сейчас в школе мало детей, сейчас каникулы.

2. TESTS

I

1. Ты можешь обойтись (do without) без моей помощи, а без ее помощи не можешь.
2. Ты не умеешь вести себя. Веди себя прилично!
3. Куда ты положил деньги? – Они в кошельке.
4. Есть ли какая-нибудь разница между ними? –Я не вижу разницы и думаю, что ее нет.
5. По обе стороны улицы стояли большие дома.
6. Он внимательно осмотрел каждую комнату. Все они были большими и уютными.
7. Можно мне взять словарь? – Вы можете взять любой из двух, но не оба. – Я возьму либо тот, либо этот словарь.
8. Он возложил (put) всю вину на меня.
9. Все люди любят праздники. Все хотят праздника.
10. Все кричали. Никто друг друга не слушал.
11. Весь город перестраивается.
12. Казалось, они были одни и смотрели только друг на друга.
13. Мы дошли до другого конца коридора и остановились.
14. Другие люди рассказывали мне ту же историю.
15. Я не ем много фруктов. Сколько яблок вы принесли?
16. В сахарнице очень мало сахара.
17. Вчера в парке было мало детей.
18. Возьмите, пожалуйста, этот стул и принесите мне другой.

II

1. Его сочинение гораздо интереснее, чем твое или мое.
2. Мой брат бреется через день. Пойди побрейся.
3. Я принес вам важные новости. Это самые последние новости.
4. Съешь еще мороженое. – Спасибо, мне больше не надо. Я больше не хочу.
5. В гостинице есть две свободные комнаты. Можете занять любую.
6. Я помню каждый дом на нашей улице.
7. Обе руки у него были заняты. Он нес по чемодану в каждой руке.
8. Он пролил все молоко (spill).
9. Все сведения поступили вовремя. Теперь все знают об этом .
10. Все здание было разрушено.
11. В комнате было пять человек. Все с удивлением смотрели друг на друга.
12. Оба говорили по-английски, они хорошо понимали друг друга.
13. Театр находится на другой стороне улицы.
14. Подождите, пожалуйста, я должен надеть другой пиджак.
15. Некоторые из нас поехали поездом, а другие полетели самолетом.
16. Поспеши, у нас очень мало времени.
17. Я купил всего несколько книг, но потратил много денег.
18. У него мало друзей в Москве, но у него много друзей в родном городе.

THE ADJECTIVE

1. FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVES ARE DIVIDED INTO:

Simple	Derivative	Compound
good *red* *new* *unkind*	*beautiful* *foolish* *hopeless* *four-wheeled*	*snow-white* *deaf-mute* *cold-hearted*

ADJECTIVES FORMED WITH SUFFIXES:

Many adjectives related to verbs or nouns have a characteristic ending (or suffix):

❑ We enjoyed the party. – The party was very **enjoyable**.

-able (capable of being)	*manageable*
-ful (full of)	*boastful*
-ic	*energetic*
-ive (capable of being)	*attractive*
-ant	*hesitant*
-ible (like – able)	*permissible, likable*
-(i)an (historical period, etc.)	*Victorian*
-ish (having the quality of)	*foolish, reddish*
-ly (having this quality)	*friendly*
-ous	*humorous*
-al	*occasional*

And note **-ing** forms used as adjectives: *running water*.

ADJECTIVES FORMED WITH PREFIXES:

A prefix (e.g. im-) added to an adjective generally has a negative effect:

❑ I think it's *possible* to solve the problem. I think it's *impossible* to solve the problem.

un-	*uncooked, unimaginable*
in-	*incapable, inhuman*
il-	*illegal, illegible*
im-	*immoral, impractical*
dis-	*dishonest, disagreeable*
ir-	*irresponsible, irregular*

And note **pre-** *(pre-war)* and **hyper-** *(hyperactive)*, which do not create opposites but modify the meaning of the word in some way.

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES OF MEASUREMENT, ETC.:

"a twenty-year-old man"

1. We combine numbers with nouns in the singular to form compound adjectives with hyphens: *a twenty-year-old man* (not "a twenty-years-old man").
   We prefer compounds of this kind to phrases with *of: a man of twenty years.*
2. Compound adjectives of this kind can refer to:

– **age**	*a three-year-old building*
– **volume**	*a two-litre car*
– **length**	*a twelve-inch ruler*
– **price**	*a $50 dress* (a fifty-dollar dress)
– **weight**	*a five-kilo bag*
– **area**	*a fifty-acre farm*
– **duration**	*a four-hour meeting*
– **depth**	*a six-foot hole*
– **time/distance**	*a ten-minute walk.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A**) Form adjectives from the given words with the help of the suffixes.

Model: care ⇨ careful ⇨ careless;
wool ⇨ woollen.
Use, frost, rain, rock, fog, snow, ice, sun, noise, speed, nature, trouble, hope, art, truth, possibility, beauty, insist, significance, shame.

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Form adjectives from the given ones with the help of the prefixes and point out the changes in meaning.

Model: urban ⇨ interurban
practical ⇨ impractical
Acceptable, national, continuous, possible, legal, appointing, complete, married, accurate, able, bearable, available, believable, conscious, stellar.

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Give the adjectives of the nationalities according to the models.

Model: Russia ⇨ Russian;
England ⇨ English.
Europe, America, Asia, the Ukraine, Scandinavia, Australia, Poland, Finland, Spain, India, Canada, Egypt, Iran, Chile, Yugoslavia, Sweden, Rumania, Nigeria, Italy.

Ex. 4. (**B**) Supply the right adjective forms for the *italicized* words.

Model: The story is full of *humour*. I've rarely read anything that's so humorous.
1. I *enjoyed* his company greatly. It was just _____.
2. This firm *produced* a lot in recent years. This firm has been very _____ in recent years.
3. Many years have passed but I *recognized* the place at once. It is _____.
4. I don't know where you find all that *energy*. You're tremendously _____.

5. I found the book easy and pleasant *to read*. It's _____ .
6. I don't know how to describe the colour of the sky. It's almost *red*, sort of _____.
7. I've never met anyone who *boasts* as he does. He's extremely _____.
8. What level of radiation can be *permitted*? How much radiation is _____.
9. I'm *attracted* by this man. I find him very _____.

Ex. 5. (**B**) Complete the following sentences with the adjectives made by adding the right suffixes to the *italicized* nouns.

Model: The play was full of *humour*. ⇨ The audience laughed at the *humorous* situations.
1 . The child *obeys* his parents. He is an _____ child. 2. The Sun was *shining* brightly. It was a _____ day. 3. Everybody *respected* the man. He is a _____ man. 4. Bob hardly escaped the *danger*. The situation was very _____ . 5. Olaf hoped to earn *fame* for his book. Did he hope to become _____? 6. He sleeps on a bench in the park because he has *no home*. He is _____. 7. The flood in India was a *disaster*. It was very _____ . 8. The soldier was given a medal for his *courage*. He was _____ .

Ex. 6. (**B**) Supply the right adjective forms. The first sentence has been done for you.

1. The coast line is not *regular* in shape. It is quite *irregular*.
2. This arrangement isn't strictly *legal*. Some people would regard it as _____.
3. It is not *possible*. Don't ask me to do the _____.
4. Such a situation is barely *imaginable*. It's quite _____.
5. Bob's not very *capable*. He's _____ of making sound decisions.
6. I doubt she is literate. She can't read or write. She is an _____ person.
7. This scheme isn't very *practical*. In fact, it's quite _____.
8. I can't trust him. He is not always *honest*. He is said to be _____.

Ex. 7. (**B**) Rewrite the following sentences using compound adjectives.

1. The car costs *twenty thousand dollars*. It is a *twenty-thousand-dollar car*.
2. The woman is *seventy years old*. She's _____ .
3. The trip lasted *two days*. It was _____ .
4. The farm is *eighty hectares*. It's _____ .
5. The baby is *three months old*. It is a _____ .
6. The parcel weighs *two kilos*. It's _____ .
7. The jar contains *three litres*. It's _____ .
8. I live not far from the University. It takes me *10 minutes to walk* there. It is _____ _____.
9. The fence is *twenty miles*. It's _____ .
10. The road is *seventy kilometres*. It's _____.

Ex. 8. (**B**) Complete the following sentences with the appropriate adjective made by adding suffixes *"-ed", "-ful", "-ent" ("-ant"), "-able"* to the noun or to the verb.

Model: 1. I need paper with *lines* for it. ⇨ Could you get me some *lined* paper, please?
2. He *helped* them. ⇨ He was very *helpful*.
3. Children *depend* on their parents. ⇨ They are *dependent* on their parents.
4. I'm going to *wash* my new dress. ⇨ I hope it's *washable*.

a) 1 . Mrs Bosch had *stripes* on her skirt. She was wearing a _____ blouse to match. 2. This blouse has short *sleeves*, but I prefer a long _____ one. 3. Give me all the *details*, I need a _____ description. 4. There were *crowds* of people in the streets. The streets were _____. 5. She was in a *hurry*, that's why we had a _____ talk.

b) 1. I *doubt* if he was right. His story is very _____ 2. She always *cheers* other people up. She is such a _____ person herself. 3. Ann is such a *beauty*. She resembles her ____ mother.

c) 1. This show *differs* from all the other shows I've seen this year. It's so _____ . 2. Mr Bogart has a lot of *confidence* in all he says and does. He is such a _____ person. 3. She likes *independence*. She is so _____ .

d) 1 . My friend *enjoys* driving, he found it an _____ experience. 2. You can *rely* on Peter, he is such a _____ person. 3. I wish I could *agree* with you, but it's difficult to be _____ .

2. WORD ORDER: ADJECTIVE + NOUN

Sometimes we use two or more adjectives together:

❑ There was a *beautiful large round* wooden table in the kitchen.

Adjectives like *new/large/round/wooden* are **fact** adjectives. They give us objective information about age, size, colour, etc. Adjectives like *nice/beautiful* are **opinion** adjectives. They tell us what someone thinks of something.

OPINION ADJECTIVES *GO BEFORE* **FACT ADJECTIVES**

opinion	fact	noun
nice	*sunny*	*day*
delicious	*hot*	*soup*
an intelligent	*young*	*man*
beautiful	*large round wooden*	*table*

WE PUT **FACT ADJECTIVES** *IN THIS ORDER:*

How big? ⇨	How old? ⇨	What colour? ⇨	Where from? ⇨	What is it made of? ⇨	NOUN
a tall	young	–	–	–	man
big	–	blue	–	–	eyes
a small	–	black	–	plastic	bag
a large	old	–	French	–	armchair
–	*an old*	–	*Russian*	–	*song*

1. Materials (nouns) behave like adjectives when we use them to form compound nouns:
   ❑ *a shirt* (noun) made of *cotton* (noun) ⇨ *a cotton shirt.*
2. We can have three-word compound nouns. "Material" comes before "purpose" or "use":
   ❑ a *clock* made of *plastic* used in the kitchen ⇨ *a plastic kitchen clock.*

   Adjectives go in front of nouns.

   We cannot separate a compound noun by an adjective:
   ❑ *a good plastic kitchen clock.* (Not "a plastic good kitchen clock").

SUMMARY:

opinion	size	age	shape	colour	from where	made of	noun	noun
a wonderful		*old*		*green*	*Chinese*	*handmade*		*carpet*

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.

Example: a modern house (attractive) – *an attractive modern house*

1. a young girl (pretty) _____
2. a handsome man (young) _____
3. a kitchen cupboard (oak) _____
4. brown bag (leather) _____
5. an American film (old) _____
6. big eyes (blue) _____
7. a cold day (rainy) _____
8. a hot bath (nice) _____
9. an old coat (worn) _____
10. a red car (old/little) _____
11. a gold watch (small/antique) _____
12. a little village (old/lovely) _____
13. long eye-lashes (black/thick) _____
14. an old mansion (stone/English) _____

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Make two-word and three-word nouns.

1. a dress made of silk – *a silk dress.*
2. railings made of iron _____ .
3. a table used in the kitchen _____ .
4. a table made of plastic/used in the kitchen _____ .

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) You're looking for items you want to buy. Begin each sentence with: I'm looking for ... .

Model: polished – beautiful – wadrobe – oak – antique – French.
I'm looking for *a beautiful antique polished French oak wardrobe.*

1. sports car – well-maintained – second-hand – with a low mileage

_____

2. leather – Italian – a pair of – shoes – black – which I can use for work

_____

3. cottage – stone-built – small – old – country

_____

4. cotton – shorts – summer – white – for my holiday

_____

Ex. 4. Translate into English.

1. Хлопчатобумажная рубашка; 2. Маленькая черная металлическая коробка; 3. Уродливое зеленое платье; 4. Красивые светлые длинные волосы; 5. Интересное старое французское полотно (картина); 6. Необычные золотые серьги ручной работы; 7. Незабываемое двухдневное путешествие на лодке; 8. Дорогой старый круглый дубовый стул ручной работы.

THE USE OF ADJECTIVES AFTER VERBS

After *be/look/feel/seem/smell/taste/sound* we use adjectives:

- ❑ Do you *feel* **tired**? The dinner *smells* **good**.
- ❑ Tom *sounded* **angry**. Your friend *seems* **nice**.

After other verbs we use adverbs *(badly/well/carefully)* (see "Adverbs"):

- ❑ Drive **carefully**. Susan plays tennis **well**.
- ❑ John behaved **badly** last night.

NB! **LOOK** (= seem) + adjective ❑ Tom looked **sad** when I saw him.
(at) + adverb ❑ Tom looked at me **sadly**.

(taste, feel, smell)

EXERCISES

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Supply adjectives or adverbs in the following sentences.

1. The child's skin feels _____ .
   Everything went _____. (smooth/smoothly).
2. You cook _____.
   Your cooking is _____. (good/well)
3. The water smells _____.
   The film ended _____. (bad/badly)
4. She looked _____.
   He answered _____. (nice/nicely)

Ex. 6. (**B**) Translate the words in brackets.

1. What beautiful flowers. They (хорошо пахнут) too.
2. Jack read his new story to me. It (звучало интересно). I hope the editor will like it.
3. I can't eat it. It (ужасно на вкус) and too much salt.

4. I wasn't very well yesterday but today I (чувствую себя прекрасно).
5. Have you been out in the rain? You (выглядишь промокшим).
6. Ann (казалась расстроенной) yesterday. Do you know what had happened?

Ex. 7. (**B**) Translate the sentences.

1. Он зло посмотрел на меня, когда я прервал (interrupt) его.
2. Пожалуйста, закрывай дверь тихо, ребенок спит.
3. Ты можешь быть хоть минутку спокойным? Я так устала. Посиди спокойно (quiet).
4. Том прекрасно себя ведет и хорошо готовит.
5. Мне это не нравится, все это дело выглядит небезопасным (safe).
6. Все волнения были позади. Он прибыл живым и здоровым.
7. Поторопись! Ты такой медлительный.
8. Суп вкусный (прекрасный на вкус).
9. Веди машину осторожно. Кажется, дорога очень скользкая (slippery).
10. Она была печальна; она печально смотрела на меня.

3. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

COMMON COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE FORMS:

We use the ***comparative*** when comparing one person or thing with another.
We use the ***superlative*** when comparing one person or thing with more than one.

ADJECTIVES		COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
One-syllable and some two-**syllable words ending in** ***-y, - er, - ow, -le***		... + -er	... + -est
	hot	*hotter*	*hottest*
	large	*larger*	*largest*
	narrow	*narrower*	*narrowest*
	simple	*simpler*	*simplest*
Two or more syllable words		**more + ...**	**most + ...**
	beautiful	*more beautiful*	*the most beautiful*
	interesting	*more interesting*	*the most interesting*
Irregular forms	*good*	*better*	*the best*
	bad	*worse*	*the worst*
	old	*older* / *elder*	*the oldest* / *the eldest*
	far	*farther* / *further*	*the farthest* / *the furthest*

SPELLING RULES

1. Adjectives like *hot (big, fat, sad, wet)* double the consonant:
*hot - hott**er** - the hott**est**.*

2. Adjectives like *nice (fine, large, late, safe)* add ***-r, -st***:
   *nice - nic**er** - the nic**est**.*
3. With adjectives like *busy* we use ***-i*** in place of ***-y***:
   *busy – bus**ier** – the bus**iest**.*

NOTE:
Some two-syllable adjectives like *happy (clever, common, narrow, pleasant, quiet, simple, stupid)* have two comparative or superlative forms:
– either with ***-er/est***:
❑ She's cleverer than you. She's the cleverest person I know.
– or with ***more/the most***:
❑ She's more clever than you. She's the most clever person I know.

COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE FORMS OFTEN CONFUSED:
"OLDER/ELDER"

1. *Further* and *farther* refer to distance:
   ❑ London is five miles **further/farther.**
   Further (Not *"farther"*) can mean "in addition":
   ❑ There is no **further** information.
2. We use *elder/eldest* before a noun only with reference to people in a family:
   ❑ **my elder brother/son, the eldest child,** he's **the eldest**
   (but not *"He is elder than me."*)
   We use *older/oldest* for people and things:
   ❑ He is **older** than I am. This book is **older.**
3. *Lesser* is formed from *less* but is not a true comparative. We cannot use *than* after *it*. *Lesser* means "not so great" and we use it in fixed phrases like: *the lesser of two evils.*
4. *Latest/last*:
   ❑ I bought **the latest** (i.e. *most recent*) edition of today's paper.
   ❑ I bought **the last** (i.e. *final)* edition of today's paper.
5. The comparative and superlative of *little* is *smaller/smallest*:
   ❑ **a small/little** boy, **a smaller/the smallest** boy.
6. English **in the near future** is Russian **в ближайшем будущем.**

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A**) Give the comparative and superlative of the following adjectives:

polite, happy, glad, complete, grey, honourable, shy, dry, just, free, recent, merry, uncomfortable, joyful, hot, thin, accurate, narrow, real, sweet, right, wicked, yellow, cosy, merciful, bad, fat, cheap, big, clumsy, stupid, far, miserable, narrow, virtuous, simple, regular, expensive, low, deep, sad, significant, bitter, intimate, lazy, old, serious, tiny, clever, little, considerate, good, much, dark, beautiful, dear, fit.

Ex. 2. (**A**) Give the comparative and superlative of the following compound adjectives:

well-known, fine-looking, short-sighted, good-natured, wide-spread, kind-hearted, old-fashioned, light-minded, well-read, high-pitched, strong-willed, much-travelled, narrow-minded.

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Use the adjective in the comparative and superlative degree.

1. His poems are popular. (his novels) His poems are more popular than his novels.
2. My room's cold. (the kitchen) _____
3. My garden is nice. (school garden) _____
4. Your hair is dark. (your brother's hair) _____

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Give both comparative or superlative forms where possible.

1. His brother is talented.
   (than he) – *His brother is more talented than he.*
   (person I have ever met) – *His brother is the most talented person I have ever met.*
2. His work was careless.
   (than mine) _____
   (in the class) _____
3. Basketball is popular.
   (than tennis) _____
   (in the USA) _____
4. This watch is expensive.
   (than that one) _____
   (in the shop) _____
5. Tuesday is convenient for me.
   (than Friday) _____
   (of all week-days) _____

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Choose the right forms in these sentences. In some cases both forms are right.

1. Is the station much (further/farther)?
2. You'll find the explanation (further/farther) on.
3. Your record is (worse/worst) than mine.
4. It's the (less/lesser) of two evils.
5. She always wears the (last/latest) fashion.
6. We have no (further/farther) information.
7. Nick skates (good/well).
8. His (latest/last) words were: "The end."
9. She is the (oldest/eldest) member of our family.
10. My flat is (littler/smaller) than yours.
11. I've got (less/lesser) patience than you.
12. He is much (older/elder) than his wife.
13. This is the (more/most) beautiful picture I've ever seen.
14. His English is (best/better) than mine.
15. She is (better/best) now.
16. It's the (furthest/farthest) point west.
17. It's the (oldest/eldest) building in the city.
18. He's my (older/elder) brother.
19. I'm not hurt in the (least/less)!
20. It is the (more/most) I can do for you.

TO COMPARE THINGS WE USE:

as ... as *in positive sentences and in questions*
так(ой) же ... как

- ❑ I'm sorry I'm late. I got here **as fast as** I could.
- ❑ There is plenty of food, so eat **as much as** you like.

twice as ... as
three times as ... as
в два/три раза больше

- ❑ Petrol is **twice as** expensive **as** it was a few years ago.
- ❑ Their house is **three times as** big **as** ours.
- ❑ This grade is **twice as expensive**.
- ❑ He is **twice as old**.

half as much/many	в два раза меньше	
half the size	*в два раза меньше*	❑ The room is **half the size** ...
half my age	*в два раза моложе*	❑ He is **half my age**.
half the weight	*в два раза легче*	❑ My trunk is **half the weight** of yours.

Not so/as ... as
не такой ... как

- ❑ He is **not so (as) tall as** his father.

намного	**much**	❑ The Dniper is **much longer** than the Thames.
гораздо	**far**	❑ This book is **far more interesting** than that one.
значительно	**a great deal**	❑ Your room is **a great deal better** than mine.
	a lot	
немного	**bit**	❑ Could you speak **a bit (little) more slowly**?
	a little	

MOST

the most (самый)
- ❑ This is **the most interesting** book.

a most (крайне, весьма)
- ❑ This is **a most interesting** book.
- ❑ These are **most interesting** books.

(большинство, большая часть)
- ❑ **Most young people** are fond of sports.
- ❑ **Most of my friends** live in Moscow.

the more ... the better
чем ... тем

We use *the ... the (with two comparatives)* to say that one thing depends on the other.

- ❑ What time shall we leave? **The sooner the better.**
- ❑ What size box do you want? **The bigger the better.**
- ❑ **The warmer** the weather **the better I** feel.

the same... as
такой же ... как

- ❑ Ann gets **the same** salary **as** mine.
- ❑ Tom is **the same** age **as** George.

than
as
me/him/her/them/us

- ❑ You are taller **than me (I am)**.
- ❑ They have more money **than us (we have)**.
- ❑ I can run **as fast as him (as he can)**.

EXERCISES

Ex. 6. (**A**) Translate the quotation.

You are **as** young **as** your faith, **as** old **as** your doubts,
as young **as** your self-confidence, **as** old **as** your fear,
as young **as** your hope, **as** old **as** your despair.

Ex. 7. (**A**) Make up sentences according to the model, using *"as ... as"* and the words given below.

Model: This book, the other one, interesting. This book is *as interesting as* the other one.
1. Jane, Ann, charming. 2. He, I, tall. 3. Michael, his brother, strong. 4. Our car, their car, good. 5. This report, your report, interesting. 6. Her new hat, her skirt, becoming. 7. Your job, his, essential. 8. The sitting room, the dinning room, large. 9. The ice-cream, the cake, delicious. 10. His stories, his jokes, funny.

Ex. 8. (**A, B**) Complete the sentences using *"as ... as"*.

Examples: The weather is still unpleasant today but yesterday it was worse. *The weather isn't as bad as it was yesterday.*
I still smoke but I used to smoke a lot more. *I don't smoke as much as I used to.*

1. I still feel quite tired but I felt a lot more tired yesterday.
   I don't _____
2. I was a bit nervous before the interview but usually I'm a lot more nervous.
   I wasn't _____
3. Volleyball is popular but basketball is more popular in the US.
   Volleyball isn't _____
4. My father works much but he used to work much more when he was younger.
   He doesn't _____
5. Basil is busy on Sundays. He is busier on week-days.
   He isn't _____

Ex. 9. (**A**) Make up negative sentences according to the model.

Model: My mother, my father, tall. *My mother is not so tall as my father.*
1. The bus, the train, fast. 2. My flat, her flat, big. 3. His voice, Caruso's, brilliant. 4. The pond, the river, deep. 5. Your typing, hers, fast. 6. This lecture, that lecture, interesting. 7. This hat, that hat, beautiful. 8. His article, her article, long.

Ex. 10. (**B**) Use *a bit/a little/much/a lot/far* before comparatives.

Example: You're driving too fast. Can you drive *a bit more slowly*? (a bit/slowly)

1. His songs are _____ than his operas. (much/famous)
2. It is _____ in February than in March. (a bit/windy)
3. I found the museum _____ than I had expected. (far/interesting)
4. I am _____ today than I was yesterday. (a lot/tired)
5. I prefer this armchair. It's _____ the other one. (much/comfortable)
6. This flat is too small for me. I need something _____. (much/big)

Ex. 11. (**B**) Translate the words in brackets.

1. This is _____ (самая интересная книга) I have ever read on this subject.
2. Swimming is _____ (крайне популярный) summer sport.
3. Shakespeare is _____ (самый выдающийся) English poet and playwright of all the ages.
4. Coal is _____ (крайне важный) natural resource.
5. He is _____ (весьма умный) man.

Ex. 12. (**A, B**) Make sentences with *"the same as"*.

Example: (your hair/the same colour/mine) Your hair *is the same colour as mine*.
1. (this suit/the same size/that one) _____
2. (I arrived here/the same time/you) _____
3. (we rented/the same house/your parents) _____

Ex. 13. (**B**) Translate the words in brackets.

1. This jacket is too small. I need *(больший размер)*.
2. He's not so keen on his studies. He's (больше интересуется) in sports and music.
3. You'll find your way around the town (легче) if you have a map.
4. You're making too much noise. Can you be (немного потише)?
5. There were a lot of people on the bus. It was (более заполненным) than usual.
6. You're late. I expected you to be here (раньше).
7. You hardly ever write to me. Why don't you write (немного чаще)?
8. The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be (гораздо дороже).
9. It's a pity you live so far away. I wish you lived (поближе).

Ex. 14. (**B**) Complete these sentences. Use the comparative of the words in brackets (+ *than*).

Example: My toothache is *more painful than* it was yesterday. (painful)
1. You look _____ you were last year. Have you lost weight? (thin)
2. You won't believe it but he is _____ his sister. (talkative)
3. I usually buy vegetables at the market. It's much _____ . (cheap)
4. The problem is not so complicated. It's _____ you think. (simple)
5. She looks like her mother but I think she is even _____ . (beautiful)
6. Health and happiness are _____ money. (important)
7. I prefer this armchair. It is _____ . (comfortable)
8. I like the countryside. It's _____ and _____ living in a town. (healthy/peaceful)

Ex. 15. (**B, C**) Use the required form of the adjective in the following sentences.

A

1. The sound grew (faint) and (faint). 2. He's a far (intelligent) person than my brother. 3. She was the (practical) of the family. 4. He thought how much (advanced) and broad-minded the (young) generation was. 5. I wanted to ask you both what you thought of my (late) film if you saw it. 6. The first edition of the dictionary is (good), the new one is still (good). 7. He turned out to be (angry) than I had expected. 8. Today I'm no (wise) than yesterday. 9. The (much) we go into the matter, the (complex) it becomes. 10. Jack is the (clever) of the three brothers. 11. They are (good) people, far (good) than you.

12. He felt (bad) yesterday than the day before. 13. The (near) house is three miles away. 14. He was the (last) man to come. 15. The (long) the night, the (short) the day. 16. He is the (tall) of the two. 17. She is (amusing) in a small company. 18. My brother is much (young) than myself.

B

1. The (near) future will see this part of the desert turned into a flourishing oasis. 2. That was his _____ step (clever). 3. They got down to business without (far) delay. 4. This problem is as _____ as the others (serious). 5. He always chooses _____ way (easy). 6. It was the (last) thing I had expected of him. 7. Are there _____ seats available (cheap)? 8. Try on both hats and see which is _____ (becoming). 9. Which is _____ mountain in the world (high)? 10. Davy was _____ of the two brothers (talented). 11. What is the (late) news? 12. And the hour was very _____ , _____ of the hours (solemn). 13. The _____ light in the room grew _____ (dim). 14. The (old) brother was twenty years (old) than the (young). 15. This is _____ room in the house (sunny). 16. He was _____. He was _____ than he had ever been (restless). 17. This walk towards them was _____ act of Jolyon's life (courageous). 18. You and your sister have done me a service _____ than man can do for his fellow-citizens (great). 19. In the (far) end of the exhibition hall we saw a group of young people.

C

1. Was there anything in the world _____ than indecision (bad)? 2. He was only five years _____ than I was, which made him forty-five (young). 3. _____ sin towards our fellow creatures is not to hate them, but to be indifferent to them (bad). 4. She received congratulations as if she were _____ of women (happy). 5. Kate remembered the little general; he was a good deal_____ than herself (small). 6. I think we'll resume the conversation when you're a little _____, Caroline (calm). 7. Things went from bad to _____ (bad). 8. It's _____ in here than outside (hot). 9. I think you're about _____ girl in school (pretty). 10. All his life he had taken pains to be _____, _____ than his fellows (strong, brave).

Ex. 16. (**B**) Translate the sentences using the model.

Model: The earlier we leave, *the sooner* we'll arrive. Чем раньше мы выедем, тем скорее мы приедем.

1. Чем дольше он ждал, тем больше он терял терпение. (become impatient)
2. Чем больше я его узнаю (get to know), тем больше он мне нравится.
3. Чем больше ты упражняешься в английском, тем быстрее ты выучишь его.
4. Чем дольше ты говоришь по телефону, тем больше ты должен платить.
5. Чем больше товаров вы продаете, тем больше доход. (make profit)

Ex. 17. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

I

1. Киев – более древний город, чем Москва; это один из древнейших городов России. 2. В XVI веке Испания была самой могущественной державой мира. 3. Волга длиннее Днепра; это самая длинная река Европы. 4. Ватикан – самое маленькое государство в Европе. 5. Советую вам пойти этой дорогой, а) Это самый короткий путь, б) Этот путь короче. 6. Эта проблема не так серьезна, как вам кажется. 7. Реферат должен содержать лишь наиболее важные мысли автора. 8. Язык этой статьи попроще.

Начните с нее. 9. Купите обои посветлее для вашей комнаты. Она тогда не будет выглядеть такой мрачной, как сейчас. 10. Нам нужен шкаф поменьше, так как комната небольшая.

II

1. Сегодня не так тепло, как вчера. 2. Мария – наша старшая сестра. 3. Станция была не так далеко, как я думал. 4. На этот раз у вас меньше ошибок, чем было в прошлом сочинении. 5. Ждите дальнейших инструкций. 6. Этот отель не такой дорогой, как я предполагал. 7. Это мой лучший друг. 8. Ей столько же лет, сколько и мне. 9. Это последнее произведение писателя. 10. Дальнейшие подробности будут даны в следующий раз. 11. А нет ли дороги поближе? 12. Последний поезд прибывает в полночь. 13. Она на пять лет младше меня. 14. Я нашел его в самом дальнем углу парка. 15. Это самая короткая дорога до моря.

III

1. Я не так молод, как вы, вы в два раза моложе. 2. Чем быстрее мы закончим работу, тем лучше. 3. Комната почти квадратная, она немного больше в длину, чем в ширину. 4. Это совершенно новый прибор, он может работать в три раза быстрее. 5. Новый аэропорт в три раза больше нашего старого. 6. У нашей бабушки очень высокое давление (blood pressure), она чувствует себя значительно хуже. 7. Самолет поднимался все выше и выше. 8. Ветер сегодня вдвое сильнее, чем вчера. 9. Чем реже они будут видеть вас здесь, тем лучше. 10. Чем богаче человек, тем более жадным (greedy) он становится. 11. Она не такой пунктуальный секретарь, как бы мне хотелось.

IV

1. Этот перевод вдвое легче. Вы с ним справитесь. 2. Новый стадион в несколько раз больше старого. 3. Хотя эта комната и в два раза меньше, она мне больше нравится. 4. Он сильный, он может поднять ящик и в три раза тяжелей. 5. Сегодня вдвое холодней, чем вчера. 6. Все его приятели в два раза моложе его. 7. Пруд немного больше в длину, чем в ширину.

V

1. Чем меньше ты будешь говорить, тем лучше. 2. К сожалению, я не смог прийти так рано, как обещал. 3. Кошка упала с крыши, но чувствует себя нисколько не хуже от этого. 4. Комната хорошая, но все же не такая хорошая, как бы мне хотелось. 5. Чем больше человек имеет, тем больше ему хочется. 6. Я не так молод, как вы. 7. Окно узкое, как дверь. 8. Суп хорошо пахнет, а на вкус он еще лучше. 9. Чем скорее ты сделаешь это, тем раньше мы закончим. 10. Он становится все слабее и слабее.

VI

1. Эта квартира светлее, чем квартира на первом этаже. 2. Этот вопрос важнее того вопроса, который мы обсуждали вчера. 3. Он больше занят, чем ты. 4. Этот перевод труднее того, который мы делали вместе. 5. Это самая интересная книга, которую я когда-либо читал. 6. Математика для нас была самым трудным предметом в школе. 7. Это кратчайший путь до театра. 8. Грамматика русского языка сложнее грамматики английского. 9. Это самое красивое здание в нашем городе. 10. Этот фильм не хуже того, который я видел позавчера. 11. Эта комната лучшая в квартире. 12. Его старший сын окончил университет в прошлом году. 13. Ты читал его последнюю статью?

14. Он такой же сильный, как и его брат. 15. В прошлом году зима была такая же холодная, как и в этом. 16. Наша улица не такая широкая, как ваша.

4. TESTS

I

1. Сегодня погода была не такой хорошей, как вчера.
2. Я слышал оба доклада, первый был значительно интереснее второго.
3. Этот перевод труднее того, который мы делали в декабре.
4. Чем больше он старался, тем больше ошибок он делал.
5. Это самая большая квартира в нашем доме, она в два раза больше нашей.
6. Это кратчайший путь до озера.
7. Его старшая дочь работает теперь в нашей компании.
8. Сегодня так же жарко, как вчера.

II

1. Чем интереснее книга, тем быстрее она читается.
2. Вчера было намного холоднее, чем сегодня.
3. Этот фильм не хуже того, который я видел позавчера.
4. Он такой же сильный, как его брат.
5. Пальто ничуть не хуже после стирки.
6. Директор хотел видеть вас для дальнейших объяснений.
7. Новые проспекты в два раза шире старых улиц нашего города.
8. Это лучшая комната в нашей квартире, она гораздо больше и светлее остальных.

III

1. Он больше занят, чем ты.
2. Этот год был для нас самым трудным.
3. Ты читал его последнюю статью?
4. Ты такая же красивая, как ее мать.
5. Мне гораздо легче знать правду.
6. В прошлом году зима была не такая холодная, как в этом.
7. Чем больше мы читаем, тем больше мы знаем о нашем мире.
8. Я уже старый человек, я в два раза старше вас.

THE ADVERB

1. DEFINITION AND FORMS

Adverb adds to the meaning of a verb. It is used to say how, where or when something happens. Adverbs usually come after the verb or the object if there is one. The usual order of adverbials is ***manner***, ***place*** and ***time***.

❑ She spoke **very well** **here** **last time**.
manner *place* *time*

AS FOR THEIR STRUCTURE ADVERBS ARE DIVIDED INTO:

Simple	Derivative	Compound	Composite
long enough then	slowly likewise forward	anyhow sometimes nowhere	at once at last so far

Adverbs of manner are often formed by adding **-ly** to an adjective. Adverbs formed in this way usually have a similar meaning to an adjective.

Adjectives	Adverbs
bad	*badly*
beautiful	*beautifully*
careful	*carefully*
quick	*quickly*
quiet	*quietly*
soft	*softly*

There are sometimes changes in spelling when an adverb is formed from an adjective.

			Adjective	Adverb
-le	changes to	**-ly**	*gentle*	*gently*
-y	changes to	**-ily**	*easy*	*easily*
-ic	changes to	**-icaly**	*automatic*	*automatically*
-ue	changes to	**-uly**	*true*	*truly*
-ll	changes to	**-lly**	*full*	*fully*

The most productive adverb-forming suffix is ***-ly***, but there are also some other suffixes: ***-wards, -long, -wise***: *clockwise, forward, headlong*.
We can use some words as adjectives or adverbs without adding ***-ly*** or ***-illy***:

❑ It was a **fast** train./The train went **fast**.
❑ He returned from a **long** journey./Will you stay here **long**?
❑ The price is very **low**./The plane flew very **low**.
❑ We have very **little** time./He reads very **little**.

Other examples are: *hard, high, last, late, near, wide, early, far*.
Some adverbs have two forms, one <u>without -ly</u> and one <u>with -ly</u>. These forms have different meanings and uses: *hard/hardly, last/lastly, late/lately, near/nearly, high/highly*.

Adjective	Adverb without "-ly"	Adverb with "-ly"
He is a **hard** worker. Он *усердный* работник.	He works **hard**. Он работает *усердно*.	I could **hardly** understand him. Я *едва* мог понять его.
He returned in **late** autumn. Он возвратился *поздней* осенью.	I went to bed **late** yesterday. Я лег *поздно* вчера.	I haven't seen him **lately**. Я не видел его в *последнее время*.
He is studying the history of the **Near** East. Он изучает историю *Ближнего* Востока.	He lives quite **near**. Он живет совсем *близко*.	It is **nearly** 5 o'clock. *Почти* 5 часов.
The house is very **high**. Дом очень *высокий*.	The plane flew very **high**. Самолет летел очень *высоко*.	It is **a highly** developed state. Это *высокоразвитое* государство.

SOME ADVERBS HAVE <u>DEGREES OF COMPARISON</u>:

ADVERBS		COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
		... + -er	**... + -est**
One syllable words:	*fast* *hard*	*faster* *harder*	*fastest* *hardest*
		more + ...	**most + ...**
Ending in "-ly":	*wisely* *beautifully*	*more wisely* *more beautifully*	*most wisely* *most beautifully*
Irregular forms:	*well* *badly* *much* *little* *far*	*better* *worse* *more* *less* *farther/further*	*best* *worst* *most* *least* *farthest/furthest*
Special cases:	*often* *quickly* *slowly* *easy*	*oftener* *more often* *quicker* *more quickly* *slower* *more slowly* *easier*	*oftenest* *most often* *quickest* *most quick* *slowest* *most slowly* *easiest*

We use intensifiers to strengthen adverbs: *much/far*

Гораздо *Намного* *Значительно*	***much***	❑ She works **much harder** than you.
	far	❑ It happens **far more often**.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Say whether the word in *italic* type is an adjective or an adverb.

1. The task was so *easy* that we didn't need time to get prepared. 2. I could do it *easily* if I had the time. 3. He spoke *loudly*. 4. We heard a *loud* noise in the street. 5. We went *straight* to St.-Petersburg without stopping anywhere. 6. He looked at us with a perfectly *straight* face. 7. You would play *better* if you had a *better* instrument. 8. They have very *little* space for the garden. 9. When I first came to Moscow, I *little* thought that I should stay here so *long*. 10. We stayed there a *long* time. 11. He works *more* and *better* than he used to. 12. He knows *more* poems than I. 13. *Early* risers see *more* of the world. 14. They came *early* that evening. 15. We haven't had *much* rain this month. 16. She is singing *worse* than usual. 17. The weather is *worse* this morning.

Ex. 2. (**A**) Form adverbs from the given adjectives and nouns and make up your own sentences with them.

Sweet, careful, real, slow, usual, day, calm, stupid, heroic, firm, loud, happy, safe, dry, gradual, soft, brave, hour.

Ex. 3. (**A**) Change the *italicized* noun into a verb and the *italicized* adjective into an adverb.

Model: His *answer* was very *quick*. *He answered very quickly.*
1. They gave a *beautiful performance.* 2. She gave me a *formal answer*. 3. His was *a heroic action.* 4. He gave an *accurate description* of the incident. 5. We heard their *happy laugh* in the room. 6. The actors got a *warm greeting* from the audience.

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Give the comparative and superlative degrees of the following adverbs:

early, often, hard, easily, well, little, near, far, late, clearly, slowly, fast, quickly, strongly, much, closely, close, long.

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Open the brackets, give the comparative or superlative forms of the adverbs.

1. I like this dress (well) than the black one. 2. Now she visits them (frequently) than last year. 3. Our new car is (fast) than the old one. 4. Which of all these books did you enjoy (much)? 5. Now I can hear you (clearly) than before. 6. You ought to have told me (much). 7. Who works (hard), Mike, Pete or Jack? 8. The fire was put out (quickly) than we expected. 9. He speaks English (fluently) of all in my class.

Ex. 6. (**A, B**) Give the correct forms of the adverbs in brackets.

1. The (hard) you work the (soon) you make progress. 2. Is the sound loud enough or shall I make it (loud)? 3. Yesterday they finished work (late) than usual. 4. The woman said she had been treated (badly) than a slave. 5. The little girl sang far (well) than her sister. 6. The boy's greatest ambition was to become a pilot and fly (high) and (fast) of all. 7. I could see very far from my place, but Ben climbed a tree and saw even (far) beyond the field. 8. We envied John, for he lived (near) of all; it took him the least time to get to the office. 9. Our horses ran pretty fast, but Serena's Arrow ran (quick) than my White Star, and Ivo's Lightning – (fast), as usual. 10. I like this picture (well) of all. 11. I missed our walks together, but those long evening conversations by the fireplace I missed (much) of all. 12. He stepped (close) and saw that they were playing with little kittens.

Ex. 7. (**B, C**) Choose the correct form of the words given in brackets.

1. He certainly has done (good, well) in his studies this year. 2. It is not (good, well) for you to smoke. 3. I was (angry, angrily) at what he did. 4. He stormed (angry, angrily) out of the room. 5. It isn't (bad, badly). 6. To the parents' disgust, the child behaved very (bad, badly) at table. 7. He dreamed of acting (brave, bravely) in emergency. 8. He is a (brave, bravely) man. 9. This is quite (clear, clearly). 10. I can see (clear, clearly) what you mean. 11. She looked at him (cold, coldly). 12. The weather is (cold, coldly) today. 13. This is a (comfortable, comfortably) desk. 14. The English like to live (comfortable, comfortably). 15. He is (dangerous, dangerously) calm. 16. This road is (dangerous, dangerously). 17. Let's look at it from (different, differently) angles. 18. The two sisters always reacted (different, differently). 19. This definition is not quite (exact, exactly). 20. Can you tell me (exact, exactly) when he will come? 21. He seems to be not very (happy, happily) about it. 22. They smiled (happy, happily). 23. The girl was (heavy, heavily) painted. 24. The case is too (heavy, heavily). 25. She sighed (helpless, helplessly). 26. She is quite (helpless, helplessly) with the child. 27. The work was done (perfect, perfectly). 28. The weather during the last few days has been (perfect, perfectly). 29. Walk (quiet, quietly), or you will wake the patient. 30. His voice was (quiet, quietly). 31. Your geography is (sad, sadly) at fault. 32. It is (sad, sadly) that you have been ill such a long time. 33. She looked at me (sad, sadly). 34. The answer was not (satisfactory, satisfactorily). 35. You performed (satisfactory, satisfactorily). 36. Do you (serious, seriously) wish to go there? 37. Are you (serious, seriously) about going there? 38. The explanation was quite (simple, simply). 39. The problem can be solved quite (simple, simply).

Ex. 8. (**A, B**) Translate into English, paying attention to the *italicized* words. Choose the right word in the brackets.

1. Вы часто пропускаете занятия в *последнее* время. Они *поздно* ложатся спать. В том году была *поздняя* весна. (late, lately)
2. Что-то было *не так*. Он набрал *не тот* номер телефона. Он дал *неправильный* ответ. Она *неправильно* с ним поступила. (wrong, wrongly)
3. Мы *едва* знаем друг друга. Они *упорно* работали. Она *упорный* работник. (hard, hardly)
4. Мы *почти* опоздали на поезд. *Рядом* с нашим домом есть небольшое озеро. Он всегда интересовался историей *Ближнего* Востока. (near, nearly)

Ex. 9. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Какой из его фильмов вам больше всего нравится? 2. Сделайте звук громче! 3. Чем больше вы будете читать по-английски, тем лучше вы будете знать язык. 4. Если ты будешь упорнее тренироваться, ты будешь бегать так же быстро, как и я. 5. Она много практиковалась и теперь печатает в два раза быстрее, чем раньше. 6. Если бы мы поехали поездом, а не пароходом, то мы добрались бы туда в два раза быстрее. 7. Чем шире будет ваше образование, тем выше будут ценить ваши знания.

Ex. 10. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Я хорошо знаю свой город, но лучше всего я знаю центр. 2. Моя мама знает три языка, но лучше всего она говорит по-французски. 3. Мой брат встает позже меня. 4. Она одевается лучше всех в нашей группе. 5. Мой друг играет в шахматы лучше меня. 6. Рыбу ловить лучше рано утром. 7. Он водит машину осторожнее, чем его жена. 8. Они приходят сюда чаще всего летом. 9. Он знает английский лучше всех в группе. 10. Я гораздо больше люблю исторические книги. 11. На следующий день ему стало гораздо хуже. 12. На машине вы доберетесь туда быстрее всего. 13. На этот раз вы сделали работу тщательнее. 14. Новый врач относится к пациентам гораздо внимательнее, чем старый. 15. Он ездит на велосипеде еще быстрее меня. 16. Мой старший брат пришел еще раньше меня. 17. Он говорит по-английски еще медленнее меня. 18. Он лучше всех написал тест. 19. Она читает гораздо больше меня. 20. В этом году занятия заканчиваются гораздо позже, чем в прошлом.

2. CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS

ACCORDING TO THEIR MEANINGS ADVERBS FALL INTO SEVERAL GROUPS:

2.1. ADVERBS OF MANNER

Adverbs of manner tell us **how** something happens: ***well, badly, quickly, slowly, easily, quietly,*** etc.:

- ❑ How did John behave? He behaved **badly.**
- ❑ Did you sleep **well**?
- ❑ He came very **quickly.**

Some adjectives end in *-ly*, if we want to use these words as adverbs we say: *"in a ~ manner/way/fashion"*:

- ❑ Meg is a **friendly** girl. She always greets me **in a friendly way.**
- ❑ That was a **cowardly** thing to do. You acted **in a cowardly way.**

We do not use adverbs after link verbs such as *"to be", "become", "feel", "get", "look"*, and *"seem"*. We use adjectives after such verbs:

- ❑ Sue **felt happy.** (not "Sue felt happily")
- ❑ Nobody **seemed amused.**
- ❑ **I am not sure.**

We say *"fast asleep"* and *"wide awake"* (not "very"):

- ❑ The children are **fast asleep** now, but when we were leaving they were **wide awake**.

Fixed phrases: *deeply hurt, painfully embarrassed, highly respected, bitterly cold, greatly appreciative, badly needed.*

- ❑ She was **highly respected** in her village.
- ❑ A new playground for our children is **badly needed**.
- ❑ She was **deeply hurt** by his words but didn't say a word.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**B, C**) Choose the appropriate word and state whether it is an adjective or an adverb.

1. a) They talked of _____ ideals.
   b) This new play is _____ spoken of.
   c) We _____ appreciate your hospitality. (high, highly)
2. a) He divided his wealth _____ among his children.
   b) You don't act _____ to the girl.
   c) Why don't you give him a chance? It isn't _____ . (fair, fairly)
3. a) She cut him _____ saying it was not to the point.
   b) He came to live there _____ after the war.
   c) Speak _____ on the phone. (short, shortly)
4. a) They _____ saw where they were going.
   b) The old man breathed so _____ .
   c) She tried _____ not to cry. (hard, hardly)
5. a) Very cautiously he approached the window as _____ as possible.
   b) He is my _____ friend.
   c) He knew he was _____ guarded all the time. (close, closely)
6. a) He was sitting at his desk _____ in thought.
   b) They were _____ engrossed in discussing something.
   c) Still waters run _____ . (deep, deeply)
7. a) The device is _____ to operate and its every part can be _____ replaced.
   b) Try to make it _____ for her.
   c) He is an _____ scared man. (easy, easily)
8. a) She greeted us _____ .
   b) She put a tea-cosy on the pot to keep it _____ .
   c) We dressed _____ for the outing in the winter mountains. (warm, warmly)
9. a) It's a delicate situation. See that you act _____ about it.
   b) She is so quick-tempered. They _____ call her a termagant (сварливый).
   c) He suddenly stopped _____ in front of the house. (right, rightly)
10. a) How are you? – Very _____ , thank you.
    b) How is life? – Very _____ , thank you.
    c) How are you getting on? – Very _____ , thank you. (good, well)

Ex. 2. (**B, C**) Choose the appropriate adverb.

1. I was (deep, deeply) moved by his words. 2. You must dig very (deep, deeply) to reach the water. 3. He was (high, highly) doubtful about the necessity of that action. 4. The eagle soared (high, highly), it could be (hard, hardly) seen. 5. He had to work really (hard, hardly)

to obtain what he wanted. 6. The policeman looked (close, closely) at the suspect. 7. He stepped (closer, more closely) to get a clear view of the picture before him. 8. We have (near, nearly) run out of petrol. 9. There is a big grocery store (near, nearly) our house. 10. We have not heard from him (late, lately). 11. His letter came too (late, lately). 12. This dress is (pretty, prettily) expensive. 13. This little girl is very (pretty, prettily) dressed. 14. He passed by her window singing (loud, loudly). 15. He doesn't speak (loud, loudly) enough for everybody to hear. 16. I'm afraid you will have to pay (dear, dearly) for your silence. 17. They all loved him (dear, dearly). 18. The house was full of light; the gate of the courtyard stood (wide, widely) open. 19. Nabokov's works are (wide, widely) known throughout the world. 20. "Open (wide, widely)," he said and put a small piece of cake into her mouth.

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) Translate the adverbs in brackets into English.

1. She stared at us with (широко) open eyes, but remained silent. 2. I am (глубоко) concerned about his lack of interest in our business. 3. He was (справедливо) accused of violating the rules. 4. We examined these animals very (тщательно). 5. The plant stood (близко) to the lake. 6. The man pulled (сильно) at the chain. 7. The rain was pouring so (сильно) that we could (едва) see the boat sailing up to the shore. 8. The contribution of this scientist to the progress of physics is (высоко) valued. 9. (Вскоре) after the war they started reconstructing the ruined palace. 10. Only her face, full of rapture, stood out (ясно) in his memory. But the events of that evening he remembered (более смутно). 11. When he walked, he usually held his head (высоко). It was (трудно) to guess how his pride suffered. 12. She called him (громко) and (долго) but he didn't come. 13. It is (легче) to do everything myself than to make you do things.

Ex. 4. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

1. Ему было очень холодно. 2. Он говорил со мной холодно. 3. Ее слова звучали холодно. 4. Они шли молча. 5. Она молча кивнула. 6. Она приятно улыбнулась. 7. Мне приятно быть с вами. 8. Вы хорошо выглядите. 9. Дело идет хорошо. 10. Хорошо, что они приедут. 11. Как ты думаешь починить это? – Очень просто. 12. Не бойся, ты сделаешь это. Это очень просто. 13. Вполне естественно, что ему не нравится такой план. 14. Она отреагировала совершенно естественно. 15. Ребенок чувствовал себя очень плохо весь день. 16. Дом спроектирован плохо. 17. Он смертельно побледнел. 18. Они упали на траву, смертельно усталые. 19. Зверь упал замертво.

2.2 ADVERBS OF TIME

Adverbs of time: ***when*** *(когда)*, ***now*** *(сейчас)*, ***then*** *(тогда, потом, затем)*, ***before*** *(прежде, раньше)*, ***after*** *(потом, после)*, ***afterwards*** *(впоследствии)*, ***once*** *(однажды)*, ***just*** *(только что, как раз)*, ***still*** *(все еще, по-прежнему)*, ***already/yet*** *(уже)*, ***yet*** *(еще, пока еще)*, ***since*** *(с тех пор как)*, ***early*** *(рано)*, ***lately/recently*** *(в последнее время)*, ***suddenly*** *(вдруг)*, ***soon*** *(вскоре)*, ***long*** *(долго, давно)*, ***ago*** *(тому назад)*, ***today, tomorrow, yesterday,*** etc.

NOTES: *tonight, tomorrow night, last night* (not "yesterday night")

ЕЩЕ

still *(все еще, по-прежнему)*
- ❑ She is **still** sleeping.

yet *(пока еще, пока что)*
- ❑ He is too young **yet** to get married.

yet *(еще не ...)*
- ❑ He hasn't come **yet**.

else *(in questions)*
- ❑ Who **else** do you know?
- ❑ Where **else** did you go yesterday?

more *(дополнительно)* – with countable and uncountable nouns
- ❑ Give me some **more** water.

other *(другой)*
- ❑ What **other** books did you buy?

only *(еще только)*
- ❑ It's **only** 10 o'clock.
- ❑ He was with us **only** yesterday.

as early as *(так давно как)*
- ❑ It was known **as early as** 1935.

ДАВНО

long, for a long time *(в течение долгого времени)*
- ❑ Have you been here **long**?
- ❑ I've been here **for a long time**.

long ago, a long time ago *(много времени тому назад)*
- ❑ It happened **long ago**.

НЕДАВНО

not ... long *(с недавнего времени)*
- ❑ I haven**'t** been sitting here **long**.

not long ago *(в недалеком прошлом)*
- ❑ This book came out **not long ago**.

lately, recently *(в последнее время)*
- ❑ Have you heard from him **recently** (**lately**)?

EXERCISES

Ex. 5. (**B, C**) Translate into English paying attention to the meaning of the word *"еще"*.

1. Я еще не готов. 2. Они еще не легли спать, они еще смотрят телевизор. 3. Я получила еще две открытки от Элис. 4. Что еще он вам рассказал? 5. Я хочу спросить об этом еще кого-нибудь. 6. Какие еще города вы видели в Англии? 7. Я получил эту телеграмму еще вчера. 8. Вы еще слишком малы, чтобы курить. 9. Я еще не дочитал эту книгу, но мне кажется, что она еще интереснее, чем та, которую вы мне дали. 10. Еще апрель, еще слишком рано открывать окна. 11. У нас есть еще несколько книг по истории Англии. 12. Еще рано, не все еще встали. 13. Кто еще звонил сегодня? 14. Что еще вы хотели мне сказать? 15. Я знал о их решении еще вчера. 16. Май в этом году еще холоднее, чем в прошлом. 17. Он еще не отвечал, он еще думает. 18. Какие еще сказки ты знаешь? 19. Ты ведь видел его еще утром, но ничего не сказал нам. 20. Где еще я могу найти такие цветы? 21. Дайте мне, пожалуйста, еще один журнал. 22. Их дом еще больше нашего. 23. Он еще пожалеет об этом. 24. Он еще спит. 25. Ты еще молод, ты можешь еще сделать это.

Ex. 6. (**B, C**) Translate into English paying attention to the meaning of the words *"долго"* and *"давно"*.

1. Мы долго наблюдали за ними. 2. Я долго не мог забыть это. 3. Она долго молчала. 4. Вы будете долго работать сегодня? 5. Ты давно знаешь его? 6. Они долго у вас пробыли? 7. Он уже давно работает в этом банке. 8. Я здесь уже давно. 9. Он долго не мог понять этот рассказ. 10. Я давно не видел своих друзей. 11. Я давно потерял эту книгу. 12. Дождь давно перестал. 13. Мы вчера очень долго бродили по городу. 14. Вы давно живете в этом доме? 15. Мне пришлось долго ждать их. 16. Первые поселенцы ушли отсюда очень давно. 17. Он давно забыл свое обещание. 18. Она очень давно не играла на пианино. 19. Это случилось очень давно. 20. Дождь идет уже давно. 21. Он сказал мне, что они ушли давно. 22. Он сказал мне, что он видел ее давно. 23. Я очень давно ничего не слышал об этой семье. 24. Вы слишком долго работали вчера. 25. Мы довольно долго обсуждали этот вопрос. 26. Мы жили там очень давно. 27. Сегодня собрание продлится недолго. 28. Он недолго жил там. 29. Этот магазин открылся недавно. 30. Он здесь недавно работает. 31. Эти люди здесь недавно. 32. Это случилось недавно. 33. Эта встреча произошла недавно.

Ex. 7. (**C**) Translate into English.

1. Вы часто виделись с ним в последнее время? 2. Я последнее время редко хожу в кино. 3. Я за последнее время прочел очень много иностранных книг. 4. Она последнее время редко вспоминает об этом. 5. Это произошло недавно. 6. Я недавно встретил его в музее. 7. Он не создал ни одного нового фильма за последнее время. 8. Они последнее время редко заходят к нам. 9. Я недавно отремонтировал квартиру. 10. Он очень изменился за последнее время. 11. За последнее время многое изменилось в нашем городе. 12. Это изобретение было сделано недавно. 13. За последнее время она прислала мне три письма. 14. Он очень похудел за последнее время. 15. Они недавно побывали в Африке. 16. Этот разговор произошел недавно. 17. В последнее время мы не ходим туда. 18. Я в последнее время очень много работал над английским языком. 19. Я в последнее время не видел там ничего интересного. 20. Вы в последнее время покупали какие-нибудь книги? 21. В последнее время они не навещали нас. 22. Я не писал ей в последнее время. 23. Он начал заниматься музыкой совсем недавно. 24. Вы много играли в теннис в последнее время? 25. Я недавно просмотрел свой старый дневник. 26. В последнее время очень холодно. 27. Мы в последнее время много переводили с английского.

2.3 ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

Adverbs of frequency: *how often?* The most common are: ***always*** *(всегда)*, ***generally***, ***usually***, ***normally*** *(обычно)*, ***frequently***, ***often*** *(часто)*, ***seldom***, ***rarely*** *(редко)*, ***sometimes*** *(иногда)*.
Adverbs of frequency have three basic positions.
As to the place of such adverbs see Appendix 4.

2.4 ADVERBS OF PLACE AND DIRECTION

Adverbs of place and direction: ***here*** *(здесь, сюда)*, ***there*** *(там, туда)*, ***where*** *(куда, где)*, ***somewhere***, ***anywhere*** *(где-нибудь, где-то, куда-нибудь)*, ***nowhere*** *(нигде, никуда)*, ***elsewhere*** *(где-нибудь, в другом месте)*, ***far away/far off*** *(далеко)*, ***near*** *(близко)*, ***inside*** *(внутри)*, ***outside*** *(снаружи, наружу)*, ***above*** *(выше, наверху)*, ***below*** *(ниже, внизу)*.

Somewhere is used in affirmative sentences:

- ❑ I left my umbrella **somewhere.**

Anywhere – in questions and negative sentences:

- ❑ Are you going **anywhere** tomorrow?
- ❑ I can't find my dictionaries **anywhere.**

Nowhere is used in short answers:

- ❑ Where did you go after supper? – **Nowhere.**

ДАЛЕКО

far (in questions and negative sentences)
- ❑ Did you walk **far**?
- ❑ They don't like to walk **far.**

a long way (in affirmative sentences)
- ❑ We walked **a long way** yesterday.

far away (off) ("на большом расстоянии" – in questions and negative sentences)
- ❑ Is the station **far away (off)**?
- ❑ They don't live **far away (off).**

a long way off (in affirmative sentences)
- ❑ They live **a long way off.**

Слишком / **Так** + **далеко**	**too** / **so**	**far**	❑ They walked **too far.** ❑ We walked **so far** that we got tired.

Довольно / **Очень** + **далеко**	**very** / **rather**	**a long way** / **a long way off**	❑ We walked **rather a long way.** ❑ They live **a very long way off.**

But! **Far from** ❑ The station is **far from** our house.

EXERCISE

Ex. 8. (**B, C**) Translate into English paying attention to the words in *italic* type.

1. Она *никуда* не ездила прошлым летом. 2. Я *никуда* не ходил вчера. 3. *Куда* ты пойдешь в субботу? – *Никуда*. 4. Куда вы ездили в отпуск? – *Никуда*. 5. Вы *куда-нибудь* пойдете сегодня вечером? – Если я не устану, я пойду *куда-нибудь*, но если я устану, я *никуда* не пойду. 6. Мы не пошли на озеро, потому что оно было очень *далеко*. 7. Я люблю гулять с собакой *далеко*, а мой друг не любит гулять *далеко*. 8. Вокзал *далеко*, вам придется поехать на автобусе. 9. Почтовое отделение *далеко*?

10. Эта школа *далеко* от центра города. 11. Нам надо выйти рано, потому что мы пойдем *далеко*. 12. Вы живете *далеко*? 13. Его дом очень *далеко* отсюда. 14. Они вернулись очень *поздно*, так как они ходили *далеко*. 15. Мы будем плавать каждый день перед завтраком, так как река *недалеко*. 16. Поезжайте туда автобусом, так как ближайшая станция метро довольно *далеко*. 17. Я *редко* хожу в театр, так как живу очень *далеко от города*. 18. Библиотека очень *близко* от нашего дома. 19. Новый магазин *близко* отсюда.

2.5 ADVERBS OF DEGREE, MEASURE AND QUANTITY

Adverbs of degree, measure and quantity: ***much*** *(много)*, ***little*** *(мало)*, ***very*** *(очень)*, ***too*** *(слишком)*, ***so*** *(так)*, ***rather*** *(довольно)*, ***enough*** *(достаточно)*, ***quite*** *(совсем)*, ***not at all*** *(совсем не)*, ***hardly/scarcely*** *(едва)*, ***nearly/almost*** *(почти)*, ***somewhat*** *(несколько, до некоторой степени)*, ***much/far/by far*** *(намного, гораздо, значительно)*, etc.

NOTES:

МНОГО

much in questions and negative sentences
- ❑ Has he read **much**?

very (too, so, as) much/a lot/a great deal in affirmative sentences
- ❑ He plays football **too much.**
- ❑ He has done **a lot today.**

МАЛО

not much in negative sentences
- ❑ He **doesn't speak much** about it.
  (Он *мало говорит* об этом)

very/too/so little in affirmative sentences
- ❑ She eats **very little.**
- ❑ You rest **too little.**

ОЧЕНЬ

very to strengthen
- ❑ adjectives: Martha is **very ill.**
- ❑ adjective + noun: John is **a very nice man.**

very much goes with
- ❑ comparatives: She is **very much** better.
- ❑ verbs: I like your painting **very much.**

We often use ***extremely, awfully, terribly, really, pretty*** for special emphasis of *"very"*:
- ❑ I'm **extremely** sleepy.
- ❑ It's **awfully/terribly** expensive.
- ❑ The girl is **pretty** smart.

СЛИШКОМ

Too + *adjective/adverb*
- ❑ The tea is **too hot**, I can't drink it.
- ❑ The bus runs **too slowly.**

TWO MEANINGS OF *'TOO'*

Too changes its meaning according to position:

- ❑ The coffee is **too hot** to drink. *(слишком)*
- ❑ The croissant is freshly-made and the coffee is hot, **too**. *(также)*

We use *too* at the end of an affirmative sentence to mean *"also"*:

- ❑ Billy can already read and he can write, **too.**

In the negative, we must use *either* in place of *too*:

- ❑ Billy can't write yet and he can't read **either.**

We use *also* and *as well* like *too (также)* in affirmative sentences. We replace them by *either* in negative sentences.

As well goes at the end of a clause or sentence:

- ❑ I bought this bag and I bought these shoes to go with it, **as well.**

Also normally comes:

– after *to be/have/can*:

- ❑ Susan is an engineer, but she **is also** a mother.

– after first auxiliary:

- ❑ I should have collected the letters and I **should also** have posted them.

– before the main verb:

- ❑ I play volleyball and I **also play** tennis.

ПОЧТИ

hardly/scarcely + *any/ever*

- ❑ There were **hardly/scarcely/any** people in the street.
  (На улице *почти* не было людей.)
- ❑ I **hardly/scarcely/ever** see him.
  (Я *почти* никогда не вижу его.)

nearly/almost

- ❑ It is **nearly/almost**/5 o'clock.
  (Сейчас *почти* 5 часов.)
- ❑ I've **nearly/almost**/finished my work.
  (Я *почти* окончил свою работу.)

ДОВОЛЬНО

quite + *adjective/adverb*

- ❑ The film is **quite good.**
- ❑ The play is **quite awful.**

fairly + *adjective/adverb* (less complimentary than *quite*)

❑ What's John's English like?	It's **quite good.** (complimentary) It's **fairly good.** (less complimentary)

rather (stronger than *quite* and *fairly*)

- ❑ I am afraid Jane's health is **rather poor.**
- ❑ Your words have been **rather unpleasant.**
- ❑ The ice-cream is **rather good.**

Quite goes in front of "absolute" adjectives (*dead, full, empty*) and "strong" adjectives (*amazing, wonderful*) meaning "совершенно/абсолютно":

- ❑ The man is **quite dead.**
- ❑ The bucket is **quite full.**
- ❑ The book is **quite wonderful.**

Ex. 9. (**A, B**) Supply *very, too* or *very much* in these sentences. Two answers may be possible.

1. I hear they are *very* happy.
2. I can't go _____ faster than I'm going.
3. Slow down. You're walking _____ fast for me.
4. She didn't think my answer was _____ clever.
5. I can't afford it. It's _____ expensive.
6. If you hope to win him for yourself, you are _____ mistaken.
7. Our firm is _____ interested in this project.
8. I didn't enjoy the film _____ .
9. Why didn't you come? We needed you _____.
10. I trusted you from the _____ beginning.
11. He has been _____ talked about recently.
12. He is _____ handsome for his own good.
13. I don't like your idea _____.
14. My new car is _____ faster than the old one.
15. We were _____ early, but they were already waiting for us.
16. We were _____ early, the museum wasn't open yet.
17. We have _____ missed you.
18. You have been working _____ much lately.
19. I've been _____ alone lately.
20. He hasn't done _____ much work here.

Ex. 10. (**A, B**) Complete these responses using *very, too, very much* and *too much.*

1. How did you enjoy your stay in England? – I enjoyed it *very much*.
2. So you didn't marry Steve in the end! – No, he is _____ stupid.
3. Will you buy this dress? – No, it costs _____.
4. Is that lobster alive? – Yes, it's _____ alive!
5. Was it heavy? – Yes, _____ !
6. Are you glad? – Yes, _____ !
7. Did you spend a lot of time on it? – Yes, _____ !
8. I don't like autumn here. – Neither do I. There's _____ rain.
9. Why aren't you buying that coat? – It's _____ short for me.
10. Their house is very big! – Yes, but not _____ big!
11. Are the children still awake? – Yes, they're _____ awake!
12. How is the business going? – Not _____ well, I'm afraid.

Ex. 11. (**B, C**) Use suitable adverbs in place of *very*.

1. This film is *awfully* dull.
2. I'm _____ confused by the new regulations.
3. I'm _____ disappointed in the work.
4. We are _____ interested in your proposal.
5. That comedy wasn't _____ funny.
6. I was _____ awake all night.

7. I was _____ surprised by her answer.
8. That task is _____ difficult!
9. I'm _____ annoyed about this.
10. Your success has been _____ deserved.
11. She was _____ hurt by your words!
12. Your friend works _____ slowly.
13. I was _____ bored to play.
14. We were all _____ alarmed by your words.
15. I'm _____ sorry about this.
16. Your advice has been _____ helpful.
17. What you did was _____ dangerous.
18. You didn't wake me. I was _____ asleep.
19. It was _____ cold in the morning.
20. You think you're _____ clever.
21. He was _____ hurt in the accident.
22. This computer is _____ fast.
23. They were _____ nice to me.
24. You must be _____ attentive and careful on that part of the road.

Ex. 12. (**B, C**) CONTEXT. Translate the words in brackets.

Justly Punished.

There were 1 (слишком много людей) on the bus for comfort and passengers were standing in the aisle. A young woman carrying a baby was 2 (очень благодарна) when an old man offered her his seat. The baby was 3 (крепко спал) and she could now rest him on her lap. She thanked the old man 4 (очень) and was just going to sit down when a rude young man sat in the empty seat. Everyone was 5 (ужасно смущен), and the young mother was 6 (слишком удивлена) to say anything. All the passengers 7 (очень не одобряли) of the man's action. They were 8 (страшно сердиты) with him, but he paid no attention. 9 (гораздо позже), the rude man wanted to get off the bus and tried to push past the passengers. They all 10 (стали близко друг к другу) and wouldn't let him move. He was made to stay on the bus till it reached its terminus, a punishment he 11 (справедливо заслужил).

Ex. 13. (**A, B**) Use *too* in your sentences and say what meaning it has in each sentence.

1. You can't swim in this lake. (cold) – *It's too cold*.
2. Ladoga Lake is very deep and it is also cold. – *And it's cold, too*.
3. I invited Paul and I also invited Margaret. _____
4. We won't go to the wood. (far) _____
5. We didn't stay in that hotel. (expensive) _____
6. We didn't stay in that hotel. It was rather old and also expensive. _____

Ex. 14. (**A, B**) Add *too* or *either*.

1. I like opera and I like ballet *too*.
2. I know Jason and I know his sister, _____ .
3. I don't smoke and I don't drink alcohol, _____ .
4. He runs a restaurant and a hotel, _____ .
5. I can't play the piano and I can't sing, _____ .

6. Don't tell mother and don't tell Greg, _____ .
7. I don't know and I don't care, _____ .
8. He can do it and he can do it well, _____ .

Ex. 15. (**B, C**) Write sentences to show how you interpret these statements.

1. Only I saw him there. *I saw him there, but no one else did.*
2. I only saw Polly there. _____
3. I read his novels only. _____
4. I've just understood his lecture. _____
5. I understood just his lecture. _____
6. I understood his lecture – just! _____

Ex. 16. (**B, C**) Show where *also* goes in these sentences.

1. She can read and she can write. – *She can read and she can also write.*
2. I have had a rest and I've had a shower. _____
3. She can knit and she can sew. _____
4. He has brought a lot of books and he has brought some records. _____
5. You should have phoned and you should have written. _____
6. I have to write a letter and I have to do some exercises. _____
7. I'd like a cup of coffee and I'd like some sandwiches, please. _____
8. He owns this hotel and he owns a chain of shops in the city. _____
9. We sell our products in the home market but we export a lot. _____
10. I won't let you watch TV now because the film is stupid and it's too late. _____

_____

Ex. 17. (**B, C**) CONTEXT. Translate the words in brackets, paying special attention to the *italicized* words.

A Safe Place.

My aunt Millie always said she had some jewels which she would leave to me, but when she died she didn't leave any money and she 1 (не оставила мне *также* и драгоценностей).
2 (*даже* моя мама) was surprised.
"I know she had some rings and 3 (а *также* замечательные бусы).
4 (Я видела их *только однажды*), but perhaps she sold them."
My mother and I looked 5 (*везде, повсюду*): we looked in the bedrooms, in the bathroom, in the attic, but we found nothing.
6 "(Милли была *так* осторожна) and was afraid of burglars," Mother said, "but I don't think she hid her jewels somewhere."
"Let's go home, and we'd better take all the food in the deep freeze." On Sunday, Mother said to me, "I'm going to cook this lovely goose which was in your aunt Millie's deep freeze.
7 (Я *также* подготовлю начинку) and you can stuff the goose."
Five minutes later I screamed with surprise: the goose was full of jewels and 8 (здесь были *также* золотые монеты).

Ex. 18. (**B, C**) Answer these questions in full with *quite*, and say whether *quite* means *"less than"* or *"completely"*.

1. What was the play like? (good) – *The play was quite good. (less than)*
2. How was the trip? (amazing) _____
3. What's Pam like? (wonderful) _____
4. How was the film? (awful) _____
5. How was your holiday? (enjoy) _____
6. How did you like his poem? (like) _____

Ex. 19. (**B, C**) Add *quite* and *rather* to each sentence, where possible. Say if they mean *"inclined to (be)"*, *"less than"* or *"completely"*.

1. I'm afraid Jane's health is *quite/rather poor*. (*"completely"/"inclined to be"*)
2. Don't worry! Your son is _____ all right! _____
3. Your work has been _____ unsatisfactory. _____
4. I'm afraid an appointment tomorrow is _____ impossible. _____
5. Last night's documentary was _____ interesting. _____

Ex. 20. (**B, C**) Add *quite* and *fairly*. Mark as *"complimentary"*, *"less complimentary"* or *"completely"*.

1. He draws *quite/fairly* well. (*"complimentary"/"less complimentary"*)
2. The party is _____ spoilt. _____
3. I feel _____ well. _____
4. She's _____ clever. _____
5. I think the old man _____ mad. _____
6. This is _____ incredible! _____

Ex. 21. (**B, C**) Add *much, any, far* or *a lot* and give alternatives where possible.

1. I'm not *much/any* good at solving riddles.
2. You're _____ more beautiful than she.
3. This is _____ more expensive.
4. This is by _____ the best way to do it.
5. I can't do it _____ better.
6. These two recordings aren't _____ different.
7. I don't _____ like horror films.
8. I _____ prefer swimming to running.
9. This machine isn't _____ used.
10. You look _____ healthier than when I last saw you.

Ex. 22. (**C**) CONTEXT. Translate the words in brackets using *any, many, much, rather, fairly, quite,* etc.

Can We Go Home, Please?

It was 1 (довольно поздно). The restaurant clock showed 1.30 a.m. The waiters were feeling 2 (очень усталыми) and were beginning to yawn. There was one 3 (довольно пожилая пара) left. They had clearly had 4 (довольно хорошо поели). Now they were

looking at each other across the table and were 5 (совершенно не замечали) of the world around them. The waiters wanted to go home. One of them asked the couple if they wanted 6 (еще поесть или выпить). He didn't get an answer. It clearly 7 (не было никакого смысла) asking questions! One of the waiters had 8 (довольно хорошую идею). He began stacking chairs upside-down onto the tables. The others joined in. Another waiter turned off the lights. In the end, the restaurant was 9 (совершенно темный). The chairs were stacked on the tables round the couple who just sat and sat and sat!

Ex. 23. (**B, C**) Translate into English.

I

1. Он мало спит. 2. Он мало отдыхает. 3. Она много путешествует. 4. Он много работает над английским языком? 5. Они мало работают. 6. Она много ест. 7. Он много читает.

II

1. Этот дом совсем старый. 2. Он совсем не старый. 3. Это пальто совсем новое. 4. Его шляпа не совсем новая. 5. Наш дом совсем готов. 6. Моя работа не совсем готова. 7. Мы совсем не готовы. 8. Уже совсем светло. 9. Сегодня не совсем тепло. 10. Сегодня совсем не холодно. 11. Я вполне понимаю вас. 12. Я не совсем понимаю вас. 13. Я совсем не понимаю вас. 14. Я совсем не устал. 15. Его новый роман совсем неинтересный.

III

1. В его работе почти нет ошибок. 2. В этой книге почти нет иллюстраций. 3. В этой библиотеке почти нет английских книг. 4. Они почти ничего не рассказывали нам об этом. 5. Он почти никогда не читает книги. 6. Почти никто не знает об этом. 7. На небе почти нет облаков. 8. В поезде почти не было пассажиров. 9. У нас почти не осталось хлеба. 10. В бутылке почти нет молока. 11. Мы почти ничего не видели, так было темно. 12. Я почти ни с кем не разговаривал вчера. 13. Он почти ничего не писал по этому вопросу. 14. Его почти никогда нет дома по вечерам. 15. Мы почти никогда не ездим туда теперь. 16. Он в последнее время почти не получал писем от своего брата. 17. Я так устал, что почти ничего не мог съесть. 18. В этом городе почти нет зелени.

2.6 VIEWPOINT ADVERBS

Viewpoint adverbs: ***obviously/evidently*** *(очевидно)*, ***probably*** *(вероятно)*, ***possibly*** *(возможно)*, ***indeed*** *(действительно)*, ***certainly*** *(конечно, несомненно)*, ***perhaps, may be*** *(может быть)*, ***apparently*** *(по-видимому)*, ***decisively*** *(решительно)*, ***undoubtedly*** *(несомненно)*, ***practically*** *(практически, фактически)*, ***naturally*** *(естественно, разумеется)*, ***fortunately*** *(к счастью)*, ***unfortunately*** *(к несчастью)*, ***mainly/chiefly/mostly*** *(главным образом)*, etc.

- ❑ **Perhaps** he'll be here at 9 o'clock tomorrow.
- ❑ I was **indeed** very glad to hear the news.
- ❑ He will **probably** finish his work tonight.
- ❑ He **evidently** worked hard.
- ❑ **Unfortunately**, he came to the station too late and missed the train.
- ❑ **Naturally**, he got very angry with them.

We may express our "viewpoint" in speech or in writing using adverbs like these:

– (= I'm sure): *clearly, definitely, honestly, naturally, obviously, really, strictly speaking;*
– (= I'm going to be brief): *anyhow, briefly, in brief, in effect, in a few words, in short;*
– (= I'm expressing my opinion): *as far as I'm concerned, frankly, in my opinion, I think.*

EXERCISE

Ex. 24. (B, C) Match the columns A and B.

A	B
a. I am making a generalisation	**1.** I was agreeable
b. the reason for this was	**2.** between ourselves
c. I don't want you to repeat this	**3.** after all
d. I was pleased to learn	**4.** naturally
e. as was to be expected	**5.** as a general rule
f. I am sure	**6.** certainly
g. the important thing is this	**7.** frankly
h. I'm being honest	**8.** at any rate
i. I'm expressing my opinion	**9.** in my view

CONNECTING ADVERBS

We can connect ideas in speech or writing using adverbs like these:

– (= I'm adding something): *in addition, again, apart from this, besides, moreover;*
– (= I'm comparing/contrasting): *as compared to, equally, however, in reality;*
– (= I'm summarizing): *all in all, and so on, essentially, in brief, in conclusion, in effect.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 25. (B, C) Put in the suitable phrase from the right column.

(1) ... a lot of people I know, there are few things more terrifying than having to speak in public. (2) ... way to succeed is to follow strict rules. (3) ... you should be well-prepared. (4) ... you should have a few jokes ready. (5) ... you should rehearse your speech, (6) ... in front of a mirror. (7) ... being hit by a bus, public speaking isn't too bad, but it's bad enough. (8) ... you can make things easier for yourself by being ready. (9) ... you can do nothing and make a fool of yourself. (10) ... success depends entirely on you.

a. first of all
b. as well as that
c. in comparision with
d. the only
e. alternatively
f. however
g. second
h. according to
i. preferably
j. to sum up

Ex. 26. (B, C) CONTEXT. Give a free translation of the article using *according to, agreeably, however, in brief, moreover, probably* instead of the italicized words.

Не просите комнату с видом из окна.

Цены на землю в Токио так высоки, что она стоит, *вероятно*, больше, чем вся Калифорния. Нигде во всем мире нет такого спроса на землю. *Согласно* одной из газет, недостаток земли привел к созданию отелей-кабин. Комнаты представляют

собой кабины размером один метр в высоту, 76 сантиметров в ширину и два метра в глубину. *Однако*, вы будете *приятно* удивлены, узнав, что кабины оборудованы телефоном, радио и телевизором. *Более того*, они гораздо дешевле, чем обычные отели. *Короче говоря*, они обеспечивают вас всем, что необходимо, чтобы с комфортом провести ночь. Но не просите комнату с хорошим видом из окна.

3. REVISION

Ex. 1. (**A**) Put the adverbs in a correct place in the sentence (consult the rules):

1. He could walk (with difficulty). 2. He speaks English (very well). 3. He comes to help them in the garden (often). 4. He doesn't understand (still). 5. They met at the station (always). 6. You must do such a thing (never, again). 7. Do they come to see you (ever)? 8. Consider the matter before you examine the details (generally). 9. He agreed with me (heartily). 10. Please, cross the road (carefully). 11. They were acting that night (brilliantly). 12. The children ran into the room (noisily). 13. I did the work (well). 14. The wind blew all afternoon (violently). 15. The little boy behaved (courageously). 16. He agreed to our proposals (willingly). 17. They ran to the far end of the garden (rapidly). 18. I think of this problem (often). 19. She tells me funny stories (sometimes). 20. He has been admired by everybody (greatly).

Ex. 2. (**B**) Put the adverbs in a correct place in the sentence.

1. He is the first to answer (always). 2. She is mistaken (never). 3. Have you seen him (ever)? 4. Have you seen him (yet)? 5. The teacher has not come (yet). 6. I phone to him (often) , but he phones me back (seldom). 7. The fire was extinguished (quickly). 8. I am grateful to you for your help (deeply). 9. I shall be glad to help you (always). 10. He questioned us about it (impatiently). 11. I've tried to understand you (always). 12. I have heard of it (often). 13. He gets up before noon (never). 14. It has been done (before, often). 15. It was late in the day, and the sun had disappeared (almost). 16. They have left (already). 17. I do not think he has played (ever, before, so badly). 18. I shall see him (never, again). 19. Have you been (lately, there). 20. They are late (always). 21. The sun is shining (today, brightly). 22. He was able to sleep that night (hardly). 23. He has been invited there (never). 24. I had to ask him twice (never). 25. You ought to get off the tram when it is moving (never). 26. We used to go to the seaside in summer (always). 27. You can expect him to do it (hardly). 28. She forgot about it (quite). 29. He broke the window with his ball (nearly). 30. It rains here in autumn (scarcely). 31. I get letters from him (sometimes). 32. They will arrive (tomorrow, here). 33. I have money to buy the radio set (enough). 34. It is easy to understand (enough).

Ex. 3. (**B**) Translate into Russian. State whether the words in *italic* type are adjectives or adverbs.

1. a) It has cost me a *pretty* penny.
   b) They found themselves in a *pretty* embarrassing situation.
2. a) I watched the fighters at *close* quarters.
   b) He kept *close* to the shade of the forest.

3. a) The patient breathed *hard*.
   b) He was a *hard* patient to cure; he wouldn't obey the doctor's orders.
4. a) I'm sure he'll do it *worse* than you.
   b) To make things still *worse*, they had missed the last train.
5. a) This is the *right* way to do it.
   b) She lives *right* around the corner.
6. a) Go *straight,* then turn left.
   b) He always says his jokes with a perfectly *straight* face.
7. a) He was too *long* in doing it.
   b) It took him *long* to do it.
8. a) I don't like *fast* food restaurants.
   b) When I came back he was *fast* asleep.
9. a) The sportsman dived *deep* and emerged at the other end of the pool.
   b) They had to dig a well some hundred metres *deep* to get to the water.
10. a) You look quite *ill*.
    b) She often speaks *ill* of her colleagues.
11. a) It was still *early* morning when he returned.
    b) We returned very *early*.
12. What must be done, must be done *well*.

Ex. 4. (**C**) Translate into English.

1. Я где-то читал об этом. 2. Вы куда-нибудь ходили вчера вечером? 3. Я никуда не посылал его вчера. 4. Куда вы пойдете сегодня вечером? – Никуда. 5. Я никогда не смотрю футбол по телевизору. 6. Я с ним однажды говорил об этом. 7. Секретарь уже пришел? 8. Как, вы уже закончили печатать письма? 9. Уже совсем светло. 10. Он заходил ко мне в субботу, и я не видел его с тех пор. 11. Он достаточно умен, чтобы понять это. 12. Он знает английский язык достаточно хорошо, чтобы говорить на любую тему. 13. Он почти кончил свою работу. 14. В кувшине почти нет воды. 15. Я едва понимал его. 16. Я почти никуда не хожу по вечерам. 17. Он был очень разочарован, увидев, что ее там не было. 18. Вы знаете, как она любит животных. 19. Я был так удивлен, что не знал, что сказать. 20. Он работает очень упорно. 21. Вы много работаете над английским языком? 22. Я тоже ничего не слыхал об этом. 23. Вы тоже смотрели этот фильм? 24. Кто еще будет принимать участие в этой работе? 25. Он еще спит. 26. Он еще не вернулся. 27. Он говорит очень медленно. 28. Они хорошо сделали эту работу. 29. Она обычно начинает работу в 11 часов утра. 30. Я совсем забыл этот рассказ. 31. В прошлом году мне приходилось всегда вставать очень рано. 32. Я за последнее время прочел несколько очень интересных книг. 33. Я здесь раньше никогда не была. 34. Сейчас слишком поздно туда идти. 35. Вы должны идти туда немедленно, иначе вы опоздаете. 36. Я устал; все же я должен пойти туда сегодня вечером. 37. Этот рассказ слишком труден для него; кроме того, он не очень интересный. 38. Наденьте пальто, а то вы простудитесь. 39. Я чуть не сказал ему об этом. 40. Она пишет мне гораздо чаще, чем вы. 41. Уже совсем темно. 42. Еще не совсем темно. 43. Еще совсем не темно. 44. Мы редко видимся, потому что живем далеко друг от друга. 45. Мы вернемся рано, так как мы не пойдем далеко. 46. Библиотека далеко? – Да, она довольно далеко, мы поедем на метро. 47. Он недавно подарил мне очень интересную книгу. 48. Я уже давно знаю об этом. 49. Они живут здесь недавно. 50. Они давно уехали в Сибирь. 51. Вы давно здесь? 52. Я разговаривал с ними недолго.

Ex. 5. (**C**) Translate into English.

1. Чем дольше я живу здесь, тем больше мне здесь нравится. 2. Кент справедливо называется садом Англии. 3. Я вас правильно понял? 4. Мы благополучно добрались до дома, хотя было очень темно. 5. Свет был очень плохой, приходилось подносить текст близко к глазам. 6. Книга была настолько увлекательная, что я зачитался до глубокой ночи. 7. Чем раньше вы придете, тем скорее мы кончим работу. 8. Его прервали в самой середине речи. 9. Дверь была широко открыта, и нам было хорошо видно, что делается внутри.10. Подождите, они скоро придут. 11. Сегодня довольно-таки холодно. 12. Он недавно вернулся из командировки. 13. Этот способ широко применялся в текстильной промышленности в прошлом веке. 14. Она чуть не опоздала на самолет.

4. TESTS

I

1. Я где-то оставил свою авторучку.
2. Я никуда не хочу идти сегодня вечером.
3. Однажды утром мы пошли в лес.
4. Как, вы уже вернулись?
5. Ему уже двенадцать лет.
6. Газета уже пришла?
7. У нас достаточно времени, чтобы успеть на поезд.
8. Я почти никогда с ним не разговариваю.
9. В саду почти не было цветов.
10. Я тоже поеду туда летом.
11. Я уверен, что кто-нибудь еще к нам присоединится.
12. Вы с кем-нибудь еще говорили об этом?

II

1. Он очень хорошо говорит по-французски.
2. Я теперь часто буду заходить к вам.
3. Его никогда не бывает дома днем.
4. Вы всегда можете получить эти книги в нашей библиотеке.
5. Я чувствовал себя плохо, поэтому я пошел прямо домой.
6. Я должен сделать это сегодня, а то он рассердится.
7. Я чуть не забыл позвонить им по телефону.
8. Он приходит сюда еще чаще, чем она.
9. Я разговаривал с ними недолго.
10. Совещание продолжалось долго.
11. Мы были в зоопарке очень давно.
12. Он очень молод, но он очень хороший специалист.

III

1. Чем интереснее книга, тем быстрее вы читаете ее.
2. Только высококвалифицированный рабочий может управлять этим станком.

3. Я был глубоко тронут его интересом к моей статье.
4. Смотрите мне прямо в глаза.
5. В этом году мы собрали яблок в три раза больше, чем в прошл
6. Он бежал очень быстро и уже едва мог дышать.
7. Женщина тяжело вздохнула.
8. Мы вернулись домой очень поздно.
9. Все эти события тесно связаны между собой.
10. Мы живем совсем близко от метро.
11. Мы поздно вернемся завтра, так как пойдем далеко.
12. Самолет летел высоко в небе, он был едва заметен.

THE VERBALS
(the Non-finite Forms of the Verb)

The verb has finite and non-finite forms, the latter being also called the Verbals. The Verbals don't express person, number or mood, that is why they can't be used as the predicate of a sentence.
There are three verbals in English: **the Gerund, the Infinitive** and **the Participle.**
In Russian we also have three non-finite forms, but they do not fully coincide with those in the English language (причастие, деепричастие, инфинитив).

1. THE GERUND

1.1 FORMS. TENSE/VOICE DISTINCTIONS

	Active	Passive
Indefinite	writing	being written
Perfect	having written	having been written

(for Spelling Rules see Appendix 1).
Like the finite forms the verbals have tense and voice distinctions, but their tense distinctions differ from those of the finite verbs.

THE TENSE DISTINCTIONS OF THE GERUND ARE RELATIVE:

The Indefinite Gerund
denotes an action simultaneous with that of the predicate
❒ He avoided **making** the same mistake again.

The Perfect Gerund
denotes an action prior to that of the predicate
❒ He admitted **having made** the mistake.

1. Prior action is not always expressed by a Perfect Gerund. In some cases we find an Indefinite Gerund.
After the verbs: *remember, excuse, forgive, thank.*
After the prepositions: *on (upon), after, without.*
❒ I don't remember **hearing** the legend before.
❒ You must excuse my **not answering** you before.

The Gerund has special forms for the Active and Passive Voice.
❒ He liked neither **reading** nor **being read to.**

2. After the verbs: *want, need, deserve, require, be worth* the Gerund is used in the active form though it is passive in meaning.
❒ The room *needs* **painting.**
❒ The film *is worth* **seeing.**
❒ The child *deserves* **praising.**

1.2 THE USE OF THE GERUND

In modern English the Gerund is widely used and competes with the Infinitive.
I. The Gerund is always used after:

1. Verbs followed by prepositions: *accuse of* — *object to* *apologize for* — *persist in* *approve of* — *prevent from* *blame smb for* — *result in* *forgive for* — *stop from* *congratulate on* — *succeed in* *count on* — *suspend smb of* *depend on* — *thank for* *hear of* — *think of* *inform of* *insist on*	❒ They *succeeded in* **finding** a good flat. ❒ Can you *stop* the child *from* **getting** into mischief? ❒ *Thank* you *for* **coming.** ❒ He was *accused of* **having broken** the law. ❒ I *insisted on* his **coming** with us. ❒ Who is *to blame for* **starting** the fire? ❒ Are you *thinking of* **buying** a house? ❒ I *apologize for* **being** so awkward.
2. Nouns used with prepositions: *art of* — *opportunity of* *chance of* — *plan for* *difficulty (in)* — *point in; of* *experience in* — *preparation for* *habit of* — *process of* *harm of* — *purpose of* *idea of* — *reason for* *importance of* — *right of* *interest in* — *sense of* *means of* — *skill in* *mistake of* — *way of*	❒ He has no *intention of* **staying.** ❒ The *importance of* **being** earnest. ❒ There is no *chance of* **winning.** ❒ We had no *opportunity of* **meeting** interesting people there. ❒ I have no *experience in* **building** houses. ❒ There are different *ways of* **solving** this problem. ❒ Do you have any *reason for* **saying** such a thing?
3. Phrasal verbs: *burst out* — *leave off* *give up* — *keep on* *go on* — *put off*, etc (see "English through Reading")	❒ He *gave up* **smoking** two years ago. ❒ She *kept on* **interrupting** me while I was speaking.
4. Such verbs as: *avoid* — *involve* *consider* — *justify* *delay* — *mind* *deny* — *miss* *escape* — *postpone* *excuse* — *practise* *fancy* — *recall* *finish* — *recollect* *forgive* — *resent* *include* — *risk*	❒ Would you *mind* **closing** the door? ❒ He *denied* **having** seen this man before. ❒ You can hardly *avoid* **meeting** her. ❒ We've just *missed* **having** nasty accident. ❒ They *postponed* **sending** an answer to the request. ❒ My work *involves* **filing** and **typing** letters. ❒ I'*ll risk* **trying** my hand in it.
5. Word combinations: *be afraid of* — *be guilty of* *be angry for* — *be interested in*	❒ There is *no use* **crying** over spilt milk.

be aware of	*be keen on*	❒ He didn't *feel like* **going** out.
be bored with	*be pleased at*	❒ He *couldn't help* **laughing**.
be busy	*be proud of*	❒ She *was afraid of* **falling.**
be capable of	*be slow at*	❒ He *is slow at* **doing** sums.
be clever at	*be sorry for*	❒ He *is interested in* **developing** the project.
be disappointed at	*be sure of*	
be engaged in	*be surprised at*	❒ She'*ll be sorry for* **being** rude.
be fond of	*be worried about*	❒ He *is proud of* **having won** the chess tournament.
be good/clever at	*be worth*	
be grateful for	*be responsible for*	❒ He *was surprised at* **having been asked** about it.
can't stand/bear	*be no good*	
feel like	*be no use*	❒ It's *no use* **worrying** about it. There is nothing you can do.
have difficulty in		❒ Did you have any *difficulty in* **getting** a visa?
6. Prepositions		
after	*in spite of*	❒ They ran five miles *without* **stopping**.
before	*on*	❒ *Before* **going** to bed she locked the door.
besides	*without*	
instead of	*by*	❒ John went to his office *in spite of* **being ill.**

(for Verbs followed by the Infinitive see Appendix 6).

NOTES:

1. After the verbs **come** and **go** we often use the Gerund related to outdoor activities: *climbing, driving, fishing, riding, sailing, shopping, skiing, walking,* etc.
- ❒ Why don't you **come sailing** with us?
- ❒ Let's **go skiing!**

2. The following verbs always have a direct object: *catch, find, notice, observe, see.*
- ❒ I'd better not **catch you doing** that again!

3. It is necessary to distinguish two particularly confusing verb phrases, **used to** and **be used to.**

Used to + Infinitive

Used to + Infinitive refers to habitual action in the past, and **used to** can not be followed by a noun (or a gerund):
- ❒ When I was in England, I **used to eat** a big breakfast.

Used to is a fixed idiom and is not used in any other tense.

Be used to + noun/gerund

The phrase is parallel in structure to *to be interested in*, and it is possible to put a noun after **to:**
- ❒ **I'm used to** *his curious ways.*
- ❒ **I'm used to** *hearing* about the odd things he does.

The verb *to be* in **to be used to** can be used in any appropriate tense.
To be used to suggests *familiarity* through a repetition of the activitity or occurrence; it does not state the existence of a habit as such.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

I. (A)
1. Could you please stop making so much noise? 2. I don't enjoy writing letters. 3. Does your work involve meeting a lot of people? 4. I considered taking the job but in the end I decided against it. 5. If you walk into the road without looking you risk being knocked down by a car. 6. I don't fancy going out this evening. 7. The batteries of this radio need changing. 8. Do you think the grass needs cutting? 9. Before going out I phoned Ann. 10. Tom left without finishing his dinner. 11. I wonder what prevented him from coming to the party. 12. The arrested man was suspected of breaking into houses. 13. Have you ever thought of getting married? 14. I had difficulty in finding a place to live. 15. Do you think this book is worth reading?

II. (B, C)
1. This habit of discussing other people's affairs may damage reputations and ruin friendships. 2. Well, don't go if you don't feel like going but for God's sake stop talking about it. 3. Can't you see how perfectly useless it is trying to save the shop now? 4. I see no harm in letting them enjoy themselves in vacation time. 5. So you like the part and want to play it. But is it worth going to such lengths to get it? 6. He was only thanking me for taking his part at lunch. 7. Once he gets elected there will be no holding him. 8. You can't learn to skate without falling. 9. It's no use trying to make you see my point. 10. It's different for you. You're used to walking. 11. As to me, I simply love cooking. 12. My job is not teaching you manners. 13. She can't stand being contradicted. 14. She washed her face and combed her hair before going downstairs again. 15. Of course I'll go. I'd go any place if there's the slightest chance of getting this job.

Ex. 2. Fill in the blanks with prepositions where necessary.

I. (A, B)
1. She only succeeded ... blocking the way. 2. She showed no intention ... leaving. 3. There is no point ... staying. 4. He did not object ... being examined. 5. I was not used ... driving a big car through crowded streets. 6. She was surprisingly clever ... finding out things. 7. How can I prevent her ... going there? 8. I was thinking at the time ... selling the place. 9. I can find that out ... asking. 10. After all I'm personally responsible ... bringing you back safe and sound. 11. They positively insisted ... visiting all the rooms. 12. What are your reasons to accuse her ... taking the papers? 13. Everything depends ... being on the spot. 14. I thanked him again ... lending me the car.

II. (C)
1. Jones insisted ... shaking hands. 2. I take all the blame ... not seeing further than my nose. 3. Unfortunately I haven't succeeded ... making much impression on you. 4. He made a point ... never sounding disappointed. 5. His mission had very little to do ... winning the war. 6. He had never had much difficulty ... getting jobs. The trouble had always been ... keeping them. 7. She thanked him ... taking her out. 8. He did not object ... seeing Francis. 9. I shall look forward ... seeing your book. 10. I thought ... taking a trip up the Scandinavian coast. 11. Jack hesitated, then decided ... talking. 12. I told him that we were about to be turned out of our flat ... not paying the rent. 13. Quite late, when he was on the point ... going

upstairs, the door bell rang. 14. He put the note under a saucer on the table to keep it ... blowing away.

Ex. 3. (**A**) Match the parts of sentences in A and B columns.

1. It's difficult to keep them
2. The police caught him
3. Will you, please, stop
4. I can hear someone
5. They left us
6. I could smell smoke
7. The searchers found the boy

a. sheltering in the barn.
b. coming from the house.
c. opening the safe.
d. thinking about the problem.
e. working all the time.
f. shouting in the distance.
g. changing TV channels.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7
e						

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Supply Gerund forms for the words in brackets.

I

1. The baby started crying when he woke up, and went on (cry) all the morning. 2. He didn't want to lose any more money, so he gave up (play) cards. 3. Imagine (keep) a snake as a pet! 4. Please go on (write); I don't mind waiting. 5. He offered to buy my old car, if I didn't mind (wait) a month for the money. 6. The taxi-driver tried to stop in time, but he couldn't avoid (hit) the old woman. 7. At first I enjoyed (listen) to him, but after a while I got tired of hearing the same story again and again. 8. My watch keeps (stop). – That's because you keep (forget) to wind it up. 9. I suggest (telephone) the hospitals before asking the police to look for him.

II

1. Where is Ann? – She is busy (do) her homework. 2. Let's go for a swim. – What about (go) for a drive instead? 3. I intended to go to the cinema yesterday, but my friend told me the film wasn't worth (see). 4. Try to forget it; it isn't worth (worry) about. 5. When I came he was busy (write) a letter to his friend. 6. Do you feel like (go) to a film or shall we stay at home? 7. It's no use (have) a bicycle if you don't know how to ride it. 8. It's no use (ask) children to keep quiet. They can't help (make) noise. 9. Mr Shaw is very busy (write) his memoirs. 10. There are people who can't help (laugh) when they see someone slip on a banana skin. 11. I didn't feel like (work) so I suggested spending the day in the country. 12. What about (buy) double quantities of everything today?

III. (**B, C**)

1. My father thinks I am not capable of (earn) my own living. 2. I am tired of (do) the same thing all the time. 3. I tried to convince him that I was perfectly capable of (manage) on my own, but he insisted on (help) me. 4. There was no way of (get) out of the building. 5. He didn't leave the house because he was afraid of (meet) someone who would recognize him. 6. I called at his house on the chance of (see) him. 7. There is no point in (remain) in a dangerous place if you can't do anything to help the people. 8. What's your idea of (do) it? 9. He expects me to answer by return but I have no intention of (reply) at all. 10. I'm not used

to (drive) on the left. 11. I want to catch the 7 a.m. train tomorrow. – But you are no good at (get) up early, are you?

IV. (B, C)
1. By (neglect) to take ordinary precautions he endangered the life of his crew. 2. After (hear) the conditions I decided not to enter for the competition. 3. After (walk) for three hours we stopped to let the others catch up with us. 4. Don't forget to lock the door before (go) to bed. 5. Why did you go all round the field instead of (walk) across it? 6. He surprised us all by (go) away without (say) "Good-bye". 7. Before (give) evidence you must swear to speak the truth. 8. She rushed out of the room without (give) me a chance to explain.

Ex. 5. (**B**) Open the brackets using the Gerund.

Model: His hair is very long, it needs *cutting*.
1. This shirt is quite clean; it doesn't want (wash) yet. 2. The grass in the garden is very dry; it wants (water) badly. 3. The baby's crying; I think he needs (feed). 4. The house is old, and it badly wants (paint). 5. The windows are very dirty; they need (clean). 6. I know my hair wants (cut) but I never have time to go to the hairdresser's. 7. The famous man didn't need (introduce) himself. 8. Her shoes have a hole in them; they want (mend). 9. The floor is covered with dust; it needs (sweep). 10. You should tidy the room. – Yes, it needs (tidy). The flowers want (water), and the shelves want (dust).

Ex. 6. (**B**) Open the brackets using the correct form of the Gerund.

1. He remembered (cross) the road, but he didn't remember (knock down). 2. I am still hungry in spite of (eat) four sandwiches. 3. He got into the house by (climb) through a window, without (see) by anyone. 4. He woke up at 7 a.m. in spite of (work) late. 5. He complained of (give) a very small room at the back of the hotel. 6. The little girl isn't afraid of dogs in spite of (bite) twice. 7. The baby went to sleep a few minutes after (feed). 8. The little girl never gets tired of (ask) her mother questions, but her mother often gets tired of (ask) so many questions. 9. Mary was pleasantly surprised at (choose) to fill that vacancy. 10. I always treat people politely and I insist on (treat) politely. 11. The boy was very thirsty in spite of (drink) a big cup of tea.

Ex. 7. Fill in the blanks choosing between the Infinitive or Gerund of the verb in brackets.

I. (A, B)
1. I wished ... quite fair. (be) 2. I expected ... him in the drawing room. (find) 3. I enjoyed ... to her talk of her youth. (listen) 4. Roger promised ... in. (look) 5. I wanted ... him up. (cheer) 6. She didn't mind ... the problem again. (discuss) 7. He didn't hesitate ... such methods. (employ) 8. We arranged ... . (meet). 9. She couldn't resist ... such a lovely hat. (buy) 10. Last week you mentioned ... him in the park. (meet) 11. We can't afford ... our time. (waste) 12. He sat there sullenly and refused ... (answer) 13. He stopped ... and went into the bathroom. (whistle) 14. You certainly mustn't miss ... this wonderful film. (see)

II. (B, C)
1. He enjoyed ... (to need) 2. Willy began ... softly. (to whistle) 3. In my experience most people mind ... at. (to laugh) 4. I don't suppose your wife wants ... with me now. (to bother)

5. I knew that Charles had regretted ... me. (to invite) 6. He pretended ... when his mother came into his room to look at him. (to sleep) 7. He pretended not ... as if the compliment were purely formal. (to hear) 8. He prefers ... by the name of John Brown. (to know) 9. I don't like ... with. (to interfere) 10. I set about ... all the names from the diary. (to erase) 11. Bob asked ... to a room where he could wash and change his clothes. (to show) 12. I disliked ... Harry. (to call) 13. We stopped in front of the dance hall and pretended ... inside. (to look) 14. Maurice sat on the bench, with the picture on his knee, as though he would not risk ... from it. (to part) 15. I didn't want ... his feelings. (to hurt)

Ex. 8. (**B**) Replace the *italicised* parts of the sentence or clauses by gerundial phrases.

Model: He said all this *and he did not even smile.*
He said all this *without even smiling.*

1. We suspected *that the boy was lying.* 2. *Nobody could tell* when they were going to return. 3. She did not *wish to make* an effort. 4. *It is necessary to brush* the coat. 5. *It was impossible to reason with her* when she felt like this. 6. She was very clever, *she could turn* an old dress into a new one. 7. He wouldn't say whether he meant to buy the car *before he took* it for a trial run. 8. Let's go out for dinner. *I don't feel well enough to cook anything.* 9. I don't like the idea *that I should do it all.*

Ex. 9. (**B, C**) Replace the parts in bold type by gerundial phrases.

1. When she saw him she stopped reading at once and put the letter away **and even did not explain anything.** 2. In this thick fog she was afraid **that she might be knocked down**. 3. He preferred to keep silent for fear **that he might say something inopportune**. 4. He felt much better **after he had been operated on**. 5. **He was not only the author of brilliant short stories,** but he was also a talented playwright. 6. **When he had written his report**, he remembered that he had forgotten to mention some facts. 7. Once he gets into his head an idea of doing something, **it is impossible to talk him out of it.** 8. **When the girl entered the room**, she glanced a little wonderingly at the faces of the three men. 9. The whole neighbourhood was so dreary and run-down that he hated the thought that **he would have to live there**. 10. You will do nothing but irritate him **if you will nag him all the time**. 11. **That I was on the spot** was a bit of luck for him. 12. Samuel Griffiths came back from Chicago on this particular day, **after he had concluded several agreements there**.

Ex. 10. Complete the following by translating what is given in brackets using the Gerund. Insert prepositions where necessary.

I. (**B**)

1. They prided themselves ... (что первыми изобрели этот прибор). 2. They accused him ... (в том, что он предал своих друзей). 3. I can't recall ... (чтобы меня с ним когда-нибудь знакомили). I even don't remember ... (что видел его). 4. He couldn't get used ... (к левостороннему движению/водить машину по левой стороне). 5. She was quite unconscious ... (что пришла в неудачный момент). 6. Excuse me ... (что я вошел не постучав). 7. I'm really ashamed ... (что так вел себя на вечере). 8. She denied ... (что обещала заглянуть к нам). 9. We hope he will succeed ... (найти свое место в жизни). 10. Why do you avoid ... (смотреть на меня)?

II. (**C**)
1. From the age of four, I had been used to ... (делать все по-своему). 2. I was not used to ... (когда меня развлекают дамы (entertain)). 3. How proud I was of ... (что изобрел это замечательное устройство). 4. I was tired of always ... (носить чужую одежду). 5. In the morning she was ashamed of herself for ... (что была так груба вчера вчером). 6. He's merely used to ... (что за ним ухаживают). 7. He was grateful to Finch for ... (что уговорил его зайти). 8. But they are used to ... (иметь дело с настоящими бизнесменами (to deal)). 9. She wasn't fond of ... (задавать множество вопросов). 10. At the time I was very keen on ... (получить собственный доход).

Ex. 11. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences using the models.

Model 1: mind/like/hate/avoid **doing** smth
1. Я не мог избежать разговора с ней. 2. Я не отрицаю, что помогаю им. 3. Я не могу оправдать его работу на конкурирующую (rival) фирму. 4. Терпеть не могу ждать. 5. Стоит это читать? 6. Я ужасно не люблю тратить время зря. 7. Она ничего не имела против того, чтобы зайти еще раз. 8. Он избегал выражать свое мнение. 9. Мне так неприятно оставлять тебя здесь.

Model 2: way/intention/purpose/difficulty of **doing** smth
1. Это хороший способ уйти от ответа. 2. У него не было ни малейшего намерения обманывать вас. 3. У меня и мысли не было разрешить ей остаться. 4. Он приехал сюда с целью помочь вам. 5. Наши шансы получить обед были очень малы. 6. Здесь переходить реку не опасно. 7. Вреда в том не будет, если мы скажем ему правду. 8. У нее была привычка ложиться спать рано. 9. У меня не было возможности поговорить с ней об этом. 10. Не будет никакой трудности в том, чтобы найти место, где остановиться.

Model 3: think of/object to **doing** smth
1. Я не привыкла готовить себе завтрак. 2. Наконец мне удалось найти дорогу. 3. Он настаивал на том, чтобы оплатить счет за обед. 4. Мы извинились за опоздание. 5. Я думаю о поездке в Америку этим летом. 6. Он поблагодарил их за то, что его выслушали. 7. Мы рассчитываем закончить в срок. 8. Она настаивала, чтобы ей показали все. 9. Вы подозреваете, что я вам лгу? 10. Его обвинили в краже автомобиля.

Model 4:

on after before by through (because of) without in spite of	**doing** smth

1. Он работает без остановки целый день. 2. Ты ничего не добьешься, если будешь возражать. 3. Все это надо обсудить до того, как принимать решение. 4. Вы можете исправить фигуру, делая гимнастику. 5. Он даст ответ, посоветовавшись со своим юристом. 6. Он прошел мимо, не заметив нас. 7. Он упустил возможность поехать туда, потому что заболел. 8. Не делайте этого, не обдумав все, как следует.

Ex. 12. (**B**) Translate the following into English using Gerunds after the verbs in brackets. Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. Я не виню тебя за то, что тебе так хочется уехать из города. (to blame) 2. Тогда я заподозрил его в том, что он меня дразнит. (to suspect) 3. Нам было не трудно работать вместе. (to have no difficulty) 4. Он настаивал на том, чтобы научить ее работать на PC. (to insist) 5. Не было ничего, что могло бы помешать ему вернуться в Лондон. (to prevent) 6. Он извинился, что не пришел вовремя. (to apologize) 7. Мне удалось заставить Энн говорить. (to succeed) 8. Отец часто обвинял меня в том, что я отношусь к дому как к отелю. (to accuse) 9. Она настояла на том, чтобы заплатить за такси. (to insist) 10. Дэн уговорил Беллу остаться на обед. (to talk into) 11. Доктор начал с того, что пощупал его пульс. (to begin) 12. Он настоял на том, чтобы Анну немедленно пригласили сюда. (to insist) 13. Я спросил его, как ему нравится быть отцом. (to feel about) 14. Как ты объяснил покупку этого автомобиля? (to account) 15. Он упрекал себя за то, что не попытался поговорить с ней. (to reproach)

Ex. 13. (**B, C**) Translate the following into English using Gerunds after the adjectives in brackets. Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. Я гордился тем, что работал с ним тогда. (proud) 2. Я знал, что он не способен так поступить. (capable) 3. Доктор привык выслушивать всяких людей. (used) 4. Мне жаль, что я тогда причинил вам так много беспокойства. (sorry) 5. Я больше, чем ты, заинтересован в том, чтобы найти ее. (interested) 6. Я уверен, что ты вполне способен решить эту проблему. (capable) 7. Мне надоело пытаться делать то, что мне не нравится. (tired) 8. Мне жаль, что я заставляю Вас ждать. (sorry) 9. Я был немного разочарован тем, что не встретил Чарльза. (disappointed) 10. Я так довольна, что меня выбрали для выполнения этой миссии. (pleased) 11. Он отвечает за содержание сада и гаража в порядке. (responsible) 12. Он любил смеяться над теми, кто был робок. (fond)

Ex. 14. (**B, C**) Translate the following into English using Infinitives or Gerunds.

1. Вам повезло, что вы живете в таком красивом месте. (lucky) 2. Ее нижняя губа дрожала, словно она готова была разрыдаться. (ready) 3. Мама была занята приготовлением еды на кухне. (busy) 4. Он попрощался со мной за руку: "Мне жаль, что приходится уходить". (sorry) 5. Песню стоило записать на пленку. (worth) 6. Он быстро сообразил, что случилось. (quick) 7. Об этой новости стоило написать его отцу. (worth) 8. Он был очень доволен, что застал брата дома. (delighted) 9. Мне было неинтересно (не был заинтересован в том, чтобы) продолжать спор. (interested) 10. Работу все еще было трудно найти, и мне не очень-то везло первые несколько дней. (hard)11. Его жена была в Лондоне. Она была занята тем, что искала для них новое жилье. (busy) 12. Я удивился, когда мне позвонил Чарльз. (surprised) 13. Я глубоко уважал ее и гордился знакомством с нею. (proud) 14. Я был волен уходить и приходить, когда хотел. (free) 15. Я очень огорчился, найдя его таким больным. (distressed) 16. Этого человека легко было понять. (easy) 17. Он был теперь полон решимости остаться там. (determined) 18. Это предложение не так легко было принять. (easy)

1.3 VERBS USED WITH THE GERUND AND THE INFINITIVE

There are a few verbs which appear in more than one combination: with the Gerund and the Infinitive. These particular verbs have different patterns assosiated with meanings.

I

Verbs	Gerund	Infinitive
begin – начинать	a. The predicate indicates an activity or process (but the infinitive is also possible). ❒ She *began* **crying** (to cry). ❒ When did you *begin* **learning** (to learn) English?	a. The predicate denotes a state of mind or mental activity. ❒ I *began* **to feel** dizzy. ❒ He *began* **to realize** that he had made a mistake. b. The grammatical subject is lifeless. ❒ The barometer *began* **to fall.** c. The verb is used in a continuous form. ❒ It's *beginning* **to freeze.**
start – начинать, браться за что-либо	❒ It *started* **raining.**	❒ It *is starting* **to snow.**
stop – останавливаться, прекращать	❒ He *stopped* **smoking** on his doctor's advice. (= He doesn't smoke anymore)	❒ He *stopped* **to smoke.** (= in order to smoke)
cease – прекращать, приостанавливать	❒ The factory has *ceased* **making** bicycles.	❒ The old German Empire *ceased* **to exist** in 1918.
continue – продолжать	❒ How long will you *continue* **working?**	❒ He *continued* **to live** with his parents after his marriage.
like* (love) – нравиться	❒ I *like* **cooking** (= enjoy in general)	❒ I *like* **to cook** my meals. (= find it good or right)
dread – страшиться, бояться, опасаться	❒ I *dread* **having** to visit the dentist.	❒ I *dread* **to think** what may happen.
loathe – чувствовать отвращение, ненавидеть	❒ He *loathes* **travelling** by air. (in general)	❒ I *loathe* **to have** to put up here. (in particular)
hate – ненавидеть, не хотеть, испытывать неловкость	❒ She *hates* **getting** to the theatre late. (= strong dislike)	❒ I *hate* **to trouble** you. (= regret)
remember – помнить, напоминание (*"не забудь"*)	❒ I *remember* **posting** your letter. (= have a memory of the act)	❒ He *remembered* **to post** the letter. (= didn't forget to do it)

forget – забывать	❒ I *forgot* **calling** you the the day before. (about the past action)	❒ Don't *forget* **to call** me tomorrow. (the action occurs at the same time or *later*)
regret – сожалеть	❒ I *regret* **saying** (**having said**) that you were mistaken. (the action occured *earlier* in time)	❒ I *regret* **to say** that you were mistaken. (= I am sorry that I must *now* tell you...)
try – пытаться, стараться	❒ *Try* **knocking** at the back door if nobody hears you at the front door. (= do smth as an experiment)	❒ *Try* **to get** here early. (= make an effort)
prefer – предпочитать	❒ I *prefer* **walking** to **cycling**. (in general)	❒ I *prefer* **to wait** here. (in particular/now)
be afraid (of) – бояться	❒ I dont like dogs. I'm always *afraid of* **being bitten**. (= there is a possibility that smth bad will happen)	❒ He *was afraid* **to tell** his parents that he had broken the neighbour's window. (= don't want to do smth because it is dangerous or the result might be unpleasant).
	You are **afraid to do** smth because you are **afraid of smth happening** as a result. ❒ I was **afraid to stay** in the sun because I was **afraid of getting** burnt.	

* **Would like** is followed by the Infinitive. Notice the difference in meaning between **I like** and **I would like**. **I would like** is a polite way of saying **I want**.

❒ I **like** play**ing** tennis. (= I enjoy it in general)

❒ **I would like to play** tennis today. (= I want to play)

We can also use **I would love/prefer/hate** + Infinitive.

❒ **Would** you **prefer to have** dinner now or later?

❒ I'**d love to be able** to travel round the world.

II. There are some verbs which can be followed by the Gerund or "that-clause".

Verb	Gerund	"that-clause"
1. **admit** признавать	❒ He *admitted* **having** done wrong.	❒ He *admitted* (**that**) he had made the same mistake again.
2. **report** сообщать	❒ He *reported* **having seen** the escaped convict.	❒ It is *reported* **that** the expedition has already come back.
3. **deny** отрицать	❒ He *denied* **knowing** anything about the plan.	❒ I *denied* **(that)** the statement was true.
4. ***suggest*** предлагать	❒ I *suggest* **going** home.	❒ **I suggested** *that* he **should** see a specialist immediately.

5. **acknowledge** допускать, признавать	❒ He *acknowledged* **having been frightened**.	❒ He refused to *acknowledge* **that** he had been defeated.
6. **anticipate, foresee** ожидать, предвидеть	❒ We didn't *anticipate* **being treated** like that.	❒ The directors *anticipated* **that** demand would fall.
7. **fancy** нравиться, воображать, представлять себе	❒ She *didn't fancy* **going** out. (= like the idea)	❒ I *fancy* **that** he is in for a disappointment. (= get the idea)
8. **imagine** воображать	❒ I can't *imagine* **marrying** a girl of that sort. (= form a picture in the mind)	❒ Don't *imagine* **that** I can lend you money every time you need it. (= get the idea)

III. With a number of verbs and word-groups both the Gerund and the Infinitive can be used. There is no change in meaning. They can also be followed by a "that-clause".

1. **love** любить	❒ She loves **having/to have** a lot of dogs and young men around her.
2. **regret** сожалеть	❒ I **regret being unable** to help you. ❒ He **regretted to have** said that. ❒ I **regretted that** I couldn't help.
3. **intend** намереваться планировать	❒ What do you **intend doing/to do** today? ❒ We **intended that** they should do it. (= have in mind as a plan)
4. **forget** забывать	❒ I shall never **forget hearing** Chaliapin in that part. ❒ He has **forgotten to pay** me. ❒ Did you **forget that** I was coming?
5. **propose** предлагать	❒ I **propose starting** early/**to start** early/**that** we should **start** early.

EXERSICES

Ex. 15. (**A**) Your friend has some problems and you have to be helpful. Write questions with **try**.

Model: I can't find anywhere to live. (put an advertisement in the newspaper)
Have you tried putting an advertisement in the newspaper?

1. My electric shaver is not working. (change the batteries)
2. I can't contact Fred. He is not at home. (phone/at work)
3. I can't sleep at night. (take sleeping pills)
4. The television picture is not very good. (move the aerial)

Ex. 16. (**A**) Answer the questions using the Gerund or the Infinitive of the verbs in brackets.

Model: – Why do you never fly? (hate)
– I hate **flying**.

1. Why do you always wear a hat? (like)
2. Why does Ann watch TV so often? (enjoy)
3. Why do you never go to the cinema? (not/like)
4. Why does Jack take so many photographs? (like)
5. Why don't you work in the evening? (hate)

Ex. 17. (**A, B**) Put the verb into the correct form: **-ing** or **to** - Infinitive.

1. Do you mind (travel) such a long way to work every day?
2. Ann loves (cook) but she hates (wash) up.
3. I can't stand people (tell) me what to do when I'm driving.
4. I don't like that house. I would hate (live) there.
5. Do you like (drive)?
6. When I have to catch a train, I'm always worried about missing it. So I like (get) to the station in plenty of time.
7. I very much enjoy (listen) to classical music.
8. I would love (come) to your wedding but it just isn't possible.
9. Sometimes I'd like (learn) to play the guitar.

Ex. 18. (**A, B**) Read each situation and use the words in brackets to write your sentence.

Model: The streets are unsafe at night. (I/afraid/go out/alone)
I am afraid to go out alone.

1. I don't usually carry my passport with me. (I/afraid/lose/it)
2. The sea is very rough. (we/afraid/go/swimming)
3. We rushed to the station. (we/afraid/miss/our train)
4. I didn't tell Tom that I thought he behaved foolishly. (I/afraid/hurt/his feelings)
5. In the middle of the film there was a horrifying scene. (we/afraid/look)
6. The glasses were very full, so Ann carried them very carefully. (she/afraid/spill/the drinks)
7. I didn't like the look of the food in my plate. a) (I/afraid/eat/it); b) (I/afraid/make/myself/ill)

Ex. 19. (**B, C**) There are a few verbs which can take a Gerund or an Infinitive, but the meaning is not the same. Use Gerunds or Infinitives in place of the verbs in brackets.

I

1. We saw this film last month. Do you remember (see) it? 2. He was very forgetful. He never remembered (lock) the garage door when he put the car away. 3. Don't ask me to pay the bill again. I clearly remember (pay) it a month ago. 4. Did you remember (buy) bread for dinner? – Yes, I have the bread here. 5. Do you remember (post) the letter? – Yes, I remember quite clearly; I posted it in the letter-box near my gate. 6. Did you remember (air) the room? – No, I didn't. I'll go back and do it now. 7. She remembers part of her childhood quite clearly. She remembers (go) to school for the first time and (play) with Dick in the garden. 8. Did you remember (give) him the message? – No, I didn't. I'll go and do it now.

II

1. She forgot (bring) the sugar; she left it on the kitchen table. 2. Where is my dictionary? Have you forgotten (borrow) it a fortnight ago? 3. She often told her little boy, "You must never forget (say) "please" and "thank you"." 4. Why are you late again? Have you forgotten (promise) me that you would never be late again?

III

1. Do stop (talk); I am trying to finish a letter. 2. I didn't know how to get to your house so I stopped (ask) the way. 3. We stopped once (buy) petrol and then we stopped again (ask) someone the way.

Ex. 20. (B, C). Complete the sentences with the Gerund or the Infinitive of the verbs in brackets, using the correct form of any pronouns that are included.

1. If the Government's wages policy is to succeed, they must try (keep) prices in check.
2. The shareholders all think they know what should be done, but the board still needs (convince).
3. Let's invite him. I'm sure he would love (come).
4. Someone in the office had made a mistake, and the firm regretted (cause) the customer inconvenience.
5. We plan (take) our holidays abroad this year.
6. The teacher doesn't permit (smoke) during the lessons.
7. I vaguely remember (he, say) something like that.
8. Come over here! I'd like (you, see) this.
9. I always try (be) punctual, but I don't always succeed.
10. It's a tricky problem. I recommend (you, consult) an expert.
11. He'd prefer (you, go) to his place, if that's convenient.
12. For the second time this year Miss Black will attempt (swim) the Channel in less than five hours.
13. A child should start (learn) a language at primary school.
14. The film was so terrifying that she could hardly bear (watch) it.
15. The new committee member did not venture (speak) at his first meeting.
16. They began (drive) at six in the morning, and were still on the road ten hours later.
17. He remembered (pass) on most of the information, but omittted (mention) one or two of the most important facts.
18. The reporters asked many questions which the Prime Minister declined (answer).

1.4 THE GERUNDIAL CONSTRUCTION

In the examples discussed the subject of the main verb is also the subject of the Gerund, but there are cases when the Gerund is related to its own "subject", expressed by a noun or pronoun.

❒ We appreciate **your** helping us.
Мы (высоко) ценим вашу помощь (то, что вы помогли).

❒ We enjoyed **the band's** playing very much.
Нам очень понравилось то, как играл оркестр.

A gerundial construction is nearly always rendered in Russian by a clause, generally introduced by *"то, что"/"тем, что"/"как"*.

The nominal element of the construction can be expressed in different ways:

1. If it denotes a living being it may be expressed by a possessive pronoun or a noun in the possessive case.

❒ Do you mind **my** *smoking*?

❒ Our talk was prevented by **Richard's** *coming* back.

When the nominal element consists of two or more nouns, possessive case is not used.

❒ I object to **Mary and Jane** *going out* on such a windy day.

2. If the nominal element denotes a lifeless thing it is expressed by a noun in the common case.

❒ I said something about my **clock** *being* slow.

❒ Her thoughts were interrupted by **the door** *opening* gently.

Ex. 21. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

1. We appreciate John's helping us. 2. I can't imagine my mother approving it. 3. They resented my winning the prize. 4. I think that's enough to start her worrying. 5. I can't excuse her not answering our invitation. 6. I can't bear his interfering with what I do. 7. Would you mind my smoking? 8. Fancy her appearing at that very moment! 9. I really miss his playing the piano in the evening. 10. Excuse my asking, but does everyone in your family approve of your flying? 11. Your coming has done him good. 12. I wonder at Jolyon's allowing the engagement. 13. I understand perfectly your wanting to leave. 14. I didn't object to other people being there.

Ex. 22. (**A**) Match the parts of sentences in A and B columns.

1. We very much appreciate	a. my leaving till next day.
2. He strongly denied	b. their meeting that afternoon.
3. We enjoyed	c. her taking more responsibility.
4. The chairman suggested	d. the band's playing very much.
5. I agreed to delay	e. our postponing the question.
6. He should consider	f. your helping us.

1	2	3	4	5	6
f					

Ex. 23. (**A**) Study the sentences, paying special attention to the *italicized* pronouns and nouns followed by Gerunds.

1. I'm not very friendly with him, so I was surprised by *his* **asking** me to dinner. 2. The thieves broke into the shop without *anyone* **seeing** them. 3. He doesn't mind his *daughter* **going** to the cinema once a week. 4. It is difficult to stop *George* **talking** once he begins.

Ex. 24. (**B**) Write the following sentences again, using Gerunds.

Model 1: The children are making such a noise.
Can you stop *them making* such a noise?

Model 2: Students must write their corrections carefully. The teacher insists on ... .
The teacher insists on *the students' writing* their corrections carefully.

1. I told you that my watch was five minutes slow. Have you forgotten ...? 2. He allows his son to drive his car. He doesn't mind ... . 3. No one helped her with her homework. She did her homework without ... . 4. He got my letter although I had addressed it wrongly. He got my letter in spite of ... . 5. I beat him at tennis, and he wasn't pleased at all. He hated .... 6. Did you give me back the book I lent you? I can't remember ... . 7. She was afraid that the baby would fall out of the bed. She was afraid of ... . 8. The old lady said I could open the window. She didn't mind ... . 9. I'm sure he asked you not to phone after 11 p.m. Have you forgotten ... ? 10 He doesn't believe that a boy of twelve should have too much pocket-money. He doesn't believe in ... . 11. My father doesn't like me to stay out late at night. He doesn't like ... .

Ex. 25. (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English using gerundial phrases.

1. Я слышал о том, что он назначен директором большого завода. 2. Я не возражаю против того, чтобы они приехали сюда. 3. Я помню, что он мне говорил об этом несколько дней тому назад. 4. Я настаиваю на том, чтобы вы ответили им немедленно. 5. Я слышал о том, что его посылают на юг. 6. Вы можете рассчитывать на то, что он даст вам точную информацию. 7. Нет надежды, что он закончит свою работу к вечеру. 8. Извините, что я позвонил вам вчера так поздно. 9. Вы не возражаете против того, чтобы я прочел этот рассказ вслух? 10. Вы ничего не имеете против того, чтобы я курил здесь? 11. Мы настаивали на том, чтобы они начали переговоры немедленно. 12. Он возражает против того, чтобы собрание было назначено на понедельник. 13. Вы ничего не имеете против того, чтобы он зашел к вам сегодня? 14. Доктор настаивает на том, чтобы он провел осень на юге. 15. Он отвечает за то, чтобы работа была закончена вовремя.

1.5 THE GERUND AND THE VERBAL NOUN

The Gerund can be easily confused with the verbal noun. In some cases it is impossible to tell whether you are dealing with a gerund or with a verbal noun and consequently impossible to translate the sentence with any degree of exactness. The meaning is not the same.

I like **singing**	Я люблю *петь.* (if it is a gerund)
	Я люблю *пение.* (if it is a noun)

Only the person speaking knows in this case what he means. In most cases we can distinguish between the gerund and the verbal noun in the following way:

THE GERUND:

1. has tense and voice forms; so the forms *being done, having done, having been done* cannot be nouns;
2. can take a direct object; so an "-ing" form followed by a direct object *(reading a letter)* cannot be a noun;
3. can be modified by an adverb; so an "-ing" form modified by an adverb *(reading fast)* cannot be a noun;

4. can be part of an aspective verbal predicate; so "-ing" forms following the verbs *to begin, to stop, to go on, to keep, to continue* are mostly gerunds.

THE VERBAL NOUN:

1. can be used in the plural:
   ❒ Memorize the proverbs and **sayings.**
2. can have an article:
   ❒ **the banging** of the door;
3. can be followed by a prepositional phrase in an attributive function:
   ❒ the clicking **of the clock**;
4. can be modified by an adjective, a demonstrative pronoun or an indefinite pronoun.

EXERSICES

Ex. 26. (**A, B**) Find the sentences in which: a) **"-ing"** form is a gerund, b) a verbal noun.

1. You should think before *speaking*. 2. After *finding* the new word in the dictionary, I wrote it down and went on *reading*. 3. He spent much time on *the copying* of his literature lectures. 4. What do you mean by *saying* that? 5. The students found the *reading* of English newspapers rather difficult at first. 6. Instead of *going* home after school, the girls went for a walk. 7. Chalk is used for *writing* on the blackboard. 8. We sat by the river-side listening to the *running* of the water. 9. *The cleaning* of the room was done by the girls. 10. *Working* in the garden is very good for the health of people. 11. I stopped *knocking* at the door and began *waiting* for my father to come. 12. She praised herself for *having come*. 13. The child stopped *crying* and quieted down. 14. The old clock kept *ticking* on the mantelpiece, as if counting the seconds left before *the coming* of daylight.

Ex. 27. (**B, C**) Analyse the **"-ing"** forms in the sentences below. State which of them are gerunds and which verbal nouns. Motivate your decision.

1. She read the first act between a fitting and a rehearsal, made up her mind to play Kate and there was no persuading her that the part was too young for her. 2. The whirring and banging of the lift kept her awake most of the night. 3. She kept repeating the bright sayings of her children to bored friends and relations. 4. She insisted on my showing her the letter and explaining who Pat was. 5. On getting home she felt so faint and exhausted that she went to bed without taking off her make up and creaming her face. 6. On being told to her face that she was a liar and a schemer Polly felt like giggling and restrained herself with difficulty. 7. She broke the fastening of the purse in her hurry to get the papers out. 8. She looked with distaste at the toilet table. Dust, spilt powder and hair combings everywhere. 9. You have never learned the way of treating children kindly but without undue familiarity. 10. She promised to send me the cutting the moment she found it. 11. I could just see a faint glimmering of light in the distance. 12. For some time she said nothing and we could only hear the clicking of her false teeth – a certain sign of growing irritation. 13. On being asked what her plans were she gave a most evasive answer. 14. She lost this job through falling ill at the wrong time. 15. Her first big part was Catherine in "The Taming of the Shrew".

1.6 REVISION

Ex. 28. (**B, C**) Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. Your colleagues are good ... keeping a secret, aren't they? 2. You seem very fond ... saying things behind my back. 3. You seem upset ... losing Jones. 4. The man of letters is accustomed ... writing. 5. Mrs Attley was very skilful ... directing the table talk away from her daughter. 6. I don't say I'm proud ... cheating him out of 300 dollars. 7. I saw quite clearly the benefit I was capable ... getting from travel. 8. He is usually fairly careful ... making his statements. 9. I'm sick ... doing things for you. 10. But he was slow ... replying. 11. He is quite excited ... being among us again. 12. It was five minutes later than my usual bedtime and I felt guilty ... being still up. 13. She was quick ... finding out things. 14. Dolly seemed relieved ... not having to make a scene. 15. I tried to be as nice as possible ... refusing. 16. He selected a dingy little place where he felt sure ... not meeting any acquaintances.

Ex. 29. (**B, C**) Open the brackets using the gerund of the given verb.

I

1. The matter is not worth (to speak of). 2. On (to introduce) they easily fell to (to talk). 3. Why do you avoid (to see) me? He tried to avoid (to see). 4. We insist on (to send) him there at once. He insists on (to send) there instead of me. 5. Do you mind (to examine) the first? 6. He showed no sign of (to know) them. She showed no sign of (to impress). 7. I was annoyed at (to interrupt) every other moment. 8. In (to discuss) the problem they touched upon some very interesting items. 9. The equipment must go through a number of tests before (to install). 10. He hated (to remind) people of their duties or (to remind) of his. 11. The operator can set the machine in motion by (to push) the button or (to press) the pedal. 12. The water requires (to filter).

II

1. Excuse me for (to give) you so much trouble. 2. You never mentioned (to speak) to them on the subject. 3. He was proud of (to award) the prize. 4. I don't remember ever (to see) you. 5. I don't remember (to ask) this question. 6. The boys were punished for (to break) the window. 7. The boy was afraid of (to punish) and hid himself. 8. He was quite serious in (to say) that he was leaving the place for good. 9. She seemed sorry for (to be) rude to me. 10. He confessed (to forget) that he was to come on Friday. 11. The old man could not stand (to make) fun of. 12. Letters were no use: he had no talent for (to express) himself on paper. 13. After (to examine) thoroughly by the doctor, the young man was admitted to the sports club. 14. Soon she could not help (to attract) by the fact that she was being looked at. 15. The camera wanted (to adjust). 16. They accused me of (to mislead) them. 17. She was so eagerly looking forward to (to give) the leading part to play that she was greatly disappointed at not even (to offer) it.

Ex. 30. (**C**) Choose between the infinitive and the gerund as the object to an adjective in the following sentences:

I

1. Words have weight, sound and appearance; it is only by considering these that you can write a sentence that is good ... at and good ... to. (to look, to listen). 2. I was busy ... to figure out whether he had told me the truth. (to try) 3. His brother's emotion was not easy ... .

(to discern) 4. His proposition was worth ... . (to consider) 5. Everyone in this room is competent ... an opinion. (to express) 6. The picture is definitely worth ... . (to buy) 7. You see, a lot of us are prone ... it. (to forget) 8. The girl was very wise ... their advice. (to take) 9. He was busy ... on the new play. (to work) 10. I was fascinated ... the two of them together. (to watch)

II

1. It came as a shock to me ... that he had left his wife. (to realize) 2. I laughed. It made me feel good ... that someone else felt the same way about it as I did. (to know) 3. It didn't serve any purpose ... why Marion had decided to be friends with me. (to analyse) 4. No one has any influence over him when it comes to ... his actions. (to decide) 5. It is against the law in the country ... a revolver. (to carry) 6. When it came to ... you talk about the war, I felt like a child. (to hear) 7. It amazed me ... that Pat not only understood his arguments but shared them. (to feel) 8. Our hostess made it a point never ... wives with their husbands. (to ask)

Ex. 31. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

I

1. Я не хочу спорить. 2. Он продолжал курить, не говоря ни слова. 3. Я не видела смысла в том, чтобы продолжать этот разговор. 4. Бесполезно обсуждать этот вопрос. 5. Я была против поездки туда с самого начала. 6. План нуждается в доработке. 7. У нее не было надежды когда-нибудь поехать в Самарканд. 8. Одними разговорами результатов не получишь. 9. Теперь назад уже не повернуть. 10. Мы поблагодарили его за то, что он пришел нас встретить. 11. Она не пропускает ни одной возможности поговорить по-английски. 12. Научиться говорить на языке можно только, если много говорить. Только читать недостаточно. 13. Кто за то, чтобы пригласить ее?

II

1. Я возражаю против того, чтобы вы завершили это исследование. 2. Вы не будете против, если я открою дверь? 3. Недавно он бросил курить. 4. Я хорошо помню, что встретил его пять лет назад. 5. Попробуйте бегать по утрам (jog). Вы почувствуете себя намного лучше. 6. Я люблю читать. Чтение – мое самое любимое занятие. 7. Перестаньте разговаривать. Я совершенно не слышу лектора. 8. Мы остановились, чтобы рассмотреть витрину. 9. Я предложил поехать туда на машине, но мои друзья не согласились. 10. Как насчет того, чтобы пойти в кино? 11. Избегайте читать при плохом освещении! 12. Бессмысленно давать ему советы, он все равно не принимает их к сведению. 13. Машина очень грязная; ее необходимо вымыть. 14. Извините, что опоздал. 15. Я вовсе не намеревался сегодня идти в кино. 16. Ребенок шел очень осторожно: он боялся упасть. 17. Перед отъездом на юг не забудьте мне позвонить. 18. Почему вы пошли туда пешком вместо того, чтобы поехать на автобусе? 19. Все дети любят, чтобы их водили в цирк. 20. Он занят подготовкой к докладу, у него сейчас очень мало свободного времени.

Ex. 32. (**B, C**) Translate the following into English using infinitives or gerund forms as direct object:

1. Она стала плакать. (to begin) 2. Я хотел что-нибудь выяснить о нем. (to want) 3. Он совсем проснулся и был склонен почитать, но единственной книгой в комнате была библия. (to feel like) 4. Поль не нуждается в защите. (to need) 5. Он любил находиться

в обществе своих родственников. (to like) 6. Он непрерывно поглядывал на часы, и когда он выпил чай, он сказал, что должен возвращаться. (to keep) 7. Теперь я начинал понимать кое-что. (to begin) 8. Вскоре я перестал быть полезным им. (to cease) 9. Дэн не мог устоять и не показать своей работы. (to resist) 10. Даже в затемненной комнате я не мог не видеть, что лицо миссис Джоунз распухло от слез. (cannot help) 11. Все то январское утро в моем кабинете настойчиво звонил телефон. (to keep) 12. Я предложил найти доктора и привести его к Эду. (to propose) 13. Я не думаю, чтобы он упоминал о том, что навещал их. (to mention) 14. Они позабыли пригласить меня. (to forget) 15. Я никогда не забуду, как я гостил в вашем доме в Кенте. (to forget) 16. Я пытаюсь читать. (to try) 17. Мне не хотелось оставлять его одного в горе, и я предложил отвезти его к себе домой. (to want, to offer) 18. Я отложил письмо к нему на завтра. (to put off) 19. Я не мог вынести, чтобы со мной обращались так холодно. (to endure) 20. Она никогда не возражала против того, чтобы быть одной в коттедже. (to mind) 21. Я всерьез принялся писать короткие рассказы. (to set about) 22. Он был рад, что она потрудилась написать ему. (to take the trouble) 23. Ты помнишь, как ты доставлял виноградный сок в этот дом в то утро? (to remember) 24. Ты не забыл послать деньги в Лидс? (to remember) 25. Я решил не беспокоить Роджера этим делом. (to decide) 26. О, я думаю, вам понравится жить здесь, когда наступит лето. (to enjoy) 27. Он пробовал выращивать там картошку. (to try) 28. Я знал, что он старается накопить денег. (to try) 29. Мы не собираемся проситься пойти с вами. (to ask) 30. Я устал притворяться, что я пишу или читаю. (to pretend) 31. Мне не хотелось шутить. (to feel like) 32. Я отказываюсь принять ответственность за твои действия. (to refuse) 33. Он старался избежать встречи с кем-нибудь, кого он знал. (to avoid) 34. Несмотря на дождь мы продолжали ждать. (to go on) 35. В эти дни он не мог позволить себе опаздывать. (cannot afford) 36. Хью прочитал в одной американской газете рецензию на эту книгу и предложил купить ее для их библиотеки. (to suggest) 37. Когда я вернулся в дом, я не забыл открыть окно. (to remember) 38. Я помню, что как-то говорил тебе об этом, Льюис. (to remember) 39. Возможно, что Молли пожалела, что она так много болтала. (to regret) 40. Она все больше и больше страшилась остаться одной с детьми. (to dread) 41. Остальные, без суеты, согласились принять участие. (to agree) 42. Ее друзья обещали прислать ей работу. (to promise) 43. Она села у камина и приготовилась рассказывать свои новости. (to prepare) 44. Смиты все уладили, чтобы взять на себя заботу о детях. (to arrange) 45. Он продолжал упорно звонить в гостиницу, спрашивая, нет ли для него каких-либо сообщений. (to keep) 46. Вы хотите взглянуть на него? (to care) 47. Он не позаботился о том, чтобы ответить. (to trouble) 48. Утром он начал переезжать в комнату внизу. (to start) 49. Жильцы этого дома предпочитали не интересоваться чужими делами. (to prefer)

(From "An English Grammar Practice Book")

1.7 TESTS

I

1. Когда я прибыл, он был занят стрижкой (mow) газона.
2. Доктор настаивает на том, чтобы он провел лето на юге.
3. Нет никакой возможности найти его адрес.
4. Я помню, что меня уже спрашивали об этом.
5. Он вошел в комнату, не постучав.
6. Вы не возражаете, если я буду курить здесь?

7. Не забудь позвонить мне, когда приедешь в город.
8. Я терпеть не могу одалживать вещи у своих подруг.
9. Я не могла не рассмеяться.
10. Я отложил отправку письма. Надо проверить все эти факты.

II

1. Его коллекцию марок стоит посмотреть.
2. Я имею удовольствие представить вам этого известного писателя.
3. Я не могу перевести это письмо, не посмотрев несколько слов в словаре.
4. Я не люблю, когда меня провожают на вокзал.
5. Он не мог не попытаться объяснить, как это произошло.
6. Она продолжала умываться, хотя видела, что я сержусь.
7. Бесполезно звонить ему, он в это время никогда не бывает дома.
8. Простите, что я опять напоминаю об этом.
9. Он попытался найти предлог (pretext), чтобы уйти пораньше.
10. Вы должны упаковать эти пластинки, чтобы отправить их почтой.

III

1. Шторм помешал пароходу прибыть в порт вовремя.
2. Нет никакой надежды скоро получить от них известие.
3. Я слышал, что ваш сын получил приз за лучший рассказ.
4. Он очень любил спать на воздухе.
5. Я люблю ремонтировать свою машину самостоятельно.
6. Мы с нетерпением ждем вашего приезда.
7. Перед подписанием контракта я посоветовался с юристом.
8. Он отрицал, что видел этого человека.
9. Я бросил делать зарядку по утрам.
10. Сон на открытом воздухе очень полезен.

IV

1. Вы ничего не имеете против, чтобы он зашел к нам сегодня?
2. Она простудилась, так как не привыкла спать в палатке.
3. Полиция обвинила его в поджоге (set fire to) здания.
4. Я надеюсь, вы извините мое опоздание.
5. Моя работа предусматривает встречи и переговоры с людьми.
6. У меня нет причин ненавидеть этого человека.
7. После сдачи экзаменов я поехал к своим родителям.
8. Когда вы закончите одеваться? Ведь мы можем опоздать.
9. Переходить реку в этом месте опасно.
10. Прежде чем писать об этих событиях, он решил съездить в те места, где они происходили.

V

1. Мой друг настоял на том, чтобы оплатить счет.
2. Я помню, что говорил об этом несколько дней назад.
3. Я пытался вспомнить, где я встречал этого человека.
4. Какова цель вашего приезда сюда?
5. Я не люблю, когда мне читают вслух.
6. Он вышел из зала, не дожидаясь окончания спектакля.

7. Не полагайтесь на то, что достанете билеты перед отправлением поезда, закажите их заранее.
8. Его опыт вождения машины пригодится ему в будущем.
9. Секретарь сейчас занята перепечаткой писем.
10. Спорить с ним – только понапрасну терять время.

VI

1. Нет смысла делать перерыв. Работы очень мало.
2. Он настаивал на том, чтобы товары были упакованы в ящики (case).
3. Он не выносит, когда ему лгут.
4. Он начал с рассказа о том, как нашел нас.
5. Он никак не мог привыкнуть к мысли, что ему придется остаться там еще на полгода.
6. Забудьте об этом, не стоит из-за этого так огорчаться.
7. Она не возражает, чтобы вы присутствовали на ее уроке.
8. Он никогда не упоминал, что встречался с вами в Лондоне.
9. Оставалось очень мало надежды найти его.
10. Дождь прекратился?

2. THE INFINITIVE

2.1 FORMS. TENSE/VOICE DISTINCTIONS

In modern English the Infinitive has the following forms:

	Active	Passive
Indefinite	to write	be written
Continuous	to be writing	–
Perfect	to have written	to have been written
Perfect Continuous	to have been writing	–

Negative form: **not + Infinitive**

❒ She asked me **not to forget** to post the letter.

Like the tense distinctions of all verbals those of the infinitive are also relative. It means that **the Indefinite and Continuous Infinitive** express an action simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb. **The Continuous Infinitive** shows an action in progress:

❒ **I am** glad **to meet** you. Рад *познакомиться* с вами.
❒ **I was** glad **to see** Mr Paul. Я был рад *видеть* мистера Пола.
❒ Mr Forsyte **will** be glad **to see** you. Мистер Форсайт будет рад *видеть* вас.
❒ He pretended **to be sleeping**. Он притворился, что спит.
❒ I'm glad **to have met him**. Я рад, что встретил его.

The Perfect Infinitive denotes an action prior to that of the finite verb. It is often used after some expressions ***(to be + adjective)***: *to be glad, to be happy, to be sorry, to be surprised, it is clever/kind/silly of you,* etc.

❒ I was sorry **to have said** it. Я сожалел, что сказал это (раньше).
❒ He must **have forgotten** about it. Он, должно быть, забыл об этом.

NB! Only two forms of the Infinitive (the Indefinite Active and Passive **to ask/to be asked**) have corresponding forms in Russian. There are no corresponding forms for the Continuous, Perfect and Perfect Continuous Infinitive, hence they can be translated only in a sentence.
The Infinitive of transitive verbs has special forms for **the Active and Passive Voice**.
❒ It is wonderful **to love** and **to be loved**. Прекрасно **любить** и **быть любимым**.

2.2 THE USE OF THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT THE PARTICLE *"TO"* (The Bare Infinitive)

In modern English the Infinitive is chiefly used with the particle *to* – the formal sign of the Infinitive. Still there are cases when the bare infinitive is used.

1. After auxiliary verbs:
❒ I **don't** *know* her.
❒ We **shall** *go* there at once.

2. After modal verbs:
❒ You **can't** *do* it.
❒ You **must** *consult* the doctor.

3. After the verbs of sense perception (*to see, to hear, to feel, to watch, to notice*, etc.) in the Infinitive Constructions:
❒ I've never *seen* you **look** so well.
❒ She *heard* him **enter** the room.
❒ I *felt* my heart **jump**.

NB! After these verbs in the Passive the *to*-infinitive is used:
❒ He *was heard* **to mention** your name.
❒ The child *was made* **to obey**.
❒ She *was seen* **to leave** the house early in the morning.

4. After the verb *to let*:
❒ *Let's* **be** friends.
❒ If he calls, *let* me **know**.

5. After the verbs *to make* (= to force – заставлять), *need* (нужно) and *dare* (сметь, осмелиться) (in the modal meaning):
❒ *Need* I **do** the washing up?
❒ How *dare* you **call** me a liar?
❒ What *makes* you **think** so?

6. After the expressions *had better* (... лучше бы), *would rather/sooner* (... бы, пожалуй), *cannot but* (не могу не ...), etc.:
❒ He said he *would rather* **stay** at home.
❒ You *had better* **go** there at once.
❒ I *can't but* **think** about it.

7. In the sentences beginning with *why (not)* (почему бы вам ...).
❒ *Why not* **come** and **talk** to her yourself?
❒ *Why* **pay** more at other shops?

8. After formal words *than, rather than, but, except:*
- ❒ I'll do anything *but* **work** with children.
- ❒ *Rather than* **walk** for half an hour, I'll take a taxi.

2.3 THE FUNCTIONS OF THE INFINITIVE IN THE SENTENCE

The Infinitive can be used in different syntactic functions. We'll discuss here only the most difficult ones for the Russian speakers.

1. The Infinitive as a subject. In Russian it can be rendered by an infinitive, a noun, a clause.	❒ **To walk** in the garden was very pleasant. *Гулять* в саду было очень приятно. ❒ Even **to think** of it gave him torture. Даже *мысль* об этом причиняла ему страдание. ❒ **To be recognized** gave her great joy. *Когда ее узнавали*, она испытывала большую радость.
Far more often such sentences open with an introductory subject **it** (not translated in Russian).	❒ It is useless **to discuss** this question. *Бесполезно* обсуждать этот вопрос.
2. The Infinitive as an adverbial modifier of purpose (*чтобы ...*). In this function the Infinitive can be introduced by *in order* or *so as* (formal).	❒ **To understand** the rule better I read it several times. *Чтобы лучше понять* правило, я прочел его несколько раз. ❒ I stayed there **to see** what would happen. Я остался там, *чтобы посмотреть*, что произойдет. ❒ I invited him **in order to tell** him the news. ❒ I'll write down your telephone number **so as not to forget** it.

COMPARE:

A subject	**An adverbial modifier of purpose**
The Infinitive + Predicate	**The Infinitive + Subject + Predicate**
❒ **To read** a lot is to know much. Много *читать* – много знать.	❒ **To read** the book I went to the library. *Чтобы прочесть* эту книгу, я отправился в библиотеку.

3. An adverbial modifier of result with *too* (слишком) and *enough* (достаточно)	❒ He was **too busy to see** anyone. ❒ She was **clever enough to admit** it.
4. The Infinitive as an attribute	❒ I had no *time* **to visit** the museum yet. У меня еще не было *времени осмотреть* этот музей.

In this function it is far more extensive in English than in Russian: in Russian it modifies only abstract nouns, whereas in English it modifies abstract and class nouns, pronouns, ordinal numbers and the adjective *last*. It is rendered in Russian by an infinitive (after abstract nouns), by a subordinate clause, by a finite verb (after ordinal numbers and *last*).	❒ She was not *a woman* **to suffer** in silence. Она была не такой *женщиной, которая стала бы страдать молча.* ❒ He was *the first/last* **to come.** Он *пришел первым (последним).* ❒ I have *nobody* **to say** a kind word to me. У меня нет *никого, кто сказал бы* мне доброе слово.
The Infinitive used as an attribute often has a modal meaning or implies a future action.	❒ I've got a wife and a child **to look after.** У меня жена и ребенок, о которых я *должен* заботиться. ❒ The question will be discussed at the conference shortly **to open** in Moscow. Вопрос будет обсужден на конференции, которая *вскоре откроется* в Москве.
Remember the model: **a noun + infinitive**	❒ He gave her a knife **to cut** the bread **with.** Он дал ей нож, чтобы нарезать хлеб. ❒ Give me some water **to drink.** Дайте мне попить воды. ❒ He brought us a book **to read.** Он принес нам почитать книгу.
5. The Infinitive as parenthesis: *to cut a long story short; to put it mildly; to say the least; to tell the truth;* etc.	❒ He was rude, **to say the least** of it. Он был груб, *чтобы не сказать больше.* ❒ **To put it mildly**, he was not very clever. *Мягко выражаясь*, он не был очень умен.

NOTES:

1. The passive infinitive is seldom used in the attributive function. That is why we say "it is a book **to read**" and **not** "to be read".

Exceptions: There is *nothing* **to be done** and *nothing* **to do**; there is *something* **to be seen**, **to be said** and *something* **to see, to say.**

2. The attributive infinitive besides naming an action may express a meaning corresponding to the Russian *надо, можно, следует:*

❒ It's the only thing **to do.**
Это единственное, что можно и нужно сделать.

❒ He is not the man **to do** it.
Он не тот, кто мог бы это сделать.

❒ It's a book **to read** and **remember.**
Такую книгу надо прочесть и запомнить.

3. The attributive passive infinitive may have a future meaning:

❒ The houses **to be built** here will be of the same type.
Дома, которые должны быть/будут построены здесь, будут иметь такую же конструкцию.

MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING EXPRESSIONS:

Ему трудно угодить.	–	He is **hard to please**.
У нее привлекательная внешность.	–	She is **pleasant to look** at.
Мне надо вам кое-что сказать.	–	I have **something to tell** you.
Этим ничего не достигнешь.	–	There is **nothing to be gained** by it.
Ничего не поделаешь.	–	There is **nothing to be done**.
Надо многое сделать.	–	There is **much to be done**.
Дом сдается внаем.	–	The **house is to let**.
Кто виноват?	–	Who **is to blame**?
Непременно приходите.	–	Be **sure to come**.
Единственное, что остается – это ждать.	–	There is **nothing** left **to do** but wait.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) State the form and function of the Infinitive. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. To go on with this discussion is to waste time. 2. Oh, I'm sorry to have taken so much of your time. 3. It all sounds too good to be true. 4. We assembled to discuss and arrange our plans. 5. Now, the first thing to settle is what to take with us. 6. He was the first to raise the question. 7. A celebration such as this was a chance not to be missed. 8. Look back to make sure you haven't left anything behind. 9. She was the last to realize how dangerous it was. 10. You're a bachelor with no family to take care of. 11. I didn't come here to be shouted at. 12. He came here to speak to me, not to you. 13. To meet the demands for goods, new shops have been opened in the town. 14. The plan will be discussed at the meeting to be held on May 25.

Ex. 2. (**C**) Translate the sentences into Russian and state the functions of the Infinitive.

1. Surely it is not at all necessary to go into details. 2. I rose to receive my guests. 3. Passing by a radio-shop he suddenly remembered to buy some tape for his recorder. 4. At the sight of the man I felt an impulse to laugh. 5. Her first action was to visit the establishment of a famous dressmaker. 6. He was too astonished to speak. 7. The best thing Lanny could do was to get out of here. 8. He was careful not to allude to the subject. 9. It's an awkward thing to say. 10. The horse was quiet to ride. 11. He must have been very tired to come and fall asleep like that. 12. And suddenly he hated Crum. Who the devil was Crum, to say that?

Ex. 3. (**C**). Translate, giving the Russian equivalents of the Infinitive as an attribute.

1. The desire to write was stirring in Martin once more. 2. He had a good deal to say about India. 3. The relief from that long waiting, the feeling of nothing to worry about, was so delicious. 4. The first person to enter was Mrs Evans, her face white, her dark frightened eyes avoiding his. 5. He looked at the shelves of books to be read. 6. He received a note to

say that he was expected at the family dinner. 7. Andrew was the third to go in for the interview. 8. You have health and much to live for.

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Replace the group of words in bold type by an infinitive.

Model: She was the first lady **who left.**
She was the first (lady) *to leave.*

1. The manager was the last **who left** the shop. 2. I was astonished **when I heard** that he had left his native town. 3. There was no place **where he could sit**. 4. I can't go to the party; I have nothing **that I can wear**. 5. He was the first man **who swam** the Channel. 6. He was the only one **who realized** the danger.

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Combine each of the following parts of sentences into one sentence using an infinitive.

Model: They sent me to University, they wanted me to study law.
They sent me to University *to study law.*

1. I am buying bread. I want to feed the bird. 2. He opened the door. He intended to go out. 3. He rushed into the burning house. He wanted to save the child. 4. He rang the bell. He wanted to tell us that the dinner was ready. 5. The farmer shot the rifle. He wanted to frighten the birds. 6. He sent his children to his sister's house. He wanted them to watch the television programme. 7. I am saving up. I want to buy a car. 8. I keep my hens in a field surrounded by wire netting. I want to protect them against the foxes.

Ex. 6. (**A, B**) Combine each of the following pairs of sentences into one sentence using "enough" with the Infinitive.

Model: He is clever. He can answer the question.
He is clever *enough to answer the question.*

1. He wasn't strong. He couldn't support the man. 2. It isn't very hot. We can't lie in the sun. 3. The coffee isn't strong. It won't keep us awake. 4. I am quite old. I could be your father. 5. You aren't very old. You can't understand these things. 6. He was very curious. He opened the letter. 7. You are quite thin. You can wear this dress.

Ex. 7. (**A, B**) Combine each of the following pairs of sentences into one sentence using "too" with the Infinitive.

Model: He is very ill. He can't work today.
He is *too ill to work* today.

1. It is very hot. We can't run. 2. I am rather old. I can't wear this dress. 3. He was nervous. He couldn't speak. 4. I was terrified. I couldn't move. 5. It is very cold. We can't have a swim. 6. He was very snobbish. He wouldn't talk to any of us. 7. It was very dark. We couldn't go out into the garden. 8. It was rather cloudy. We couldn't see the eclipse properly.

Ex. 8. (**A, B**) Combine each of the following pairs of sentences into one sentence using "so as/in order" with the Infinitive.

Model: He took off his boots. He didn't want to make any noise.
He took off his boots so as/in order not to make any noise.

1. He was playing very softly. He didn't want to disturb anyone. 2. I sent him out of the room. I wanted to discuss his progress with his headmaster. 3. I am learning Greek. I wish to read Homer. 4. He sent his children to their aunt's house. He wanted to have some peace. 5. He read only for short periods each day. He didn't want to strain his eyes. 6. They got up very early. They wanted to get to the top of the hill before sunrise. 7. We must keep our gloves on. We don't want to get frostbitten.

Ex. 9. (**A, B**) Use the correct form of the Infinitive in brackets.

1. I hope (to see) you soon. 2. We expect (to be) back in two days. 3. He expected (to help) by his friends. 4. I am glad (to do) all the homework yesterday. 5. I am sorry (to break) my pen. 6. I hate (to bother) you, but the students are still waiting (to give) books for their work. 7. He seized every opportunity (to appear) in public: he was so anxious (to talk) about... 8. Is there anything else (to tell) her? I believe she deserves (to know) the state of her sick brother. 9. He began writing books not because he wanted (to earn) a living. 10. The woman pretended (to read) and (not to hear) the bell. 11. Perhaps it would upset her (to tell) the truth of the matter. 12. The only sound (to hear) was the snoring of grandfather in the bedroom.

Ex. 10. Use the appropriate form of the Infinitive.

I. (**A, B**)
1. He made me (to do) it all over again. 2. He made her (to repeat) the message. 3. Would you like me (to go) now? 4. They won't let us (to leave) the Customs till our luggage has been examined. 5. He wouldn't let my baby (to play) with his gold watch. 6. Please let me (to know) your decision as soon as possible. 7. He made us (to wait) for hours. 8. I let him (to go) early as he wanted to meet his wife. 9. I'd like him (to go) to a university but I can't make him (to go). 10. He tried to make me (to believe) that he was my stepbrother. 11. Before he let us (to go) he made us (to promise) not to tell anybody what we had seen. 12. I advised him (to ask) the bus-conductor to tell him where to get off. 13. That is too heavy for one person (to carry); let me (to help) you. 14. The teacher advised us (to use) dictionaries. 15. Her father doesn't allow her (to go) to the cinema alone. 16. Who told the nurse (to give) the sick man this medicine? 17. The old man doesn't like his grandchildren (to make) a lot of noise when they are playing. 18. The gardener won't let the children (to pick) the flowers.

II. (**B, C**)
1. I hate (to bother) you, but the man is still waiting (to give) a definite answer. 2. He hated (to bother) with trifling matters when he had many more important questions (to decide). 3. She would never miss a chance (to show) her efficiency, she was so anxious (to like) and (to praise). 4. The idea was too complicated (to express) in just one paragraph. 5. Is there anything else (to tell) him? I believe he deserves (to know) how the matter stands and (to tell) all about it. 6. He took to writing not (to earn) a living but a name. All he wanted was (to read) and not (to forget). 7. How fortunate he is (to travel) all over the world and (to see) so much of it. 8. The girl pretended (to read) a book and not (to notice) me. 9. It seems (to rain) ever since we came here. 10. It is so thoughtful of you (to book) the tickets well in advance. 11. Perhaps it would bother him (to speak) about the quarrel. 12. The only sound (to hear) was the ticking of the grandfather clock downstairs. 13. The third key remained (to test). 14. She was probably angry (to reprimand) in front of me. 15. She sat there trying to pretend she did not want (to dance) and was quite pleased (to sit) there and (to watch) the fun. 16. She was sorry (to be) out when I called and promised (to wait) for me downstairs

after the office hours. 17. She said she would love (to come) and was simply delighted (to ask) for a date. 18. I offered (to carry) her case but she was afraid (to let) it out of her hand. 19. Let's go and see the place. You will be sorry later (to miss) it.

Ex. 11. (**C**) Insert the Infinitive in the appropriate form and translate the sentences into Russian.

1. Mr Abbot was the first ... the silence. (to break). 2. The next patient ... was a nice girl in her early 'teens. (to examine). 3. Honesty is the first principle ... when working with us. (to observe). 4. He complained that he was always the last ... . (to inform). 5. I am the last man ... a question of the kind. (to ask). 6. They were among the last ... . (to arrive). 7. He found that he was the only one ... the discrepancy. (to notice). 8. If there is to be a vacancy I would like to be the one ... the job. (to offer). 9. These houses were among the few ... after a great fire. (to survive). 10. Who was the youngest chess player ... the title of All-Union Champion? (to win). 11. The Shakespeare Memorial Theatre players were the second British company ... the Soviet Union. (to visit). 12. The Nuremberg trial was the biggest international trial ... ever ... . (to hold).

Ex. 12. Insert *to* where necessary.

I. (**A**)
1. I like ... play the piano. 2. My brother can ... write poems. 3. We had ... put on our overcoats because it was cold. 4. They wanted ... cross the river. 5. It is high time for you ... go to bed. 6. May I ... use your telephone? 7. They heard the girl ... cry out with joy. 8. I would rather ... stay at home today. 9. He did not want ... play in the yard anymore. 10. Would you like ... go to England? 11. You look tired. You had better ... go home. 12. I wanted ... speak to Nick, but could not ... find his telephone number. 13. It is time ... get up. 14. Let me ... help you with your homework. 15. I was planning ... do a lot of things yesterday. 16. I'd like ... speak to you. 17. I think I shall be able ... solve this problem. 18. What makes you ... think you are right? 19. I shall ... do all I can ... help you. 20. I like ... dance. 21. I'd like ... dance. 22. She made me ... repeat my words several times. 23. She did not let her mother ... go away. 24. Do you like ... listen to good music? 25. That funny scene made me ... laugh.

II. (**B, C**)
1. The boy helped us ... find the way to the railway station. 2. He would sooner ... die than ... betray his friends. 3. Why not ... start out now? We cannot wait for the rain ... stop. 4. You'll be better tomorrow. You may ... come and ... dine with us. 5. Don't let us ... get worried. There are a hundred things ... be done. 6. We had better ... make haste. 7. You ought not ... speak to the Dean like that. 8. What made you ... think so? 9. "Thanks," Andrew answered, "I'd rather ... see the cases myself." 10. He was made ... obey the rules. 11. I thought I would rather ... get to the gallery alone, but I was obliged ... accept his company. 12. ... have gone through what you have gone through is the lot of very few. 13. Get them ... come as early as possible. 14. There is hardly anything ... do but ... work out an alternative plan.

Ex. 13. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences into Russian. Pay special attention to the use of the Infinitive.

1. To crown it all, there was a story full ten years old now of his treatment of his wife. 2. To meet the increased demand for industrial goods, a factory has been opened in the town this year. 3. It was awfully cold, to be sure. 4. She had broken a precious china and, to make the

things still worse, she never told anyone about it. 5. To make a long story short, the company broke up and returned home in bad temper. 6. To put it crudely, whatever is man's manner of life, such is his manner of thought. 7. She had become one of those London girls to whom rest, not to say pleasure, is unknown. 8. To claim damages was not a pleasant thing to do.

Ex. 14. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Мягко выражаясь, она была невежлива. 2. Сказать по правде, я не люблю бокс. 3. Начнем с того, что я занят. 4. Короче говоря, он не сдал экзамен. 5. Мы все были рады, не говоря уже о маме: она сказала, что это самый счастливый день в ее жизни. 6. Это очень странно, по меньшей мере. 7. Для начала она открыла все окна. 8. По правде говоря, я очень устал. 9. Мягко выражаясь, вы меня удивили. 10. Короче говоря, они поженились. 11. Самая известная книга Джерома – "Трое в лодке, не считая собаки." 12. По меньшей мере, мы были удивлены.

Ex. 15. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences into English using the models.

Model 1. **to do** smth is (was, will be) *necessary (a mistake)*
❒ **To tell** her the truth now is not at all necessary.
(would be a mistake means to ruin her chances)

1. Знать грамматику – значит писать без ошибок. 2. Подумать так было просто смешно. 3. Сказать "да" было невозможно, сказать "нет" было бы невежливо. 4. Объяснить ему, что это такое, было делом трудным. 5. Помогать ей – значит делать все самой. 6. Рассердиться было бы глупо.

Model 2. It is important **to do/be done/be doing** smth
❒ *It is necessary* **to explain** everything to her.
❒ *It was strange* **to meet** him here of all places.

1. Трудно переводить этот текст без словаря. 2. Очень было приятно поговорить с вами. 3. Очень важно, чтобы нас не заметили. 4. Трудно будет объяснить вам это. 5. Приятно быть опять в Москве. 6. Так странно, когда с тобой так разговаривают. 7. Было очень трудно делать вид, что ты все понимаешь. 8. Правда, хорошо сидеть здесь и пить кофе? 9. Ошибаться легко, гораздо труднее понять свою ошибку. 10. Вовсе не нужно все это учить наизусть.

Ex. 16. (**A, B**) Complete the following sentences by adding the Infinitive to each sentence.

Model: 1. Her dream was – *to become an actress.*
2. What I wanted was – *not to be misunderstood.*

1. The general idea was – . 2. His hobby is – . 3. The first thing you must do is – . 4. The last thing I meant was – . 5. The main thing is – . 6. The only thing to do was – . 7. Your only chance is – . 8. Your job will be – . 9. My only wish is – . 10. What I want is – .

Ex. 17. (**A. B**) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Главное – это закончить эксперимент вовремя. 2. Вашей работой будет уход за больными. 3. Моим единственным желанием было добраться до дома. 4. Его хобби – коллекционирование марок. 5. Единственный шанс не опоздать на поезд – это взять такси. 6. Единственный выход из положения – это сейчас же все рассказать.

Ex. 18. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences using the models.

Model 1: The first (last) **to do** smth
❒ She was *the first* **to see** the danger.
❒ He was *the second* **to cross** the finish line.
Model 2: smth/smb (nobody) **to do** smth
❒ Have you *anything* else **to say**?
❒ There was *nobody* there **to show** him the way out.
Model 3: the man (time) **to do** smth
❒ He is just *the man* **to do** it.
❒ It is not *the right time* **to discuss** this subject.

1. Не такой это был человек, чтобы предать друга. 2. Ему больше нечего было сказать. 3. Думать было некогда. 4. Кто последним выходил из дома? 5. Я теперь не помню, кто первый это сказал. 6. Дайте мне время подумать. 7. Это свитер, который можно носить с брюками или широкой (full) юбкой. 8. У меня нет времени играть с тобой. 9. У ребенка нет никого, кто мог бы о ней позаботиться. 10. Вы третий человек, который мне это сегодня говорит.

Ex. 19. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences using the model.

Model: do smth *(in order/so as)* **to get** smth
❒ I have come here **to speak** to you.
❒ She pretended to be quite well *not* **to be taken** to the doctor.

1. Он бежал всю дорогу, чтобы успеть (catch) на поезд. 2. Он принес в класс карту, чтобы показать нам маршрут экспедиции. 3. Они всю ночь жгли костер, чтобы их заметили проходящие мимо (pass by) суда. 4. Мальчики стояли во дворе и не уходили, чтобы их тоже взяли с собой. 5. Я еще раз прочел письмо, чтобы лучше его понять. 6. Я все это говорю, чтобы меня правильно поняли. 7. Она ничего не рассказала, чтобы ее не наказали (punish).

Ex. 20. (**A, B**) Complete the following sentences using the model. Give several variants where possible.

Model: (**too**) young (**enough**) **to do** smth
❒ You are **too young to wear** black.
❒ She's **old enough to be taken** for his mother.

1. Who of us is brave enough – ? 2. The weather is much too fine – . 3. You are old enough – . 4. She's too young and pretty – . 5. The story is much too long – . 6. The problem is too complicated – . 7. The trouble is too deep-rooted – . 8. She's just not clever enough – . 9. She was by far too clever – . 10. Do you know him well enough – ? 11. I was going too fast – . 12. She spoke English well enough – .

Ex. 21. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

I

1. Я не настолько хорошо себя чувствую, чтобы встать с постели. 2. Она достаточно хорошо говорит по-английски, чтобы не нуждаться в переводчике. 3. Рано читать тебе такие книги. (Ты слишком молод). 4. Я стоял слишком далеко, чтобы слышать, что она говорит. 5. Слишком она молода, чтобы принимать ее всерьез. 6. Вопрос слишком сложен,

чтобы на него сразу ответить. 7. Слишком он ленив. Не читал он книги в подлиннике. 8. Задача слишком сложна, чтобы ее уже решили. 9. Ты теперь слишком большая, чтобы играть в куклы.

II

Model: She *is nice* **to work** with.
His story *was hard* **to prove**.

1. С ним трудно разговаривать. 2. С ним приятно иметь дело (deal with). 3. Его рассказу трудно поверить. 4. Птицу было очень трудно поймать. 5. С вами сегодня легко разговаривать. 6. Эту книгу невозможно достать. 7. С ним опасно ссориться. 8. Результаты невозможно проверить. 9. Этому легко поверить. 10. Ее нелегко было остановить. 11. На нее приятно было смотреть.

Ex. 22. Translate into English. Mind the syntactical functions of the Infinitive.

I. (A, B)

1. Этому трудно поверить. 2. Он достаточно хорошо знает грамматику, чтобы не делать таких ошибок. 3. Вопрос слишком сложен, чтобы его сразу решить. 4. Я принес книгу, чтобы показать вам эту фотографию. 5. Слишком жарко, чтобы идти гулять. 6. Он говорит о новом здании школы, которое будет построено в их селе. 7. У меня нет времени читать такие книги. 8. Ну, я рад, что сдал этот экзамен. 9. Правило легко понять. 10. Необходимо пойти туда сегодня. 11. Кошку нелегко было поймать.

II. (B, C)

1. Он требовал, чтобы ему предоставили возможность доказать это. 2. Она попросила, чтобы ей разрешили осмотреть новый цех (workshop). 3. Я прошу, чтобы меня выслушали. 4. Он сказал, чтобы ничего никому не давали без его разрешения. 5. Мы потребовали, чтобы нам дали выслушать всех очевидцев (witnesses). 6. Они попросили рассказать им о случившемся. 7. Я попросил разрешения остановиться (stay with) у них на несколько дней. 8. Почему вы не потребовали, чтобы вам дали копию документа? 9. Он попросил, чтобы ему дали прочесть это письмо.

2.3.1 REVISION

Ex. 23. (A, B) Complete the following using the Infinitive.

1. It gives me pleasure ... . 2. It will take you ten minutes ... . 3. It is wise of him ... . 4. It does people a lot of good ... . 5. It won't do you any harm ... . 6. It was natural ... . 7. It has become his habit ... . 8. It surprised me ... . 9. It would never do ... . 10. It must be very nice ... . 11. It made me feel awkward ... .

Ex. 24. (A, B) Complete the following, using the Infinitive, take the Infinitive phrases from the list below:

to forget the past, to be humming a tune, to say such a thing to a child, to have gone out on that rainy day, to know the map well

1. ... means to be able to show any country or town on it. 2. ... would have been the death of me. 3. ... is a usual thing for her. 4. ... would be ridiculous. 5. ... was impossible.

Ex. 25. (**A, B**) Complete the following sentences.

I

1. Our plan was ... . 2. To act like this meant ... . 3. The first thing he did was ... . 4. The main problem is ... . 5. Our next step must be ... . 6. What I want is ... . 7. Our only chance to see him is ... . 8. To ask him a straight question means ... . 9. The children were anxious ... . 10. We were not afraid ... . 11. I pretended not ... . 12. They have not decided whether ... or not. 13. The boys agreed never ... . 14. Do you care ... ? 15. I was very careful not ... . 16. I wish we had not forgotten ... . 17. They thought ... . 18. He proposed ... . 19. When did you learn ... ? 20. I'll try to remember ... . 21. The tourists were lucky ... . 22. The father promised ... . 23. They offer ... . 24. He attempted ... . 25. We are sorry ... . 26. The boy asked ... .

II

Use the Infinitive as an attribute; take the Infinitive phrases from the following list: *to remember, not to be contradicted, to be desired, to speak (to/about), to do, to be done, to follow, to worry about, to be erected, to read, to laugh at, to be answered, to answer.*

1. This is just the man ... . 2. Packing was the first thing ... . 3. Here are some instructions ... . 4. The monument ... on this square will add beauty to the place. 5. The book leaves much ... . 6. There was nothing ... . 7. These are the letters ... . 8. His was the tone ... . 9. Have you got anything ... ? 10. She will always find something ... .

Ex. 26. (**B**) Use the appropriate form of the Infinitive in brackets.

1. I am glad (to introduce) to you. 2. The box was (to handle) with care. You should (to ask) someone (to help) you. This might not (to happen). 3. Her mood seems (to change) for the worse. We had better not (to speak) to her now. 4. I am sorry (to disappoint) you but I did not mean anything of the kind. 5. He is happy (to award) the first Landscape Prize for his picture. 6. He was anxious (to take) the first place in the figure-skating competition. 7. The poem can easily (to memorize). 8. This poem is easy (to memorize). 9. I did not expect (to ask) this question. 10. There were so many things (to do), so many experiments (to try). 11. The teacher expected him (to give) a better answer at the examination. 12. They are supposed (to experiment) in this field for about a year and are believed (to achieve) good results. 13. He must (to read) something funny; he is smiling all the time.

Ex. 27. (**A, B**) Translate into English, using the appropriate form of the Infinitive.

I

1. Я рад, что дал вам эту книгу. 2. Я рад, что мне дали эту книгу. 3. Мы хотим проинформировать вас об этом. 4. Мы хотим, чтобы нас проинформировали об этом. 5. Мы рады, что встретили его на станции. 6. Мы рады, что нас встретили на станции. 7. Они очень довольны, что их пригласили на конференцию. 8. Они очень довольны, что пригласили вас на конференцию. 9. Я не думал (mean) прерывать ее. 10. Я не предполагал, что меня прервут. 11. Мне неловко, что я причинил вам столько беспокойства. 12. Он будет счастлив повидаться с вами.

II

1. Он был счастлив, что повидался с вами. 2. Он, казалось, подыскивал слова, чтобы точнее выразить мысль. 3. Как ему повезло, что он побывал в такой интересной

поездке. 4. Он терпеть не может, когда над ним шутят. 5. Дети любят, когда им рассказывают сказки. 6. Мы притворились, что не заметили его ошибки. 7. Я рад, что рассказал вам эту историю. 8. Я рад, что мне рассказали эту историю. 9. Я хочу познакомить вас с этой артисткой. 10. Я хочу, чтобы меня познакомили с этой артисткой. 11. Он будет счастлив посетить эту знаменитую картинную галерею. 12. Он был счастлив, что посетил эту знаменитую картинную галерею. 13. Я рада, что дала вам нужные сведения.

Ex. 28. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English using:

I. the Infinitive as a subject.
1. Пить из этого источника в жаркий день – одно удовольствие. 2. Сказать ему правду означало лишить его последней надежды. 3. Не предупредить его об этом было бы нечестно. 4. Нам понадобилось немало времени на то, чтобы убедить его, что он неправ. 5. Побывать в Крыму и не видеть моря было очень обидно. 6. Вздремнуть в своем кресле после обеда было его давнишней привычкой. 7. Неплохо бы поехать за город завтра.

II. the Infinitive as a predicative.
1. Наш план заключался в том, чтобы закончить работы к началу мая. 2. Все, что ей удалось сделать, – это узнать номер их телефона. 3. Пользоваться телефоном – значит экономить время. 4. Единственное, что ему хотелось, – это поскорее добраться домой. 5. Первое, что необходимо сделать, – это посоветоваться с врачом.

III. the Infinitive as an object.
1. Они решили больше никогда об этом не упоминать. 2. Мне было досадно, что я забыл поблагодарить его. 3. Где вы научились так хорошо говорить по-английски? 4. Я постараюсь не забыть послать им телеграмму. 5. Клайд был рад познакомиться с друзьями Сандры. 6. Клайд был счастлив, что ему дали новую работу. 7. Клайд очень не любил, когда ему напоминали о бедности его родителей. 8. Мы не боялись попасть под дождь: у нас были плащи. 9. Я притворился, будто не заметил его смущения, и продолжал говорить.

IV. the Infinitive as an attribute.
1. Она всегда найдет, над чем посмеяться. 2. Не о чем было беспокоиться. Больной чувствовал себя лучше. 3. Пьеса оставляет желать лучшего. 4. Вот статья, которую надо прочитать. 5. Пятиэтажный дом, который должен быть построен на углу улицы, предназначен для рабочих нашего завода. 6. План нашей работы будет обсуждаться на заседании, которое состоится завтра. 7. Ему нечего было сказать. 8. Он тяжелый человек; с ним трудно иметь дело. 9. Кто вторым пришел к финишу? 10. Есть ли в доме кто-нибудь, кто мог бы присмотреть за больным? 11. Вот человек, с которым можно поговорить на эту тему.

V. the Infinitive as an adverbial modifier of purpose.
1. Я встал в 6 часов, чтобы не опоздать на утренний поезд. 2. Я написал ему письмо, чтобы напомнить ему о его обещании. 3. Ребенок выбежал навстречу матери. 4. Вы приехали для участия в конференции? 5. Все было сделано для того, чтобы спасти его. 6. Он вызвал машину, чтобы отвезти нас на станцию.

Ex. 29. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Он спокойный и сдержанный человек. С ним легко иметь дело. 2. Врач остался еще на один час, чтобы убедиться, что жизнь ребенка вне опасности. 3. Я старался много работать, чтобы не думать о том, что случилось. 4. Дети были слишком возбуждены, чтобы вести себя спокойно. 5. Ей нелегко угодить. 6. Он первый открыл это удивительное место для отдыха. 7. Первое, что надо было сделать после приезда, это забронировать комнату в гостинице. 8. Я вам сказал всю правду. Мне нечего скрывать от вас. 9. У меня достаточно времени, чтобы зайти к друзьям. 10. Поздно спорить об этом. Уже ничего нельзя изменить. 11. Нам повезло, что мы застали его дома. 12. Ей есть чем гордиться. 13. Они уехали последними. 14. Интересно, кто первый обратил наше внимание на эту ошибку. 15. Она сказала, что ей не к кому обратиться за помощью. 16. Единственное, что нужно сделать, это позвонить ему.

2.4 THE INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

The Infinitive may have a subject of its own within the sentences. In this case it forms with it a construction called a complex.

2.4.1 THE COMPLEX OBJECT

The Complex Object (**the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction**) consists of a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case and the Infinitive. It is mostly translated into Russian by an object clause.

Subject + Predicate + Noun (Pronoun) + Infinitive

❒ I want **Mother (her) to help** me.
Я хочу, *чтобы мама (она) помогла* мне.

❒ They expect **the steamer to leave** tonight.
Они ожидают, *что пароход отойдет* сегодня вечером.

The Complex Object is used after the verbs:

1. **of mental activity:** *to know, to think, to consider, to believe, to find* (считать, полагать), *to expect, to suppose* (предполагать), *to imagine, to feel, to trust, to mean,* etc. After these verbs the verb *to be* is generally used. (It can be omitted after the verbs *to consider, to find, to declare).* The use of this construction after most verbs of mental activity is more characteristic of literary style.	❒ I *knew* **them to be** right. Я знал, *что они правы.* ❒ We *expect* **them to arrive** soon. Мы ожидаем, *что они скоро приедут.* ❒ I *find* **him (to be)** a very clever man. Я нахожу, что он очень умный человек. ❒ I don't *consider* **him (to be)** an honest man. Я не считаю, что он честный человек.
2. **of declaring:** *to pronounce, to declare, to report, to teach.*	❒ The doctor *pronounced* **the wound** to be a slight one. Врач сказал, *что рана легкая.*

3. denoting **wish and intention:** *to want, to wish, to desire, to mean, to intend/to choose* (= want).	❒ He *intended* **me to go** with him to India. Он хотел, чтобы я поехала с ним в Индию. ❒ I *want* **you to stop** worrying. Я хочу, чтобы ты прекратил волноваться.
4. denoting **feeling and emotion:** *to like, to dislike, to hate*	❒ Tell me what you *would like* **me to do**. Скажи, что бы ты хотела, чтобы я сделал.
5. denoting **order and permission:** *to order, to allow, to suffer* (неохотно разрешать, позволить скрепя сердце), *to ask (for), to command, to encourage, to forbid,* etc. In most cases after these verbs the Passive Infinitive is used.	❒ The captain *ordered* **the cases to be loaded.** Капитан приказал погрузить ящики. ❒ He *asked for* **the letter to be sent off** at once. Он просил, *чтобы письмо было отправлено* немедленно (*отослать письмо* немедленно). ❒ She *asked* **to be shown** the photo. Она попросила показать ей фотографию. ❒ Mr Domby *suffered* **his daughter to play** with Paul. Мистер Домби неохотно разрешил своей дочери играть с Полем.
6. denoting **sense perception**: *to hear, to see, to watch, to feel, to observe,* etc. After such verbs the bare infinitive (without "to") is used. After these verbs only the Indefinite Infinitive Active is used. If the meaning is passive we use Participle II. If the process is expressed Participle I Indefinite Active is used.	❒ I *saw* **Brown enter** the room. Я видел, как Браун вошел в комнату. ❒ I *felt* the **blood rush** into my cheeks. Я почувствовал, как кровь прилила к моим щекам. ❒ I *saw* **the fire slowly conquered.** Я видел, как пожар постепенно потушили. ❒ He *saw* **Fleur coming.** Он видел, как Флер подходила к нам.

COMPARE:

Verb + Infinitive	**Verb + Participle I**
I *saw* him **enter** the shop. (I saw the whole action – he opened the door, went in and disappeard.)	I *saw* him **entering** the shop. (This action was in progress when I saw him).

NOTES:

1. The verbs *to see* and *to hear* are followed by a clause (not by the Infinitive Construction) when they are not really verbs of sense perception, i.e. when the verb *to see* means "to understand" and the verb *to hear* – "to learn, to be told":

❒ I *saw* **that she didn't realize** the danger.
Я видел (понимал), что она не осознает опасности.
❒ I *heard* **that he had left** for the south.
Я слышал (мне сказали), что он уехал на юг.

2. After the verbs *to see* and *to notice* the Complex Object is not used with the verb *to be*, a clause is used in that case:
❒ I *saw* **that he was pale**.
Я видел, что он побледнел.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences, paying special attention to the use of the Complex Object.

1. Seeing her enter the room he rose to greet her. 2. Did you feel the bridge shake? 3. I don't like you to say such things. 4. Put on a thicker coat, I don't want you to catch cold. 5. We knew him to be very brave. 6. Nobody said anything, we just watched him put it away in his case. 7. You could have heard a pin drop. 8. She wouldn't explain, just urged me to use my own eyes. 9. Well, tell him to see us tomorrow morning, will you? 10. After lunch he begged me to accompany him home. 11. By the way, did she ask you to sign any papers yesterday? 12. Her visit agitated the patient so much that the doctor advised her not to come again. 13. There is no harm, I think, in letting you know. 14. I understood you to say that you had received no letter from your brother since he left England.

Ex. 2. (**A, B**) Fill in the blanks with the particle "to" where necessary.

1. This is the place from which I saw John ... arrive to the house. 2. I tried to induce him ... see a doctor. 3. The family suspected it and wanted to get him ... see a lawyer. 4. He asked her ... destroy his letters. 5. I told her ... bring in the tea. 6. Women always want you ... write them letters. 7. I'd love you ... see my little daughter. 8. You can't make me ... say what you want me ... say. 9. She begged me to let her ... know when Mother would be back. 10. I had expected him ... be disappointed. 11. Don't let it ... trouble you. 12. She watched me ... open the safe.

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Replace the following complex sentences or groups of sentences by simple sentences with the Infinitive Construction.

Model: I looked out of the window. He crossed the street.
I *saw him cross the street*.

1. I shall stay at home and do my lessons. Mother said so. 2. I never smoke indoors. My wife doesn't like it. 3. He's an honest boy. I know it. 4. We don't eat ice-cream before dinner because Mother has forbidden it. 5. You got off the train at Saltmarsh city. The porter saw you. 6. He ordered that tea should be brought at once. 7. No one had expected that she would marry the man. 8. I could hear it perfectly well. They were discussing me. 9. Don't shout so! The whole house will know what has happened. Do you want it?

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Practise the following according to the model.

Model: A. Do you want to make a speech?
B. No, I want *you to make a speech.*

Do you want to ...:
1. speak first? 2. introduce the speakers? 3. attend the conference? 4. give a talk? 5. make the arrangements? 6. fix a date? 7. organize the reception? 8. buy souvenirs? 9. take photographs?

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs. Give several variants where possible.

1. Why don't you ... her to wear high heels? 2. The way she looks at me ... me blush. 3. Do you ... me to show you the place on the map? 4. No one had ... her to return so early. 5. I have never ... her look so sweet. 6. Who ... you to miss lectures? 7. She ... the children to be well behaved. 8. You can't ... him come if he doesn't want to.

Ex. 6. (**B, C**) Replace the words in *italics* by an object + infinitive construction.

Model: Members of the Government itself acknowledge *that many of their predictions* were over-optimistic.
Members of the Government itself acknowledge *many of their predictions to have been* over-optimistic.

1. The Court declared *that the book was* obscene (непристойный).
2. Teachers have found *that the overhead projector* is invaluable as a teaching aid.
3. The majority of critics thought *that the film was* highly original.
4. Many of the audience considered *that the speaker had overstated* his case.
5. Evidence showed *that the man's alibi was* a complete fabrication.
6. The architect's clients had assumed *that the construction of such a building was* impracticable, whereas the architect himself *believed that it was* perfectly feasible (осуществимый).
7. At a very early age, Paderewski revealed *that he was* a master of the keyboard.
8. Everyone knew *that he was* a man of integrity.
9. Detectives investigating the robbery discovered *that 20,000 worth of precious stones were* missing.
10. Although most people once thought *that it was* impossible, several climbers have now scaled the north face of the Eiger in winter.

Ex. 7. (**B, C**) Rewrite the sentences in reported speech, using a noun + infinitive construction with the verbs suggested in brackets.

Model: "Make your way to Waterloo Station, and wait under the main clock," the letter said. (direct)
The letter directed me *to make my way* to Waterloo Station and *wait* under the main clock.

1. "You are to appear before the magistrate at 10 a.m. on Thursday," the letter said. (summon)
2. "Do not bathe when the red flag is flying," the notice said. (warn)
3. His wife left him a note saying "Don't forget to lock the door." (remind)
4. "Passengers should check in at the airport thirty minutes before take-off," stated a notice at the air terminal. (instruct)
5. "I do hope you'll have another drink before you go," said my old friend. (press)
6. "Pay attention to what you're doing," said the teacher. (tell)
7. "Please don't tell my husband," she said to her friend. (implore)
8. "State your views openly – if you dare," the speaker said to his opponent. (challenge)

9. "Would you like to join me for dinner?" I said to the new member. (invite)
10. "I would take a more optimistic view of the matter, if I were you," my friend told me. (encourage)

Ex. 8. Translate the sentences using the phrases:
let smb do smth – позволить; пусть (они)...; дайте (мне)...;
make smb do smth – заставить;
have smb do smth – распорядиться, чтобы ...

I

1. Мама не позволяет мне играть в футбол. 2. Не заставляйте меня лгать. 3. Распорядитесь, чтобы кто-нибудь принес мел. 4. Не позволяй им так кричать. 5. Заставь его выпить лекарство. 6. Пусть они напишут диктант еще раз. 7. Я не могу заставить его бросить курить. 8. Он посторонился, чтобы дать ей пройти. 9. Не смешите меня. 10. Позвольте мне помочь вам. 11. Дайте мне подумать. 12. Распорядитесь, чтобы дети надели плащи. 13. Дайте мне знать, когда она придет. 14. Я велела ему объяснить, что это значит. 15. Не позволяйте ему есть столько конфет.

II

1. Дай мне знать, когда все выяснится. 2. Надеюсь, я не заставил вас долго ждать. 3. Пусть он курит здесь. 4. Что заставило его сделать этот шаг? 5. Отпустите его. 6. Мы заставили его сдержать обещание. 7. Не давай ей носить тяжелые вещи. 8. Мы не могли понять, что заставило его солгать нам. 9. Разрешите мне зайти к вам сегодня вечером. 10. Мы заставили его прекратить этот глупый спор. 11. Он заставил нас сделать работу снова. 12. Не разрешайте детям играть на улице (на открытом воздухе). Сегодня очень холодно и ветрено. 13. Он сказал, что ничто не заставит его изменить свое решение. 14. Не позволяй ей читать лежа (в постели).

Ex. 9. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English using the models whenever possible.

Model 1: see (hear) smb **do** smth
❒ I heard somebody call me.
Model 2: want (expect) smb **to do** smth
❒ I want you to repeat the sentence.

I

1. Мы слышали, как они спорили. 2. Она видела, как мальчик поднимался по лестнице. 3. Никто не заметил, как я открыл дверь и вышел. 4. Я видел, как какой-то человек показывал ей дорогу на станцию. 5. Я никогда не слышала, чтобы он говорил неправду. 6. После захода солнца мы почувствовали, как температура воздуха начала быстро падать. 7. Когда я садился в поезд, я вдруг почувствовал, как кто-то коснулся моего плеча. 8. Мы наблюдали, как ремонтировали дорогу. 9. Я слышал, как кто-то окликнул меня. 10. Он заметил, как она побледнела.

II

1. Я видел, что ему не хочется идти домой. 2. Она слышала, что профессор болен уже неделю. 3. Она слышала, как кто-то упомянул мое имя в разговоре. 4. Мы чувствовали, что он нам не верит. 5. Вы слышали, что он бросил занятия музыкой? 6.

Я увидел, что все смотрят наверх. 7. Мы чувствовали, что он не заметил нас. 9. Она видела, что он ее не понимает.

III

1. Я считаю, что это был смелый шаг (move). 2. Я хочу, чтобы вы поближе узнали друг друга. 3. Мы не ожидали, что он примет такое решение. 4. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы он поехал с нами на озеро. 5. Она не ожидала, что ее сын будет изучать архитектуру. 6. Дама попросила носильщика отнести её вещи к такси. 7. Он хочет, чтобы его секретарь договорился о встрече. 8. Мы не предполагали, что он приедет так рано. 9. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы вы сообщили нам о своем решении. 10. Мы считаем его большим специалистом в этой области. 11. Мы не ожидали, что обсуждение будет таким интересным.

Ex. 10. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

I

1. Они хотят, чтобы мы послали им телеграмму. 2. Я хотел бы, чтобы вы подождали меня здесь. 3. Он хочет, чтобы его дочь стала архитектором. 4. Она хочет, чтобы ее пригласили на вечер. 5. Хотите ли вы, чтобы я позвонил вам? 6. Я хочу, чтобы его статья была опубликована. 7. Мы не хотим, чтобы нас прерывали. 8. Доктор не хочет, чтобы я принимал это лекарство. 9. Он хочет, чтобы его послали в Петербург на конференцию. 10. Мы хотим, чтобы вы объяснили нам свое поведение. 11. Где вы хотите, чтобы я подождал вас? 12. Хотели бы вы, чтобы мы пригласили Джона сюда? 13. Я бы хотел, чтобы вы узнали время отправления поезда. 14. Я хочу, чтобы вы пошли сегодня в театр. 15. Хочет ли он, чтобы мы были здесь в шесть часов? 16. Я не хочу, чтобы меня посылали туда. 17. Никто не хочет, чтобы собрание откладывали. 18. Я хочу, чтобы вы написали эту статью. 19. Я хочу, чтобы мне показали эти журналы. 20. Она любит, чтобы обед был вовремя. 21. Она не любит, чтобы дети гуляли одни. 22. Он не любит, когда ему задают много вопросов. 23. Она любит, когда дети приходят к ней. 24. Он любит, чтобы ему делали комплименты.

II

1. Я знаю, что он очень опытный врач. 2. Мы ожидаем, что договор будет подписан в ближайшем будущем. 3. Я ожидаю, что меня пригласят туда. 4. Я считаю, что я прав. 5. Я считаю, что он прав. 6. Они не ожидали, что их пригласят туда. 7. Я знал, что он в Москве. 8. Я полагаю, что он очень честный человек. 9. Когда вы ожидаете, что эти товары прибудут? 10. Я считаю, что он скромный человек. 11. Никто не ожидал, что это случится.

REVISION

Ex. 11. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English using the Complex Object wherever possible.

1. Я никогда не слышал, как он поет. 2. Он не слышал, как я открыл дверь. 3. Я слышал, что он сдал все экзамены. 4. Я слышала, что он уже уехал на север. 5. Я слышал, как она сказала это. 6. Я никогда не видел, как он танцует, но я слышал, что он танцует очень хорошо. 7. Я видел, что она не понимает меня. 8. Она видела, что

он вошел в сад, и вышла чтобы встретить его. 9. Я увидела, что он взволнован, и спросила его, в чем дело. 10. Я увидел, что текст очень трудный, и опасался, что не смогу перевести его. 11. Я видел, что такси остановилось у двери. 12. Я видел, как она вышла из дома. 13. Я почувствовал, что кто-то дотронулся до моей руки. 14. Я увидел, что в коробке ничего не было. 15. Я увидел, что стекло разбито. 16. Вы слышали, как он спросил меня об этом? 17. Я бы хотел посмотреть (увидеть), как она танцует. 18. Никто не слышал, как он сказал это. 19. Я слышал, как профессор упомянул об этих фактах в своей лекции.

Ex. 12. (**B, C**) Translate the following sentences.

1. Я хотел бы, чтобы вы объяснили мне эту задачу. 2. Что вы хотите, чтобы я сделал для вас? 3. Вы слышали когда-нибудь, как он говорит по-французски? 4. Я слышал, что он переехал в Москву. 5. Они не видели, как я взял кольцо. 6. Никто не ожидал, что они уедут так скоро. 7. Я знаю, что он честный человек. 8. Я увидел, что письмо не было подписано. 9. Хочет ли он, чтобы мы помогли ему? 10. Вы слышали, как он выступал (говорил) вчера на собрании? 11. Я видела, как она подошла к окну и открыла его. 12. Я считаю, что он лучший инженер на нашем заводе. 13. Он не хочет, чтобы его дочь ехала в Кострому. 14. Я не хотел, чтобы его пригласили на вечер. 15. Я думаю, что сегодня вечером вы услышите, как она поет. 16. Она чувствовала, как дрожит ее голос. 17. Я не ожидал, что меня пошлют в Лондон. 18. Я не люблю, когда мне напоминают несколько раз об одном и том же. 19. Мой сын просил повести его в зоопарк. 20. Я слышал, как его имя было упомянуто директором.

2.4.2 THE COMPLEX SUBJECT
(the Nominative-with-the-Infinitive)

The Complex Subject consists of **a noun/pronoun** (in the nominative case) and **the Infinitive**. It is considered to be the subject of the sentence, its Russian equivalent is in most cases a subordinate clause.

❒ **Laser** *is known* **to be used** in medicine.
Известно, **что лазер широко используется** в медицине.

The Complex Subject is used with:

1. the following groups of verbs in the Passive:	
• denoting sense perception: *to see, to hear, to notice*, etc.	❒ **The car** was seen *to disappear* in the distance. *Видели,* как машина скрылась вдали. ❒ **She** *was heard* **to laugh** heartily. *Слышно было*, как она весело смеялась.
• denoting mental activity: *to think, to consider, to believe, to expect, to suppose, to know,* etc.	❒ **He** *was thought* **to be** honest and kind. Его *считали* честным и добрым человеком. (Считали, что он...) ❒ **He** *is considered* **to have been** one of the most popular writers of his time. *Считается,* что он был одним из самых популярных писателей своего времени.

◆ the verbs: *to say, to report* (сообщать), *to order, to ask, to allow, to state* (заявлять), *to announce* (объявлять).	❒ **She** *is said* **to be working** at the factory. *Говорят,* что она сейчас работает на заводе. ❒ **The delegation** *is reported* **to have left** Moscow. *Сообщается*, что делегация уже покинула Москву.
2. word groups: *to be likely* (вероятно), *to be unlikely* (маловероятно, вряд ли), *to be certain/to be sure* (несомненно, обязательно, бесспорно, непременно).	❒ **He** *is unlikely* **to know** her address. *Маловероятно* (*вряд ли*), что он знает ее адрес. ❒ **He** *is sure* **to be asked** about it. Его *наверняка* об этом спросят.
3. pairs of synonyms: *to seem/to appear* (казаться, по-видимому), *to prove/to turn out* (оказываться), *to happen/to chance* (случаться).	❒ **They** *seem* **to have quite forgotten** us already. Они, *кажется*, совершенно нас забыли. ❒ The first **experiment** *proved* **to be** a success. Первый опыт *оказался* удачным. ❒ Only yesterday **we** *happened* **to meet** the man. Только вчера мы *случайно* встретили этого человека.
Negative forms: **don't** *seem* **doesn't** *prove* + *infinitive* **didn't** *happen*	❒ He **doesn't seem to know** this subject. Он, кажется, не знает этого предмета. ❒ He **didn't prove to be** a very experienced engineer. Он оказался не очень опытным инженером. ❒ He **didn't happen to be** there at that time. Случилось так, что его не было там в это время.
is/are **not** *likely* + *infinitive*	❒ He **is not likely to come** today. Он, вероятно, не придет сегодня.

NOTES:

1. The Infinitive in the Complex Subject is used in all its forms and expresses:

a) a simultaneous action

❒ He *is said* **to live** in London.
Говорят, что он *живет* в Лондоне.

b) an action in progress

❒ The water *seems* **to be boiling**.
Кажется, вода *кипит.*

c) an action prior to the action expressed by the finite verb

❒ They *are reported* **to have finished** the construction.
Сообщают, что они *уже закончили* строительство.

2. The Infinitive in sentences with the Complex Subject cannot refer to the future except with the verbs and word-groups: *to expect, to be sure/certain, to be likely.*

❒ We **are sure** to come to the heart of the matter.
Мы обязательно *доберемся* до сути дела.

❒ He **is expected** to give us an answer tomorrow.
Ожидают, что он *даст* нам ответ завтра.

3. If the verbs *to prove, to seem/to appear* (выглядеть, производить впечатление) are followed by adjectives or nouns, the verb *to be* after them can be omitted.

❒ She **proved** (to be) very **clever.**
Она казалась очень умной.

❒ He **seems** ill.
Он выглядит больным.

❒ He **appears an experienced** teacher.
Он производит впечатление опытного преподавателя.

COMPARE:

❒ He **seems** ill.
Он *выглядит* больным.

❒ He **seems to be** ill.
Он, *кажется*, болен.

4. After the verbs in the Passive Voice the Complex Subject is more characteristic of a literary than a colloquial style, except with the verbs *to suppose, to expect, to make.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

1. The river is supposed to flow in this direction. 2. His childhood is said to have been very difficult. 3. You are expected to know these things. 4. He didn't seem to know you. 5. The situation seems to have become difficult. 6. He is said to have owned a very good library. 7. He was told to have organized the whole business. 8. The man doesn't seem to recognize you. 9. She seems to have done it especially for you. 10. You're not supposed to mark other people's books. 11. The actress is said to be very beautiful. 12. She was said to have a wonderful collection of china. 13. This doesn't seem to be the right decision. 14. The man seems to be a stranger here. 15. She seems to be used to the thought that they'll have to move to another flat. 16. It seems to be an interesting comparison.

Ex. 2. Open the brackets, using the correct form of the Infinitive.

I. (**A, B**)
1. He seems (to read) since morning. 2. She seems (to work) at his problem since she came here. 3. He appears (to know) French well. He is said (to spend) his youth in Paris. 4. The enemy was reported (to overthrow) the defence and (to advance) towards the city. 5. You seem (to look) for trouble. 6. They seemed (to quarrel). I could hear their angry voices. 7. They are supposed (to work) at the problem for the last two months. 8. Her ring was believed (to lose) until she happened (to find) it while cleaning the house. 9. They seemed (to wait) for ages.

II. (**B**)
1. She smiled broadly and waved her hand. She seemed (to recognize) me. 2. Even if he is out, you needn't worry. He is sure (to leave) the key under the door-mat. 3. At that time I happened (to work) at my first novel. 4. You won't be likely (to miss) the train if you start right away. 5. Don't cry! Everything is bound (to get) right between you. 6. She lost her head and seemed (to forget) the little English she knew. 7. A young woman is supposed (to write) this

book. 8. You needn't mention it again. He is not likely (to forget) it. 9. He is believed (to teach) by his father. 10. You needn't tell me this. I happened (to give) all the details by Mother. 11. She is expected (to operate) on today. 12. Just look at his hands. He is sure (to work) in the garage.

III. (**B, C**)
1. He seems (to be satisfied) with the results. 2. It seemed it would take not less than a page (to put) it into words. 3. The book is likely (to publish) and (to appear) on sale pretty soon. It is sure (to sell) well and (to sell) out in no time. 4. The man appears (to know) practically all European languages; he is said (to learn) them while travelling. 5. The river was reported (to overflow) the banks and (to advance) towards the suburbs of the city. 6. You seem (to look) for trouble. 7. The committee is said (to revise) the programme and (to work out) a plan of its realization. 8. The man seemed (to study) me and I felt uneasy in his presence. 9. The book was believed (to lose) until the librarian happened (to find) it during the inventory. 10. The strength of the metal proved (to over-estimate) by the designer. The engineer claimed (to warn) against its use for the purpose as it was likely (to deform) under great load. 11. We seem (to fly) over the sea for quite a time and there is yet no land (to see). 12. We don't seem (to acquaint), at least I can't remember having ever met him.

Ex. 3. (**A**) Practise the following according to the models.

Model 1: A. He doesn't usually play chess.
B. Well, he *seems* **to be playing** chess today.
He doesn't usually ...
1. do the shopping. 2. wait for his wife. 3. bring his wife flowers. 4. collect the children from school. 5. help his wife. 6. talk to his mother-in-law. 7. quarrel with his neighbours. 8. play with the children. 9. walk to work. 10. carry his wife's parcels.

Model 2: (A group of tourists visits an old palace, they ask their guide questions about its owner. The guide doesn't seem to be sure about the details.)
A. Did he live here? (most of his life)
B. Yes, he seems to have lived here most of his life.
Yes, he is said to have lived here most of his life.
Yes, he is supposed to have lived here most of his life.
1. Did he build any other houses? (several) 2. Did he employ a large staff? (huge) 3. Did he hunt? (when he was a young man) 4. Did he keep race-horses? (all his life) 5. Did they win races? (quite a lot of) 6. Did he sell his other houses? (two of them) 7. Did he quarrel with neighbours? (some of them) 8. Did he leave the country? (after the second duel) 9. Did he die abroad? (in Paris)

Ex. 4. (**B**) Paraphrase the following sentences using the Complex Subject.

Model 1: It seemed that he knew the subject well.
He **seemed to know** the subject well.
1. It happened that they met that very day. 2. It proved that there were some broken cups in the case. 3. It seems that the play has made a deep impression on him. 4. It proved that he was a very experienced worker. 5. It appears that the house was built in the 18th century. 6. It happened that there was a doctor there at that time. 7. It appears that there

are different opinions on this subject. 8. It happened that he was at home at that time. 9. It seems that there is a great difference between these two samples.

Model 2: It is reported that the delegation has left London.
The delegation **is reported to have left** London.

1. It is known that he has a large collection of pictures. 2. It may be said that the new theatre is the most beautiful building in the town. 3. It was reported that the ship had arrived in Odessa. 4. It can't be considered that the results of the experiment are bad. 5. It is expected that many people will attend the meeting. 6. It is believed that there is hope of reaching an agreement. 7. It is said that the expedition has reached Vladivostok. 8. It is considered that this mine is the best in the district. 9. It can be expected that the weather will improve soon. 10. It can't be expected that the Petersburg football team will win. 11. It is said that there are many difficulties in solving this problem.

Ex. 5. (**B**) Translate the words in brackets.

1. He is thought (был) a very good singer. 2. They are expected (пошлют) a reply today. 3. They are said (переехали) to a new flat. 4. Who is supposed (подпишет) the letter? 5. The doctor is supposed (прописал) you something. 6. The results of the experiment are believed (были) very good. 7. The new instrument is expected (поможет) scientists solve many important problems. 8. The members of the committee are understood (пришли) to an agreement. 9. He is said (предложил) them his services. 10. In the 19th century the dark areas on the Mars were thought (были) seas. 11. We were supposed (проведем) the day on board the ship. 12. The seamen were not supposed (сойдут) ashore that day. 13. The expedition is said (сделала) a very important discovery. 14. They were expected (пройдут) 300 miles that day. 15. She is known (интересовалась) in the subject. 16. They were heard (согласились) to do it. 17. The ship is expected (прибудет) here on Tuesday. 18. They are supposed (преследовали) him. 19. They were believed (знали) the secret all the time.

Ex. 6. (**B, C**) Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Видели, как она писала письмо. 2. Думали, что это она пишет эти письма. 3. Предполагали, что она написала это письмо. 4. Наверняка она и сейчас пишет письмо. 5. Конечно, она написала это письмо. 6. Вряд ли она пишет эти письма. 7. Вряд ли она написала письмо. 8. Конечно, письмо уже написано. 9. Конечно, она его уже написала. 10. Оказалось, что она написала стихотворение. 11. Случайно она написала хорошее стихотворение.

Ex. 7. (**B, C**) Translate the following sentences.

I

1. Он, кажется, сердится на меня. 2. Он, кажется, болен. 3. Он, кажется, болел. 4. Они, по-видимому, пользовались этим словарем. 5. Он, кажется, знает ее хорошо. 6. Они, по-видимому, очень хорошо поняли это правило. 7. Кажется, все студенты читали эту статью. 8. Она, кажется, знает три иностранных языка. 9. Кажется, эта статья была опубликована в "Правде" на прошлой неделе. 10. Он, по-видимому, удовлетворен результатом своей работы. 11. Он, кажется, уехал на юг.

II

1. Говорят, что он в Москве. 2. Ожидают, что договор будет подписан на этой неделе. 3. Сообщают, что экспедиция выехала 15 мая. 4. Известно, что он придерживается другого мнения по этому вопросу. 5. Считают, что он один из лучших летчиков нашей страны. 6. Говорят, что этот дом был построен около двухсот лет тому назад. 7. Он, кажется, знает этот предмет очень хорошо. 8. Он, по-видимому, очень много читал по этому вопросу. 9. Эта книга, по-видимому, очень интересная.

III

1. Эта книга, по-видимому, была переведена очень опытным переводчиком. 2. Коробка, кажется, пустая. 3. Этот вопрос, по-видимому, представляет для них большой интерес. 4. Казалось, что он доволен нашей работой. 5. Все, казалось, были удивлены, когда услышали это. 6. Дмитрий, кажется, сидит в читальном зале. 7. Он, кажется, ждет вас внизу. 8. Он оказался очень хорошим спортсменом. 9. Они оказались очень опытными преподавателями. 10. Эта задача оказалась очень трудной. 11. Я случайно встретил его в Сочи. 12. Я случайно слышал, как он спросил ее об этом.

Ex. 8. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

1. The play is likely to have been written by Shaw. 2. He is certain to get the letter tomorrow. 3. They are most likely to have begun this work. 4. He is sure to enjoy himself at the party. 5. The agreement is certain to have been signed. 6. They are certain to return soon. 7. They are very likely to take part in this work. 8. There are unlikely to be any objections to our proposal. 9. This house is likely to have been built at the beginning of the 19th century. 10. He is sure to be appointed manager of the factory. 11. He is sure to like his new work. 12. They are sure to have returned to Moscow.

Ex. 9. (**A, B**) Paraphrase the sentences using the model.

Model: It is not likely that they will return soon.
They are not likely to return soon.

1. It appears unlikely that the experiment will give good results. 2. It is likely that he has accepted their offer. 3. It is certain that they will come to Moscow. 4. It appears likely that he will recover soon. 5. It is likely that there will be a heated discussion on this question. 6. It is unlikely that the meeting will be postponed. 7. It is very likely that his article will be published in the newspaper. 8. It is certain that they will be here on Monday. 9. It is likely that there will be a good wheat crop in the Ukraine this year. 10. It was not likely that the telegram would reach them in time. 11. It seemed unlikely that the price of these raw materials would rise. 12. It is likely that the conference will be held in Moscow. 13. It is likely that the goods were shipped on Monday. 14. It seems likely that an agreement will be reached in the near future. 15. It seems likely that there will be a storm on the sea.

Ex. 10. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

I

1. Очень вероятно, что делегация уже уехала из Москвы. 2. Самолет, вероятно, уже прибыл в Прагу. 3. Он, наверное, придет вечером. 4. Они, наверное, согласятся принять участие в этой работе. 5. Они, наверное, согласятся на ваши условия. 6. Вы непременно получите ответ от него на этих днях. 7. Он непременно получит приз за

свою картину. 8. Его книга будет непременно напечатана в России. 9. Они, вероятно, не приедут в мае. 10. Они, вероятно, не получили зарплату сегодня. 11. Театр, вероятно, не поедет в Лондон в этом сезоне. 12. Этот вопрос, вероятно, не будет обсуждаться сегодня.

II

1. Правила, вероятно, изменятся. 2. Очень вероятно, что эта проблема будет обсуждена на заседании правительства. 3. Вряд ли он придет сюда. 4. .Очень вероятно, что собрание закончится через час. 5. Он, вероятно, будет дома в шесть часов. 6. Эти меры будут, вероятно, приняты. 7. Они вряд ли скоро вернутся. 8. Очень вероятно, что он знает, где работает Андрей Иванов. 9. Товары, вероятно, будут доставлены без опоздания. 10. Очень вероятно, что завтра будет хорошая погода. 11. Маловероятно, что они закончат свою работу до конца мая. 12. Этот опыт, вероятно, будет успешным.

REVISION

Ex. 11. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Как известно, Макаренко был прекрасным педагогом. 2. Говорят, что экспедиция собрала очень интересный материал. 3. Сообщалось, что в Сибирь была послана большая группа исследователей. 4. Предполагается, что в нашем городе будет построен новый завод. 5. Полагают, что она уже доехала до границы. 6. Никак не ожидали, что зима наступит так рано. 7. Как сообщают, средняя (average) температура в этом году была значительно ниже, чем в прошлом. 8. Известно, что это вещество поглощает световые лучи. 9. Вряд ли его можно заставить совершить преступление (to commit a crime). 10. Полагают, что это изобретение поможет нам в нашей работе.

Ex. 12. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

I

1. Кажется, кто-то стучит. 2. Известно, что он один из лучших врачей в больнице. 3. Он, наверное, получит удовольствие от этой поездки. 4. Оказалось, что он прав. 5. Этот вопрос вряд ли будет обсуждаться на собрании. 6. Они, наверное, помогут нам. 7. Считают, что Иванов лучший рабочий в нашем цехе (shop). 8. Лекция, наверное, будет интересной. 9. Оказалось, что он большой специалист по этому вопросу. 10. Он, кажется, не понял этого правила. 11. Она, по-видимому, не любит музыку. 12. Он, кажется, ничего не знает об этом. 13. Товары, по-видимому, не были тщательно упакованы. 14. Он, казалось, не был удивлен этим сообщением. 15. Он, кажется, не понимает значения этого изобретения. 16. Никто, по-видимому, не обратил внимания на его слова.

II

1. Известно, что Лобачевский был самым крупным математиком своего времени. 2. Ожидают, что делегация прибудет завтра. 3. Они, вероятно, вернутся осенью. 4. Вряд ли он примет участие в этом спектакле. 5. Он, кажется, очень добрый человек. 6. Она, по-видимому, забыла о своем обещании. 7. Говорят, что он написал очень хорошую книгу. 8. Он, по-видимому, забыл номер вашего телефона. 9. Этот договор,

вероятно, будет заключен в ближайшем будущем. 10. Я случайно был в конторе, когда он пришел. 11. Сообщают, что экспедиция уже вернулась в лагерь. 12. Он оказался одним из самых способных исследователей нашей лаборатории. 13. Он, по-видимому, устал. 14. Говорят, что переговоры уже закончены. 15. Я случайно знаю об этом. 16. Я случайно был дома, когда он зашел.

2.4.3 THE FOR-TO-INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

In this construction a noun or a pronoun is preceded by the preposition *for*. In translating this construction into Russian a subordinate clause or an infinitive is used.

SENTENCE PATTERNS WITH THE FOR-PHRASE

The for-phrases have different syntactical functions in the sentence:

1. The Subject*	
it is / was / will be | *good* / *easy* / *impossible* | **for smb to do** smth	❒ It's easier **for me to go** out and buy a new pair of gloves. Мне легче пойти и купить новую пару перчаток. ❒ It's easy **for you to answer** this question. Тебе легко ответить на этот вопрос. ❒ It is not **for me to say** so. Не мне это говорить.
2. The Object **a)** to wait / to arrange / to be anxious | **for smb to do** smb	❒ I'm waiting **for you to come**. Я жду вашего прихода. ❒ I have arranged **for you to have** a private room. Я договорился, что у тебя будет отдельная комната.
b) to make / to think | it | *difficult* / *easy* | **for smb to do** smth	❒ Your attitude made it difficult **for him to tell** you the truth. Ему было трудно сказать тебе правду из-за твоего отношения. ❒ He thinks it best **for you to stay** here. По его мнению, тебе лучше оставаться здесь.

3. The Attribute **a)** somebody There is nothing | **for smb to do** smth	❒ There is **no one for the children to play** with. Детям не с кем играть. ❒ There is **nothing else for me to say**. Мне больше нечего сказать.
b) It is only thing The right time | **for smb to do** smth	❒ It is **not the right time for us to speak** about it. Сейчас не время нам об этом говорить. ❒ It was **the only thing for me to do**. Это было единственное, что я мог сделать.
4. The Adverbial Modifier of Purpose do smth **for smb to do** smth	❒ He stood aside **for us to pass by**. Он отступил в сторону, чтобы мы могли пройти.
5. The Adverbial Modifier of Result (**too**) | cold / wide | (**enough**) | **for smb to do** smth	❒ The day was much **too cold and rainy for anyone to have** a good time. День был слишком холодный и дождливый,чтобы кто-нибудь мог хорошо провести время. ❒ The lane was **wide enough for him** to turn the car. Переулок был достаточно широк, чтобы развернуть машину.

Exception:

it is / was / will be	*nice* *kind* *sensible* *silly* *stupid* *tactless*	**OF smb to do smth**

❒ It was **silly of you** to ask that question.
С твоей стороны было глупо задать этот вопрос.
❒ It's **nice (kind) of you** to say so.
Очень мило с вашей стороны так говорить (что вы так говорите).
❒ It will be very **sensible of you** to go there at once.
Очень будет разумно, если ты пойдешь туда сейчас же.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (**A**) Replace the following groups of sentences by a sentence with a for-phrase subject.

Model: He won't catch the six fifteen. It's impossible.
It is impossible *for him to catch the six fifteen.*

1. She explained everything. It was not difficult. 2. She managed to do it in time. But it was quite an effort. 3. Don't make mistakes. It's important. 4. Her mother made the decision. It's the usual thing in this family. 5. We ought to take a vacation now. It won't be difficult. 6. You'll speak English with her. It'll do you good. 7. She is very late. It's rather unusual. 8. You really ought to see a doctor. It will be best. 9. We'll spend a couple of weeks in Petersburg next June. It will be rather pleasant.

Ex. 2. (**A**) Complete the following sentences by adding for-phrases to them.

Model: It would be better (you; to stay in bed).
It would be better *for you to stay in bed.*

1. It's very important (children; to play outdoors). 2. It'll be best (she; to talk to the manager). 3. It might be just possible (you; to make him see the doctor). 4. It would be easy (I; to pretend). 5. It's very bad (boys; to smoke). 6. It's not (you; to carry that heavy bag).

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English. Use Pattern I.

1. Вам полезно есть фрукты. 2. Мне легче сделать это сегодня. 3. Им будет проще поехать туда на метро. 4. Ей было бы трудно решить эту задачу. 5. Нам было приятно снова встретить наших друзей. 6. Нам будет полезно отдохнуть. 7. Вам вредно столько курить. 8. Ей было трудно молчать. 9. Не мне давать вам советы. 12. Не им обсуждать этот вопрос.

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Complete the following sentences by adding objective for-phrases to them.

1. She is out playing. The doctor does not think it necessary ... . 2. Under the circumstances I really think it best ... . 3. All right, I'll go. Why are you so anxious ... . 4. After a long telephone conversation with John we arranged ... . 5. He stood there with a bunch of flowers waiting ... . 6. The manager was very cross and said that he did not mean ... .

Ex. 5. (**A, B**) Translate the following sentences.

1. Вы думаете, мне легко отказаться от этой мысли? 2. Я считаю (нахожу необходимым), чтобы ты кончил школу. 3. Нам было трудно понять, чего ты хочешь. 4. Мама испекла пирог, чтобы мы съели его за ужином. 5. Он оставил дверь открытой, чтобы мы могли войти. 6. Я привезу книг, чтобы вы могли читать летом. 7. Я оставил записку на столе, чтобы все могли ее видеть. 8. Детям там негде спать. 9. Мне здесь больше нечего делать. 10. Не такая это игра, чтобы дети могли в нее играть.

Ex. 6. (**A, B**) Add infinitives to complete for-phrases in the sentences below.

1. It's getting cold. It's bad for the children ... . 2. Have you brought something for me ... on the train? 3. There's simply nobody there for a young girl ... . 4. I can't find a place for us ... . 5. Those are not the right people for you ... . 6. I have bought a few things for Tony ... .

Ex. 7. (**A, B**) Replace the following pairs of sentences by sentences with adverbial for phrases of result.

Model: The street is very narrow. He won't be able to turn the car.
The street is **too** narrow *for him to turn the car.*

1. The way to the village was long. I felt hungry again. 2. The heat was oppressive. We did not stay long on the beach. 3. The problem was comparatively easy. I solved it in half an hour. 4. The situation was getting complicated. We could no longer cope with it. 5. The conversation was interesting. The children did not want to go to bed. 6. The noise of the traffic grew loud. I could not sleep. 7. The light was good. She could read the inscription.

Ex. 8. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Машина шла слишком быстро, чтобы я мог рассмотреть лицо водителя. 2. Она говорила так медленно, что мы понимали каждое слово. 3. Я был слишком расстроен, чтобы мама этого не заметила. 4. Он говорил по-английски достаточно хорошо, и мы поняли, что ему надо. 5. В пещере было так темно, что мы не смогли найти выход.

REVISION

Ex. 9. (**B**) Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

1. There is no need for the steamer to call at Tuapse. 2. It was necessary for him to return immediately. 3. There is no reason for us to change the terms of payment. 4. There was no time for them to examine the goods that day. 5. It is too late for you to go there.

Ex. 10. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Я оставила письма на столе, чтобы мистер Питерс подписал их. 2. Вам необходимо быть здесь завтра в 5 часов. 3. Нам трудно сделать эту работу в такой короткий срок. 4. Детям там совершенно нечего делать. 5. Ей очень трудно перевести эту статью. 6. Очень мило, что вы пришли. 7. Сейчас слишком поздно, чтобы дети шли гулять. 8. С его стороны было невежливо опаздывать. 9. Необходимо, чтобы документы были отосланы сегодня. 10. Ему легко это сделать. 11. Очень важно, чтобы он получил документы на этой неделе. 12. Надеюсь, вы понимаете, что мне очень неудобно оставаться в Лондоне летом. 13. Ему очень легко сделать эту работу. 14. Вашей сестре необходимо повидать его. 15. Все это настолько просто, что каждый может сделать это сам. 16. Текст был слишком трудный, чтобы он мог перевести его без словаря. 17. Нам очень трудно получить эти сведения. 18. Ему будет проще показать вам дорогу туда по карте. 19. Сегодня достаточно тепло, чтобы он шел в школу без пальто. 20. У нас слишком мало времени. Я не смогу тебе все рассказать.

2.5 REVISION

Ex. 1. (**A, B**) Translate the following sentences.

I

1. She is extremely likely to succeed. 2. We're not allowed to go out. 3. He had been asked to stay to lunch. 4. He seemed to have noticed something interesting on the beach. 5. A girl with long straight yellow hair appeared to be attracting everybody's attention. 6. The girl was not likely to have taken an overdose of sleeping tablets by mistake. 7. It was bound to happen. 8. They seem to be planning a new attack. 9. The children are sure to have been fighting again. 10. The secret was believed to have been lost. 11. I'm not going to change my mind because twelve stupid men happened to make a mistake.

II

1. Oil has been known to exist in Azerbaijan since ancient times. 2. The cargo does not seem to have been damaged by the storm. 3. This invention is considered to be of great importance in shipbuilding. 4. The negotiations are likely to continue until Saturday. 5. The cargo of this steamer is stated to consist of 3,000 tons of wheat and 2,000 tons of barley. 6. The parties are reported to be considering the question of extending the agreement for 6 months. 7. Lake Baikal, which is said to be the deepest lake in the world, is fed by 336 rivers.

Ex. 2. (**B**) Rewrite the sentences, replacing the words in *italics* by a Gerund or Infinitive Construction.

Model: His doctor recommended *that he should try* taking sleeping pills for a while.
His doctor recommended *him to try* taking sleeping pills for a while.

1. He preferred *that I should say* nothing about it at present.
2. She couldn't bear *that he should think* of her in that way.
3. He was surprised to find the door open. He distinctly remembered *that he had locked* it before going to bed.
4. The speaker making the radio appeal urged *that his listeners should give* more attention to the problem.
5. The publishers withdrew the offending passages in the book, and publicly regretted *that they had caused* anyone embarrassment.
6. The law requires *that all cars should be regularly tested* for safety and efficiency.
7. His lawyer advised him *that he should drop the case* since it was unlikely to succeed.

Ex. 3. (**B**) Translate into English, using infinitive attributes.

1. Мне надо вам кое-что сказать. 2. У меня есть хорошая новость, которую я должен вам рассказать. 3. Он первый прервал молчание. 4. Мне надо о многом поговорить с вами. 5. Он ушел из лаборатории последним. 6. Вот книга, которую хорошо почитать в поезде. 7. У меня не было времени прочитать эту статью. 8. Он не такой человек, чтобы забыть о своем обещании. 9. У нее есть ребенок, о котором ей надо заботиться. 10. Вот статья, которую вы должны прочитать.

Ex. 4. (**A, B**) Translate the following sentences using Infinitive Constructions.

1. Я думаю, что он хороший инженер. 2. Я хочу, чтобы вы, наконец, меня поняли. 3. Мы наблюдали, как дети играли в саду. 4. Она слышала, что они вернулись поздно вечером. 5. Я полагаю, что он аккуратный и пунктуальный человек. 6. Они не хотели, чтобы я делал эту работу один. 7. Никто не заметил, как он ушел. 8. Позвольте мне помочь вам. 9. Он позволил мне звонить ему в любое время. 10. Я не ожидал, что они вернутся так скоро. 11. Я почувствовал, что кто-то внимательно смотрит на меня. 12. Что заставило вас сказать это? 13. Я видел, что он подошел к ней и что-то сказал. 14. Мать заставила маленького сына сделать уроки перед тем, как идти гулять. 15. Я слышал, как он что-то объяснял ей. 16. Все родители хотят, чтобы их дети были сильными и здоровыми. 17. Кто велел ему (сказал ему) прийти сегодня? 18. Преподаватель посоветовал нам больше читать на английском языке. 19. Она посоветовала мне посмотреть этот фильм как можно скорее. 20. Мы не ожидали, что он опоздает на лекцию,

Ex. 5. (**B, C**) Translate into English using the Complex Object (Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction) where possible.

1. Пеготи знала, что мистер Мердстон черствый и жестокий человек, и не хотела, чтобы миссис Копперфильд выходила за него замуж. 2. Мистер Мердстон заставил жену повиноваться ему. 3. Дэвид чувствовал, что рука его матушки дрожит. 4. Мистер Мердстон и его сестра считали Дэвида ленивым и упрямым мальчиком. 5. Мистер Мердстон приказал, чтобы Дэвида заперли в его комнате. 6. Дэвид проснулся, услышав, что кто-то шепотом зовет его. 7. Пеготи слышала, что мистер Мердстон собирается отдать Дэвида в школу. 8. Мистер Мердстон не хотел, чтобы Дэвид жил дома, и добился того, что миссис Копперфильд отдала его в школу. 9. Пеготи видела, что миссис Копперфильд несчастна, но не могла ничего сделать, чтобы помочь ей. 10. Мистер Мердстон хотел, чтобы Пеготи отказали от места (to dismiss), но миссис Копперфильд не могла допустить, чтобы ее верная служанка ушла от нее. 11. Мисс Бетси увидела, что в сад вошел грязный оборванный мальчик. 12. Мисс Бетси чувствовала, что Дэвид говорит правду (что рассказ Дэвида правдив).

Ex. 6. (**B, C**) Translate into English using For-to-Infinitive Construction where possible.

1. Каждый вечер мистер Пеготи ставил свечу на подоконник, чтобы маленькая Эмили знала, что он ее ждет. 2. Когда мистер Пеготи нашел Эмили, он решил, что самое лучшее, что они могут сделать, – это уехать в Австралию. 3. Дэвид купил поваренную книгу (cookery book), чтобы Дора пользовалась ею. 4. Дора сказала, что первое, что она должна сделать, – это приготовить Джипу хороший ужин. 5. Дора понимала, что Дэвиду необходимо поехать с мисс Бетой в Кентербери, и сказала, что ей будет даже полезно (beneficial) побыть одной. 6. Мистер Микобер попросил Трэдльса помочь ему, так как разоблачение (exposure) Урии Гипа было слишком трудным делом, чтобы он мог с ним справиться один (to cope with). 7. Мистер Микобер попросил, чтобы принесли бумаги и конторские книги (account-books) Урии Хипа. 8. Урии Хипу ничего не оставалось делать, как сознаться.

Ex. 7. (**C**) Translate into English using the Infinitive or Infinitive Construction where possible. (Based on Uncle Tom's Cabin by Beecher-Stowe.)

1. Когда Джордж бежал от своего хозяина и пробирался в Канаду, он случайно встретил

мистера Вильсона, владельца фабрики, где он раньше работал, и рассказал ему всю историю своей жизни. 2. Говорили, что покойный отец Джорджа был богатый знатный джентльмен. 3. Казалось, он любил своих детей, но он был слишком легкомысленным человеком, чтобы подумать об их будущем, и после его смерти все его дети были проданы, чтобы уплатить его долги. 4. Джордж слышал, как кричала и плакала его мать, когда его забирали от нее. 5. Джордж и его старшая сестра были случайно куплены одним и тем же рабовладельцем, и первое время ребенок не чувствовал себя очень одиноким. 6. Но он часто видел, как хозяин бьет его сестру, и от этого ребенок жестоко страдал (и это заставляло ребенка жестоко страдать). 7. Он не мог не плакать, когда слышал стоны и рыдания несчастной девушки. 8. Вскоре хозяин приказал отвезти сестру Джорджа Новый Орлеан и продать ее там на рынке. 9. Мальчик остался один: не было никого, кто мог бы позаботиться о нем, кто мог бы сказать ему ласковое слово. 10. Когда Джордж вырос, его послали работать на фабрику мистера Вильсона, который оказался очень добрым человеком и хорошо обращался со своими рабочими. 11. Джордж изобрел очень ценную машину, которая, как было известно, приносила его хозяину большую прибыль. 12. Вскоре Джордж встретил Элизу и женился на ней. Она была очень красивая и добрая, и Джордж считал себя самым счастливым человеком на земле. 13. Но счастье его было недолговечно (to be of short duration): его хозяин был не такой человек, который мог бы допустить, чтобы его негр был счастлив. 14. Джорджа заставили уйти с фабрики, бросить работу, которую он так любил, и вернуться к хозяину. 15. Чтобы унизить Джорджа еще больше, хозяин приказал ему бросить Элизу и жениться на другой женщине. Этого Джордж уже вынести не мог, и он решил бежать в Канаду.

(From "English Grammar Exercises" by В.Л. Каушанская и др.)

Ex. 8. (**B, C**) Translate into English using the Complex Subject (the Nominative-with-the-Infinitive Construction).

1. Вальтер Скотт считается создателем исторического романа. 2. Сообщают, что экспедиция достигла места назначения. 3. Едва ли его назначат главным инженером, ведь он кончил институт всего два года тому назад. 4. Он, по-видимому, хорошо знает английский язык; наверное, он изучал его в детстве. 5. Я случайно знаю номер его телефона. 6. Он оказался хорошим спортсменом. 7. Шум, казалось, все приближался. 8. Я случайно проходил мимо вокзала, когда в Петербург приехали артисты Шекспировского мемориального театра (Shakespeare Memorial Theatre). 9. Он, кажется, пишет новую статью; кажется, он работает над ней уже две недели. 10. Его статья, несомненно, будет напечатана. 11. Я случайно встретил его в Москве. 12. Обязательно прочитайте эту книгу; она вам, несомненно, понравится.

2.6 TESTS

I

1. По правде говоря, мне не нравится его предложение.
2. Чай был слишком горячим, его невозможно было пить.
3. У вас есть что добавить?
4. Плохая погода заставила нас вернуться домой.
5. Мы ожидаем, что товары будут доставлены через три недели.

6. Мы стояли у ворот, ожидая, когда прибудет такси.
7. Учитель видел, что студенты не знают, как выполнить это задание.
8. Он оказался не очень хорошим спортсменом.
9. Я случайно встретил его на выставке. Говорят, он недавно вернулся в Москву.

II

1. Мягко выражаясь, она была не очень красива.
2. Он был достаточно умен, чтобы понять все сразу.
3. Есть еще одно дело, которое надо сделать.
4. Она была настолько легкомысленна, что пошла туда одна.
5. Мама не разрешала сыну играть на улице.
6. Преподаватель любит, чтобы студенты записывали его лекции.
7. Я слышал, что товары погрузили (load) на пароход, но я точно этого не знаю.
8. Вероятно делегация пробудет в Москве несколько дней.
9. Он отправился туда, чтобы проверить все факты.
10. Он, казалось, был недоволен результатами своей работы.

III

1. Короче говоря, они поженились и переехали жить в другой город.
2. Проблема слишком трудна, чтобы решить ее немедленно.
3. Архитектор показал мне проект памятника, который будет воздвигнут на площади.
4. Дайте мне знать, когда он позвонит.
5. Я хочу, чтобы мне показали эти записи.
6. Я видел, что он злится, и решил поговорить с ним.
7. Кажется маловероятным, что их предложение будет принято.
8. Товары непременно будут доставлены вовремя.
9. Никто не слышал, как она вошла в комнату.

IV

1. Начнем с того, что я никогда не был знаком с этим человеком.
2. Вы достаточно его знаете, чтобы рекомендовать его на эту должность?
3. На этой неделе у меня много дел, которые я должен обязательно сделать.
4. Не давайте ему разговаривать с заключенными.
5. Считаете ли вы, что он опытный врач?
6. Я слышал, что о нем говорили на последнем собрании.
7. В этом семестре вряд ли будут какие-либо изменения в расписании.
8. Чемодан был слишком тяжелый, чтобы она могла нести его.
9. Я видел, как он подошел к ним и сказал что-то.
10. Мне очень жаль. Я пришел, чтобы сообщить вам неприятную новость.

V

1. В довершение всего, она разбила любимую чашку мамы.
2. Она знает английский язык достаточно хорошо, чтобы поехать в командировку без переводчика.
3. Она знала, что не виновата, ей нечего было бояться.
4. Не разрешайте детям купаться в ручье. Вода очень холодная.
5. Я думаю, что этот вопрос имеет большое значение.
6. Я видел, что он очень расстроен.
7. Говорят, что это здание было построено в XVII веке.

8. Кажется маловероятным, что они придут к соглашению.
9. Он не ожидал, что его спросят об этом.
10. Я видел, как темные тучи покрыли небо, и слышал, что поднялся ветер.

3. THE PARTICIPLE

3.1 FORMS AND FUNCTIONS

	Active	Passive
Indefinite Participle (Participle I)	asking	being asked
Past Participle (Participle II)	asked	–
Perfect Participle	having asked	having been asked

(for Spelling Rules see Appendix 3; for Irregular Verbs see Appendices 1, 2)

Indefinite Participle (Active and Passive) shows that the action named by the Participle takes place at the same time with that of the finite verb. These forms denote simultaneous action in the present, past or future.

❒ Do you *see* the child **waving** the flag?
❒ That day we *stayed* at home **watching** TV.
❒ In a few minutes the guests *will be arriving* **wearing** smiles and **carrying** presents.

Past Participle has no tense distinctions; it has only one form which can express both an action simultaneous with and prior to the action expressed by the finite verb. In most cases it denotes priority or refers to no particular time.

❒ He is a man **loved** and **admired** by everybody.
❒ The dog **carried** by the child *gave* a sharp yelp.
❒ She *took* the long **forgotten** letter out of the bag.

Perfect Participle (Active and Passive) shows that the action named by the Participle preceded that of the finite verb. Its forms denote priority to a present, past or future action.

❒ **Having explained** everything, I want to tell you how sorry I *am.*
❒ **Having finished** the letter, he *went* to the post office.
❒ **Having settled** the problem, you *will find* something new to worry about.

NB! A prior action is not always expressed by the Perfect Participle with some verbs of sense perception and motion: *to see, to hear, to come, to arrive, to seize, to look, to turn,* etc. The Indefinite Participle is used even if priority is meant.

❒ **Hearing** footsteps he rose and went to open the door.
Услышав шаги внизу, он встал и пошел открывать дверь.

The Participle has special forms to denote **the Active and Passive Voice.**

❒ When **writing** letters, he doesn't like to be disturbed.
❒ **Being written** in pencil, the letter was difficult to read.
❒ **Having written** the letter, he went to the post-office.
❒ **Having been written** long ago, the manuscript was impossible to read.

3.2 THE FUNCTIONS OF THE PARTICIPLE IN A SENTENCE

SENTENCE WORD ORDER

♦ – attribute

The Participle has two syntactic functions:

	An Attribute	An Adverbial Modifier
building	❒ The young men **building** our house with me are my brothers. Молодые люди, *которые строят* наш дом вместе со мной, – мои братья.	❒ He made his living **building** summer houses or garages for people. Он зарабатывал на жизнь, *строя* людям беседки и гаражи.
being built	❒ The white stone house **being built** near the park is a new building of our Art museum. Белокаменное сооружение, *строящееся* у парка, – новое здание нашего музея изобразительных искусств.	❒ **Being built** with great skill and care, the mansion has been used by the family for centuries. *Так как особняк был построен (будучи построенным)* очень искусно, он служит семье уже несколько веков.
built	❒ They are reconstructing the house **built** in the 18th century. Они реставрируют здание, *построенное* в XVIII веке.	❒ **If built** of the local stone, the road will serve for years. *Если построить* дорогу из этого местного камня, она будет служить долгие годы.
having built	–	❒ **Having built** the house, he began building a greenhouse. *Построив дом*, он принялся за оранжерею.
having been built	–	❒ **Having been built** of concrete, the house was always cold in winter. *Так как дом был построен* из бетона, в нем всегда было холодно зимой.

NOTES:

1. In some cases Participle I Active in the function of an attribute is rendered in Russuan by a clause.

❒ He came back and stood on the steps **leading down to the street.**
Он вернулся и стоял на лестнице, *которая вела на улицу.*

2. Participle I Passive (being read) is very seldom used as an attribute.

3. The Past Participle (Participle II) can be an adverbial modifier when it is used with the conjunctions *when, while, as if/as though, though, unless, if.*

❒ **When told** to come in he seemed to change his mind.
Когда его попросили войти, он, казалось, передумал.

❒ She continued staring at the screen **as if fascinated**.
Она продолжала смотреть на экран, как будто завороженная.

4. The verbs *catch, spot, find, discover* and *smell* are not followed by an infinitive. All may be followed by **an object and a Present Participle** (Participle I).

❒ The teacher *caught* the pupil **cheating.**

❒ The search party *found (spotted, discovered)* the climbers **clinging** to a rock face.

❒ He *smelt* the meat **cooking**.

The verbs *spot, find* and *discover* may be followed by **an object + Past Participle**:

❒ The police *found* **the money hidden** in a disused garage.

5. The verbs *leave* and *keep* (someone in a certain situation or condition) share some of the characteristics of *find* and *discover*. They can be followed by **an object + Present** or **Past Participle**:

❒ He *left* **me sitting** in the restaurant alone.

❒ He *kept* **me waiting**.

❒ He *left* **his bicycle propped** against a wall.

❒ He *kept* **the dog chained up**.

6. If the actions named by the Participle and by the predicate closely follow each other, the Indefinite Participle is used instead of the Perfect Participle.

❒ **Seeing** me he smiled happily.
Увидев меня, он счастливо *улыбнулся.*

7. When we mention two consecutive actions one of them may be named by the Indefinite Participle.

❒ He looked at me smiling.
Он *посмотрел* на меня *и улыбнулся.*

❒ Seing that it was getting cold we went home.
Мы *увидели*, что становится холодно, *и пошли* домой.

3.3 RUSSIAN EQUIVALENTS OF PARTICIPLES USED AS ATTRIBUTES

ACTIVE

Russian	English	Examples
1. *читающий, который читает*	**READING**	❒ Look at this **reading** boy! He is only five.
2. *читавший*, который читал* (тогда)	**READING**	❒ We looked at the **reading** boy. He had a nice voice.

3. *прочитавший, который прочитал* (раньше)	who **HAD READ**	❒ The boy who **had read** the poem now was taking part in the discussion.
4. *который будет читать*	who **WILL READ** (is going to...)	❒ We've never heard of the actor who **will read** the poems.

PASSIVE

1. *применяющиеся, применяемые, которые применяются* (обычно)	**USED**	❒ These are the methods **used** for metal treatment.
2. *применявшиеся, которые применялись* (раньше)	**USED**	❒ There were several methods **used** before the invention.
3. *примененные,* которые были применены (тогда)	**USED**	❒ This is the method **used** in the first experiment.
4. *применяемые,* которые применяются (в момент речи)	**BEING USED**	❒ What do you think of the method **being used**?
5. *которые будут применяться* (в будущем)	to **BE USED** (the Infinitive)	❒ The methods **to be used** in our new project are quite modern.

3.4 RUSSIAN EQUIVALENTS OF PARTICIPLES USED AS ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS

Russian	English	Examples
читая, когда читаю, когда читал	**(when/while) reading**	❒ **(While) reading** this book I always remember my own childhood. ❒ **(When) reading** this book I wrote out a number of useful expressions.
прочитав, когда прочитал, потому что прочитал (раньше)**	**having read**	❒ **Having read** this book I learnt a lot. ❒ **Having read** this book I can tell you my opinion of it.

NOTES:

* When translating Russian participles ending in ~***вший*** we use Present Participle *(reading)* only if the action expressed by the participle is simultaneous with that of the finite verb. If it is prior to that named by the finite verb, we use a clause.

COMPARE:

❒ Я подошел к молодому человеку, *стоявшему* у двери.
I came up to the young man **standing** at the door.

❒ Все толкали молодого человека, *вставшего* у двери вагона.
Everyone pushed the young man **who had placed** himself at the car door.

** Present Participle **being** (from to be) is not used in adverbial modifiers of time, we use "while-phrase" or a clause instead.

❒ *Будучи* в Москве, я посетил Кремль.
While in Moscow (= while I was in Moscow) I visited Kremlin.

❒ *Будучи* мальчиком, я любил играть в футбол.
When a boy (= when I was a boy) I liked to play football.

NB! **being** is used in adverbial modifiers of cause.

❒ **Being tired** (= as he was tired) he went home at once.
Будучи усталым (= так как он устал), он сразу же пошел домой.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (A, B) Translate the sentences from English into Russian, paying special attention to the function of the Participle in the sentence.

I

1. The boy playing in the garden is my sister's son. 2. You can get the recommended book in the library. 3. He asked her to go on with her story, promising not to interrupt her again. 4. Receiving no letters from her father, she called him. 5. He left the office at three o'clock, saying he would be back at five. 6. She stood leaning against the wall. 7. He lay on the sofa reading a newspaper. 8. Seeing her he raised his hat. 9. Having signed the letter the manager asked the secretary to send it off at once. 10. Informed of the arrival of the ship, they sent a car to the port. 11. Having lived in that town all his life, he knew it very well. 12. Having arranged everything, he went home on the 10.30 train. 13. Having been well prepared for the interview, he could answer all the questions. 14. Being checked with great care, the report didn't contain any errors. 15. These machines will be sent to the plant being constructed in this region. 16. Having been advised by the doctor to go to the south, she decided to spend her leave in Sochi. 17. Being told of his arrival, I went to see him. 18. Having been three times seriously wounded, he was no longer fit for active service.

II

1. A person bringing good news is always welcome. 2. While skating yesterday, he fell and hurt himself. 3. She showed the travellers into the room reserved for them. 4. When writing an essay we must use new words and phrases. 5. The leaves lying on the ground reminded us of autumn. 6. Books read in childhood seem like old friends. 7. The answer received from her greatly surprised us. 8. There are many wonderful books describing the life of people in the North. 9. Being a great book-lover, he spent a lot of money on books. 10. The figures mentioned in his article were published in the Izvestia. 11. Receiving the telegram, he rang the manager up.

Ex. 2. Translate the following participles.

I. (**A**)

покупающий, покупая, купленный, покупаемый
получающий, получая, полученный, получаемый
переводящий, переводя, переведенный, переводимый

1. написанный; 2. принесенный; 3. давая; 4. разговаривающий; 5. спрошенный; 6. отвечая; 7. читаемый; 8. рассказанный; 9. издаваемый; 10. работающий; 11. читая; 12. открывающий; 13. берущий; 14. потерянный; 15. сделанный; 16. стоя; 17. идущий; 18. входя; 19. смотрящий; 20. построенный; 21. видя.

II. (**B**)

1. разбитая чашка; 2 проигранная игра; 3. разорванный конверт; 4. проигравшая команда; 5. проигрывающая команда; 6. кипяченая вода; 7. кипящая вода; 8. забытый метод; 9. человек, забывший (раньше); 10. лающая собака; 11. испытанный метод; 12. жареная рыба; 13. жарящаяся рыба; 14. вспрыгнувший на стол кот; 15. прыгающая собака; 16. украденная тема; 17. смеющийся голос; 18. смеявшаяся девушка; 19. выбранная тема; 20. печеный картофель; 21. потерянный шанс; 22. найденное решение; 23. выигравший спортсмен; 24. написанное письмо.

Ex. 3. (**A, B**) Open the brackets using the correct form of the Participle. Do not mix these:

interesting films	interested spectators
exciting games	excited children
boring lessons	bored students
burning fires	burnt woods
sinking ships	sunk ships

1. A crowd of (excite) people were watching the firemen trying to save the (burn) building. 2. "During my vacation I came across several extremely (interest) books," said he. "Which ones?" she asked in an (interest) voice. 3. Why do you look so (worry)? - I've had a number of (worry) telephone calls lately. 4. I don't know what was in the (burn) letter, I didn't read it. 5. Nothing can save the (sink) ship now, all we can do is to try and save the passengers. 6. It was an (excite) incident. No wonder she spoke about it in an (excite) voice. 7. After hearing the (frighten) tale, the (frighten) children wouldn't go to sleep. 8. The doctor did his best to convince her that there was nothing seriously wrong with the boy, but the (worry) mother wouldn't calm down.

Ex. 4. (**B**) Paraphrase the sentences using participles instead of *italicised* clauses.

Model: *When the shop assistant discovered* that he had a talent for music, he gave up his job to become a professional singer.
Discovering that he had a talent for music, *the shop assistant* gave up his job to become a professional singer.
As he had witnessed the crime, he was expected to give evidence in court.
Having witnessed the crime, *he was expected to give* evidence in court.

1. *When the editor learned* that his newspaper had been taken over by another publisher, he resigned from his position.
2. *I declined his offer of a loan* and said that I didn't like owing people money.
3. The demonstrator *who protested violently* was led away by the police.

4. *When I visit a strange city,* I like to have a guide-book with me.
5. Motorists *who intend to take their cars with them to the Continent* are advised to make early reservations.
6. *Now that I have heard your side of the question,* I am more inclined to agree with you.
7. *As he had been warned* that bad weather lay ahead, the ship's captain changed the course.

Ex. 5. Join the groups of sentences, using participles, and making any necessary changes in the word order.

I. (**A, B**)

Model: 1. He got off the bus. He helped his grandmother.
Getting off the bus, he helped his grandmother.
2. They found the treasure. They began quarrelling about how to divide it.
Having found the treasure, they began quarrelling about how to divide it.
3. He was exhausted by his work. He threw himself on the bed.
Being exhausted by his work, he threw himself on the bed.

1. He realized that he had missed the last train. He began to walk. 2. She didn't want to hear the story again. She had heard it all before. 3. She entered the room suddenly. She found them smoking. 4. I turned on the light. I was astonished at what I saw. 5. We visited the museum. We decided to have lunch in the park. 6. He offered to show us the way home. He thought we'd got lost. 7. She asked me to help her. She realized that she couldn't move it alone. 8. He fed the dog. He sat down to his own dinner. 9. I have looked through the fashion magazines. I realize that my clothes are hopelessly out-of-date. 10. I didn't like to sit down. I knew that the grass was very wet.

II. (**B, C**)

1. I was away at the time of the disastrous floods. I could, therefore, do nothing to help with salvage work.
2. The world disappointed him. He became a monk.
3. The rescue party decided that it would be hopeless to carry out a search while the fog persisted. They put off their rescue bid until the next day.
4. He was brought up in the belief that pleasures were sinful. As a result, he now leads an ascetic life.
5. This letter was addressed to the wrong house. It never reached my friend.
6. One can allow for the fact that the orchestra was under-rehearsed. Even so, last night's concert was extremely disappointing.
7. He was very angry when his car broke down. He had had it serviced only a week before.
8. A new conception has been developed in theoretic linguistics. The conception is useful in language teaching.
9. The man lost interest in his work. He had been passed over in favour of an outsider when a senior position became vacant.
10. He had to put off buying a house. He was unable to borrow the money from any bank.

Ex. 6. (**A**) Replace the attributive clauses by the Participle.

Model: All the people who live in this house are students.
All the people *living* in this house are students.

1. The man who is speaking now is our new secretary. 2. The apparatus that stands on the table in the corner of the laboratory is quite new. 3. The young man who helps the professor in his experiments studies at an evening school. 4. People who take books from the library must return them in time. There are many pupils in our class who take part in the performance.

Ex. 7. (**A**) Replace the adverbial clauses of time by the Participle.

Model: When you speak English, pay attention to the intonation.
(When) *Speaking* English, pay attention to the intonation.

1. Be careful when you cross a street. 2. When you leave the room, don't forget to switch off the light. 3. When you begin to work with the dictionary, don't forget my instructions. 4. When they were travelling in Central Africa, the explorers met many wild animals. 5. When you copy English texts, pay attention to the articles. 6. You must have much practice when you are learning to speak a foreign language.

Ex. 8. (**B**) Replace the *italicised* adverbial clauses of time by the appropriate form of the Participle using the model.

Model:

увидев когда увидел	seeing (тогда) having seen (раньше)

1. *When I entered the room,* I felt some change in the atmosphere at once. 2. *When we had finally reached the river,* we decided to stay there and wait for the others. 3. *When I reached out in the darkness,* I felt a stone wall where I expected to find the door. 4. *When she opened the parcel,* she saw a large box of pencils. 5. *When they had finally opened the safe,* they found that most of the papers had gone. 6. *When she closed the suitcase,* she put it on the bed. 7. *When she had closed and locked the suitcase,* she rang for the porter to come and take it downstairs. 8. *When she had cut the bread,* she started to make the coffee.

Ex. 9. (**B**) Replace the *italicised* adverbial clauses of time by the appropriate form of the Participle using the models.

Model 1:

читая когда читаю когда читал	(when, while) **reading**

Model 2:

прочитав когда прочитал потому что прочитал	**having read**

1. *As she had been walking most of the night,* she felt tired and sleepy. 2. *When I take a child to the circus,* I always know I'm going to enjoy myself. 3. *As I had never seen anything like that before,* I was eager to see the performance. 4. *When he had passed the last*

examination, he began to look round for a job. 5. *When he had drunk his second cup of coffee,* he folded the newspaper and rose. 6. *Whenever she spoke on the subject,* she was liable to get all hot and bothered. 7. *When I had finally made up my mind,* I told my parents about my new plans. 8. *As she had spent most of her housekeeping money,* she reluctantly decided to go home. 9. *As she had not had any lunch,* she wanted her tea badly. 10. *When I spoke to her* I always tried to make my meaning clear. 11. *When we were playing chess that evening,* we kept watching each other. 12. *When she had taken the children to school,* she could go and do her weekly shopping.

Ex. 10. (**A, B**) Complete the sentences, using suitable constructions.

1. Did anyone see you ...?
2. I hope your friend didn't hear you ...
3. A huge crowd watched the firemen ...
4. We could feel the sun ...
5. "Don't worry!" said the doctor. "I'll soon have you ..."
6. You must have been very late last night. I didn't even hear you ...
7. The pickpocket was observed ...
8. High on the mountain, he could perceive three small figures ...
9. I searched the desk, and discovered the letter ...
10. The woman caught her husband ...
11. Leave the car with me. I'll have it ...
12. I was asked if I had noticed anyone ...
13. When his leg was examined, it was found ...
14. Where's my umbrella? I thought I left it ...
15. Although the station was crowded, I soon spotted my friend ...
16. The assistant kept the customer ...
17. The iron's far too hot! Can't you smell the material ...?
18. I hope they won't keep us ...
19. They found the survivors ...
20. We all suddenly sensed danger ...

Ex. 11. (**B, C**) Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms from the right column.

1. The houses ... many years ago are not as convenient as the modern ones. 2. What is the number of apartment houses ... in the past few years? 3. The number of apartment houses ... for the population of Moscow is rapidly growing. 4. The workers ... this house used new construction methods. 5. At the conference they discussed new methods ... in building. 6. The new methods ... in the building of houses proved more effective. 7. Here are some samples of the products of this plant ... to different parts of the country. 8. These are the samples of products ... last month.

building
being built
built
used
using
sent
sending
being sent

Ex. 12. Open the brackets using the appropriate form of the Participle.

I. (**A, B**)
1. She went to work, (to leave) the child with the nurse. 2. (to lay) down on the soft couch, the child fell asleep at once. 3. (to wait) in the hall, he thought over the problem he was

planning to discuss with the old lady. 4. He left (to say) he would be back in two hours. 5. (to write) in very bad handwriting, the letter was difficult to read. 6. (to write) his first book, he worked endless hours till dawn. 7. (to spend) twenty years abroad, he was happy to be coming home. 8. (to be) away from home, he still felt himself part of the family. 9. (not to wish) to discuss the problem, he changed the conversation.

II. (B, C)
1. (to reject) by the publisher, the story was returned to the author. 2. (to reject) by publishers several times, the story was accepted by a weekly magazine. 3. (to wait) in the reception room, he thought over what he would say. 4. They reached the peak at dusk, (to leave) their camp with the first light. 5. The friends went out into the city (to leave) their cases at the left-luggage department. 6. (to leave) a note with the porter, he said he would be back in a half an hour. 7. (to write) in an archaic language, the book was difficult to read. 8. (to write) his first book, he used his own experiences. 9. (to be) away so long he was happy to be coming back.

Ex. 13. (B, C) Fill in the blanks with Passive Participles of the verb in brackets.

1. a) I cannot forget the story ... by him. b) They listened breathlessly to the story ... by the old man. (to tell). 2. a) One can't fail to notice the progress ... by our group during the last term. b) These are only a few of the attempts now ... to improve the methods of teaching adult students. (to make). 3. a) We could hear the noise of furniture ... upstairs. b) For a moment they sat silent ... by the story. (to move). 4. a) The monument ... on this square has been recently unveiled. b) The monument ... on this square will be soon unveiled. (to erect).

Ex. 14. (B, C) Translate the words in brackets.

I
1. We came up to the man (стоявшему на углу) and asked him the way. 2. Go to the shop and ask the man (стоящего там) to show you the way. 3. The man (стоящий у окна) was our teacher last year. 4. Did you see in what direction the man (стоявший здесь) went? 5. He wants to write a book (которая бы подытожила) his impressions of the trip. 6. The people (ожидающие вас) have been sitting here since 3 o'clock. 7. The people (ожидавшие вас) have just gone.

II
1. (Рассказав все, что он знал) the man left the room. 2. (Постучав дважды и не получив ответа) he came in. 3. (Толкнув дверь) he felt that it was not locked. 4. (Тихо закрыв дверь) he tiptoed into the room. 5. Each time (рассказывая об этом случае) she could not help crying. 6. (Приехав в гостиницу) she found a telegram awaiting her. 7. (Приехав сюда) many years before he knew those parts perfectly. 8. We took a trip in a boat down the river (и вернулись) when it was dark. 9. I felt very tired (проработав целый день) in the sun. 10. (Уронив монету на пол) he did not care to look for it in the darkness.

III
1. The conference (проходящая сейчас) in our city is devoted to the problems of enviroment protection. 2. Unable to attend the conference (проходившую тогда) at the University, we asked to inform us about its decisions. 3. They are now at a conference (которая проходит) at the University. 4. Suddenly I heard a sound of a key (поворачиваемого) in the lock.

5. (Когда их поставили в воду) the flowers opened their petals. 6. The flowers faded (так как их долгое время держали без воды).

Ex. 15. (**A, B**) Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Гордясь своим отцом, он часто говорит о нем. 2. Выступая на собрании, я забыл упомянуть об этом факте. 3. Как зовут человека, говорящего сейчас по телефону? 4. Наконец она увидела человека, спасшего ее сына. 5. Некоторые вопросы, которые затрагиваются в докладе, заслуживают серьезного внимания. 6. Они усыновили (adopted) мальчика, потерявшего родителей в авиационной катастрофе. 7. Не найдя нужной книги дома, я отправился в библиотеку. 8. Не выполнив работу вовремя, я вынужден был извиниться перед ними. 9. Пробыв в Лондоне около недели, я мог рассказать им много интересного. 10. Путешествуя по стране, мы познакомились со многими достопримечательностями. 11. Поняв, что не сможет выполнить всю работу одна, она попросила меня о помощи. 12. Зная, что у меня достаточно времени, чтобы дойти до кинотеатра, я не спешил. 13. Приехав в тот вечер к своему другу, я узнал, что его еще нет дома, но что он придет с минуты на минуту. 14. Увидев, что такси подъехало к дому, он взял вещи и быстро спустился вниз.

Ex. 16. (**B**) Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Это была одна из историй, которые часто рассказывала нам мать. 2. Он не мог забыть грустную историю, рассказанную ему старухой. 3. Он внимательно слушал историю, которую рассказывала одна из девочек. 4. Девочка, рассказывающая эту историю, уверена, что это правда. 5. Обещанная помощь не приходила. 6. Где человек, обещавший вам помочь? 7. Говорившая по телефону девушка наконец повесила трубку. 8. Говорившая с мом братом женщина улыбнулась мне. 9. Это один из студентов, принимающих участие в конференции. 10. Я поговорил с одним из студентов, принимавших участие в конференции два года назад. 11. Мы шли по дороге, ведущей в город. 12. Здесь уже давно нет дороги, которая раньше вела к озеру.

Ex. 17. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

I

1. Секретарь отправил подписанные директором письма. 2. Мы внимательно прочли присланную Иваном статью. 3. В этой комнате есть несколько сломанных стульев. 4. Он показал нам фотографию восстановленного здания Русского Музея в Петербурге. 5. Разбитый стакан лежал на столе. 6. Все полученные товары были немедленно отправлены на склад. 7. Он принес мне несколько иллюстрированных журналов. 8. Мы послали каталоги по указанному адресу. 9. Его неожиданный ответ удивил нас всех. 10. Прочитав много книг по этому вопросу, он смог сделать очень интересный доклад. 11. Войдя в комнату, он увидел нескольких приятелей, ожидавших его. 12. Проработав над докладом весь день, он чувствовал себя очень усталым. 13. Он ушел, сказав, что скоро вернется. 14. Сняв пальто и шляпу, он пошел наверх. 15. "До свидания," – сказал он, посмотрев на меня холодно. 16. Проспав несколько часов, он снова почувствовал себя хорошо. 17. Увидев отца, дети побежали ему навстречу. 18. Он сказал эти слова и улыбнулся. 19. Он сидел, облокотившись на стол. 20. Увидев меня, он сказал улыбнувшись: "Я очень рад вас видеть."

II

1. Картина, висевшая здесь в прошлом году, сейчас находится в музее. Картина, висевшая в вестибюле, привлекла мое внимание. 2. Я вчера разговаривал с одним инженером, работавшим несколько лет тому назад в порту. Мальчик, работавший в саду, не видел, как я подошел к нему. 3. Студенты, переводившие эту статью, говорят, что она очень трудная. Я подошел к студенту, переводившему какую-то статью, и спросил его, нужен ли ему словарь. 4. Я хочу прочитать эту книгу, так как мой приятель, читавший ее, говорит, что она очень интересная. Я спросил у молодого человека, читавшего газету, который час. 5. Он не заметил письма, лежавшего на столе. 6. Ученый, написавший эту статью, сделает доклад в нашем институте. 7. Все студенты, получившие приглашение на эту лекцию, присутствовали на ней. 8. Мне сказали, что женщина, сидевшая в коридоре, ждала директора.

Ex. 18. (**B, C**) Translate the sentences into English. Use the Present Participle instead of the *italicised* verbs.

Model: Он стоял у окна и *курил* сигарету.
He stood at the window *smoking* a cigarette.

1. Мы *оставили* ему записку и отправились на прогулку в парк. 2. Он *открыл* книгу и показал мне подчеркнутое место. 3. Она *улыбнулась* и вышла из комнаты. 4. Она тяжело *вздохнула* и налила себе вторую чашку кофе. 5. Она открыла зонтик и храбро *пошла* под дождь. 6. Мы *оставили* чемоданы в камере хранения и отправились на поиски комнаты в гостинице. 7. Он еще раз *посмотрел* на карту и сказал, что мы свернули не там. 8. Мы не застали его дома и оставили ему записку. 9. Я *не был уверен,* что она права, и ничего не сказал. 10. Она медленно *печатала* что-то на машинке и иногда спрашивала меня, как пишется то или другое слово.

REVISION

Ex. 19. (**B, C**) Replace the Infinitive in brackets by the appropriate form of the Participle.

1. She stayed (to lock) in her room, (to refuse) to come downstairs. 2. He had a good practical knowledge of the language, (to work) as an interpreter for many years. 3. They went out as they had come, (to see) nobody and (to see) by no one on their way. 4. Except for the grand piano and the pianist (to sit) before it, the stage was empty. 5. He looked so beautiful and peaceful, (to sit) in that chair under the tree. 6. He looked at the scene (to shake) to the depth of his heart. 7. The boy came out of the water, all blue and (to shake) from head to foot. 8. (To arrive) at the airport where he was to change, he had to wait for three hours for the connection. 9. (To arrive) in the town about twenty years before, he had succeeded thereafter beyond his wildest expectations. 10. (To support) by her elbow, Mary listened to their talk. 11. (To support) her by his arm, he helped her out of the carriage. 12. The girl was fascinated by the dark surface of the water (to reflect) the stars. 13. The young foliage of the trees, (to reflect) in the river, looked like lace. 14. I saw the figure of an old woman (to come) towards me. 15. My brother is a soldier just (to come) back home on leave. 16. He retired (to leave) the laboratory in the hands of a talented successor. 17. He retired (to turn) the laboratory into a big research centre. 18. (To finish) their meal, they went for a stroll in the park. 19. (To look) through the paper, he gave it to the secretary to be typed. 20. The room had a musty smell as though (not to live) in for quite a time. 21. My

father hates being disturbed when (to engage) in some kind of work. 22. He always keeps a diary while (to travel).

Ex. 20. (**B, C**) Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Я еще не просмотрел всех журналов, присланных нам из Петербурга. 2. Я уже проверил все сочинения, написанные студентами моей группы. 3. Все студенты, принимающие участие в этой работе, должны придти в институт сегодня в 6 часов вечера. 4. Так как у него было достаточно времени (имея много времени), он пошел на вокзал пешком. 5. Переходя через мост, я встретил Дмитрия. 6. Вы должны быть очень внимательны, играя в шахматы. 7. Будучи очень усталым, я решил остаться дома. 8. Мы долго сидели в саду, разговаривая о нашей поездке на юг. 9. Он положил спящего ребенка на диван. 10. Они быстро шли, разговаривая о чем-то с большим интересом. 11. Я вчера прочел очень интересный рассказ, описывающий жизнь шахтеров. 12. Читая этот рассказ, я встретил несколько интересных выражений. 13. Будучи хорошим инженером, он смог выполнить эту работу в короткий срок. 14. Он сидел за столом, просматривая корреспонденцию, полученную накануне. 15. Ожидая трамвая, я увидел Анну. 16. Железная дорога, соединяющая эту деревню с городом, была построена в прошлом году. 17. Рассказы, напечатанные в этом журнале, очень интересные. 18. Я надеюсь, что вы не повторите ошибок, сделанных в прошлом диктанте. 19. Человек, сидевший у открытого окна, смотрел на детей, игравших в саду. 20. Потушив свет, он лег спать. 21. Прочитав письмо, он положил его в ящик стола. 22. Войдя в комнату, он зажег свет, сел за стол и начал работать. 23. Услышав шаги в коридоре, я вышел из комнаты.

Ex. 21. (B, C). Open the brackets. Use the appropriate forms of the Participle or of the Infinitive.

1. He did not wish himself (to criticize). 2. She's been like that ever since she had her youngest (to kill) in Africa. 3. Do you want your things (to move) to room 305? 4. Nobody expected any measures (to take). 5. How can I make myself (to hear) in this uproar? 6. And I want everything (to deliver) at my hotel. 7. Nobody heard the door (to open). 8. When do you want the letters (to type)? 9. I had the dress (to copy) and sent the original back. 10. How could you leave that child (to cry) in the darkness? 11. There were so many people there and nobody saw it (to do). 12. They found him (to wander) in the park. 13. They found the lock (to break) and the man (to go). 14. He ordered the garage door (to lock and to seal). 15. How he got himself (to elect) is a mystery.

3.5 HAVE SOMETHING DONE

The construction is used to say that we arrange for someone else to do something for us. It means *заказать, нанять, пригласить кого-либо сделать что-либо.*
The Past Participle (*done/repaired/cleaned,* etc.) comes after the object.

Have + object + Past Participle

❒ I **have my coat cleaned** every month.
❒ We **had the roof repaired** yesterday.
❒ They **are having the house painted** at the moment.
❒ How often **do** you **have your car serviced**?
❒ She **has** just **had her car cleaned**.

Sometimes the model is used to say that something (often something not nice) happened to someone.

❒ He **had** all his money **stolen**. У него украли все его деньги.
❒ George **had** his nose **broken** in a fight. Джорджу разбили нос в драке.

EXERCISES

Ex. 22. (**A, B**) Answer the questions using the model.

Model: Did Ann make the dress yourself?
No, *she had it made.*

1. Did you cut your hair yourself?
2. Did they paint the garage themselves?
3. Did Jim cut that tree himself?
4. Did you repair the car yourself?
5. Do you clean your house yourself?

Ex. 23. (**A, B**) Complete the situation using **to have smth done.**

1. Sue is at the hairdresser's at the moment. She ...
2. Ann's watch had been broken, she took it to a jeweller's. Now it is working Ann ...
3. What are the workmen doing in your garden? Oh, I ...
4. Can I see the holiday photographs you took? I'm afraid not, I ...

Ex. 24. (**B, C**) Translate into English using the pattern **to have smth done**.

Model: 1) Я делаю прическу в парикмахерской каждую пятницу.
I have my hair done every Friday.
2) Здесь вам почистят пальто за одни сутки.
Here you can **have your coat cleaned** overnight.

1. Вам надо отгладить и почистить костюм. 2. Мне надо сфотографироваться. 3. Здесь можно отдать в чистку плащ? 4. Вам не починят кран до понедельника. 5. Где вам шьют? 6. Где вам шили это платье? 7. У него украли документы в прошлом году. 8. Ей выкрасили кухню в светло-зеленый цвет. 9. Она сшила себе новое пальто. 10. Мне нужно сделать прическу.

3.6 THE ABSOLUTE PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION

It is a construction in which the participle has the "subject" of its own. This "subject" is **not** the subject of the sentence.

❒ *The letter* **having been written**, he went out to post it.
Письмо было написано, и он пошел на почту отправить его.

❒ *The room* **being** dark, I couldn't see him.
Так как в комнате было темно, я не видел его.

Though formally independent of the sentence the absolute construction is a logical adverbial modifier of time, cause, condition and is rendered in Russian by means of an adverbial clause *(так как; хотя; когда; после того; как ...).*

EXERCISES

Ex. 25. (A, B). Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

1. Many men preceded Newton in the field of mechanics, perhaps the most outstanding being Galileo. 2. Red phosphorus being a more stable form, its reactions are much less violent. 3. The fuel exhausted, the engine stopped. 4. Probably the first metals used by man were gold, silver, and copper, these metals being found in nature in the native or metallic state. 5. Electrons moving through a wire, electrical energy is generated. 6. Mars has two satellites, Deimos ("Horror") and Phobos ("Fear"), both discovered during the favourable opposition of 1877. 7. A magnet being broken in two, each piece becomes a magnet with its own pair of poles. 8. Many technical and scientific problems having been solved, the first space flight could be realized. 9. An electron leaving the surface, the metal becomes positively charged. 10. The plant supplied with good raw materials, the quality of products has been much improved.

Ex. 26. (A, B) Replace the clauses with the Absolute Participial Construction.

Model: As the book was translated into Russian, it could be read by everybody.
The book being translated into Russian, it could be read by everybody.

1. As the rain had ruined my hat, I had to buy a new one. 2. After this was done, they set off with light hearts. 3. As few people were buying his pencils, he could hardly earn a living. 4. As there was a severe storm at sea, the steamer couldn't leave the port. 5. As it was Sunday, the library was closed. 6. As the weather was fine, they went for a walk. 7. As the Professor was ill, the lecture was put off.

3.7 REVISION

Ex. 1. (B, C) Supply where necessary the particle "to" before the Infinitives.

1. He was making every effort to induce his father ... change his mind. 2. But I got him ... talk. 3. Nevertheless, on those mornings he could not bring himself ... read the political correspondents' gossip-columns. 4. I knew that he would never encourage his daughter ... marry a fortune. 5. As he answered her question, I noticed her ... look surprised. 6. I could feel the blood ... leave my face in a rush. 7. Understand once and for all, I won't have you ... say this sort of thing. 8. The doctor had expressly forbidden him ... talk. 9. He did not hear the car ... arrive. 10. He had never known his uncle ... express any sort of feeling. 11. I wasn't prepared to let him ... go out alone. 12. He was not only giving them the chance, he was pressing them ... do so. 13. I shall try to make the thing ... work. 14. They watched Esther ... return after a time. 15. He drew out a stiff, plain pocket-book as I had often seen him ... use it in meetings, and began to write down numbers.

Ex. 2. (**C**) Supply Infinitives and ing-forms for the following texts:

I

Saturday. It was the day on which he had promised ...[1] his landlady (to pay). He had expected something ...[2] up all through the week (to turn). Yet he had found no work. All he could do now was ...[3] her that he could not pay the bill (to tell). But he hadn't the courage ...[4] the woman (to face). It was the middle of June. The night was warm. He made up his mind ...[5] out (to stay). ...[6] down the Embankment, he kept ...[7] to himself that he had always tried ...[8] what he thought best, but everything had gone wrong (to walk, to say, to do). He was ashamed of ...[9] so many lies to his friends (to tell). It had been absurd ...[10] his pride ...[11] him from ...[12] for assistance (to let, to prevent, to ask). Now his lies made it impossible for him ...[13] to anyone for help (to turn). But it was no good ...[14] about it (to think).

II

When my sister Anne was six years old, I saved her from ...[1] (to kidnap). At the end of the war there were rumours about strange men who lured little children into quiet places with promises of toys and sweets, persuaded them into ...[2] about their parents and if the parents turned out ...[3] of no further interest to them, they usually left the children ...[4] their way home in tears (to talk, to be, to find). So my parents spent a great deal of time ...[5] Anne about ...[6] to strange men (to warn, to talk). One day, Anne went out ...[7] in the street after tea and could not be found an hour later (to play). We looked through ...[8] streets, but no one had seen her (to surround). My father went off in the car ...[9] for her, and I decided ...[10] in the park (to look, to search). Some boys there told me that they had seen a small girl in a blue dress ...[11] a cricket match, and someone else said that she had been seen ...[12] off with a man who was pushing a bicycle (to watch, to walk). The chances were against this child ...[13] my sister, but I walked off in the direction in which they had been seen ...[14] (to be, to walk). This brought me to a back alley. I called Anne's name, and was surprised ...[15] her voice ...[16] back (to hear, to call).

(From "An English Grammar Practice Book")

Ex. 3. (**B, C**) Translate the following using Infinitives or ing-forms.

1. Жена фермера приходила каждый день, чтобы убрать комнаты. (to clean) 2. Ему посоветовали не рассказывать им историю своей жизни. (to advise) 3. Девочке велели разлить в чашки чай. (to tell) 4. Слышали, как несколько минут тому назад они спорили на террасе. (to hear) 5. Фил сунул деньги в карман, не сосчитав их. (count) 6. Полагают, что он глубоко привязан к своей семье. (to believe) 7. Было известно, что он пишет книгу о нравах. (to know) 8. Через окно можно было видеть, что водитель ждет у машины. (to see) 9. Я был слишком возбужден, чтобы есть. (to be excited) 10. Сообщили, что он изменил свое решение. (to report) 11. Я знал, что он не способен принимать решения. (be capable of) 12. Он любил смеяться над теми, кто был робок. (be fond of) 13. Ему разрешили оставить у них свою фамилию и адрес. (to allow) 14. Симон и Дик остались разговаривать в гостиной. (to leave) 15. Он без труда найдет себе работу в Нью-Йорке. (no difficulty) 16. Может быть, вам интересно посмотреть, что за человек этот Роберт. (be of interest) 17. Нас оставили, чтобы мы посмотрели фильм. (to leave) 18. Его не видно целую неделю. Говорят, что он в отпуске. (to say) 19. Ему велели прийти сюда к мистеру Эбботу. (to tell) 20. Мы нашли Фокса. Он ожидал нас на террасе. (Фокса нашли ожидающим нас на террасе) (to find) 21. Он наблюдал, как люди торопились к поездам. (watch) 22. Я слышал, как он звал нас. (hear) 23. Его присутствие было

неожиданным, потому что говорили, что он путешествует на востоке. (to say) 24. Я посмотрел на свою мать, которая счастливо смеялась над шутками Тома.

3.8 TESTS

I

1. Прибыв до открытия конференции, они успели осмотреть город.
2. Она сидела и улыбалась.
3. Этот человек, сидящий у окна, вчера сделал интересный доклад.
4. Когда я смотрел этот фильм, я вспоминал свое детство.
5. Я прочел несколько книг этого автора, переведенных на русский язык.
6. Люди, ожидавшие вас, только что ушли.
7. Узнав его поближе (got to know), я понял, какой это хороший человек.
8. Человек, только что стоявший здесь, ушел.
9. Внимательно прочитав доклад, я нашел в нем несколько ошибок.
10. Будучи очень расстроенным, он решил уйти, не прощаясь.

II

1. Дома, построенные много лет назад, не столь удобны, как современные.
2. Подумав, что он может заинтересоваться этой книгой, я посоветовал ему прочитать ее.
3. Постучав дважды, они решили, что дома никого нет.
4. Не чувствуя себя виноватым (guilty), он отказался извиниться.
5. Некоторые марки, собранные им, очень интересны.
6. Будучи опытным врачом, он сразу понял, что случилось.
7. Женщина, открывшая мне дверь, выглядела очень мило.
8. Он показал мне список товаров, экспортируемых этой фирмой.
9. Он лежал на диване и читал книгу.
10. Подумав, что она сказала это в шутку, я рассмеялся.

III

1. Проработав целый день на солнце, я чувствовал себя очень усталым.
2. Приехав в гостиницу, он обнаружил телеграмму, ожидавшую его здесь.
3. Они стояли и громко разговаривали.
4. Опаздывая на переговоры, они ушли до окончания вечера.
5. Сочинения, которые пишут современные дети, очень отличаются от тех, которые писали дети 20-х годов.
6. Она показала мне письмо, написанное в 1941 году.
7. Я купил книгу, содержащую сведения о системе образования в США.
8. Услышав шаги, он поднял голову.
9. Моя бабушка, рассказавшая мне эту сказку, живет в городе.
10. Купив билеты, он поспешил на платформу.

IV

1. Сказав это, он вышел из комнаты.
2. Полученные вчера известия произвели на всех большое впечатление.
3. Я не мог переодеться, так как оставил свои вещи на вокзале.

4. Не зная причины ее отсутствия, я решил позвонить ей.
5. Плачущая девочка была голодна.
6. Сказка, рассказанная мамой, испугала (scare) ребенка.
7. Будучи занят, он не сразу услышал меня.
8. Прочитав много книг Диккенса, он хорошо знал этого писателя.
9. Бабушка смотрела на детей, играющих во дворе.
10. Как вам нравится книга, которую сейчас обсуждают?

V

1. Ученые, принимавшие участие в этой экспедиции, были награждены нашим правительством.
2. Потеряв ключ, я не смог войти в комнату.
3. Лежа на диване, он смотрел телевизор.
4. Мальчик, бегущий мимо дома, вдруг остановился.
5. Поздоровавшись со всеми, он вошел в свой кабинет.
6. Будучи ребенком, он не смог понять, что случилось.
7. В доме, который строится на площади, будет большой магазин.
8. Очень интересно читать сочинения, написанные детьми.
9. Повернув налево, мы увидели большое белое здание.
10. Я показал ему список книг (list), прочитанных в прошлом году.

SOME CONFUSED OR CONFUSING ELEMENTS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

1. SOME PREPOSITIONS CONFUSED

Prepositions as a class of words, are used to show how things are related in space or in time; they express many abstract relations and serve to connect the words in a sentence. Many prepositions are polysemantic, and some prepositions express similar meanings. We shall only deal here with a number of prepositions that are often confused with one another.

AT, BY AND WITH

At indicates general location: He is staying at his grandmother's.

By has two meanings: (1) a) by means of – We travelled by bus;
b) method (how we do smth) – The boy broke the window by throwing a stone at it.
(2) next to – Stand by your brother.

With indicates (1) accompaniment: Come with me.
(2) instrument (what we use): The boy broke the window with his ball.

NOTE the difference between **by** and **with** in passive sentences:

- ❒ The window was broken by a boy. (Who did the action?)
- ❒ The window was broken with a stone. (How was the action done?)

NB! When *by* is an adverb, it is not followed by a noun/pronoun. It functions as an adverbial modifier of place: It's bound to be a comfort to him to know that you are standing *by*.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (A, B) Select the proper preposition from the two in brackets.

1. Why don't you stay (with/by) us for the night? 2.You will have to stay (by/with) the baby while I go to the store. 3. You had better stay (at/by) your Aunt's until we send for you. 4. "Oh, he can sleep (by/with) me if there is no extra bed", said Jack. 5. I always travel to the States (by/with) Boeings. 6. Wait for me (at/by) the station/at the Information Desk. 7. If he goes (by/with) the six o'clock train, he can get there in an hour. 8. "If you come (with/by) the lake steamer," he wrote, "it will take you twelve hours." 9. For six hours we stayed (by/at) his house, waiting for the storm to cease. 10. For about an hour we waited (by/at) his house for him. 11. His brother always stood (with/by) him when he did something dangerous. 12. He got everything he wanted (by/with) hard work. 13. He got everything he wanted (by/with) flowers and chocolates.

BETWEEN AND AMONG

Use *between* for **two** people or things. Use *among* for more than two.
E.g.: *The car was wedged between two trees. They could not even agree among themselves.*

NB!

1. *Between* is also used when the speaker sees the surrounding objects separately, there are not very many of them, and each one is clearly distinct from the others: *Switzerland lies between France, Italy, Austria and Germany.*
2. Words like *divide* and *share* are followed by *between* when we use several singular nouns: *He shared his property between his wife, his daughter and his sister. I divide my time between teaching, writing and gardening.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 2. (A, B) Select the proper preposition.

1.The fleeing animal was soon lost (between/among) the trees. 2. The three disconsolate hikers couldn't raise a tenner* (between/among) them. 3. "May misunderstanding never come (among/between) us", said the bride to her husband. 4. (Between/Among) the Indians on the one hand, and starvation on the other, the early settlers had the bad time of it. 5. (Among/Between) all the days of the week, I like Saturday best.

IN AND INTO

In, the preposition, is used only when no change from outside to inside is meant. *Into* must be used when an area or a substance is penetrated.
E.g. Forbidden to leave the premises, he spent his time walking *in* his garden. He walked right *into* the room without knocking.
NB! When the area/substance is not mentioned, we use the **adverb in**: Walk right in!

EXERCISES

Ex. 3. (A, B) Select the proper word from the two in brackets.

1.Most people cannot refrain from dropping something (in/into) a blind man's cup. 2. He drove the nail (in/into) the wall as high as he could reach. 3. Someone carelessly dropped a lighted cigarette(in/into) a pile of rubbish. 4. He thrust a pipe (in/into) his mouth and began to fill it. 5. After searching all over the house, they found him walking (in/into) the garden. 6. Something soft and slippery fell (in/into) her lap. 7. He drove from France (in/into) Italy. 8. How did he get (in/into)? 9. I divided the loaf (in/into) five parts. 10. "Let me (in/into)," he cried, and forced the door by main strength.

BESIDE, BESIDES AND EXCEPT

Beside means "alongside of, at the side of." *Besides* means "in addition to", or plus (+). *Except* means "excluding," or minus (–).
E.g. We sat beside the water. I haven't any other living relations besides this cousin of mine. They are all relatives of mine except Olivia.
NB! *Besides* can also be an adverb and act in the sentence as a parenthesis, which is separated by commas: I haven't the time, and besides, I am not interested.

---

* tenner = ten pounds (inf.)

EXERCISES

Ex. 4. (A, B) Select the proper preposition from the brackets.

1.The dog sat (besides/beside) his master. 2. They found nobody in the house (beside/besides) the caretaker. 3. (Besides/Beside) the lake grew beautiful wild daffodils. 4. How many people (except/besides) you are going to the game? 5. May I sit (beside/besides) you at the concert? 6. (Besides/except) a bottle of brandy, we drank a bottle of champagne and some beer. 7.I like all colours (besides/except) grey.

AS AND LIKE

As means in the role of, or in the capacity of. *Like* means manner (comparison).
E.g. He ran like an athlete. He acted as usher at his brother's wedding.

EXERCISES

Ex.5 (A, B) Select the proper preposition from the two in brackets.

1. The scouts worked (as/like) beavers to finish the cabin on time. 2. Stop that nonsense! You are acting (as/like) a baby. 3. The manager hired him to act (as/like) a fool in one of Shakespeare's plays. 4. The water felt (as/like) ice to her tender skin. 5. I feel (as/like) a fool, having all this fuss made over me. 6. (As/Like) a nurse I can't approve of your decision to leave hospital so soon, but (as/like) a mother I understand you perfectly.

Ex.6 (B, C) Supply the proper preposition from the box.

between, among, in, into, as, like, at, by, with, besides, beside, except

1.The thief dropped the watch _____ his pocket and ran. 2. I left him standing _____ the wreck of his car. 3. I acted _____ chairman at the meeting of our club yesterday. 4. As soon as he saw the child fall _____ the water, he jumped after her. 5. Come early; there will be nobody home _____ my brother and me. 6. Some people can say one thing and think another, but _____ me it is different. 7. There were two people _____ the station _____ me. 8. "Let's go _____ that store first," he suggested to his friend. 9. "My theory is," he continued, that the letters were put _____ the wrong envelopes. 10. He stayed _____ his aunt's during the whole of his childhood. 11. Every time I go to see that actor, I like the way he grips you _____his fine work. 12. Even _____ the bankers of Wall Street there are very few who would not obey such a law. 13. As we proceeded to cross the avenue, we realized that a tremendous number of soldiers were stationed _____ that very spot. 14. _____ the intersection of Broadway and Fifty-ninth Street there was a huge traffic jam. 15. He had a very large box of candy _____ him on the table. 16. Yesterday he came to see his little niece and brought a pretty puppy _____ him. 17. "Look," he said, pulling up a chair _____ the bed. 18. I myself have been friendly _____ him for at least nine years. 19. So here I was with somewhere _____ one and six months left to live, growing more melancholy every hour – and then, all of a sudden, in comes Landy. 20. She paused on the pavement, feeling the envelope _____ her fingers. 21. She took one puff and laid the cigarette _____ the ash-tray. 22. I saw something lying _____ the wheels of the train. 23. She was standing laughing _____

a crowd of her admirers. 24. What's the difference _____ a crow and a rook? 25. I have a number of poets and actors _____ my friends. 26. She went to the party dressed _____ a bunny (зайчик). 27. It's funny how she always talks _____. a distinguished professor! 28. They all went on to learn Latin and Greek and splendid things _____ that; I would make all boys learn English: and then I would let the clever ones learn Latin _____ an honour, and Greek _____ a treat (W. Churchill). 29. A man who wastes money is known _____ a spendthrift. 30. Their house is _____ the Mosque, _____ the roadside. 31. They travelled through all parts of Great Britain _____ Ulster. 32. I like wandering _____ the woods all by myself. 33. They had brought Lulu _____ them and had spent some time throwing the ball _____ the sea. 34. The tall castle they had built _____ the water's edge had already disappeared. 35. He knelt _____ her, pushing away the sand.

Ex. 7. (B, C) Translate into Russian using the proper prepositions.

1. Они потушили пожар водой из колодца. 2. Я провел у дяди все лето. 3. Она осталась с больной сестрой на всю ночь. 4. На столе у моей кровати была тарелка с виноградом. 5. Их маленький домик стоял в лесу, спрятанный между большими деревьями. 6. Мы живем у моря; я каждый день вижу его из своего окна. 7. Вы можете поехать туда на автобусе. 8. Он работал водителем автобуса полгода. 9. В Греции, как в Италии, при приготовлении пищи употребляют много оливкового масла. 10. Я воспользовался своим башмаком как молотком. 11. Он наколол (chopped) дров топором и сложил их у печки. 12. После завтрака мы хотели повезти маму (take ... for a beautiful drive away) за город, но папа предложил использовать машину для поездки на холмы, где были его любимые ручьи с форелью. 13. В полдень жара в этих широтах (latitudes) очень сильная, и приходится скрываться (take refuge) от нее в доме. 14. Это только между нами с тобой. 15. Я не люблю бывать среди незнакомых людей. 16. Кроме него там было еще двое. 17. Миссис Перл положила последнюю страницу рукописи на диван рядом с собой. 18. Я никогда не встречала таких как ты. 19. Она медленно опустила руку (reached) в свою сумочку и достала очки. 20. Между ними нет большой разницы. 21. Он шел легко и стремительно, как молодой человек. 22.Ты, возможно, займешься нефтяным бизнесом, как твой папа. 23. Кто был вчера у Петровых кроме вас двоих? 24. Все кроме Васи пришли вовремя.

Ex. 8 (B, C) Fill in the blanks. Use beside or besides.

1.Who's the pretty blonde sitting _____ Keith? 2. _____ languages, we have to study literature and history. 3. Who was at the theatre _____ Anne and John? 4. I don't like this dress; _____, it's too expensive. 5. "Perhaps you'll be lucky this time," he said as he settled himself _____ her in the car. 6. It's too late to go out, and _____, you haven't done your work. 7. _____ the apple-trees we've got a few very tall pear-trees in the garden. 8. I don't feel like going anywhere. _____, it's starting to rain.9. Don't stand _____ that wall – it doesn't look safe. 10. I don't like him; he is careless and lazy, and _____, he is impertinent.

Ex. 9. (B, C) Fill in the blanks. Use *with* or *by* with the Passive.

1.This book was written _____ my friend. 2. They were shocked _____ his attitude. 3. I was annoyed _____ him. 4. I was annoyed _____ the way the boy spoke to his little

brother. 5. One person was killed _____ the fallen tree. 6. The victim was killed _____ a heavy stone. 7. There was a very bad accident in the mountains that winter: three people were killed _____ the snow avalanche.8. She always expects to be pleased (угождать) _____ all and everyone. 9. The capricious old lady was finally pleased _____ a lot of flattery and numerous expensive gifts.

Ex.10. (B, C) Dictation-translation.

1.Оставайся вечером с нами. 2. Он подошел и сел рядом со мной на скамью. 3. Она сидела на стуле у двери 4. Ты ведешь себя как подросток! 5. Он всегда открывает письма ножом. 6. Кроме того, что он съел три пирожных, он съел десять шоколадок! 7. Они привезли довольствие (supplies) на поезде. 8.Пришли все кроме ваших студентов. 9. Вор, наверное, вошел через заднюю дверь. 10. Нынешнее лето я проведу у своей подруги под Москвой. 11. Какие могут быть тайны между нами! 12. Ты теперь среди друзей. 13. Раздели это яблоко на четыре части. 14. Это место известно в городе как Пять Углов. 15. Давай встретимся у Пяти Углов.

2. THE COMPLEX SENTENCE

A complex sentence is a hierarchical structure, which consists of an independent (main) clause and one or more dependent (subordinate) clauses. The subordinate clauses may function grammatically as subject, object, predicative, attribute or adverbial modifier in a main clause. The subordinate clauses are generally introduced by subordinating conjunctions and connectives. These conjunctions and connectives are often polysemantic and multifunctional, which may cause confusion in usage and understanding. We shall consider here only those types of sentences and connectives which may present some difficulties in understanding and translating.

2.1 SUBJECT CLAUSES

Subordinate subject clauses are introduced by the following connectives:

that	– то, что
what	– то, что; что ... , так это ...
if, whether	– частица *ли* после сказуемого в предложении-подлежащем
who	– кто; тот, кто
whoever	– кто бы ... ни ...; всякий, кто ...
which	– кто из; который из
whatever	– всё, что; что бы ни ...
where	– то, где; вопрос о том, где; то, куда; вопрос о том, куда
when	– то, когда; вопрос о том, когда
why	– то, почему; вопрос о том, почему
how	– то, как; вопрос о том, как
how + adjective	– насколько + прилагательное

E.g. That he will never agree to this plan is absolutely clear. – То, что он никогда не согласится на этот план, совершенно ясно.
Whether he will agree to this plan is not quite clear. – Еще не совсем ясно, согласится ли он на этот план.

How important it is to start the work right away is clear to everybody. – Всем ясно, насколько важно начать эту работу немедленно.

NOTE: When a subject clause is placed at the end of the sentence, it is introduced by the anticipatory it: It is surprising how your voice hasn't changed.

EXERCISES

Ex.1.(A, B) Translate the sentences into Russian.

1.That electrons compose the atom was settled, but what an electron is was yet to be discovered. 2.It is very difficult for me to know whether to say yes or no. 3. Whether there is life on Mars has been a most intriguing problem since the exploration of space started. 4. How this can happen may be shown on a diagram. 5. What seems to us today to be a banal truth was by no means trivial and commonplace six centuries ago. 6. That the environment should and does affect man in a great variety of ways is a point beyond discussion. 7. When this should be done remains to be settled yet. 8. Why he did it and when has been puzzling me these two days. 9. Which of them is going to win, has suddenly become a matter of primary importance for everybody. 10. Whatever they say or do becomes immediately known to the headmaster. 11. It is my belief that they were lost while trying to locate their companions. 12. That he exceeded his authority in this instance seems practically certain.

Ex.2. (B, C) Translate from Russian into English.

1. Тот, кто не знает этого, не знает ничего. 2. То, что я пытался узнать, было очень важно для нашего расследования. 3. Кто шляпку украл – тот и тетку прибил (do smb in). 4. Пыталась ли она когда-либо изменить это или нет, было спрятано в ее собственном сердце. 5. Удивительно, как мало изменился этот район. 6. Что мне больше всего нравится в полковнике, так это его усы. (Больше всего в полковнике мне нравятся его усы). 7. Что бы вы ни делали, не говорите сразу «да». 8. Что бы она ни намеревалась (mean) сказать, осталось несказанным. 9. Вопрос о том, куда им переезжать, не обсуждался. 10. Встретятся ли они когда-нибудь еще – загадка. 11. Насколько трудно было выполнить эту работу, видно из ее дневника. 12. Кто бы это ни сделал – гений. 13. То, что вы сделали, непростительно. 14. То, что нравилось им, восхищало меня. 15. Когда вы это сделаете, мне не важно. 16. Как вы это сделаете – совсем другой вопрос (matter). 17. Как вы это собираетесь сделать, мне не ясно. 18. Вопрос о том, есть ли жизнь подобная жизни на Земле еще где-нибудь во вселенной, всегда интересовал ученых.

2.2 PREDICATIVE CLAUSES

A subordinate predicative clause together with the link-verb in the main clause forms a compound nominal predicate to the subject of the main clause. The connectives introducing predicative clauses are the same as with subject clauses (See p. 349).

E.g. This decision **is what we have been hoping for**. – Это решение – как раз *то, на что мы надеялись.*
But his chief trouble **was that he did not know any editor or writer ...** – Но главная его проблема *заключалась в том, что он не знал ни одного редактора или писателя.*

Sometimes we need to translate the link-verb *to be* into Russian. The recommended ways to do it are:

состоит в том, что ...
представляет собой то, что ...
является тем, что ...
это то, что ...

EXERCISES

Ex. 3. (A, B) Translate into Russian.

1. This was what I wished for. 2. This book was what is often referred to as an autobiographical novel. 3. The main reason for studying the sentence is that you may be able to handle it more effectively. 4. My idea is that he will give up as soon as he sees that the struggle is hopeless. 5. The mistake was that he had never had to earn his living. 6. The boy's only excuse was that he had had no time to study. 7. This was why he had thought of Bosinney. 8. The greatest difficulty is how you are to get across the border. 9. It is wonderful and beautiful how a man and his dog will stick to one another, through thick and thin. 10. The most important thing is whether they can deliver the parcel in time.

Ex.4. (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Самое неприятное условие заключается в том, что мы сами должны поехать за товаром. 2. Его предложение состоит в том, что они изготовят и доставят мебель сами. 3. Такая работа – это то, что называется настоящим искусством. 4. Самая большая загадка – это как он сюда попал. 5. Самое смешное в этом то, что я не знаю ответа на ваш вопрос. 6. Единственное, чего я не знаю – это знает ли он. 7. Ваша поддержка – это то, в чем она сейчас нуждается больше всего. 8. Поэтому они и послали за вами. 9. Причина в том, что ты не хочешь понимать. 10. Его самая большая надежда – это то, что опыт удастся.

2.3 CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY THAT, WHAT AND WHICH

Compare the following sentences:

1. I told you **everything (that)** I know. – Я рассказал вам все, что знаю.
2. I told you **what** I know. – Я рассказал вам, **что** я знаю.
3. I told you about the plan, **which is enough for the present**. – Я рассказал вам про план, **чего на настоящий момент достаточно. (И этого на настоящий момент достаточно.)**
4. I told you **(that)** I know about your plan. – Я сказал вам, что я знаю про ваш план.

That in the first sentence refers to the pronoun before it, and repeats its meaning.

What in the second sentence does not have any noun or pronoun before it . The general meaning of *what* is *the thing(s) that*. *What* cannot be used if there is a noun or pronoun in the main clause, which the subordinate clause modifies.

Which in the third sentence does not refer to the word *plan*, it refers to the whole main clause *I told you about the plan*: not the plan is enough for the present, but the fact that I

told you about it. In such cases *which* is always used (*that* or *what* are impossible, and there is always a comma before *which*).

That in the fourth sentence is a conjunction, and it just connects the subordinate clause to the main clause and indicates the relationship between them. In such cases only *that* is used.

NOTE 1: *That* as connective or conjunction is always unstressed; *what* is always stressed.

COMPARE:
(The stressed words are shown with the bold type)

I **told** you that I **know**.	I **told** you **what** I know.
(informed you about the fact)	(the thing that)

NOTE 2: The conjunction/connective *that* may be omitted; the connectives *what* and *which* are never omitted.

EXERCISES

Ex. 5. (A, B) Supply *that* or *what*.

1. The thing is _____ I can't do without the dictionary today. 2. You should have apologised to Anne, that's _____ I'm driving at. 3. All _____ glitters is not gold. 4. _____ they will get there at noon is out of the question. 5. _____ puzzled us was the way he disappeared after the concert. 6. He'll do anything _____ will be necessary to help Lizzie, there's no doubt about that. 7. The point is _____ she always says _____ she means. 8. I'm absolutely sure _____ he'll do nothing _____ might do her any harm. 9. _____ I'd like to know is whether he'll have some time to spare on Monday morning. 10. That was all _____ he wanted to ask us. 11. _____ he should have refused to go to the skating-rink is very strange. 12. I'll do my best to get everything _____ you'll want for your work. 13. _____ he really said was _____ he was feeling unwell. 14. _____ I mean is _____ the proof of the pudding is in the eating.

(From *A Practical Guide To Better English*)

Ex. 6. (B, C) Translate into Russian.

1. You'll ask me anything that I don't make clear. 2.He reached up and pulled a red rambler(вьющуюся) rose from a cluster which blocked the window. 3. The thought that his adored daughter should learn of that old scandal hurt his pride too much. 4. He had grown accustomed to the idea that she led her own life apart from his. 5. They were discussing hospitals, which caused him suddenly to express himself upon the whole hospital system. 6. He told Colonel Julyan that he had heard Robert coming back with the car. 7. I'm sorry for what I said to you the other day. 8. That was what she did this morning on reaching the attic. 9. That those tribes knew how to use fire is shown by a few surviving pictures. 10. This was exactly what the housekeeper was waiting in the hall to do. 11. What I'm about to do is very agreeable to me. 12. They went to the theatre together, which suited my purpose perfectly. 13. I hope that the little that I've been able to do has been of some use. 14. I have lost all that makes life agreeable. 15. She wore very short skirts to the office, which distracted her male colleagues a great deal. 16. This Cummings character obviously guessed that we would try to fix a transmitter in her clothes, which is why Mrs Mitchelson was instructed to wear a two-piece swimsuit and no jewelry.

Ex. 7. (B, C) Fill in the proper connectives: that, what or which.

I am afraid _____ you overlook the circumstance _____ you have been requested to do it immediately. 2. I felt certain now _____ I had seen him somewhere. 3. He was deeply displeased by _____ had occurred that day. 4. She walked ten kilometres that day, _____ was pretty good for a woman of 68. 5. You can have everything _____ you like. 6. I'm sorry. That's all _____ I know. 7. Steve went out with Susan, _____ made Jane very angry. 8. Do you want to know _____ I've learnt? 9. The thing _____ I'd like is a digital camera. 10. _____ I'd like is a trip to Turkey. 11. You are the one _____ knows where to go. 12. _____ she and Elliott wished to find out from Dr. Nelson was _____ Larry intended to do. 13. He told me all _____ he knew. 14. I will not forget _____ you have told me. 15. He was cruel to the poor boy, _____ surprised me at the time.

Ex. 8. (B, C) Tick the sentences in which connectives may be omitted (✓).

1. They don't seem to speak with one another, which is somehow strange. 2. I gave her just the money that she needed. 3. I passed him a large glass of juice which he drank immediately. 4. Show me the book that you have read. 5. The air which surrounds us consists of various elements. 6. Where is the girl that asked about Mr. Wilson? 7. Thank you for all that you have done for me. 8. Are you not glad that we came? 9. I don't understand what you are driving at. 10. We scarcely noticed that it had stopped raining. 11. The thought instantly occurred to me that the paper was a note from Augustus. 12. There was a coyness about her very way of pouring out the tea, which Tom quite revelled in. 13. It was not the sort of house that he was accustomed to. 14. Are you saying that you haven't known about it? 15.I gave her everything that she could wish for.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15

Ex. 9. Translate into English using *that, which* or *what* where necessary.

1.Где та ваза, что стояла на пианино? 2. Я могу догадаться, что ты собираешься сказать. 3. Я до сих пор помню колыбельную, что напевал мне мой папа, когда я была совсем маленькой. 4. Он сдал экзамен с первого раза, что сильно удивило его самого. 5. Куда подевалась машина, что вечно гудела у нас под окнами? 6. Я не понимаю, что тебя так рассердило. 7. Они были совершенно равнодушны к тому, что он делал и что он говорил. 8. Ее всегда сдерживала (was held back) мысль, что людям может быть неинтересно с ней. 9. То, что в новой должности (capacity) он проявил большой талант и добился (obtain) большого успеха, не подлежит сомнению. 10. То, что тебе необходимо (need) – это то, в чем нуждается каждая работающая девушка, – отпуск, то есть, отдых. 11. Это как раз то, чего я не понимаю. 12. Беда в том, что я по вечерам сонлив. 13. Ты знаешь, что в Голландии выращивают тюльпаны в расчете на квадратную милю (by the square mile)? 14. Секрет дела в том, что в характере Джона (has a disposition) защищать и покровительствовать (patronize). 15. Он всегда приходит с цветами, что, конечно, приятно. 16. Я знала, что вы придете. 17. Я вижу, что тебе не хочется идти туда. 18. Где книга, что я вчера принесла из библиотеки? 19. Секретарь говорит, что он уже ушел. 20. Ты ведь знаешь, что я имею в виду?

2.4 ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

Adverbial clauses refer to a verb, an adjective or an adverb of the main clause in the function of an *adverbial modifier* (обстоятельства). Adverbial clauses are connected with the main

clause by means of subordinating conjunctions and connectives. Some conjunctions are polysemantic and can introduce different types of adverbial clauses, which may be confusing. Besides, many English conjunctions, prepositions and adverbs are identical in form, which also may create for students some difficulties in understanding the meaning of a sentence. It is necessary to differentiate them by their functions.

Prepositions connect *phrases* to the words they modify. *Example:* After the presentation the guests will be able to buy some products.

Subordinating conjunctions connect *clauses* to the words they modify. *Examples:* After the presentation is over, the guests will be able to buy some products. Once the performance starts, they will not allow entrance.

The adverb, unlike the preposition and conjunction, is a *part of the sentence – an adverbial modifier. Example:* Once the towns were independent entities.

EXERCISES

Ex. 10. (A, B) Define the function of the words in *italics*. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. *Before* you read his answer, tell me the circumstances occasioning the controversy. 2. The rope will tighten considerably *after* it has been soaked. 3. *Until* about 1900 smoking was almost entirely a masculine habit to be indulged in private in special smoking rooms and smoking compartments. 4. *Once* introduced to Europe, the habit of smoking spread round the world. 5. I was hoping that *once* I was in the right area, I would get some fresh images. 6. No matter what they teach you *once* you believe it's true. 7. If you are wise you will leave *before* he sees you. 8. I know what we shall have for dinner, *for* I have seen the menu. 9. I haven't seen him *since*, not *once*. 10. *For* several days we didn't hear from them. 11. Don't make any hasty decisions *until* Fathers comes home. 12. He didn't start to read her letter *until* late that night when the whole family had settled for the night. 13. She didn't begin to read *before* she was seven. 14. What do you think was *after*? 15. Come Tuesday night, but not *before*.

2.5 AS AND SINCE IN THE CLAUSES OF TIME AND CAUSE (REASON)

As and *since* may be used to introduce the clauses of time and cause.

As in the clauses of time may be used:

a) to indicate the longer situation, which started before the shorter event, and perhaps went on after it: *As (when, while) they were driving along the main road they saw a broken car smashed into a shop window. As he sat thinking about the past events, he began to realize that all his efforts had been in vain.*
b) to talk about two developing or changing situations: *As the city grew, more and more people of various occupations were attracted to the new capital.*
c) to say that two short actions or events both happened at the same time: *(Just) as he passed under the window, the lights in the room went off.*

Since. A clause introduced by *since* denotes the starting point of the action (situation) described in the main clause. The verb in the since-clause may be past or present perfect,

but that in the main clause can only be present perfect: *Since you left us, we have been lonely. Nothing like it has been seen since those two went away from the village.*

If the action of the since-clause is continued to the present, use the present perfect: *Since I've been in this peaceful place (I'm still there), I've been very happy.*

When speaking or thinking in the past, the tense of the main clause will be thrown back one degree into the past, thus: *In 1980, I had not seen my parents since I had left home. Since clocks had been invented, no great mechanical genius had arisen till Leonardo da Vinci astonished the world.*

As- and **since-clauses** can be used to give the **reason** for an action or situation. They are used when the reason is already well known, or is less important than the rest of the sentence. *Since* is a little more formal than *as: Since you refuse to pay, we shall be forced to take legal action. As I had no money with me, I didn't pay him.*

NOTES:

1. When the reason is the most important part of the sentence or unexpected, ***because*** is generally used, and because-clause usually comes at the end of the sentence: *You will never learn because you are idle. You want to know why I didn't tell you? I didn't tell you because I forgot, simply.*
2. ***For*** suggests that the reason is given as an explanation for the action, as an afterthought. *For-clauses* never come at the beginning of the sentence: *I know what we shall have for dinner, for I have seen the menu. Of all spots in the world it was perhaps the most sacred to him, for he had loved his father.*
3. In a formal and literary style *for* is used to indicate the reason for mentioning what has been said previously: *The visitors will be well content to walk around at their own pace, stopping for rest or refreshment. For it is a long day's walk, and the scenery is very enjoyable.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 11. (A, B) Define the functions of the conjunctions *since* and *as*. Translate the sentences.

1. She had left them after a brief visit, saying that as the day was a special day, she should hurry back home and get ready for the party. 2. The Manchester train came just as he reached the station. 3. He stood watching her as she went out of the shop. 4. He knew that the arrival of letters for him was impossible since nobody knew his address. 5. She took her bag from Denis, who had carried it since it fell. 6. What have you been doing since George has been away? 7. As the twilight was beginning to fade, they heard the sound of horse's hoofs. 8. After lunch, since the afternoon was so fine, I took out a deckchair (шезлонг) into my little rose garden. 9. As it is already late, you had better go. 10. As the fog was collecting rapidly, it began to grow dark in earnest. 11. You've been getting thinner since I last saw you. 12. Since our birthdays fall on the same day, our lives are probably parallel. 13. He rose to his feet and pulled on his jacket as Elizabeth entered the room. 14. As the news had already spread through the picket lines, there was nothing left for them to do, but start negotiating. 15. He hasn't worked since you bad-mouthed him. 16. Since the Russians launched the world's first artificial satellite in 1957, this newest branch of science has advanced in great strides. 17. Many times since the Earth was young, the place had lain under the sea. 18. I've been able to do it since I was a child. 19. As life on Earth began to burgeon (расцветать), as plants covered its surface and its

waters teemed (кишеть) with creatures, the planet began to add further layers (слои) formed from this new, organic life it had brought into being. 20. As women were not supposed to serve in cavalry, she disguised herself as man and joined the fighting army.

Ex. 12. (B, C) Fill in the blanks with the proper conjunction: *as, since, because* or *for.*

1. _____ the light fell on his face, he turned round. 2. I asked her and looked curiously at her _____ she looked so curiously at me. 3. _____ it was late, we decided to stop work and go home. 4. Ten days had passed _____ the ominous news had come. 5. Here one may dream in utter restfulness whilst the great white clouds mirror themselves in the water _____ they pas above. 6. _____ he went down the stairs, I walked across to my window and pulled the curtain. 7. This room was chill, _____ it seldom had fire. 8. You might as well wait for me in the lobby, _____ I may stay in his office awhile. 9. He could be wrong, especially _____ he isn't even sure about the car. 10. "Isn't it a gorgeous day?" Miss Pulteney said _____ she went by, flashing a smile and looking just exactly like a queen in the beautiful black mink coat that the Colonel had given to Mrs Bixby. 11. She had had to give up doing overtime at work _____ there was so much to do at home. 12. When they do find work as extra (кино – статист), they get peanuts (зд.: гроши), _____ only the stars make megabucks. 13. Her skin – _____ this was her sixth month with child – had acquired a wonderful translucent quality. 14. The drop of her head _____ she bent over her sewing was curiously tranquil. 15. She wasn't really watching him but she knew what he had done _____ she heard the ice cubes falling back against the bottom of the empty glass when he lowered his arm. 16. "Then why did you ask them?" The question slipped out before I could stop myself and I regretted it at once, _____ it is a rule with me never to provoke my wife if I can help it. 17. _____ USSR Motorboat Federation has joined the Union Internationale Motornautique (UIM) in 1969, many Soviet and Russian sportsmen won a number of titles and awards in international competitions. 18. "America has been the New World in all tongues, to all peoples, (---), _____ all those who came here believed they could create upon this continent a new life – a life that should be new in freedom," President Roosevelt said. 19. I have seen many wonderful things _____ I've been in Cairo. 20. _____ our birthdays fall on the same day, our lives are probably parallel. 21. Of Man, there was still no sign, _____ a million years ago, although he walked upon two legs, his skull was still like that of an ape. 22. _____ he didn't come, I went away without waiting for him. 23. The picture fell _____ the cord broke. 24. England has never been invaded _____ William of Normandy conquered it in 1066. 25. _____ Emily and I are astrologically in sync (синхронны), I'm able to tune in to her thoughts. 26. "Tell Christopher Swatt hello for me," she said, enjoying the startled look on Wright's face _____ she left his office. 27. _____ you raise no objection, I presume you agree to what I suggest. 28. I can't do this exercise _____ I don't understand the rule. 29. Oh, she's jolly glad to get so much taken off her hands; _____ before Eliza came, she used to have to find things and remind me of my appointments.

2.6 UNTIL/TILL AND BEFORE

A subordinate clause introduced by *before* expresses that the action/situation in the main clause is prior to that in the subordinate: *A year had passed before we got any news of him.* (..., прежде чем ...)

A subordinate clause introduced by *till/until* indicates the c o n c l u d i n g m o m e n t of the action of the main clause: *So we went on till we came to another hotel.* (..., пока не пришли ...)

NOTE: when the main clause is negative, the meaning of *until/till* is very close to that of *before*, and it's practically impossible to differentiate them in such cases: *We didn't start the discussion until the teacher returned; We didn't start the discussion before the teacher returned.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 13. (A, B) Fill in the blanks with *till/until* or *before*.

1. He recalled the occurrence _____ he fell asleep. 2. Don't take any steps _____ you learn what is in this letter. 3. They remained in the garden _____they got quite cold. 4. A quarter of an hour passed _____ the lessons began. 5. He slept through the early grey of morning _____ the direct rays of the sun smote his closed eyelids. 6. I waited _____ the next train came. 7. Meg strained her eyes upon her work _____ it was too dark to see the threads. 8. She listened patiently _____ he had finished his lecture. 9. He worked slowly, first writing the message, then rewording it _____ he was satisfied. 10. He waited _____ the girl had gone, then he walked over to the closet where his street clothes were. 11. _____ we start our experiment, I want you to read these notes. 12. He was sure that she wouldn't say anything _____ the children left for school. 13. Don't trouble trouble _____ the trouble troubles you.

Ex. 14. (B, C) Make one complex sentence out of the two simple ones given, using the conjunctions from the box. Omit some words when necessary.

because, for, until, since, as, before

E.g.: The lane came to an end. We had to retrace our steps. – As the lane came to an end, we had to retrace our steps.

1. We started on our way. Just then it began snowing. 2. He walked with care. He did not wish to fall. 3. The spring is now well advanced. We shall soon hear the cuckoo's voice again. 4. The game was stopped. A heavy rain storm broke out. 5. She went to Italy in April. I haven't received a single letter from her. 6. The champion grew weaker. His opponent's attacks became more and more violent. 7. I decided to stop and have lunch first. I was feeling rather hungry. 8. Don't send this telegram now. I want Father to read it first. 9. I made the decision. Then that phone call came. 10. Don't go there at once. Let them ring you up first.

Ex. 15. (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Прежде чем вы начнете спорить, вспомните вчерашнее заседание. 2. Пока не придет инженер, мы не будем включать аппарат. 3. Так как вы не можете прийти к соглашению, нам придется отложить подписание контракта. 4. По мере того, как они поднимались все выше, воздух становился холоднее. 5. Как раз когда они вошли под арку, сзади послышался шум автомобиля. 6. Давайте сделаем это до того, как они придут. 7. Она не пришла, потому что не хотела встречаться с ними. 8. Он не стал возражать, ибо он вообще не любитель спорить. 9. Оставайтесь здесь, пока не придут ваши родители. 10. Они живут в этом доме с тех пор, как их брат уехал в Лондон.

3. REVISION EXERCISES

Ex. 16. (B, C) Fill in the blanks with the words from the box.

till, in, into, as, like, by, on, with, at, once, after, because

Even Higgs, I thought, won't be able to find me here.
I sat down (1) _____ the edge of the lake and pulling off my shoes and socks put my feet (2) _____ the water. It was cold (3) _____ ice. (4) _____ a moment I bent over and splashed some of the water on my hot face. I could see the faint outline of my reflection, staring at me (5) _____ a stranger.
I realised suddenly how tired I was of running away. First the night flight (6) _____ the small stuffy plane, then the long tiring journey (7) _____ the packed train, the bus, the talkative lorry-driver from whom I had hitched a lift and then the eight mile walk across unfamiliar country (8) _____ I reached the lake. There was a tiny cottage (9) _____ the far side of the lake (10) _____ a plume of smoke coming from the chimney. I still had a little money. Perhaps they would give me a bed and some food.
(11) _____ I watched, a man came out of the cottage and down to a little boat that lay bobbing (12) _____ the lakeside. He got (13) _____ it and began to row unhurridly towards my side. I could not see his face at first (14) _____ the boat was (15) _____ shadow. He continued steadily across the lake and, when he was about halfway across, he rested his oars and the boat drifted (16) _____ a patch of sunlight. He lifted his hand in a friendly gesture of greeting. I was about to raise mine (17) _____ reply when, all at (18) _____, I saw his face clearly. It was Higgs!

Ex. 17. (B, C) Fill in the blanks with the suitable words from the box.

because, in, like,that, what, till, after, before, besides, with, as, among, by

FROM "PYGMALION" *(after B. Shaw)*

HIGGINS: In six months I shall make a duchess of this flower girl. We'll start today. Mrs Pearce, is there a good fire (1) _____ the kitchen? She's so deliciously low – so horribly dirty – Take all her clothes off and burn them. Ring up Whitley for new ones. Wrap her up (2) _____ brown paper (3) _____ they come.
LIZA: I ain't dirty. I washed me face and hands (4) _____ I came here.
MRS PEARCE: You must be reasonable, Mr Higgins. You can't walk over everybody (5) _____ that.
HIGGINS: I never had the slightest intention to walk over anyone. All I propose is (6) _____ we should be kind to this poor girl. We must help her to prepare and fit herself for her new station (7) _____ life. If I did not express myself clearly, it was (8) _____ I did not wish to hurt her delicacy. What's the matter?
MRS PEARCE: The matter is, sir, (9) _____ you can't take the girl up (10) _____ that as if you were picking up a pebble on the beach. (11) _____ about her parents? She may be married.
HIGGINS: Married indeed! Don't you know (12) _____ a woman of that class looks a worn out drudge (работяга) of fifty a year (13) _____ she's married?
LIZA: Who'd marry me?
HIGGINS: By George, Eliza, the streets will be strewn (14) _____ bodies of men shooting themselves for your sake (15) _____ I've done (16) _____you.

PICKERING: Excuse me, Higgins. If the girl is to put herself (17) _____ your hands for six months for an experiment in teaching, she must understand thoroughly (18) _____she is doing.
HIGGINS: How can she? She is incapable of understanding anything. (19) _____, do any of us understand (20) _____ we are doing? If we did, would we ever do it? No use explaining. (21) _____ a military man you ought to know that. Give her her orders; (22) _____ is (23) _____ she wants. Eliza: you are to live here for the next six months, learning how to speak beautifully, (24) _____ a lady (25) _____ a florist's shop. If you're good, you shall sleep (26) _____ a proper bedroom and have lots to eat. If you're naughty and idle, you will sleep (27) _____ the back kitchen (28) _____ the black beetles, and be walloped (дубасить) (29) _____ Mrs Pearce (30) _____ a broomstick. At the end of six months you shall go to Buckingham Palace (31) _____ a carriage. If the King finds out you're not a lady, you will be taken (32) _____ police to the Tower of London, where your head will be cut off (33) _____ a warning to other presumptuous flower girls. If you are not found out, you shall have a present of seven-and-sixpence to start life with (34) _____ a lady (35) _____ a shop.

Ex. 18. (A, B) Read the text. Fill in the blanks with the suitable words from the box, where necessary. You may need some of the words more than once.

once, on, as, in, after, with, by, into, that, until, what, before, on, which, besides

FITTING IN *(after Mike Quin)*

(1) _____ there were two philosophers, who, having answered an advertisement (2) _____ the newspaper, got themselves jobs (3) _____ lighthouse keepers on a lonely island way out (4) _____ the middle of the Pacific Ocean.
They were the only human beings (5) _____ the island and there was only one little house for them to live (6) _____ . (7) _____ they had been put ashore (8) _____ all their belongings, they picked up their suitcases and started walking towards the house. Although they were both philosophers, they had entirely different views.
(9) _____ they were walking along, one of them said, "This is a lonely place hardly ever visited (10) _____ men, but (11) _____ my philosophy shared (12) _____ many people all over the world, I'm sure (13) _____ I will be able to fit myself (14) _____ it. Given some time, I can accomodate myself to anything. It is merely a matter of adjusting one's mind to it."
"It is lonely enough," the other philosopher replied (15) _____ he looked around, "but I'm sure (16) _____ we will be able to fix it up so (17) _____ it is suitable to our needs. It is just a matter of a little hard work and perseverance."
So saying they walked (18) _____ the house. Everything went well (19) _____ they came to the bedroom. (20) _____ they came (21) _____ it, they saw that the beds were too little for them.
"We'll certainly have to change this," exclaimed one. "Neither you nor I could sleep (22) _____ those!"
"I can see (23) _____ you are of those radical complainers," said the other. "Why don't you take the things as you find them? That's my philosophy. Fit yourself (24) _____. ! Why try to change the world? Take it as it is and make the best of it!"
The other said, "Wouldn't it be wiser to make the beds larger (25) _____ a little effort? That's (26) _____ I'm going to do (27) _____ mine."
"You're an unpractical dreamer," said the conservative philosopher. "Think of all the trouble.

In the first place, you would have to chop down a tree, saw it (28) _____ boards, and then you'd have to hammer nails (29) _____ them. It's all very well for you to speak about your Utopian ideas, but just try to put them (30) _____ practice. Suppose the tree falls on you or you miss the nail (31) _____ the hammer and hit your thumb?"
"Do as you please," said the other and started chopping down a tree (32) _____ an axe. The other man took off his clothes and stepped (33) _____ a tub filled (34) _____ cold water. (35) _____ he was attracted (36) _____ the chattering of teeth, the industrious philosopher left his work and went to find out (37) _____ was the matter (38) _____ his companion. The other explained (39) _____ he was shrinking himself to be exactly the right size to fit the bed. (40) _____ he had failed to shorten his length and had caught a very bad cold instead, the conservative philosopher began to write an essay on the benefits of discomfort, to justify his position. (41) _____ the sundown, he approached his companion who by now was hammering the last nails (42) _____ his finished bed and told him (43) _____ he had decided to chop off his legs, (44) _____ would make him just the right size. (45) _____, his feet hurt him anyway. He rolled up his pants, put one leg on the block, raised the axe, and then changed his mind. "If God meant me to suffer," he said, "it is better (46) _____ I suffer and not try to interfere (47) _____ his will."
Late that night the industrious philosopher was awakened (48) _____ someone shaking his shoulder. "The thing (49) _____ I don't like about you Communists," said the conservative, "is (50) _____ in the end all you are thinking of is yourself. How can you sleep comfortably (51) _____ that big bed while I, a fellow human being, am cramped beyond human endurance?"
"Climb (52) _____," said the radical, "and stop complaining."
The conservative climbed (53) _____ and stretching out his legs sighed in relief. Then, (54) _____ he went to sleep, he said, "If you want to put your propaganda over on me, you might as well forget it. I have a mind of my own and I'm not going to be dictated to. This bed will probably collapse (55) _____ morning anyhow. So don't say (56) _____ I didn't warn you".

4. EMPHASIS

In the English language there is a variety of ways to emphasize (выделить, подчеркнуть) the meaning of certain parts of a sentence. We shall deal here with those that may cause some difficulty in understanding and interpreting the sense of the sentence: emphatic do, double negation; emphatic constructions "*it is ... that/which/who/whom*"; "*it was not until ... that*"; the emphatic phrase "*not ... till/until*".

4.1 THE EMPHATIC DO

The verb *do* is used to emphasize the predicate of the sentence. It is placed right before the predicate in the required grammatical form, and the predicate is in the form of the infinitive without *to*:

We waited and waited, and finally he **did** come.	– Мы все ждали и ждали, и наконец, он **все-таки** пришел.
She **did** learn to drive at the age of 65.	– Она **действительно** научилась водить машину в возрасте 65-ти лет.

He **does** know a lot about the ocean. – Он **на самом деле** много знает об океане.
She **does** talk a lot, doesn't she? – Она, **и правда**, много говорит.

NOTE: the verb *do* in these cases is always pronounced with strong stress.

EXERCISES

Ex. 1. (A, B) Translate the sentences into Russian. Try to convey the exact meaning of the *emphatic do*.

1.I don't have much contact with my family. I do see my younger sister, though, when I come to London. 2. I don't take much exercise now, but I did play volleyball quite a lot when I was at school. 3. He said he would come and he did come. 4. Now I see that she does know the subject well. 5. We do not know very much of this author. But we do know that all the three poems were written by him. 6. One day a big wolf waited in a dark forest for a little girl to come along carrying a basket of food to her grandmother. Finally a little girl did come along. 7. Materialism does not deny the reality of mind. What materialism does deny is that a thing called "the mind" exists separate from the body. 8. I don't object to your going to the mountains, but I do object to your going there unaccompanied. 9. This writer does, however, belong to that small and select company of contemporary writers whose best work will survive beyond their lifetime. 10. He didn't come, but he did send them the atlas as he had promised.

Ex. 2. (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1.Я действительно сначала думала, что это из-за денег. 2. Я на самом деле люблю его. 3. Я все-таки думаю, что мы должны туда поехать. 4. Я и правда поверила тебе тогда. 5. Он на самом деле хочет тебе помочь. 6. Ты, правда, выглядишь замечательно сегодня. 7. Будь же все-таки серьезной! 8. Он все-таки отклонил это предложение. 9. Они действительно согласились сделать эту работу. 10. Я все-таки надеюсь, что вы приедете.

4.2 DOUBLE NEGATION

The particle *not* before a negative adjective or adverb serves to emphasize the positive meaning of the adjective or adverb. Such phrases are usually rendered in Russian by means of the combinations «довольно, весьма, вполне» + прилагательное (наречие):

not unusual – вполне обычный
not impossible – весьма возможный
not infrequently – довольно часто

E.g.: *Constructons of this type are not unusual in this country. Such outcome is not impossible. These machines cause trouble not infrequently.*

EXERCISES

Ex. 2. (A, B, C) Translate the sentences into Russian.

1.The total number of German words in English is not inconsiderable. 2. Their contribution to the common cause was not insignificant. 3. This second novel was savagely, but not unfairly criticized. 4. I would say, his reaction was not unreasonable. 5.It is not unreasonable to group together the painters who worked chiefly in Florence. 6. Storms and hurricanes are not infrequent in these parts of the world. 7. I'm afraid that was done not irregularly. 8. This last

work of his is not uninteresting and will not be unsuccessful. 9. Our life there was not univentful. 10. He looked down at her not in an unfriendly way.

4.3 THE EMPHATIC CONSTRUCTION "IT IS ... THAT, WHICH, WHO, WHOM"

This construction is a grammatical means to emphasize some part of a sentence. The emphasized part is placed between *it* and *that*, and the whole sentence is a complex one. Russian sentences corresponding in meaning to such constructions, are usually simple, with emphatic words before the emphasized part of the sentence. Sometimes, in Russian sentences these emphasized parts are placed at the end.

E.g.: It is *always the unusual* which alarms. – Тревогу вызывает всегда необычное.
It was *he* who had started the discussion. – Именно он открыл дискуссию.

NOTE: most frequently used Russian emphatic words are: *именно, как раз, только, лишь.* In the negative sentences they are: *вовсе не; совсем не: But it is not the Detective Inspector who is the central figure in the film.*

EXERCISES

Ex.3. (A, B) Translate the sentences into Russian.

1.It was in his dealings with children that the best and sweetest side of his personality was manifested. 2. It was not without a certain wild pleasure that I ran before the wind. 3. It was on the beach, close down by the sea, that I found them. 4. And it was my dearest friend who first started me on that course. 5. It is no doubt to this quality that the great popularity of this collection is due. 6. It was then that the hunger, the excitement of her escape, and the scintillation of the overhead lights caused Toni to suddenly feel as giddy as a falling moth. 7. Once past the theatre, they wandered on to the library, a handsome, serious-looking room, and it was just past it that Liane discovered the winter garden, and she gasped as they stepped inside. 8.It was the first time in the whole year that he had lost balance. 9. It was of Walter that they now spoke. 10. It was while looking at the spot where the fine porcelain vase had stood that she felt a sttrange certainty of being watched, and turning saw a stranger in the open door way. 11. It was their identification of Ms Balantine with a certain school of American writers that made her subject to a powerful line of attack on the part of literary critics. 12. It is not from outside, however, but from within, that American English has made the greatest additions to its special words and their uses. 13. It is not only women who go to pawnbrokers, you know. 14. It isn't everyone who has mink, my dear. 15. It is when men begin to use tools for social production that they also begin to speak. 16. It was only with the help of my friends that I managed to survive that tragedy.

Ex. 4. (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1.Это сказал именно Джон. 2. Только после войны здесь появились каменные дома. 3. Именно она остановила машину. 4. Не только я один виноват. 5. Лишь на следующее утро она заметила исчезновение фотографии. 6. Они пришли из леса вовсе не этой дорогой. 7. Именно тогда он вспомнил о старом архитекторе. 8. Только после того, как вы научитесь плавать, я позволю вам принять участие в лодочном походе. 9. Вовсе не этот художник нарисовал папин пруд. 10. Они пришли как раз перед тем, как начался спектакль.

4.4 THE EMPHATIC CONSTRUCTION "IT IS NOT UNTIL ... THAT"

When an *adverbial modifier of time* is emphasized by means of this construction, it is rendered in Russian by a *simple affirmative sentence* with emphasizing words.
E.g.: ***It was not until*** noon ***that*** we were able to resume our work. – ***Только*** в полдень мы смогли возобновить работу.

When an adverbial clause of time is emphasized, it is rendered in Russian by a complex sentence.
E.g.: ***It was not until*** they reached their house ***that*** he remembered about the letter. – ***Только (тогда,)*** когда они подошли к своему дому, он вспомнил про письмо.

EXERCISES

Ex. 5. (B, C) Translate the sentences into Russian.

1.Actually, however, it is not until the other person begins to speak that you can form a very definite idea of his personality and his character. 2. It was not until 1846, when "Vanity Fair" began to appear, that Thackeray attained any eminence. 3. It was not until the end of the seventeenth century that France began to produce an art that, instead of echoing the faded glamour of Italy, reflected the lively if equally artificial life of Versailles. 4. It was not till impressionism turned its attention to the nature of light and especially to the colour of shadow that painters evolved a new way of seeing. 5. It was not until seven years had passed since the manuscripts had come into this scientist's hands that they published them with the introduction translated into English. 6. It was not till a century and a half had passed after Claudian conquest that the Emperor Severus marked the final limit of the northern frontier between Scotland and England by renovating the wall that Hadrian had erected.

(from *Т. Н. Мальчевская. Практическое пособие)*

Ex. 6. (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Самолет отправился только на следующий день. 2.Только тогда, когда он увидел их снова, он понял свою ошибку. 3. Только глубокой ночью стали известны результаты матча. 4. Мы получили от него первые вести только ранней весной. 5. Они узнали, что поезд отменен только тогда, когда приехали на вокзал. 6. Снег растаял лишь в конце апреля. 7. Она сообщила им о своем решении уехать, лишь когда уже приехала на новое место жительства. 8. Только тогда, когда была опубликована его книга, он смог оставить работу в больнице. 9. Только тогда, когда он увидел это письмо, он поверил, что все позади. 10. Это можно понять, лишь когда сам сделаешь это.

4.5 THE EMPHATIC "NOT ... TILL/UNTIL"

This negative construction is rendered in Russian by means of an affirmative sentence with the emphatic words before the adverbial modifier of time.
E.g.: They did **not** come back **till** late at night. – Они **вернулись только** поздно ночью.
Note: not till/until after = только после
E.g.: They did **not** meet again **until after** the war. – Они **встретились** снова **только после** войны.

Ex. 7. (A, B) Translate the sentences into Russian.

1.The first part of his novel did not come out until after his return from the trip. 2. Cotton was not introduced to Japan from China until later and wool was unknown. 3. The last novel by Ch. Bronte remained unfinished and was not published until the end of the 20th century when it was completed by another authoress. 4. In England ancient fields indicate that no plough was used till late in the local bronze age, about 800 B. C., and then at first only in the south. 5. Silver and lead were not used in Britain till after 500, though Britain is well supplied with lead ores.6. "Utopia" was written in Latin about 1516, and it was not translated till 1551, some years after More's death.

Ex. 8. (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Он начал писать стихи только после окончания университета. 2.Он позвонил только в 8 часов. 3. Они уехали только в полночь. 4. Спектакль начался только в 11 часов. 5.Я смог уйти только после ланча. 6. Мы сможем встретиться только после представления. 7.Я начну этот перевод только после отпуска. 8. Мы заснули только на рассвете. 9. Они вернутся только осенью. 10. Они поженились только после рождения их второго ребенка.

5. ADDITIONAL EXCERCISES. MISCELLANEOUS

Ex. 1. (A, B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

I *Present Simple, Present Perfect and Past Simple*

The art of printing (be) known in Europe for several centuries. It (give) untold benefits to the human race, it (enlarge) the boundaries of knowledge and (do) away with much ignorance and superstition, and (lead) to the discovery of many of the most important laws of nature. Almost every adult now can read and write, and education (become) so general that even children now know facts which (be) hidden from the wisest of our ancestors. Printing (be) originally invented by the Chinese, but they (make) no progress in the art, so that China (derive) less benefit from her discovery than Europe, where it (be) made much later. Before the invention of this art writing (be) very laborious, and books (be) consequently so rare that to possess a hundred books (be) the privilege of the very rich. Since the discovery of steam, the art of printing not (stand) still, but (make) enormous strides, so that what once (take) weeks to print can now be produced in a few hours. Recently the linotype (линотип)machine (be) invented by which type can be set up as quickly as the words can be written down.

II *Past Simple and Past Perfect*

THE RETREAT FROM MOSCOW

In 1812 Napoleon (determine) to advance on Moscow. For many years before that he (be) at war with different nations. He (win) and (lose) many important battles. His fleet (be) destroyed at Trafalgar, but he (win) brilliant victories at Austerlitz, Jena and other places, and he (dethrone) kings and (place) his marshals and his relatives in their places. Germany, Italy, Austria, Spain, all (fall) under his power, but Russia he not (attack) as yet. He therefore (advance) confidently

through Russia, where he (find) little opposition, and (make) his way towards Moscow. When at last he (reach) the town he (see) it in flames. In a short time all (be) destroyed, and his army (find) no means of subsistence. The winter (come) on and he (have) no course but to retreat. His army (suffer) terribly on the way. His men and horses (die) in thousands in the snow, and (lie) where they (fall). Of all that splendid army which he (lead) to Moscow, only a few (live) to reach Paris.

III *Present Simple, Present Perfect, Past Simple and Past Perfect*
Once there (rule) a powerful king over the island of Samos. He (be) rich and prosperous, and at last his prosperity (rise) to such a height that he (begin) to be afraid that the gods (can) be jealous of his happiness. Accordingly he (send) messengers to consult an oracle in another country, telling them to bring the answer as soon as they (obtain) it. When they (reach) the oracle they (receive) the answer: "(Tell) the king that if he (wish) to escape the anger of the gods, he must throw into the sea that which he (hold) to be the dearest of all his possessions." The messengers (return) and (tell) the king what the oracle (say). The king therefore (take) a boat and (go) out to sea, and (throw) away a ring which he (value) greatly because his dead wife (give) it to him, saying to himself: "Surely the gods (accept) this great sacrifice and (spare) me." He (go) to bed that night thinking over what he (do) that day and wondering whether the gods (keep) him safe from harm. When he (rise) in the morning after he (have) little sleep he (sit) down to breakfast eagerly, for he (fast -поститься) for many hours. Imagine his surprise when he (open) a fish that (be prepared) for him and (see) the ring he (throw) away the day before! A fisherman (catch) the fish that morning and (bring) it to the palace, not knowing what (be) inside it. The king then (understand) that the gods (refuse) his sacrifice. He soon (begin) to lose his power, and not many months (pass) before he (lose) all his possessions and (die) in misery. This story is a warning to us not to flatter ourselves that our happiness (be) enduring, unless we (depend) more upon ourselves than upon what we (have).

Ex. 2. Supply articles where necessary.

I (B, C)

AUTHOR'S NOTES

1. ___ *Voices of Summer* was originally written as ___ serial – under ___ title Operetta – for ___ magazine, but ___ disciplines of ___ serial are confining: everything has to be as brief as possible and one cannot introduce too many characters. 2. I always regretted ___ loss and ___ development of those extra characters that I'd had in my mind and couldn't include. 3. ___ idea for ___ Voices of Summer sprang from my very first visit to ___ Vienna. 4. I was only passing through on my way to research ___ book in Hungary, but ___ city so bewitched (околдовал) me that I stayed ___ extra day and have returned many times since. 5. It is difficult to explain ___ importance of ___ opera, ___ operetta, and ___ music in ___ life of ___ average Viennese citizen. 6. ___ opera singers occupy ___ same national status as ___ football stars in ___ West, and ___ Viennese taxi drivers will discuss ___ politics of ___ State Opera House in ___ same way that we chat of ___ politicians, ___ Royals, and ___ latest television stars. 7. ___ Opera House is undoubtedly ___ centre of ___ Viennese life and is – emotionally – ___ sort of ___ combination of ___ National Theatre, ___ Buckingham Palace, ___ Wembley Stadium, and ___ Houses of Parliament. 8. So against that background I set my story, although mine is not ___ tale of ___ glory at ___ Staatsoper, for while in Austria I saw ___ very tiny company performing ___ Lehar operetta and ___ tenor, ___ tall, handsome man who was obviously immensely popular with

___ audience, made ___ great impression on me. 9. When ___ curtain came down ___ abundance (изобилие) of ___ flowers and ___ gift-wrapped packages went up on ___ stage for him, not for ___ leading lady who stood in ___ line-up behind with ___ brave smile on her face, trying to look as though she didn't mind. 10. And at that moment ___ Operetta was born. 11. I should add that, although ___ idea for my novel came from watching ___ real performance, every single character and situation in this book is totally imaginary. 12. All ___ names have been invented by me, other than those of ___ real people such as Callas or Domingo. 13. If, inadvertently (неумышленно), I have stumbled on ___ real name, it is entirely accidental.

II (C)

MIRAGE

(Oxford Junior Encyclopaedia)

1.There are many stories of ___ travellers who, tortured by ___ thirst in ___ desert, have been overjoyed to see in ___ distance ___ beautiful lake – only to find, as they drew nearer, that it vanished – ___ mirage. 2. Nearer home, most of us have seen in ___ very hot weather ___ appearance of pools of ___ water lying across ___ road which we know well must be dry. 3. This, too, is ___ mirage. 4. The cause of these queer illusions is ___ process known as ___ "refraction". 5. When ___ rays of ___ light pass from one medium (среда) to another of ___ different density, as from ___ air to ___ water or to ___ glass, they are "refracted" or bent. 6. Thus ___ straight stick appears bent if it is half in and half out of ___ water; or, as we all know, ___ objects appear very distorted if we look at them through ___ glass of ___ water. 7. ___ refraction also occurs if ___ rays of ___ light pass through ___ regions of ___ different density in ___ same medium. 8. Now ___ air near ___ ground in ___ desert like ___ Sahara gets very hot, because ___ sand beneath it has reflected ___ heat from ___ sun. 9. When ___ air is heated it expands – that is, its density gets less. 10. ___ rays of ___ light from ___ sky, then, are bent as they enter this layer (слой) of ___ hot thin air, and ___ traveller sees on ___ face of ___ desert (or we on ___ surface of ___ road) ___ brightness which looks like ___ pool of ___ water but is really ___ brightness of ___ sun. 11. As ___ layer of ___ hot air is seldom still, ___ image also shimmers (мерцает) in ___ heat, causing ___ movement which is easily mistaken for ___ ripples of ___ water. 12. But ___ layers of ___ air at ___ different density can play even stranger tricks than this. 13. Sometimes, especially in ___ polar regions, it happens that ___ air immediately above ___ surface of ___ sea is very much colder (and so denser) than ___ air above. 14. In such circumstances ___ sailors may see ___ image of ___ object which is really well below ___ horizon and so out of ___ normal sight. 15. Stranger still, ___ effect of ___ layer of ___ warm air above may be to twist ___ rays of ___ light before they reach ___ observer, in which case he will see ___ image of ___ ship or ___ iceberg upside-down in ___ sky – at ___ same time as or even before he can see ___ object itself. 16. It is not uncommon for ___ whalers to get their first sight of ___ neighbouring ship in this way. 17. This reversal of ___ image also happens at times in ___ desert, and no doubt, ___ seasoned (опытный) traveller who sees ___ palm-trees standing on their heads in ___ oasis does not allow his hopes rise too high. 18. On ___ other occasions ___ air plays ___ part of ___ gigantic telescope, and magnifies ___ distant objects, as well as bringing them up over ___ horizon. 19. In this way ___ coast of France has been seen in ___ great detail from ___ town in England lying over 50 miles away.

Ex. 3. (B, C) Put the verb in brackets into the proper ing-form.

1.Here is a little story of a man who, (lose) one job got another by (show) that a rope may have three ends. 2. After (try) several places the man got tired of (walk) and sat down to rest for a while. 3. The day (be) hot, we must not be surprised at the man (be) tired and (sit) down to rest under a tree. 4. As he was sitting he thought of (take) further steps. 5. He remembered (work) on a ship for some years. 6. So he came to the owner of a ship and asked him if there was any possibility of (get) a job. 7. The question (be) not very unusual, the owner was not surprised at (hear) it. 8. But he thought for a while before (give) his answer. 9. After (examine) the man from head to foot the owner said, "You see, I'm looking for a man with brains. If you can find three ends to that rope, I'll give you the job." 10. (Say) those words, the owner picked up a piece of rope (lie) at his feet and handed it to the man. 11. The man understood that his (get) a job depended on his (give) the right answer quickly. 12. Without (think) long he held one end of the rope before the owner (say), "That's one end, sir." 13. Then (take) up the other end he remarked, "That's the second end, sir." 14. Then, (throw) the rope overboard, the man said, "That is one more end to your rope, sir." 15. (Receive) this answer, the owner couldn't help (praise) the man for (find) the answer so quickly. 16. Then he said, "You are the man I've long been looking for." 17. (Give) a good job the man used to say that for many people (find) a job is like (find) the third end to a rope.

Ex. 4. (B, C) Fill in the blanks with the proper prepositions (at, in, by, with).

GRAY'S ELEGY

The famous poem known as "Gray's Elegy" was conceived (задумана) (1) _____ a country churchyard. The fading light, the distant sounds, the thoughts of coming darkness suggested the transitoriness (преходящий характер) of human life, and (2) _____ such a time, surrounded as he was (3) _____ monuments of decay, the poet was moved to write about the humble villagers who lay (4) _____ their tombs around him, and to think of what they might have become, had they moved (5) _____ the great world and had the opportunities enjoyed (6) _____ dwellers (7) _____ great towns and busy cities. Some, who lay forgotten (8) _____ the living, perhaps (9) _____ their lives courageously fought for the right, and might have become as famous as Cromwell or Hampden, whose names are written (10) _____ the pages of history. Others were perhaps gifted (11) _____ the power of song, and might have written poetry like Milton. Yet their uneventful lives were perhaps nobler (12) _____ their way than those of famous men who committed great crimes and drenched countries (13) _____ blood, leaving behind them families (14) _____ distress, and ruined cities. This poem is written (15) _____ a noble style, and deserves the fame it has acquired (16) _____ England.

Ex. 5. (B, C) Supply the missing prepositions, conjunctions and connectives.

MRS BENNET' DEAREST WISH *(after Jane Austen)*

Everyone knows (1) _____ a man (2) _____ a good income who is not yet married must need a wife. When such a man moves (3) _____ a new neighbourhood, this truth is so well fixed (4) _____ the minds of the families who live there, that they immediately consider him to be the property of one or other (5) _____ their daughters. (6) _____ he himself may think about it is not a matter of any importance.

"My dear Mr Bennet," Mrs Bennet said (7) _____ her husband one morning, "did you know that Netherfield Park has been let (8) _____ last?"

Mr Bennet answered that he did not.
"Well, it has. Mrs Long has just been here and she told me."
Mr Bennet said nothing.
"Don't you want to know who has rented it?" cried his wife impatiently.
"You want to tell me and I have no objection (9) _____ listening.
This was enough (10) _____Mrs Bennet.
"My dear, Mrs Long says it has been rented (11) _____ a young man (12) _____ a large fortune. He came down (13) _____ Monday to see the place and was so delighted (14) _____ it that he plans to move (15) _____ before the end of this month."
"What's his name?"
"Bingley."
"Is he married or single?"
"Oh, single, my dear! A single man (16) _____ a very good income, four thousand pounds a year. What a fine thing (17) _____ our girls!"
"However does it affect them?"
"My dear Mr Bennet, how can you be so annoying! (18) _____ I mean is that he might marry one of them."
"Is that his reason (19) _____ renting Netherfield Park?"
"His reason? Of course not! Still, it is very likely that he will fall (20) _____ love (21) _____ one of them, so you must visit him (22) _____ soon (23) _____ he arrives."
"I see no need for that. You and the girls can go, or you can send the five (24) _____ them by themselves."
"But consider your daughters. Just think what a good marriage it would be for one of them! You must go! It will be impossible (25) _____ us to visit him if you do not."
"I'm sure Mr Bingley will be very glad to see you; and I'll give you a letter saying he has my permission to marry any of the girls he chooses – though I must recommend my little Lizzy."
"You will do no such thing. Lizzy is no better (26) _____ the others and she is not (27) _____ pretty (28) _____ Jane nor (29) _____ pleasant (30) _____ Lydia."
"None of them have much to recommend them," he replied. "They are all silly, stupid girls but Lizzy is (31) _____ least a bit more intelligent than the others."
"Mr Bennet, (32) _____ can you be so rude (33) _____ your own children? You delight (34) _____ upsetting me. You make me so nervous. You don't know what I suffer."
"But I hope (35) _____ you'll get better, my dear, and live to see many young men worth four thousand pounds a year move (36) _____ the neighbourhood."

Ex. 6. Translate these complex sentences into Russian.

I (B, C)

1. Mortimer remains unconscious of the document until Lady Tippins says, "The Commendatore is giving you the note. Why don't you take it from him?"
2. I saw her once, you know, Marta. She could have had a good life once he became famous. But she refused everything and, just once, he took me to meet her.
3. I suppose, in view of everything, it's amazing that he ever fell in love with me at all. And that's why I'll go back.
4. "Things like that only happen in Act Three in Operetta." – "It was surely pure operetta that you came to work in Hochhauser – my son's girlfriend disguised as a prim stage designer – spying out the mystery of her lover's secret father."
5. There was a nock on the door. "D'you want anything ironed?" Declan peered in the mirror: "Only my face." He gave her his suit, light grey and very lightweight, as he was going to be under the hot lights for an hour.

6. I knew I had got it wrong again – that what was meant to be grand and romantic was funny and a mistake.
7. It was curious, for all around them was noise, people talking, eating, the smells of the kitchen wafting through and over them, and yet she felt they were cocooned in a silent world of their own, images lifting and falling from the past, making her understand things, as he talked.
8. I haven't heard such language as yours since we used to review the volunteers in Hyde Park twenty years ago.
9. You must forgive my grandfather, for, as far as he is concerned, it is yesterday that the Civil War ended, and besides, discretion has never been among his strongest traits.
10. "James will ask you your idea of the perfect romantic hero, Ashley," Deirdre was saying earnestly. "And it'd very nice if you could say: "You are, James", which would bring James in the centre of the interview."
11. The trees round the house are very tall, which makes the room dark.
12. The longer I looked at the picture, the more did it appeal to me.
13. Their lives, however, were uneventful and they had rather grown into the habit of expecting Mr Hathaway to bring back exciting tales of the people and adventures he had met with as he travelled about the country. "Well, did anything interesting happen?" Mrs Hathaway would ask as she helped him off with his overcoat in the hall. He had a little talent for telling stories and if he added a little colour and excitement, it hardly mattered since there was no-one to contradict him.
14. An angry argument suddenly develops between the clerk and the customer at the counter, or information is asked for, which results in the clerk having to ask a senior official, or, if it's a particularly tricky problem, disappear into a back room. Why it takes him so long, I don't know. Perhaps he has a quick snack but no, that can't be right because when at last my turn comes, he pushes forward a printed sign, saying "Position Closed" and without a smile says briefly, "Sorry, going to lunch."

II (C)

1. Later Robert, Earl of Leichester married the countess of Essex, which he also kept secret.
2. The fish, he thinks, were eaten raw, which, to some extent, still is the custom of the Aleuts.
3. What the author really meant, and what he showed in his own work, was something quite different from what he actually stated.
4. That translation is an interpretive art is a self-evident truth. Yet it is a paradox peculiar to the translator that he is the only interpretive artist working in a medium which is both identical with, and different from that of the original he sets out to render in his own terms.
5. What Greece and Rome have been to Europe, China has been to the nations of the Far East.
6. Why the noble example set by Chaucer should not have been followed up or even developed in other directions it is difficult to tell.
7. That many words which are separated in spelling are in reality compounds is also proved by the fact that they are grammatically treated as if they were single words.
8. It is natural, therefore, that the spread of the English language to distant parts of the world should have been accompanied by linguistic changes resulting in the development of new dialects.
9. Exeter, the ancient capital of Devonshire, is a lovely city, proud of being the only English town that has been lived in continuously since the time of the Romans.

10. Over most of England the average peasant had to stay where he was, do what he was told, and work for others as well as for himself, since otherwise the feudal contract could not be fulfilled by his social superiors.
11. It was during the reign of Theodosios I, the Great, 379 – 395, that the Olympic games were held at Constantinople (393), a number of antique monuments being brought to adorn the capital in honour of the occasion.
12. And it is precisely here that the comedies of Johnson and Shakespeare differ most profoundly.

Ex. 7. (C) Fill in the spaces with an attributive clause referring to the noun in *italics*. First read the story.

N.B. Remember that attributive clauses are introduced by the connectives *who, that, which*.

A *cobbler* (башмачник) _____ lived in an *attic* _____ at the top of a high building, and made just enough money every day to keep him alive. But he was perfectly happy and was always singing with joy, and when the *day* _____ came to an end, he slept soundly. A rich *banker* _____, lived in a large house opposite, and was so far from being happy that when the *day* _____, ended, he would not sleep for thinking of all the *money* _____, and was disturbed early in the morning by the *cobbler* _____ . One day he sent over to the cobbler a *present* of a hundred pounds _____ . At first the cobbler was overjoyed, but he soon began to lose his cheerfulness. He began to be afraid that someone would steel his *gold* _____, and began to lose his sleep through the fear that someone might come into his *room* _____ . His *songs* _____ ceased, and at last he felt he could bear it no longer, so seizing the *bag of gold* _____, he went to the *banker* _____ and throwing down the money exclaimed, "Take back the *hundred pounds* _____ and leave me my *happiness* _____, for my *happiness* is all _____ ."

A suggestion for the beginning of your first sentence:

A cobbler, who was young and cheerful, lived .....

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

	Infinitive	Past Indefinite	Past Participle	Translation
1	arise	arose	arisen	возникать
2	awake	awoke awaked	awoke awaked	будить; просыпаться
3	be	was were	been	быть
4	bear	bore	born	рождать
5	bear	bore	borne	носить, выносить
6	beat	beat	beaten	бить
7	become	became	become	становиться
8	begin	began	begun	начинать, -ся
9	bend	bent	bent	гнуть, -ся, сгибать, -ся
10	bind	bound	bound	связывать
11	bite	bit	bit(ten)	кусать
12	bleed	bled	bled	истекать кровью
13	blow	blew	blown	дуть
14	break	broke	broken	ломать
15	breed	bred	bred	выводить, разводить
16	bring	brought	brought	приносить
17	broadcast	broadcast broadcasted	broadcast broadcasted	передавать по радио
18	build	built	built	строить
19	burn	burnt	burnt	гореть, жечь
20	burst	burst	burst	разрываться
21	buy	bought	bought	покупать
22	cast	cast	cast	бросать, кидать
23	catch	caught	caught	ловить, схватывать
24	choose	chose	chosen	выбирать
25	cling	clung	clung	прилипать, цепляться
26	come	came	come	приходить
27	cost	cost	cost	стоить
28	creep	crept	crept	ползать
29	cut	cut	cut	резать
30	deal	dealt	dealt	торговать; иметь дело
31	dig	dug	dug	копать
32	do	did	done	делать
33	draw	drew	drawn	тащить; рисовать
34	dream	dreamt dreamed	dreamt dreamed	видеть сны; мечтать
35	drink	drank	drunk	пить

	Infinitive	Past Indefinite	Past Participle	Translation
36	drive	drove	driven	гнать; везти; ехать
37	dwell	dwelt	dwelt	обитать;останавливаться подробно
38	eat	ate	eaten	есть (принимать пищу)
39	fall	fell	fallen	падать
40	feed	fed	fed	кормить, -ся
41	feel	felt	felt	чувствовать
42	fight	fought	fought	бороться, сражаться
43	find	found	found	находить
44	flee	fled	fled	бежать, спасаться бегством
45	fling	flung	flung	кидать, бросать
46	fly	flew	flown	летать
47	forbid	forbade	forbidden	запрещать
48	forget	forgot	forgotten	забывать
49	forgive	forgave	forgiven	прощать
50	freeze	froze	frozen	замерзать, замораживать
51	get	got	got	получать; становиться
52	give	gave	given	давать
53	go	went	gone	идти, ехать
54	grind	ground	ground	точить; молоть
55	grow	grew	grown	расти, выращивать
56	hang	hung/hanged	hung/hanged	висеть, вешать
57	have	had	had	иметь
58	hear	heard	heard	слышать
59	hide	hid	hid hidden	прятать
60	hit	hit	hit	ударять; поражать
61	hold	held	held	держать
62	hurt	hurt	hurt	повредить, ушибать; обидеть
63	keep	kept	kept	держать, хранить
64	kneel	knelt	knelt	становиться на колени
65	know	knew	known	знать
66	lay	laid	laid	класть
67	lead	led	led	вести
68	lean	leant leaned	leant leaned	прислоняться
69	leap	leapt leaped	leapt leaped	прыгать
70	learn	learnt learned	learnt learned	учиться
71	leave	left	left	оставлять, уезжать
72	lend	lent	lent	давать взаймы, одалживать

	Infinitive	Past Indefinite	Past Participle	Translation
73	let	let	let	позволять; сдавать в наем
74	lie	lay	lain	лежать
75	light	lit lighted	lit lighted	зажигать, освещать
76	lose	lost	lost	терять
77	make	made	made	делать; заставлять
78	mean	meant	meant	значить; подразумевать
79	meet	met	met	встречать
80	pay	paid	paid	платить
81	put	put	put	класть
82	read	read	read	читать
83	ride	rode	ridden	ездить верхом
84	ring	rang	rung	звонить; звенеть
85	rise	rose	risen	подниматься
86	run	ran	run	бежать
87	saw	sawed	sawn	пилить
88	say	said	said	говорить, сказать
89	see	saw	seen	видеть
90	seek	sought	sought	искать
91	sell	sold	sold	продавать
92	send	sent	sent	посылать
93	set	set	set	помещать, ставить; заходить (о солнце)
94	shake	shook	shaken	трясти
95	shave	shaved	shaven/shaved	брить, -ся
96	shed	shed	shed	проливать (слезы, кровь)
97	shine	shone	shone	сиять, светить
98	shoot	shot	shot	стрелять
99	show	showed	shown	показывать
100	shrink	shrank	shrunk	сморщиваться; сокращаться
101	shut	shut	shut	закрывать
102	sing	sang	sung	петь
103	sink	sank	sunk	погружаться, тонуть
104	sit	sat	sat	сидеть
105	sleep	slept	slept	спать
106	slide	slid	slid	скользить
107	smell	smelt smelled	smelt smelled	пахнуть; нюхать
108	sow	sowed	sown/sowed	сеять
109	speak	spoke	spoken	говорить
110	speed	sped	sped	спешить; ускорять

	Infinitive	Past Indefinite	Past Participle	Translation
111	spell	spelt spelled	spelt spelled	писать или произносить слово по буквам
112	spend	spent	spent	тратить
113	spill	spilt spilled	spilt spilled	проливать
114	spin	span/spun	spun	прясть
115	spit	spat	spat	плевать
116	split	split	split	раскалывать, -ся
117	spoil	spoilt spoiled	spoilt spoiled	портить
118	spread	spread	spread	распространять, -ся
119	spring	sprang	sprung	прыгать
120	stand	stood	stood	стоять
121	steal	stole	stolen	красть
122	stick	stuck	stuck	приклеивать, -ся
123	sting	stung	stung	жалить
124	strike	struck	struck	ударять; бастовать
125	strive	strove	striven	стремиться
126	swear	swore	sworn	клясться; браниться
127	sweep	swept	swept	мести
128	swell	swelled	swollen	пухнуть, раздуваться
129	swim	swam	swum	плавать
130	swing	swung	swung	качать, -ся; размахивать
131	take	took	taken	брать
132	teach	taught	taught	обучать, учить
133	tear	tore	torn	рвать
134	tell	told	told	рассказывать
135	think	thought	thought	думать
136	throw	threw	thrown	бросать
137	tread	trod	trodden	ступать
138	understand	understood	understood	понимать
139	wake	woke waked	woken waked	будить; просыпаться
140	wear	wore	worn	носить
141	weep	wept	wept	плакать
142	win	won	won	выигрывать
143	wind	wound	wound	заводить (часы); виться
144	write	wrote	written	писать

IRREGULAR VERBS: DIFFICULT CASES

	Infinitive	Past Indefinite	Past Participle	Translation
1	to fall	fell	fallen	падать
	to feel	felt	felt	чувствовать
	to fill	filled	filled	наполнять
2	to flow	flowed	flowed	течь, литься
	to fly	flew	flown	летать
3	to lay	laid	laid	класть, положить
	to lie	lay	lain	лежать
	to lie	lied	lied	лгать
4	to leave	left	left	уезжать
	to live	lived	lived	жить
5	to raise	raised	raised	поднимать
	to rise	rose	risen	подниматься
6	to strike	struck	struck	бить, ударять
	to stroke	stroked	stroked	гладить

REGULAR VERBS: SPELLING RULES

base form	third person singular of Present Simple	**'-ing'** form or Present Participle	**'-ed'** form or Past Participle	Exceptions
	+ '-s'	+ 'ing'	+ 'ed'	
join	*joins*	*joining*	*joined*	
ending in **-sh** *finish*	+ '-s' *finishes*	*finishing*	*finished*	
-ch *reach*	*reaches*	*reaching*	*reached*	
-ss *pass*	*passes*	*passing*	*passed*	
-x *mix*	*mixes*	*mixing*	*mixed*	
-z *buzz*	*buzzes*	*buzzing*	*buzzed*	
-o *echo*	*echoes*	*echoing*	*echoed*	
ending in **'-e'** *dance*	omit '-e' before adding '-ing' or '-ed' *dances*	*dancing*	*danced*	*age, agree, disagree, dye, free, knee, singe, referee, tiptoe*
ending in **'-ie'** *tie*	*ties*	'-ie' p '-y' before adding '-ing' *tying*	*tied*	
ending in consonant + **'-y'** *cry*	'-y' p '-ies' *cries*	*crying*	'-y' p '-ied' *cried*	
one syllable ending in single vowel + consonant *dip*	*dips*	double final consonant before adding '-ing' or '-ed' *dipping*	*dipped*	not '-w', '-x', '-y': *rowing, boxing, playing*
two syllable ending in single vowel + **'-l'** *travel*	*travels*	*travelling*	*travelled*	not optional in American English *traveling, traveled*
the following verbs: *equip, handicap, hiccup, kidnap, program, refer, worship* *equip*	*equips*	*equipping*	*equipped*	

LIST OF ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL PHRASES

about	кругом, вокруг, повсюду; приблизительно	always	всегда
		and so forth and so on	и так далее
above	наверху, выше	anyhow	во всяком случае
above all	больше всего, главным образом	anyway	во всяком случае, так или иначе
absolutely	совершенно	anywhere	где-нибудь, куда-нибудь, в любом месте
accordingly	соответственно		
across	поперек, на ту сторону, на той стороне	apart	отдельно
		apparently	по-видимому, очевидно
actually	фактически, на самом деле	appreciably	заметно, ощутимо
admittedly	по общему признанию	approximately	приблизительно
		around	кругом, всюду; приблизительно
after	потом, после, впоследствии	as	как, в качестве
after all	в конце концов, в конечном счете	as early as	уже, еще
		as far as	насколько
afterward	впоследствии, потом	as far back as	уже, еще
		aside	в сторону, в стороне
again	опять, снова, еще раз	as long ago as	уже, еще
		as usual	как обычно
ago	тому назад	as well	также; кроме того, вдобавок; с таким же успехом
all at once	неожиданно, вдруг		
all in all	полностью, целиком		
all of a sudden	внезапно, вдруг	as yet	пока что, пока еще
all over	повсюду, кругом; совершенно, полностью	at all	вообще
		(not) at all	совсем (не)
		at all costs	во что бы то ни стало, любой ценой
all the more	тем более		
almost	почти	at all events	во всяком случае, по крайней мере
alone	один		
a long time	долго, давно	at any rate	во всяком случае; по меньшей мере,
a long time ago	давно		
a long way a long way away a long way off	далеко	at a time	за раз, одновременно
		at a time when	в то время, когда
already	уже; еще	at the earliest	самое раннее
also	также	at first	сперва, сначала
altogether	в общем, вполне	at last	наконец

at the latest	самое позднее	decidedly	решительно
at least	по крайней мере	directly	прямо, как только, непосредственно
at (the) most	не больше, чем самое большее	down	вниз, внизу
at once	сразу, немедленно	downstairs	вниз (по лестнице), внизу (на нижнем этаже)
at present	в настоящее время, сейчас	early	рано
at that	при этом, к тому же	(not) either	также (не)
at this (that) time	в это (то) время	else	еще; в противном случае, иначе
away	прочь	elsewhere	где-нибудь в другом месте, куда-нибудь в другое место
back	назад, обратно	enough	достаточно, довольно
badly	плохо; очень, сильно	entirely	полностью, совершенно
before	прежде, раньше	equally	в равной степени, равным образом
beforehand	заранее	ere long (устар.)	вскоре
before long	скоро, вскоре	especially	особенно
before now	раньше, до сих пор	even	даже
before then	до того времени	eventually	в конечном счете, в конце концов
behind	сзади, позади	ever	когда-либо, когда-нибудь
below	ниже, внизу	ever since	с тех пор
besides	кроме того	ever so	очень
by all means	обязательно, во что бы то ни стало	ever such	очень
by any means	любым способом, каким бы то ни было образом	everywhere	везде, всюду
by far	намного, значительно, гораздо	evidently	очевидно
by no means	ни в коем случае, ни под каким видом	exactly	точно, ровно
by now	к настоящему времени	exceedingly	чрезвычайно
by the by	между прочим	extremely	крайне, чрезвычайно
by then	к тому времени	far	далеко; намного, значительно, гораздо
by the way	между прочим	far away	далеко
certainly	конечно, непременно, безусловно	far off	
chiefly	главным образом	fairly	довольно
consequently	следовательно, поэтому	fast	быстро
correspondingly	соответственно	finally	в конце концов, в конечном счете
currently	теперь, в настоящее время	first	сперва, сначала; впервые
daily	ежедневно		

firstly	во-первых	hardly anywhere	почти никуда, почти нигде
first of all	прежде всего	hardly ever	почти никогда
for a time	на время, временно	hence	отсюда, следовательно
for a while	на время	henceforth	устар. с этого времени, впредь
for ever	навсегда	henceforward	устар.
for good		here	здесь, сюда
formerly	раньше, прежде	hereafter = after this	
for some time to come	в течение некоторого времени в будущем	here and there	там и сям, кое-где, местами
forth	вперед, дальше, впредь	hereby = by this	
for the first (last) time	в первый (последний) раз	herein = in this	
for the time being	пока, до поры до времени	hereinafter (устар.)	ниже, в дальнейшем
for this (that) purpose	с этой (той) целью	hereof = of this	
fortunately	к счастью	hereto = to this	
forward	вперед	heretofore	прежде, до этого
frequently	часто	herewith = with this	
from afar	издалека	hitherto	прежде; до сих пор
from everywhere	отовсюду	how	как
from here	отсюда	however	однако; как бы ни
from nowhere	ниоткуда	how long	как долго, сколько времени
from now on	впредь, в дальнейшем	how long ago	сколько времени тому назад
from somewhere	откуда-нибудь, откуда-то	how many	сколько
from then on	с тех пор	how much	сколько
from there	оттуда	immediately	немедленно; как только
fully	полностью	in addition	в дополнение, к тому же
further	дальше, далее	in all (many, some) respects	во всех (многих, некоторых) отношениях
furthermore	кроме того, к тому же	in any case	во всяком случае
generally	вообще, в основном, большей частью	inasmuch as	поскольку
greatly	сильно	in consequence	вследствие этого
happily	к счастью; счастливо	indeed	в самом деле, действительно
hard	усердно, упорно, сильно	in due course	своевременно
hardly	едва	in general	в общем, в основном, вообще говоря
hardly any	почти нет		
hardly anybody	почти никто	in no respects	ни в каком отношении
hardly anything	почти ничего		

in particular	в особенности, в частности	maybe	может быть
inside	внутрь, внутри	meantime / meanwhile	тем временем / а в это время...
insofar as	поскольку	merely	просто, только
instantly	немедленно, тотчас	monthly	ежемесячно
instead	вместо этого	moreover	кроме того, сверх того
in the long run	в конечном счете, в конце концов	mostly	главным образом
in the meantime / in the meanwhile	тем временем / между тем	much	много; намного, гораздо
in time	вовремя	namely	а именно/т. е.
just	только что, сию минуту; как раз; просто	naturally	естественно, разумеется
		near	близко
just now	только что, сейчас, сию минуту	nearly	почти
		necessarily	обязательно
largely	в большой степени	neither	также не
last	в последний раз	never	никогда
lastly	наконец (при перечислении)	nevertheless	тем не менее
		new / newly	недавно, заново, только что
last night	вчера вечером		
last time	в прошлый раз		(в соединении с другими словами)
late	поздно		
lately	в последнее время, за последнее время	no longer (= not ... any longer)	больше не
later on	позднее, после, как-нибудь потом	none the less / notwithstanding	тем не менее
latterly	в последнее время, за последнее время	now	теперь, сейчас
		nowadays	в наше время, в наши дни
like anything	сильно, вовсю		
like that	подобным образом, так	now and then	время от времени
		nowhere	нигде, никуда
likewise	подобным образом, также	obviously	очевидно
		occasionally	изредка, время от времени
little	мало		
a little	немного	of course	конечно
long	долго, давно	of late	за последнее время
long after	спустя долгое время	often	часто
long ago	давно, много времени тому назад	on	дальше, вперед
		once	один раз, однажды, когда-то; раз уж
long before	задолго до этого		
long since	давным-давно	only	только
luckily	к счастью	on no account	ни в коем случае, ни под каким видом
mainly	главным образом		

on purpose	нарочно, с целью	scarcely ever	почти никогда
on the contrary	наоборот, напротив	secondly	во-вторых
on the whole	в общем, в целом	seldom	редко
or else	иначе, в противном случае	simply	просто
otherwise	в противном случае, иначе	since	с тех пор
		since then	с тех пор
out	вне, снаружи, наружу	since when	с каких пор
		so	так; таким образом; итак
outside	снаружи, наружу		
over again	снова; еще раз	so far	до сих пор, до настоящего времени
particularly	особенно		
partly	частично, отчасти	so far as	насколько
perhaps	может быть	solely	исключительно
possibly	возможно	somehow	как-то, как-нибудь
practically	фактически, практически	something like	приблизительно
		sometimes	иногда
presently	вскоре, после; теперь, сейчас	somewhat	несколько, до некоторой степени
presumably	предположительно, по-видимому	somewhere	где-то, куда-то
		soon	скоро
pretty	довольно	soon afterwards	вскоре после этого
previously	раньше	steadily	упорно, неуклонно
probably	вероятно	still	еще; все еще; однако, все же
properly	должным образом		
quite	совсем, совершенно	straight	прямо
rather	довольно, до некоторой степени; скорее, лучше, охотнее	subsequently	впоследствии, потом, позже
		suddenly	вдруг, внезапно
		sufficiently	достаточно
really	действительно, в самом деле	surely	наверно, конечно
		that is why	вот почему
recently	(за) последнее время, недавно	that time	в тот раз
		then	тогда, затем
relatively	относительно	thence	оттуда, следовательно
respectively	соответственно		
right	прямо	there	там, туда
satisfactorily	удовлетворительно	thereafter = after that	
scarcely	едва	therefore	поэтому
scarcely any	почти нет	therein = in that	
scarcely anybody	почти никто	thereof = of that	
scarcely anything	почти ничего	thereon = on that	
scarcely any-where	почти нигде, почти никуда	thereupon = upon that	
		therewith = with that	

the ... the ...	чем ... тем	up	вверх, вверху
this time	в этот раз	upstairs	вверх (по лестнице),
throughout	повсюду, во всех отношениях		наверх, наверху (на верхнем этаже)
thus	таким образом	up to here	до сих пор
till now	до настоящего времени	up to now	до настоящего времени
till recently	до последнего времени	up to then	до того времени
		up to there	до того места
till then	до того времени	usually	обычно
today	сегодня	very	очень
together	вместе	virtually	фактически, в сущности
tomorrow	завтра		
tonight	сегодня вечером, сегодня ночью	weekly	еженедельно
		well	хорошо; очень, значительно
too	слишком; также; к тому же	when	когда
twice	два раза, дважды	whenever	когда бы ни, всякий раз когда
ultimately	в конечном счете, в конце концов	where	где, куда
undoubtedly	несомненно	whereby = by which	
unexpectedly	неожиданно	wherein = in which	
unfortunately	к несчастью	whereof = of which	
unhappily		wherever	где бы ни, куда бы ни
unluckily			
until now	до настоящего времени	wherewith = with which	
until recently	до последнего времени	wholly	целиком, полностью
		yesterday	вчера
until then	до того времени	yet	еще; однако, все же

PLACE OF ADVERBS

Adverbs	Examples
1. of manner (**kindly, badly, well,** etc.) ***2.*** of place and direction (**here, there,** etc.)	*With intransitive verbs:* He smiled **kindly**. She did not work **badly**. They speak English **well**. We worked **hard**. I'll meet him **here**. *With transitive verbs:* He answered the questions **slowly**. He **slowly** answered the question.
3. of definite time (**tomorrow, today, yesterday,** etc.)	**Yesterday** I went to the theatre. I met my old friend **yesterday**. It's a fine day **today**. **Today** I have a birthday party. I have seen him **this morning**. **This year** we have learned a lot of new things. **Tomorrow** I shall go there.
4. of place and of time (2 adverbs)	I'll go **there** (1) **tomorrow** (2).
5. of repetition and frequency (**ever, never, just, often, always, seldom, soon, once, generally, sometimes,** etc.)	He **never** comes early. She **seldom** goes there. They **usually** say this. I have not **yet** read the book. I haven't read the book **yet**. Have you read the book **yet** ? He **sometimes** comes here. **Sometimes** he comes here. He comes here **sometimes**. *After the verb "to be":* He is **never** here at that time of the day. You are **always** late for dinner. *With the compound predicates:* I'll **never** do this. He's **just** come. We've **already** finished our work.
6. of degree, measure and quantity (**very, enough, half, too, nearly, almost,** etc.)	We were **very** glad to see him. The student passed the exam **quite** well. He answered almost **immediately**. It's warm **enough**. He speaks English well **enough**. **BUT:** We have **enough** (adjective) time (= *time* ***enough***). I'll write a letter **too**.

VERBS FOLLOWED BY THE INFINITIVE

There are three groups of such verbs. Here are the most important ones.

I. Verbs followed by the Infinitive without a preceding noun. The verbs in italics may also be followed by a "that-clause".

Verb	Translation	Examples
afford	*позволять себе, быть в состоянии*	❒ We can't **afford** *to go* away this summer.
agree	*согласиться*	❒ We **agreed** *to start/that we should start* early.
arrange	*договориться, условиться*	❒ I've **arranged** *to meet* her at the airport.
bother	*беспокоить(ся)*	❒ Don't **bother** *to get* dinner for me today.
care	*хотеть, иметь желание*	❒ Would you **care** *to go* for a walk?
claim	*требовать, претендовать*	❒ He **claimed** *to be* the owner of/*that he owned* the land.
consent	*согласиться, дать согласие*	❒ Her father **consented** *to give* her off.
decide	*решать*	❒ The boy **decided** *not to become/that he wouldn't become* sailor.
demand	*требовать*	❒ He came to my house and **demanded** *to be told/that I should tell* him everything.
determine	*решать(ся)*	❒ He **determined** *to learn* Greek. ❒ He **determined** *that nothing should prevent* him.
endeavour	*стараться, прилагать усилия*	❒ He always **endeavoured** *to please* his mother.
fail	*не сделать что-либо, не суметь, забыть*	❒ He never **fails** *to write.* ❒ She **failed** *to complete* the work on time.
guarantee	*гарантировать*	❒ The bank **guaranteed** *to pay* his debts/*that the debts would be payed.*
hasten	*торопиться, спешить*	❒ He **hastened** *to tell* his wife the good news.
hesitate	*колебаться, не решаться*	❒ I **hesitated** *to speak* to him, since I didn't know him well.
hope	*надеяться*	❒ We **hope** *to see/that we would see* you soon.

learn (how to)	*научиться*	❒ He **learnt** *how to ride* a horse.
long	*страстно желать, стремиться*	❒ It's many years since I left home. I **am longing** *to come* back.
manage	*суметь, справиться*	❒ She **managed** *to keep* her temper.
offer	*предлагать*	❒ He **offered** *to help* me.
prepare	*(под)готовить*	❒ We **are prepared** *to supply* the goods you ask for.
presume (take the liberty)	*взять на себя смелость*	❒ May I **presume** *to advise* you?
pretend	*притворяться*	❒ They **pretended** *not to see/that they didn't see* us.
proceed	*продолжать*	❒ He **proceeded** *to tell us* every detail.
	приниматься	❒ He **proceeded** *to give me* a good scolding. (Он принялся меня бранить)
promise	*обещать*	❒ He **promised** *to be/that he would* be here at 6 o'clock.
propose	*намереваться, предполагать*	❒ What do you **propose** *to do* about it?
refuse	*отказывать(ся)*	❒ He **refused** *to help* us.
resolve	*решить*	❒ He **resolved** *to succeed.* He **resolved** *that nothing should call* him back.
seek	*стремиться, пытаться, стараться*	❒ They **sought** *to kill* him.
strive	*стараться, прилагать усилия*	❒ He **strove** *to succeed* in business.
swear	*клясться*	❒ He **swore** *to tell/that he would tell* the truth.
tend	*иметь склонность/тенденцию*	❒ It **tends** *to rain* in winter in the North of England.
threaten	*угрожать*	❒ The chairman **threatened** *to resign/that he would resign* if his policies were not adopted.
trouble	*беспокоить(ся), затруднять(ся)*	❒ Don't **trouble** *to meet* me at the station.
undertake	*предпринимать, согласиться, взять обязательства*	❒ He **undertook** *to finish* the job by Friday.
volunteer	*предлагать свою помощь, добровольно сделать что-либо*	❒ The question is whether anyone will **volunteer** *to serve* there.
vow	*дать обет*	❒ I **vowed** *not to follow/that I would never follow* his advice again.

II. A noun (pronoun) + infinitive is used after these verbs. The verbs in italics may also be followed by a "that-clause".

accustom	*привыкать*	❒ When he became a soldier he had **to accustom** *himself not to sleep* at night.
aid	*помогать*	❒ My brother **aided** *me to do* it.
appoint	*назначать*	❒ They **appointed** *White to manage* the store.
assist	*помогать*	❒ The young man **assisted** *the girl to fill* in all the forms.
cause	велеть, *вызывать, заставлять*	❒ He **caused** *the prisoners to be put* to death. ❒ The incident **caused** *me to reflect.*
command[1]	приказывать, *командовать*	❒ The officer **commanded** *his men to fire.* ❒ The pirate chief **commanded** *that the prisoners should be shot.*
challenge	вызывать, бросать вызов, *оспаривать*	❒ He **challenged** *his right to heir* the house. ❒ He **challenged** *me to fight.*
compel[4]	*заставлять*	❒ His conscience **compelled** *him to confess.*
direct[1]	*приказывать*	❒ The officer **directed** *his men to advance/that his men should advance.*
enable	*давать возможность*	❒ The collapse of the strike **enabled** *the company to resume* normal bus service.
encourage	воодушевлять, *ободрять,* потворствовать	❒ The mother **encouraged** *the boy to work* hard.
entreat[1]	*умолять*	❒ She **entreated** *the judge to show* mercy.
force[4]	*заставлять*	❒ The manager **forced** *them to work* hard.
impel	побуждать, *принуждать*	❒ The President's speech **impelled** *the nation to make* greater efforts.
implore[1]	*умолять*	❒ I **implored** *my friend to help* me.
incite	*подстрекать*	❒ He was shot for **inciting** *his comrades to rise* against their officers.
induce	побуждать, заставлять	❒ We couldn't **induce** *the old lady to travel* by air.
inspire	воодушевлять	❒ What **inspired** *him to give* such a brilliant performance?
instruct[3]	*инструктировать, обучать*	❒ We were **instructed** *to start* early. ❒ I've been **instructed** *by my agent that you still owe* me $50.

invite	*приглашать*	❒ He didn't **invite** *me to come* in.
lead	*(при)вести*	❒ What **led** *you to think* so?
order[1]	*приказать, настаивать*	❒ The doctor **ordered** *me to stay* in bed. ❒ The judge **ordered** *that the prisoner should be* remanded.
persuade	*убеждать*	❒ He **persuaded** *me to change/that I should change* my mind.
press	торопить, заставлять, *требовать действий*	❒ He had **to press** *her to pay* the debt.
prompt	*побуждать, толкать*	❒ What **prompted** *him to be* so generous?
provoke	*вызывать, провоцировать*	❒ His behaviour **provoked** *her to answer* rudely.
remind	*напомнить*	❒ Please, **remind** *me to answer/that I should answer* the letter.
require[1]	*требовать*	❒ Students **are required** *to take* three papers in England. ❒ It's **required** *that you arrive* at 8 a.m.
stimulate	*побуждать*	❒ She **stimulated** *me to take* greater efforts.
summon	вызывать, созывать	❒ They **summoned** *her to appear* as a witness.
teach (how to)	*обучать*	❒ My father **taught** *me how to swim* when I was five.
tell (instruct, order)	сказать, *приказать*	❒ He **told** *me to come* immediately.
tempt	*соблазнять*	❒ Nothing could **tempt** *him to take* such a step.
trust[1]	*доверять* (верить, что все будет в порядке)	❒ Can I **trust** *you to get* the money safely to the bank?
warn[3]	*предупреждать*	❒ We **warned** *them not to go* skating on such thin ice/*that the ice was* thin.

NOTES:

1. No noun is found between these verbs and a "that-clause":
   - ❒ The commander **ordered** HIS TROOPS ***to lay down*** their arms.
   - ❒ The commander **ordered that** his troops should lay down their arms.

Note that the use of ***should*** is a common feature in such clauses after these verbs.

2. A noun is always found between these verbs and a "that-clause":
   - ❒ He **persuaded ME** ***to change*** my mind.
   - ❒ He **persuaded ME** ***that*** his plan was preferable.

3. The Chancellor **warned UNIONS** ***that*** higher wages would mean higher prices.
   The Chancellor **warned** ***that*** higher wages would mean higher prices.

4. ***Make*** is roughly synonymous with these verbs, but is followed
   a) in the active, by a noun + infinitive without *to*:
      - ❒ He **made ME** ***do*** all the work again.

   b) in the passive, by an infinitive with *to*:
      - ❒ I **was made TO DO** all the work again.

III. The Infinitive, with or without a preceding noun, is used after these verbs. The verbs in italics may also be followed by a clause introduced by *that.*

ask	*просить* *приглашать*	❒ She **asked** *to be excused.* ❒ We **asked** *to see* him. ❒ She **asked** us *to come* to the concert.
beg	*взять на себя смелость, позволить себе* (formal)	❒ We **beg** *to inform* you (извещаем вас). ❒ I **beg** *to differ* (позволю себе не согласиться). ❒ I **beg** *to enclose* (при сем прилагаю).
choose	*решать(ся)* *выбирать*	❒ She **chose** *to remain* at home. Она решила остаться дома. ❒ They **chose** *me to serve* as their representative. Они выбрали меня своим представителем.
dare[1]	*решаться, осмеливаться, подстрекать*	❒ I don't **dare** *to protest.* Я не осмеливаюсь возражать. ❒ He **dared** *me to jump* from the bridge into the water. Он подстрекал меня прыгнуть с моста в воду.
desire	*хотеть, желать, требовать, просить*	❒ I **desire** *you to go* at once. Я требую/прошу, чтобы вы пошли немедленно.
elect	*решить, предпочесть*	❒ He **elected** *to remain* at home. Он предпочел остаться дома.
expect	*ожидать, надеяться*	❒ We **expect** to receive a letter from him soon.

help	*помогать, содействовать, оказывать помощь*	❒ She always **helps** her daughter do school homework.
mean (= intend)	*намереваться, иметь в виду*	❒ I didn't **mean** *to offend* you.
request	*просить позволения, предлагать (вежливо приказать)*	❒ I must **request** *you to obey* orders. Предлагаю вам выполнить приказание.
want	*хотеть, испытывать необходимость, требоваться*	❒ You **want** *to see* a doctor. Вам нужно пойти к врачу.
wish	*хотеть, желать*	❒ I **wish** *you understand.* Я хочу, чтобы вы поняли.

NOTES:

1. If no noun is used after *dare*, two patterns are possible:

   a) the infinitive with *to:*
   ❒ He **dared** *to call* me a fool to my face.

   b) the infinitive without *to* (more especially in negative and interrogative sentences):
   ❒ He **dare***n't tell* me what happened.
   ❒ **Dare** you mention it to him?

AMERICAN ENGLISH

There are a few grammatical differences between British and American English:

1. In American English *the past simple* is often used to give new information or to announce a recent happening:

- ❑ I **lost** my key. Can you help me look for it?

The past simple is used with **just** and **already**:

- ❑ I'm not hungry. I **just had** lunch.
- ❑ "Don't forget to post the letter." – "I **already** posted it".

Americans use *the past simple* with **yet**:

- ❑ I **didn't tell** them about the accident **yet.**

2. In American English the forms **I have/I don't have/do you have?** are more usual than *I've got/I haven't got/have you got?*:

- ❑ We **have** a new car.
- ❑ Do you **have** any change?

3. These verbs (**burn, learn,** etc.) are normally regular in American English: burn**ed**, learn**ed**, etc.

4. The past participle of **get** is **gotten** in American English:

- ❑ Your English has **gotten** much better since I last saw you.

LIST OF GRAMMAR TERMS AND KEY WORDS

Adjective	прилагательное
Adverb of manner	наречие образа действия (отвечающее на вопрос *как? каким образом?*)
Adverbial clause of cause	придаточное предложение причины
Adverbial clause of time	придаточное предложение времени
Adverbial modifier of place	обстоятельство места
Adverbial modifier of time	обстоятельство времени
Affirmative	утвердительная форма
Appendix	приложение
Appropriate	соответствующий
Aspect	вид
Attributive clause	определительное придаточное предложение
Auxiliary verb	вспомогательный глагол
Blanks	пустые места, пробелы
Bold type	жирный шрифт
Borrow	заимствовать
Brackets	скобки
Case	падеж
Class noun	имя существительное, обозначающее отдельный предмет
Collective noun	имя существительное собирательное
Colloquial	разговорный
Common noun	нарицательное имя существительное
Comparative	сравнительный
Compare	сравнивать
Complete	закончить, завершить
Completed action	завершенное действие
Compound	составное слово
Condition	условие
Conditional sentence	условное предложение
Conjunction	союз
Connecting adverb	наречие, служащее для соединения
Consequence	следствие
Consonant	согласная, ~ ый
Correct	1) правильный, соответствующий 2) исправить, поправить
Corresponding	соответствующий
Countable noun	исчисляемое существительное
Customary action	обычное действие

Defining	определительный
Degree	мера, степень
Degrees of comparison	степени сравнения
Demonstrative	указательный
Denote	обозначать
Derivative	производный
Direct speech	прямая речь
Ending	окончание
Example	пример
Exercise	упражнение
Express	выражать
Expression	выражение, словосочетание
Extend	продолжить
Feminine	женский род
Fiction	художественная литература
Formation	образование
Future	будущий, будущее время
General question	общий вопрос
General truth	истина (нечто постоянное и неизменное)
Habitual	привычный
Imply	подразумевать
Indefinite	неопределенный
Indirect speech	косвенная речь
Insert	вставить
Italic type	курсивный шрифт
Interrogative	вопросительный
Intransitive verb	непереходный глагол
Introduce	вводить
Inversion	инверсия, обратный порядок слов в предложении
Irregular verb	неправильный глагол
Join	соединить, объединить
Limited	ограниченный
List	список
Masculine	мужской род
Meaning	значение

Measure	мера
Mind	обратить внимание
Missing	недостающий
Negative	отрицательный
Negative sentence	отрицательное предложение
Nominative case	падеж, соответствующий именительному
Noun	существительное
Number	число
Object clause	дополнительное придаточное предложение
Objective pronouns	местоимения в объектном (косвенном) падеже
Observe	соблюдать
Omit	пропускать, опускать
Opinion	мнение, суждение
Order	приказ
Particle	частица
Passive voice	страдательный залог
Past	прошедший (о времени)
Pattern	модель
Peculiarity	особенность
Permanent action	постоянное действие (факт)
Person (1st, 2nd, 3d)	лицо (1-ое, 2-ое, 3-е)
Personal	личный
Plural	множественное число
Positive sentence	утвердительное предложение
Possessive	притяжательный
Posterior	последующий
Precede	предшествовать
Prefix	приставка
Preposition	предлог
Prepositional object	предложное дополнение
Present	настоящее время
Previous	предыдущий
Principal clause	главное предложение
Prior	предшествующий
Proceed	продолжать
Productive	продуктивный
Pronoun	местоимение
Proper noun	собственное имя существительное
Quantity	количество
Question	вопрос

Real condition	реальное условие
Reciprocal	взаимный
Reflexive	возвратный
Relations	(взаимо-) отношения
Render	передавать
Repeated action	повторяющееся действие
Replace	заменить
Reported speech	косвенная речь
Request	просьба
Required	требуемый
Reword	перефразировать
Right	правильно
Rule	правило
Sequence of tenses	согласование времен
Set expression	устойчивое словосочетание
Simultaneous	одновременный
Singular	единственное число
Special question	специальный вопрос
State	1. состояние 2. утверждать, гласить
Statement	утверждение
Stem	корень
Subject	подлежащее
Subordinate clause	придаточное предложение
Substitute	заменить
Succession of actions	последовательность действий
Superlative	превосходный
Syllable	слог
Temporary action	периодическое, временное действие
Tense	время (глагола)
Uncountable noun	неисчисляемое существительное
Unproductive	непродуктивный
Unreal condition	нереальное условие
Viewpoint adverb	наречие, выражающее точку зрения
Vowel	гласная, ~ ый
"When / if" clause	придаточное предложение времени и условия
Wish	желание, пожелание
Wrong	неправильно
Zero	нулевой

PUNCTUATION

. **FULL STOP (US = PERIOD)**

Used to mark the end of a sentence:

Edward walked briskly into the holel. The receptionist looked at him coldly.

Also ⇨ **Letters** and **Abbreviations** below.

? **QUESTION MARK**

1. Used at the end of a direct question:

Who was the first to arrive?

(***Note.*** It is not used at the end of an *indirect question: He asked who had been the first to arrive.*)

2. Used in parentheses to express doubt:

He was born in 1550 (?) and died in 1613.

! **EXCLAMATION MARK (US ALSO EXCLAMATION POINT)**

Used at the end of a sentence or remark expressing a high degree of anger, amazement or other strong emotion:

'What a wonderful surprise !' she cried.

Get out of here and never come back!

(***Note.*** Beware of over-using exclamation marks, or including them where the emotion is only mild.)

, **COMMA**

1. Used to separate the items in lists of words, phrases or clauses:

Red, pink, yellow and white roses filled the huge vases.

If you take your time, stay calm, concentrate and think ahead, you'll pass your driving test.

2. Sometimes used after a subordinate adverbial clause or after a phrase which comes before the main clause. It is essential after longer clauses and phrases, and to avoid ambiguity:

When the sun is shining brightly above, the world seems a happier place.

In the summer of 1984, many trees died.

3. Used after a non-finite or verbless clause, at the beginning of a sentence:

To get there on time, she left half an hour early.

Happy and contented, the cat fell asleep.

4. Used to separate an introductory or transitional word or phrase (**e.g.** *therefore, however, by the way, for instance*) from the rest of the sentence:

Yes, it certainly had been an eventful day.

In fact, I don't even know her name.

Driving on icy roads can be dangerous and one should, therefore, be very careful.

5. Used before and after any element (**e.g.** a dependent clause, a comment) which interrupts the sentence:

The fire, although it had been burning for several hours, was still blazing fiercely.

You should, indeed you must, report the matter to the police.

6. Used before and after a non-defining relative clause, or a phrase in apposition, which gives more information about the noun it follows:
   The Pennine Hills, which have been a favourite with hikers for many years, are situated between Lancashire and Yorkshire.
   Queen Elizabeth II, a very popular monarch, celebrated her Silver Jubilee in 1977.

(***Note.*** No commas are used around a relative clause that *defines* the noun it follows:
The hills that separate Lancashire from Yorkshire are called the Pennines.)

7. Sometimes used to separate main clauses linked by a conjunction (**e.g.** *and, as, but, for, or*), especially when the first clause is long:
   We had been looking forward to meeting Sarah's husband, but discovered that he was not as pleasant as we had hoped.

Also ⇨ **Conversation** and **Letters** below.

: COLON

1. *(Formal)* Used after a main clause where the following statement illustrates or explains the content of that clause. It may be replaced by a semicolon or a full stop:
   The garden had been neglected for a long time: it was overgrown and full of weeds.
2. Used before a long list, and often introduced by phrases such as: *such as; for example; for instance; in the following examples; as follows:*
   Your first aid kit should include the following items: cotton wool, lint, antiseptic lotion, sticking plaster, bandages and safety pins.

Also ⇨ **Letters** and **Quotations** below.

; SEMICOLON

1. *(Formal)* Used to separate main clauses, not (usually) joined by a conjunction, which are considered so closely connected as to belong to one sentence:
   The sun was setting now; the shadows were long.
   He had never been to Russia before; however, it had always been one of his life-long ambitions.
2. Used instead of a comma to separate from each other parts of a sentence that are already separated by commas:
   There are two facts to consider: first, the weather; second, the expence.

– DASH

1. *(Colloq.)* Used instead of a colon or a semicolon to make the writing more vivid or dramatic:
   Sirens blared, men shouted, and people crowded in to witness the scene – it was chaos.
   So you've been lying to me for years and years – how can I ever trust you again?
2. *(Colloq.)* Used singly or in pairs to separate extra information, an afterthought or a comment, in a vivid or dramatic way, from the rest of the sentence:
   Schooldays are the happiest days of our lives – or so we are told.
   Schooldays – or so we are told – are the happiest days of our lives.

(***Note.*** In more formal usage, parentheses or commas replace dashes.)

Also ⇨ **Conversation** below.

() PARENTHESES (GB ALSO BRACKETS)

1. Used to separate extra information, an afterthought or a comment from the rest of the sentence:
   Schooldays (so we are told) are the happiest days of our lives.
   He said he'd never seen the sea before (but I think he was joking).
2. Used to enclose cross-references:
   The abacus (see the picture on page 1) is used for teaching numbers to children.

'' QUOTATION MARKS (GB ALSO INVERTED COMMAS)

(***Note.*** In GB usage they are usually single: *'Fire!'* In US usage they are usually double: *"Fire!"*)

Used around a slang or technical term when it is in a context in which it is not usually found, or around a word to which the writer wishes to draw particular attention:

Next, the clay pot had to be 'fired'.
He called himself a 'gentleman' but you would never have thought so from the way he behaved.

Also ⇨ **Conversation** and **Quotations** below.

- HYPHEN

(***Note.*** It must not be confused with the dash, which separates parts of a sentence. The hyphen is half the length of the dash.)

1. Sometimes used to form a compound word from two other words:
   hard-hearted; radio-telescope; fork-lift truck.
2. Used to form a compound word from a prefix and a proper name:
   pre-Raphaelite; pro-Soviet; anti-Nazi.
3. Used to form a compound word from two other words which are separated by a preposition:
   mother-in-law; mother-to-be; mother-of-pearl; out-of-date.
4. *(Esp GB)* Sometimes used to separate a prefix ending in a vowel from a word beginning with that same vowel:
   co-ordination; re-elect; pre-eminent.

' APOSTROPHE

1. Used with 's' to indicate the possessive:
   Singular noun: *the dog's* [dɔgz] *bone.*
   Singular noun ending in 's': *the princess's* [prin´sesiz] *smile.*
   Singular proper noun ending in 's' (two possible forms): *King Charles's* [´tʃa:lziz] *crown,- King Charles'* [´tʃa:lziz] *crown.*
   Plural noun: *students'* [´stju:dənts] *books.*
   Irregular plural: *men's* [menz] *jackets.*
2. Used in a contracted form to indicate the omission of letters or figures:
   I'm (= I am); *he's* (= he is/has); *they'd* (= they would/had). *In '87* (= 1987).
3. Used with 's' to form the plural of a letter, a figure or an abbreviation, when these are used as proper words. In modern usage it is often omitted after a figure or a capital letter:
   In the 1960's or *in the 1960s. MP's* or *MPs. He can't pronounce his r's.*
4. Used with 's' to form the plural of a word (**e.g.** a preposition or a conjunction) that does not usually have a plural :
   No if's or but's – just do as I say.

ABBREVIATIONS

1. A full stop may end an abbreviation or a person's initials, although this is becoming less common, especially in GB usage:
   Mr. R. S. H. Smith or *Mr R S H Smith.*
2. When the abbreviation consists of capitals, it is common GB usage to omit the full stops:
   UN, WHO, BCC.
3. The omission of full stops in a lower case abbreviation is less common:
   i.e., p.m., e.g., or *ie, pm, eg.*
4. If the abbreviation includes the last letter of the word, it is usual in GB usage to omit the full stop:
   Mr, Dr, St , Rd.
5. To form the plural of capital letter abbreviations, add a lower case 's or s:
   MP's or MPs, TV's or TVs.

CONVERSATION

1. A new indented paragraph is begun with each new speaker.
2. Quotation marks enclose all words and punctuation in direct speech:
   'What on earth did you do that for?' he asked.
3. Introductory words (**e.g.** he said, she cried, they answered) are separated from the actual words spoken by commas if no other punctuation mark (**e.g.** question mark, exclamation mark) is used:
   John said, 'That's all I know.' 'That's all I know', said John. 'That', said John, 'is all I know'.
   'Why?' asked John.
4. A comma separates a question tag from the rest of the sentence:
   'You knew he'd come, didn't you?'
5. A mild interjection or the direct use of a name is separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma:
   'Oh, so that's what he wanted. (**Cf** 'Oh no! I don't believe you!')
   *'Weil, Peter, I did my best.' (**Cf** 'Peter! Look out!')*
6. Hesitant or interrupted speech can be indicated by dashes:
   'Can I - I mean, would you mind if I came too?'
   'You'll find it in - ' were his dying words.
7. Speech within speech is shown by (GB usage) double quotation marks inside single marks, or (US usage) single quotation marks within double marks:
   'When the judge said, "Not guilty," I could have hugged him.' (GB)
   "When the judge said, 'Not guilty,' I could have hugged him." (US)

LETTERS

1. A business letter is set out as shown below. The punctuation marks are optional. The address of the person who is writing the letter is in the top right-hand corner; the address of the person to whom the letter is being written is in the top left-hand corner, but below the address of the sender:

3 Willow Street,
Frambleton,
Suffolk.
SF5 9PK.
6th June, 1984.

Mr D. B. Taylor.
Metalwork Ltd,
Booth Street,
Ormton,
Lancashire.
LC14 3JQ.

Dear Mr Taylor,
Thank you for...

Yours faithfully /sincerely/ (US) *truly,*
[signature]
Mary Burton.

2. In US usage, a colon is substituted for the comma in the salutation, except informally:
   Dear Ms Burton: but *Dear Mary.*
3. In an informal letter, only the address of the sender is necessary, the optional punctuation is more likely to be omitted, and Yours sincerely, etc. is replaced by a more friendly or personal phrase, **e.g.** *Yours, Yours affectionately, With best / warm wishes, With love.*

QUOTATIONS

1. The quotation is separated from its introduction by a colon and is enclosed by quotation marks:
   It was Disraeli who said: 'Little things affect little minds.'
2. If a word or phrase is omitted from the quotation, this is indicated by a row of three dots (...):
   'The condition of man ... is a condition of war of everyone against everyone.' (Thomas Hobbes)

Also ⇨ **Conversation** above.

LITERATURE

Alexander L.G. "Longman English Grammar for intermediate students"/Longman, 1992/ 296 p.

English Grammar Through Practice (Morphology)/Moscow, Higher School Publishing House, 1976/208 p.

Krutikov Y.A., Kuzmina I.S., Rabinovich Kh.V. "Exercises in Modern English Grammar"/ Moscow, Higher School Publishing House, 1971/247 p.

Krylova I.P. "An English Grammar Practice Book"/Moscow, Higher School Publishing House, 1978/235 p.

Lapidus B., Shevtsova S. "A Practical Giude to Better English"/International Relations Institute Publishing House Moscow, 1962/174 p.

Matyushkina-Guerke T.I., Kuzmichyova T.N., Ivanova L.I. "Practical Grammar in Patterns (For laboratory work)"/Moscow, Higher School Publishing House, 1974/192 p.

Murphy R. "English Grammar In Use (A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate students)"/Cambridge University Press, 1992/328 p.

Natanson E.A. "Practical English Grammar by Correspondence"/Moscow, Higher School Publishing House, 1973/304 p.

Волкова Е.И. "Английский артикль в речевых ситуациях"/М., "Просвещение", 1974/ 158 с.

Гордон Е.М., Крылова И.П. "Употребление артиклей в английском языке"/М., "Международные отношения", 1964/82 с.

Дроздова Т.Ю., Зайцева И.К. и др. "Лабораторные работы по грамматике английского языка для студентов 1 курса"/Л., 1989/62 с.

Дроздова Т.Ю., Степанова Н.В. и др. "Учебные задания по обучению лексико-грамматическим структурам английского языка"/Л., 1989/50 с.

Каушанская В.Л., Ковнер Р.Л. "Грамматика английского языка (на английском языке)"/Л., "Просвещение", 1973/319 с.

Каушанская В.Л., Ковнер Р.Л. и др. "Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка"/Л., "Просвещение", 1968/200 с.

Качалова К.Н., Израилевич Е.Е. "Практическая грамматика английского языка"/М., Внешторгиздат, 1959/720 с.

Лебедева А.Я. "Времена английского глагола (сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка)"/Л., "Просвещение", 1979/79 с.

Мальчевская Т.Н. "Сборник упражений по переводу гуманитарных текстов с английского языка на русский"/Практическое пособие/Издательство «Наука» Ленинградское отделение Ленинград , 1970/213 с.

Натанзон Е.А. "Косвенные наклонения и модальные глаголы в английском языке"/ М., "Международные отношения", 1968/160 с.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

- ✓ содержит 15 тематических разделов, состоящих из общих сведений по теме и особых случаев употребления
- ✓ построена по принципу сопоставления моделей родного и изучаемого языков
- ✓ таблицы, схемы и модели систематизируют материал разделов
- ✓ упражнения построены по принципу нарастания языковых трудностей

отдельными книгами изданы:

- «THE KEYS» (ответы-ключи к упражнениям)
- «TEST FILE» (тесты для проверки усвоения материала)

ISBN 5-94962-075-5

Издательство «Антология»
199053, Санкт-Петербург,
В.О., Средний пр., 4, лит. Б
тел.: (812) 326-0127, 326-0128, 323-7301
sales@anthology.spb.ru
В Интернете: www.anthology.spb.ru

Т. Ю. Дроздова, А. И. Берестова, Н. А. Курочкина

THE KEYS

for

English Grammar: Reference & Practice

&

English Grammar: Test File

Anthology

English Grammar:

Reference &

THE VERB

1. THE VERB "TO BE"

Ex. 1 (p. 8) 2. they're; 3. she's not/she isn't; 4. it's not/it isn't; 5. I'm not; 6. you're not/ you aren't; 8. I am; 9. you are; 10. they are not; 11. it is not; 12. she is.

Ex. 2 (p. 8) 2. am; 3. is; 4. are; 5. is; 6. is; 7. am; 8. is; 9. are; 10. is, are; 11. am; 12. is.

Ex. 3 (p. 8-9) 2. is; 3. are; 4. am; 5. is; 6. are; 7. is; 8. are; 9. is; 10. are.

Ex. 4 (p. 9) 3. I'm/I am/I'm not/I am not; 4. It's/It is/It isn't/It's not; 5. isn't/is not; 6. I'm/I am/I'm not/I am not; 7. are/aren't/are not; 8. is; 9. isn't/is not; 10. aren't/are not; 11. is; 12. aren't/are not.

Ex. 5 (p. 9) 2. Where is my key? 3. Where are my trousers? 4. How old is your grandmother? 5. What colour is his hair? 6. How much are these shoes? 7. Who is your favourite actor? 8. Why are you always late?

Ex. 6 (p. 9) 3. Are you British? 4. Where are you from? 5. How old are you? 6. Are you a student? 7. Is your mother a teacher? 8. Where is she from? 9. What is her name? 10. How old is she?

Ex. 7 (p. 10) 3. Yes, it is./No, it isn't./No, it's not. 4. Yes, I am./No, I'm not. 5. Yes, I am./ No, I'm not. 6. Yes, it is./No, it isn't./No, it's not. 7. Yes, they are./No, they aren't./No, they're not. 8. Yes, I am./No, I'm not. 9. Yes, he is./No, he isn't./No, he's not. 10. Yes, it is./No, it isn't./No, it's not.

Ex. 8 (p. 10) 1. Is your brother at home? 2. How much are these postcards? 3. This hotel is very expensive. 4. I'm interested in arts. 5. All the shops are open today. 6. Is the museum open today? 7. I'm hot. 8. My sister is an architect. 9. I'm not tired. 10. Where is her husband from? 11. They are not students, they are engineers. 12. Are you interested in foreign languages?

Ex. 9 (p. 10-11) 2. is, was; 3. am/'m; 4. was; 5. were; 6. are/'re; 7. were; 8. is/'s; 9. was; 10. were; 11. was; 12. are, were.

Ex. 10 (p. 11) 2. was; 3. weren't, were; 4. wasn't, was; 5. weren't, was; 6. Were, wasn't, was.

Ex. 11 (p. 11) 1. Where were they last night? 2. Why were you late yesterday? 3. He wasn't at the Institute yesterday. 4. I wasn't there. 5. She wasn't at home at 5 o'clock.

2. "THERE IS (ARE)" CONSTRUCTION

Ex. 1 (p. 12) 1. There is/There's; 2. There are; 3. is there; 4. are there; 5. there was not/there wasn't; 6. There was; 7. Were there; 8. There has been; 9. There are; 10. There is; 11. There will be; 12. there was.

Ex. 2 (p. 12-13) 1. Is there a cat in the window? - Yes, there is. 2. Are there any changes in the text? –Yes, there are. 3. Are there plenty of glasses in the cupboard? –Yes, there are. 4. Were there a lot of people at the stadium? - Yes, there were. 5. Is there anything on the plate? - No, there isn't. 6. Was there anybody in the room? - No, there wasn't. 7. Are there any difficult exercises in this book? - Yes, there are. 8. Is there anything on the shelf? - Yes, there is. 9. Will there be any interesting programmes on TV tomorrow? - Yes, there will. 10. Are there several empty seats in the room? - Yes, there are. 11. Were there any pears on the plate? - No, there were not/weren't.

Ex. 3 (p. 13)

A. 1. There are many interesting articles in this magazine. 2. There are many museums and theatres in our city. 3. Is there a telephone in this room? 4. There are two windows in this room. 5. There was no tea in the cup./There wasn't any tea... 6. How many articles were there in this magazine? - There were several articles there. 7. How many students are there in the classroom? - Twenty. 8. There will be a park near our house. 9. Was there a school in this street? 10. There are several books on the table.

B. 1. There is a school near our house. The school is near our house. 2. There are several theatres in the city. The theatres are in the center of the city. 3. There were flowers in the vase. The flowers were in a beautiful vase. 4. There are many children in the theatre. The children are now in the theatre. 5. There are/exist several solutions of this task. The solutions of this task are given on page 5.

3. THE VERB "TO HAVE"

Ex. 1 (p. 14) 2. he's got; 3. they've got; 4. she hasn't got; 5. it's got; 6. I haven't got.

Ex. 2 (p. 14) 2. Have you got a VCR? (Do you have...?) 3. Has your father got a car? (Does your father have...?) 4. Has Carol got many friends? 5. Have Mr. and Mrs. Lewis got any children? 6. How much money have you got? 7. What kind of car has John got?

Ex. 3 (p.15) 3. Alice hasn't got a camera. (Alice doesn't have...) 4. I've got/I haven't got a camera. (I don't have...) 5. I've got/I haven't got a car. 6. Keith hasn't got a car. 7. Alice hasn't got black hair. 8. Alice has got two brothers. 9. Keith hasn't got black hair. 10. Alice has got a car. 11. Keith has got a sister. 12. I have got/haven't got brothers and sisters.

Ex. 4 (p. 15) 3. has got/'s got; 4. have got; 5. has got; 6. haven't got; 7. haven't got; 8. have got/'ve got; 9. hasn't got; 10. has got/'s got; 11. has got/'s got; 12. haven't got; 13. hasn't got; 14. have got/'ve got.

Ex. 5 (p. 15) 1. They haven't got any seminars this month. 2. They haven't got any flowers in their garden this summer. 3. We haven't got any letters from home this week. 4. He hasn't got a sore throat today. 5. I haven't got any warm shoes this winter. 6. She hasn't got a new dress this summer. 7. They haven't got any supper tonight. 8. I haven't got any/a headache tonight. 9. I haven't got fish for dinner today.

Ex. 6 (p. 16) 1. They have got three dogs and three cats. 2. She's got big green eyes. 3. My brother has got a blue car. 4. How much land have you got? 5. Last year we didn't have a car. 6. I had a headache yesterday. 7. When do you have tea? 8. We had a good time yesterday. 9. She had a good holiday in the South. 10. Have you got any books on the history of England?

5. THE INDEFINITE (SIMPLE) FORMS

Ex. 1 (p. 18) 1. He sings. 2. He runs. 3. They study. 4. He dances. 5. They cook. 6. They dance. 7. He paints. 8. They teach. 9. He types. 10. They paint. 11. They write.

Ex. 2 (p.18) 1. He thinks he is ill. 2. He often visits his granny. 3. She lives in Leeds. 4. She usually speaks too quickly. 5. Does he like boiled potatoes? 6. A good animal always obeys his master. 7. The boy boxes in the gymnasium on Fridays. 8. His dog always attacks the neighbours. 9. A heavy truck makes a lot of noise.

Ex. 3 (p. 18-19) 1. She does not/doesn't understand the rule. –Does she understand the rule? 2. He does not usually have breakfast at 8 o'clock. - Does he usually have breakfast at 8 o'clock? 3. The lecture does not start at 10.15. - Does the lecture start at 10.15? 4. The flowers do not/don't look fresh. - Do the flowers look fresh? 5. She does

not usually walk in the morning. - Does she usually walk in the morning? 6. He does not have coffee in the evening. - Does he have coffee in the evening? 7. She does not remember them well. - Does she remember them well? 8. He does not play chess very well. - Does he play chess very well? 9. She does not leave home at 10 o'clock every day. –Does she leave home at 10 o'clock every day? 10. Ann doesn't miss you badly. - Does Ann miss you badly? 11. They do not feel very cold. - Do they feel very cold? 12. Tom does not look sick. - Does Tom look sick? 13. They do not harvest grapes in March. - Do they harvest grapes in March? 14. The last boat does not sail at 10 p.m. - Does the last boat sail at 10 p.m.? 15. That train does not go very fast. - Does that train go very fast?

Ex. 4 (p. 19) 1. are; 2. tell; 3. go; 4. collects; 5. likes; 6. says, is; 7. spend; 8. live, stands, overlooks, is; 9. What does this sentence mean? 10. live, is; 11. sings; 12. has, eats; 13. is; 14. What do you see over there? 15. keeps, keeps; 16. is, have/'ve got ; 17. come; 18. is.

Ex. 6 (p. 19) 1. do the museums open; 2. don't use; 3. do you drink; 4. do you do; 5. does your father come; comes; 6. don't you ask; 7. play, don't play; 8. does "maintain" mean.

Ex. 7 (p. 20) 1. The Sun doesn't set in the East. It sets in the West. 2. Hens don't eat foxes. Foxes eat hens. 3. Blacksmiths don't make things from wood. They make things from metal. 4. The river Dvina doesn't flow into the Black Sea. It flows into the White Sea.

Ex. 8 (p. 20) 1. How often does Felix watch birds? 2. How often do you write to your parents? 3. What time do you usually have dinner? 4. Where does she work? 5. How often do you go to the Zoo? 6. Why do people do stupid things? 7. How often does the motor break down?

Ex. 9 (p. 20) 1. I usually do my homework in the evening. 2. My friend lives in the North. 3. My sister studies at the Medical college. 4. They have foreign language classes twice a week. 5. He always comes to see us when he is in Moscow. 6. How much time does it take you to get back home? - it usually takes me about thirty minutes. 7. He seldom travels now. 8. Do you often go to the cinema? 9. She is never late. She is always on time. 10. Do you feel anything? –No, I don't feel anything. 11. His father is an engineer. He builds bridges. 12. I don't study French, I study German. 13. Now we rarely see them. 14. Does her husband often travel/go on business?

Ex. 10 (p. 22) 1. she woke up early; 2. she walked in the garden; 3. she had a sandwich for lunch; 4. she went out; 5. she slept very well.

Ex. 11 (p. 22) 1. taught; 2. fell, hurt; 3. sold; 4. spent, bought, cost; 5. threw, caught.

Ex. 12 (p. 22) 1. How long did you stay there? 2. Did you stay at a hotel? 3. Did you go alone? 4. How did you travel? 5. Was the food good? 6. What did you do in the evenings? 7. Did you make any friends there?

Ex. 13 (p. 22) 1. didn't have breakfast, didn't have; 2. didn't buy, didn't have; 3. didn't sleep, didn't feel; 4. wasn't, didn't understand.

Ex. 14 (p. 22-23) 1. used to eat; 2. used to be; 3. used to live; 4. used to be; 5. used to like; 6. used to ride.

Ex. 16 (p. 23) 1. We started this experiment last week. 2. They came back home at 7 o'clock in the evening. 3. We decided to send this letter yesterday. 4. Who(m) did you give these magazines to? 5. Yesterday I met Steve in the library. 6. When did you see him last? - Last Tuesday. 7. We didn't study French last year. We studied English. 8. When did you begin to work yesterday? - After dinner. We had little work. 9. The weather was good, and we and our friends went to the park. 10. Where were you an hour ago? 11. I met her the day before yesterday, and she told me about this.

Ex. 17 (p. 23) 1. Now she avoids to go there as often as she used to. 2. He would suddenly appear at his mother's and as suddenly disappear. 3. She would spend hours at the open window, looking at the forest the hill. 4. She would complain of her bad life and feel better/relieved. 5. Personally, I think you speak English better than you used to. 6. Now he doesn't smoke at all, because his health is bad, but he used to be a chain-smoker. 7. He began to study French, and in his childhood he would/used to study English with a tutor. 8. He used to be quite a well-off man.

Ex. 18 (p. 24-25) 1. will/'ll be; 2. will/'ll be; 3. will/'ll be; 4. shall/will/'ll know; 5. shall/will/'ll be; 6. will/'ll remember; 7. When will he come back? 8. shall/will/'ll apologize; 9. shan't/won't see; 10. shall/will/'ll recognize.

Ex. 19 (p. 25)

I. a. 1. calls, shall/will/'ll give; 2. shall/will/'ll be, need; 3. will/'ll be, decide; 4. want, will/'ll get; 5. have.

b. 1. shall/will/'ll write, have; 2. will/'ll wait, send; 3. will/'ll be, is; 4. go.

c 1. don't know, will come; 2. will stay; 3. wonder, shall/will/'ll ever see; 4. am not sure, will be; 5. will start.

II. 1. gets, 'll start; 2. 'll see, is; 3. come, 'll talk; 4. come; 5. wants, will be; 6. wonder, 'll write; 7. 'll be; 8. get, 'll come; 9. will be; 10. come, will find; 11. come, cross; 12. will move; 13. go down, is; 14. 'll be, get; 15. will come; 16. come, am sure, will be, gets; 17. continues, 'll transfer; 18. 'll buy; will you buy; will bring; will bring; 19. look; 20. talk.

Ex. 20 (p. 25) 1. If I have time next week, I'll fix the car. 2. If all goes well, I'll graduate in June. 3. When he finishes this job, we'll give him another. 4. If the traffic conditions get much worse, the city will have to build elevated roads. 5. When the light turns red, all the cars will stop. 6. When/if the weather clears, we'll finish our games. 7. If I am paid tomorrow, I'll buy this dress. 8. If we get there before you, we'll wait for you. 9. When he comes home, his father will give him a good talking to. 10. When/if he takes this medicine, he will be all right.

Ex. 21 (p. 26) 1. get; 2. gets; 3. leave, 'll give; 4. feel, will drive; 5. see; 6. come, will find; 7. am,'ll get in; 8. will you be, am.

Ex. 22 (p. 26) 1. I'll go to the cinema when I finish my work. 2. He'll spend a week in Brussels before he goes to England. 3. He can stay with us when he comes to London in April. 4. Let's leave before it's dark.

Ex. 23 (p. 26) 1. When; 2. if; 3. if; 4. if; 5. If; 6. when; 7. when; 8. if.

Ex. 24 (p. 26) 1. Next year I'll be twenty. 2. Perhaps, he will come today. 3. When will you begin to study a foreign language? 4. He thinks you won't like the new ballet. 5. Will she be at home at 6? - No, she won't. 6. I hope you will cope with the test. 7. Will you have a lot of work tomorrow? - Yes, I will. 8. The examinations will begin on June, 1. 9. The film will be very interesting. 10. We'll see him next week.

Ex. 25 (p. 26-27) 1. They won't start the meeting until the chief engineer comes. 2. If you meet them, ask them to phone us. 3. You'll recognize Gemma as soon as you see her. 4. I wonder, when they will come Dack. 5. Don't cross the street until the light is green. 6. As soon as he comes, he will call you. 7. He will be very happy when you come to New York. 8. If you drink this water you'll get sick. 9. I can't tell you when they will return. 10. If you don't take a taxi now, you will miss your plane. 11. When you want to see me, give me a ring/ring me up. 12. You won't know English until you start working hard. 13. I'll drop in on you before I leave. 14. When winter comes, I'll go to India. 15. I don't know when I'll see him again.

6. THE CONTINUOUS FORMS

Ex. 1 (p. 28-29) 1. He isn't lying down; 2. He isn't washing; 3. They aren't fighting; 4. We aren't jumping; 5. They aren't shouting; 6. She isn't walking; 7. I'm not drinking; 8. She isn't reading.

Ex. 2 (p. 29) 1. No, he isn't. He's watching TV. 2. No, I'm not. I'm learning them by heart. 3. No, he isn't. He's reading a newspaper. 4. No, they aren't. They're talking with a friend. 5. No, I'm not. I'm going home. 6. No, she isn't. She's listening to a concert. 7. No, I'm not. I'm writing a film script. 8. No, she isn't. She's cooking.

Ex. 3 (p. 29) 1. Yes, he is. He is studying. 2. Yes, they are. They are reading. 3. Yes, she is. She is having breakfast. 4. Yes, they are. They are shopping. 5. Yes, she is. She is sewing. 6. Yes, she is. She is washing up. 7. Yes, he is. He is skating. 8. Yes, they are. They are rehearsing.

Ex. 4 (p. 29) 1. He's teaching the dog to bark. 2. I'm cutting out a dress. 3. I'm running to catch my bus. 4. I'm buying a mink coat. 5. I'm going to the University. 6. She's rehearsing for a concert. 7. They're listening to a favourite fairy tale. 8. He's baking an apple pie.

Ex. 5 (p. 30) 1. Yes, she is. She's going to the library. 2. No, they aren't. They're having a rest. 3. No, she isn't. She's having a nap. 4. Yes, we are. We're having visitors. 5. No, she isn't. She's staying at home. 6. No, they aren't. They're having a holiday. 7. Yes, he is. He's going to the concert. 8. Yes, we are. We're doing up the flat.

Ex. 6 (p. 30) 1. am trying; 2. is raining; 3. are you looking; 4. are making; 5. am looking; 6. Are you enjoying; 7. are crying; 8. are you wearing; 9. am not going; 10. am not eating.

Ex. 7 (p. 30) 1. are rising/are increasing/are falling; 2. is getting; 3. is getting/is becoming; 4. is changing; 5. is rising/is increasing; 6. is improving; 7. is getting/is becoming.

Ex. 8 (p. 30-31) 1. am training; 2. Are you enjoying; 3. am getting married; 4. am looking for; 5. Are you doing; 6. is helping.

Ex. 9 (p. 31) 1. Who are you looking at now? - I'm looking at that old lady. 2. Who is your friend speaking with? - He's speaking with our teacher. 3. What are you telling your friends about? - I'm telling them about my holidays. 4. Are you writing a dictation now? - No, we're doing an exercise 9. 5. Where are you going tonight? - We're going to the circus. 6. When are they arriving in Moscow? - They're arriving in the morning. 7. We're going to Minsk. 8. Are these students doing an exercise or copying a text? 9. Who(m) are these students meeting? - They're meeting foreign students. 10. Where are you going? - I'm going to a photo exhibition.

Ex. 11 (p. 32) 1. right; 2. wrong - are you talking; 3. wrong - Do you believe; 4. wrong – is trying; 5. right; 6. wrong - I think; 7. right; 8. wrong –we usually go.

Ex. 12 (p. 32) 1. don't belong; 2. is coming; want; 3. flows; 4. is flowing; 5. Does it ever rain; 6. grow, aren't growing; 7. am learning; is teaching; 8. don't need; 9. enjoy, am not enjoying; 10. don't believe; 11. lives, does your sister live; 12. is staying; 13. is looking for; 14. does your husband do; isn't working.

Ex. 13 (p. 33)

I. 1. is teaching, is substituting, is; 2. am going, is leaving, Is he coming back, don't know; 3. stays, comes, is staying; 4. meets, meets, are painting, are going; 5. is leaving; is he taking; is catching; 6. is repairing; 7. Are you writing; write; Do you want; 8. says, is leaving; 9. am going; 10. is coming; 11. call, are playing, think, play; 12. makes.

II. 1. is, is smoking, think, smokes, is; 2. is, is, is playing; 3. Are you coming, are you going, are driving, Are you taking, are leaving, Do you mind, bring; 4. Is Mike coming, is working, is he doing, is reading up, is, am, isn't going, says, is meeting, is, has.

Ex. 14 (p. 33-34) 1. is reading; 2. go; 3. are you going, am going; 4. is, catches; 5. has; 6. are you laughing, are talking; 7. laughs, laughs; 8. speak; 9. is speaking, are smiling; 10. is splitting; 11. is always reacting; 12. I am always forgetting; 13. are, are having.

Ex. 15 (p. 34) 1. The Sun sets early in this part of the world. 2. Joyce is going to London tomorrow because her uncle wants to see her.3. Some people like summer best of all, some like spring and autumn, but others prefer winter. 4. Where is Lizzy? - She is riding. 5. What are the children doing? - They are listening to a fairy tale and drawing. 6. Jane draws perfectly well. 7. Father usually goes to work by train, but today he is driving. 8. Every year he spends his holidays in the mountains. 9. I am writing to invite you to come and stay with us in summer. 10. I'm sitting by the window and looking at the sea. A vessel is sailing away into the evening gold of the horizon.

Ex. 16 (p. 34) 1. When does he usually come home? - He usually comes home at 7 p. m. 2. What train are you taking to St.-Petersburg next week? 3. My friends from Sheffield are cpming to see me next Sunday. 4. Alex is making a new bookshelf. He always makes all the furniture for his room himself. 5. She is wearing a hat and a blue dress today. 6. I can't give you the book now because I am reading it. 7. Do you read a lot? - Yes, I read a lot. – Do you buy books or borrow them from the library? - I usually borrow 5 books from the Central Library and change them every other month. 8. What are you doing under the table? - I'm looking for the needle. 9. What do you usually have for breakfast? - I usually have a sandwich and drink a cup of coffee. 10. Where are you running so fast? - I am running to catch the 10 o'clock train. I'm meeting Nick today, and he doesn't like it when I am late. 11. I am leaving for Denmark next Sunday.

Ex. 17 (p. 35) 2. he was meeting the manager; 3. he was having lunch; 4. he was visiting his dentist; 5. he was listening to an organ concert...; 6. he was walking the dog; 7. he was driving his mother home.

Ex. 18 (p. 35) 1. Mother was cooking in the kitchen. 2. Father was making a phone call. 3. I was getting ready to go out. 4. My sister was washing some clothes.

Ex. 19 (p. 36) 1. I caught that cold when I was skating on a frosty day. 2. He wrote those nice poems when he was having a holiday. 3. She learnt the language when she was living in England. 4. She heard that song when she was listening to a concert on the radio. 5. I bought that book when I was reading up for my exams. 6. The boy hurt himself when he was riding the bicycle. 7. Philip lost his camera when he was walking about the city. 8. He rang me up when I was having supper.

Ex. 20 (p. 36) 1. The postman brought the letter when I was having breakfast. 2. It started to snow when I was going downstairs. 3. The door bell rang when they were entering the dining- room.

Ex. 21 (p. 36) 1. fell, was rescuing; 2. was reading, heard; 3. Were you having; 4. were waiting, arrived; 5. wasn't driving, saw; 6. broke; was doing, slipped; 7. took, was painting; 8. didn't go, was getting; 9. were you doing; 10. saw; was wearing.

Ex. 22 (p. 36-37) 1. was playing, was reading, was sewing, heard; 2. was leaving, caught; 3. came in, was sitting; 4. was shaving, cut; 5. was; was standing; 6. began; was smiling, was walking; 7. was sleeping, rang; 8. were sitting, drove up; 9. was crossing, struck; 10. was drizzling, came; 11. broke, was living; 12. was getting, suggested; 13. came in, looked, stood, turned, went; 14. was walking, met, asked; 15. came, were eating; 16. ran, went, was standing; 17. raised, looked; was still snowing; 18. were driving, happened; 19. Did you have; 20. fell, hurt, was riding; 21. went, got; 22. went, sat, was crackling, was howling; 23. took, put, leaned; 24. put on; 25. was, wanted; 26. was waiting, coughed/was coughing; 27. drew, looked; were standing; 28. heard, went, opened, did not recognize, was not wearing; 29. were walking, began; 30. came, was leaving; 31. was talking, saw; 32. arrived, went, took off.

Ex. 23 (p. 37-38) 1. opened, looked, stood; 2. realized, were not paying attention, were muttering, (were) looking, turned, looked, were looking, was coming, led; 3. saw, was hurrying, made; 4. was looking; 5. did not see, was making; 6. occurred, was backing; 7. dropped, was fishing; 8. heard, were packing.

Ex. 24 (p. 38)

I. 1. I sat on the bench for half an hour and then began reading a book. 2. I graduated from the University when I was twenty three. 3. When were you here last? - About a year and a half ago. 4. Gray nodded and went upstairs. 5. I met Helen through my parents about three years ago. 6. He stopped and picked up a rose. 7. I visited them a year ago. 8. I saw him in London a week ago. 9. I did not see him when I was in St.-Petersburg. 10. What happened to you that evening? 11. They returned into the house when it started to rain.

II. 1. Did you see him this morning? –Yes, he was standing by the car. 2. He came in and saw Nelly, who was painting a strange picture. 3. He ran to the gate where Ann was standing. 4. I glanced at Jennie who was still shivering from cold. 5. We were just talking about him when he suddenly came in. 6. They came while I was working in the garden. 7. She was laying the table at six o'clock yesterday. 8. What were you playing when I came in? 9. The water in the kettle was boiling when my friends came back to the camp. 10. Unfortunately, when I arrived Helen was just leaving. 11. He suddenly realized that he was travelling in the wrong direction. 12. I was sitting in the garden yesterday when my brother came and brought a puppy. 13. When I came in, they were sitting in the sitting-room. My elder brother was doing a crossword, my mother was knitting, the others were reading. My mother smiled at me and said, "Come in and sit down, please." 14. When she woke up, the birds were singing merrily in the garden. 15. Who were you talking to on the telephone when I came in? - I was talking to my sister. 16. When they were crossing the street, a man came towards them and asked the way to the Palace Square. 17. I was doing my homework when he came.

Ex. 25 (p. 38) 1. Yesterday, when I was walking down Nevsky Prospect, I met Victor, an old friend of mine. He recognized me at once though I was wearing big dark glasses because my eyes were aching. 2. He said, "I was going to see you a fortnight ago, but I

couldn't find time to get round to you." All the time he was saying this I was trying to remember something I wanted to tell him. 3. Eventually I remembered and said to him, "Just before I came out, Oleg rang me up. He wanted to speak to you at Boris's party yesterday, but you were talking so cheerfully with Alice he didn't dare to interrupt." 4. Just then I saw another friend of mine. He was waving to me from the other side of the road. I said good-bye to Victor and started to cross the road.

Ex. 27 (p. 40) 1. will be having; 2. will be playing; 3. will be raining; 4. will be falling; 5. will be opening.

Ex. 28 (p. 40) 1. She will be making a dress on Sunday. 2. We shall/will be bathing in the Black Sea at this time next week. 3. He will be working in the garden when we arrive. 4. He will be studying law at the University for five years. 5. They will be flying to Kiev at this time tomorrow. 6. She will be singing Russian folk-songs at the concert tonight. 7. He will be interviewing a foreign delegation at this time the day after tomorrow. 8. She will be lecturing at the Institute of Foreign Languages next term.

Ex. 29 (p. 40) 1. They'll be sleeping. 2. We'll be travelling. 3. We'll be packing. 4. She'll be typing. 5. He'll be crying. 6. She'll be grumbling. 7. He'll be working. 8. She'll be keeping to her room.

Ex. 30 (p. 40) 1. get, will be sitting; 2. is; will come; 3. want; shall/will be waiting; 4. will be boarding; 5. will be having; 6. shall/will be waiting, come; 7. shall/will call; will be sleeping; 8. will be quarrelling.

Ex. 31 (p. 41) 1. will know; will be standing; will be wearing; 2.'ll tell,'ll show, won't smile; 3. won't be, come, will be having; 4. will be raining, get; 5. will be waiting; 6. will be; 7. 'll be, return, 'll be marking; 8. 'll be typing; 9. will be, will be sketching; 10. will see, will be having tea; 11. will be doing; 12. come, 'll be crossing.

Ex. 32 (p. 41) 1. We must not be late. They will be worrying. 2. We are going to the cinema today. You will be sitting next to me. 3. We are to be back at 10 o'clock. Mother will be waiting for us. 4. Will you have lunch with me on Monday? - I'd love to, but I'm afraid I'll be taking my exam then. 5. What will they be doing when we get home? – I think they will be reading. 6. I don't feel well enough to go to the airport to meet Alice. – I'll meet her for you. Tell me how I'll know her. - She will be wearing a bright green suit. 7. I wonder what we'll be doing in a year, if we'll be seeing one another. 8. My son will be in the ninth form next year. - That means my mother will be teaching him English. 9. Don't tell her about it. She will be crying in a moment. 10. What will you be doing this time next Friday? - I'll be gardening as usual.

Ex. 33 (p. 41-42) 1. was laughing, was going on; 2. are you two talking, Are you discussing; 3. Are you leaving; 4. will you speak; 5. wears, doesn't see; 6. are you wearing; 7. is living, is looking; 8. was sitting; 9. saw, was trying; 10. was writing, wrote/was writing;

11. were walking, was getting; 12: are leaving, is getting; 13. see; 14. will hear; 15. 'll be, 'll be watching; 16. was waiting; 17. was trying; 18. rains, was raining, was raining.

Ex. 34 (p. 42) 1. Are you going; 2. Is Nina writing; 3. Were you waiting; 4. are you wearing, Are you having; 5. waits, go; 6. are objecting; 7. cannot meet, is coming; 8. Are you carrying, is; 9. has, is; 10. was, was wearing, was cold; 11. Will you see; 12. rang, was finishing; 13. entered, was waiting; 14. Is anybody reading, want; 15. is he working; 16. Come, I'll be waiting.

7. THE PERFECT FORMS

Ex. 1 (p. 43) 1. have never met; 2. has just gone; 3. haven't seen; 4. have already posted; 5. has helped; 6. have been; 7. has taken; 8. have never studied; 9. have sold; haven't left.

Ex. 2 (p. 43-44) 1. Yes, she has done them. 2. Yes, I have cooked it. 3. Yes, she has learnt it by heart. 4. Yes, I have used it. 5. Yes, he has eaten it. 6. Yes, I have found them. 7. Yes, he has washed it. 8. Yes, I have heard them.

Ex. 3 (p. 44) 1. have stopped; 2. want, have not seen; 3. is, has always been; 4. Have you read, do you think; 5. have not been, is, have never been; 6. Do you know, have you known, have known; 7. are, have wanted, have not done; 8. Do you realize, have known, is, have asked; 9. Do you know, has just left, is, Is, has been, has never bought; 10. have been; 11. have not seen; 12. has he been, seems; 13. have known, have never seen.

Ex. 4 (p. 44) 1. Father has got a new job in South Africa. 2. He and Mother have left for Cape Town. 3. Mary has married an architect from Canada. 4. I have passed my law exams. 5. I've met the man for me.

Ex. 5 (p. 44) 1. He has overslept; 2. We have run out of bread; 3. She has caught a bad cold; 4. They have switched off their VCR.

Ex. 6 (p. 45) 1. Yes, she has just come from the market. 2. Yes, I've just phoned him. 3. No, thanks, I've just had a cup.

Ex. 7 (p. 45) 1. been; 2. been; 3. gone; 4. gone.

Ex. 8 (p. 45) 1. I've already had a bath. 2. I've already bought some. 3. I've already asked him. 4. haven't invited them yet; going to invite them. 5. he's already arrived. 6. has not written to him yet; is going to write to him.

Ex. 9 (p. 45) 1. Have you ever been to Scotland? 2. Have your parents lived here all their lives? 3. Have you ever heard this concert? 4. How many times have you been married? 5. Has he ever met the President? 6. Have you ever visited the White House?

Ex. 10 (p. 45) 1. Yes, it's the fastest car I've ever driven. 2. Yes, it's the warmest coat I've ever had. 3. Yes, they're the nicest people I've ever met.

Ex.11 (p. 46)

1. Is this the first time you've skated?
   - Yes, I've never skated before.
   –No, it's the second time I've skated this winter.

2. Is this the first time you've played volley-ball?
   –Yes, I've never played volley-ball before.
   - No, it's the second time I've played volley-ball this year.

3. Is this the first time you've ever been to/in London?
   - Yes, I've never been to/in London before.
   - No, it's the second time I've come to London.

Ex. 12 (p. 46) 1. Have you read any books recently? 2. Have you heard from Tom in the past few days? 3. Have you bought any new records recently? 4. Have you eaten anything today? 5. Have you seen any good films recently? 6. Has it snowed here this year yet?

Ex. 13 (p. 46) 1. When did it rain last? - It hasn't rained for ages. 2. When did they last visit you? - They haven't visited us since June. 3. When did you last play tennis? - I haven't played tennis for a long time. 4. When did you last eat coconut? - I have never eaten coconut. 5. When did you last drive a car? - I haven't driven for six months. 6. When did you last go to Canada? –I've never been to Canada. 7. When did she last write to you? - She hasn't written to me since last summer.

Ex. 14 (p. 46-47) 1. They have built a new house. Have you seen it yet? 2. Have you shown your pictire to your mother? –No, it isn't ready yet. 3. I have seen this film, and you? - Yes, I have. It's an interesting film. 4. Have you been to the London Zoo? - Yes, I have. 5. Father has just come back from the sea. 6. Take these magazines. I've already read them. 7. Have you ever been to/in Greece? - Yes, I have. It's a very beautiful country. 8. We haven't finished the experiment yet. 9. She has never translated such difficult articles. 10. I have called him three times today. 11. He has left for New York today. 12. Have you seen the director today? - No, I haven't.

Ex. 15 (p. 47) 2. It's the second time you've been late this week. 3. It's the third time the car has broken down this month. 4. It's the fifth cup of coffee I have drunk tonight.

Ex. 16 (p. 48) 1. Harry went to Egypt but now he has come back (to Ireland). 2. I lived in the centre but now I've moved to a new district. 3. I had long hair but now I've cut it. 4. I met Fran ten years ago and we've become great friends. 5. He travelled to the North last year, and now he has written a book about it. 6. Three years ago they bought a house but now they've sold it.

Ex. 17 (p. 48) 1. Wrong –was/is; 2. Right; 3. Wrong - invented; 4. Wrong –has bought. 5. Wrong - have broken; 6. Right.

Ex. 18 (p. 49) 1. Have you cut, Did you cut, cut; 2. Have you spoken, I phoned her, did she tell you.

Ex. 19 (p. 49) 1. They haven't phoned so far today. 2. How many times did you phone him yesterday? 3. He has come to see us three times this month. 4. It hasn't rained so far this summer. 5. How many shoes have you bought this season?

Ex. 20 (p. 49) 1. worked; 2. have lived; 3. have been; 4. was; 5. has been; 6. never met; 7. has never met.

Ex. 21 (p. 49-50)

I. 1. Have you ever visited; have been; was
2. Have you been; have (been); went
3. Has he spoken; hasn't (spoken); went, hasn't arrived
4. Have you seen; have (seen); haven't seen
5. Have you been; have (been); was
6. Did you go; did; went
7. Have you seen; haven't seen; was; didn't see
8. Have you shown; have (shown); showed

II. 1. have just called; 2. didn't call; 3. have just gone; 4. has already answered; 5. answered; 6. went; 7. read; 8. has sold; 9. sold; 10. haven't seen; 11. met; 12. Has... come; 13. Did you wear; insisted; 14. hasn't smoked; 15. did he arrive, arrived; 16. Have you shut; 17. read, enjoyed; 18. Have you been, spent, Did you have, stopped; 19. has stopped; 20. have just mended; 21. left, got; 22. Have you had, had; 23. Did you see; 24. have missed; 25. has just begun; 26. broke; 27. haven't finished.

III. 1. have you done, did you buy; 2. had, happened; 3,. found; 4. did you teach; 5. have had, has ruined; 6. spent; 7. have you spoken, spoke; 8. have seen, has arrived, saw, Have you seen; 9. haven't shaven; 10. Did you hear, said; 11. was, have picked; 12. was, said, went.

Ex. 22 (p. 51) 1. saw, are you doing,'m sleeping, have taken; 2. sleeps, is still sleeping; 3. met, have met; 4. go; 5. have been sitting, haven't dozen; 6. is playing, play; 7. is taking; 8. wrote, have just written; 9. is talking, has happened; 10. hasn't eaten, ate; 11. is still dressing; 12. have read, read; 13. reads, is reading; 14. hasn't had, had; 15. have stayed/have been staying, aren't thinking.

Ex. 23 (p. 51) 1. I've lost the needle. I can't find it anywhere. 2. Did you see the film on television yesterday? 3. Her parents bought her a car for her 21st birthday. 4. Her hair is very short now. She has had a new haircut. 5. Last night he arrived home very late. He had a bath and then he went to bed. 6. Did you visit many museums when you were in London? 7. The book isn't on the shelf. Somebody has taken it. 8. When did your father

give up smoking? 9. I didn't have breakfast in the morning because I didn't feel hungry. 10. Why didn't you want to play chess yesterday? 11. The car looks very clean. Have you washed it?

12. *Molly;* Hello, James. Is Alan here?
James: No, I'm afraid he's gone out.
Molly: What a pity. When did he exactly go out?
James: About twenty minutes ago.

Ex. 24 (p. 51) 1. am, have read; 2. have finished, Have a look; 3. Haven't read; 4. Have you brought, have come; 5. have you been, know, went; 6. Has your grandson called on, came; 7. gave, haven't seen; 8. Have you sent for, will come; 9. Have you known, have known; 10. like, have been; 11. haven't been, moved, like; 12. Have seen, has changed; 13. left for, haven't seen; 14. met, haven't heard; 15. was, has changed, is shining; 16. Do you know, have never been; 17. haven't called on, arrived.

Ex. 25 (p. 52) 1. was raining; 2. have breakfast; 3. Has he built, is still building; 4. are you walking, am walking, am afraid, always walk; 5. never wears; 6. was watching TV; 7. comes, is, hasn't come; 8. watch; 9. called on, was reading, finishes, will give/lend; 10. am afraid, have lost, was playing/played, play; 11. hasn't begun, are talking, begins; 12. played; 13. haven't played; 14. is, wrote; 15. is, has fallen asleep, went to bed.

Ex. 26 (p. 53) 1. because he had left; 2. because she had seen the film before; 3. because I had forgotten it; 4. because she had passed it before; 5. because he had spent all the money; 6. because I had lost the key; 7. that he had got married; 8. that it had returned; 9. that she had been ill for a month.

Ex. 27 (p. 53) 1. had gone; 2. had got; 3. had built; 4. had left.

Ex. 28 (p. 53) 1. He had never seen the sea before. 2. She had never been late before. 3. ... she had never played the guitar before. 4. ... she had never taught at school before.

Ex. 29 (p. 54) 1. The train had just left. 2. Everybody had already gone out. 3. They had just come from school. 4. He had arranged to meet some friends at the club. 5. I hadn't seen her for seven years.

Ex. 30 (p. 54) 1. had gone; 2. went; 3. broke; 4. had broken, stopped.

Ex. 31 (p. 54) 1. hadn't switched off the light; 2. had walked a lot that day; 3. had passed the exams; 4. had shown me the picture; 5. had gone; 6. had died; 7. had left the room; 8. had married her; 9. had read it again.

Ex. 32 (p. 54-55) 1. The sun had risen before he woke up. 2. He had been very ill before he died. 3. I understood the problem as soon as he had explained it. 4. She went to the

post office after she had written the letter. 5. The plane had taken off when I drove to the airport. 6. She had read the message carefully before she wrote the reply. 7. I turned on the radio as soon as he had left the room. 8. He went to the cinema after he had had dinner. 9. The man didn't leave till he had received a definite answer. 10. We didn't say a word until he had finished his story. 11. When we reached the football ground the game had already started. 12. John had worked as a skilled builder before he began to study architecture. 13. Harold couldn't leave for home till he had completed everything. 14. The snow was very deep after it had snowed heavily.

Ex. 33 (p. 55) 1. had hardly gone, wandered; 2. had hardly reached, encountered; 3. had scarcely taken, appeared; 4. had started, broke; 5. had... left, broke out; 6. no sooner had they arrived, rang; 7. had the curtains fallen, rose; 8. Hardly had he asked, answered; 9. had scarcely taken, began; 10. had scarcely settled, fell; 11. had nearly stopped, reached; 12. had scarcely said, interrupted.

Ex. 34 (p. 55-56)

I. 1. ate; 2. wasn't, had gone; 3. hadn't played; 4. was, had lived; 5. was, had never seen; 6. had talked; 7. came, had got; 8. returned, had arrived; 9. had gone, got; 10. had fallen/fell, left; 11. had hardly been, came; 12. promised, had got; 13. had they moved, came; 14. went, had expected; 15. showed, was, had seen; 16. came, sat, had been; 17. kept, had told; 18. spent, had heard, had never seen; 19. knew, had come; 20. knew, had made.

II. 1. sat, had arrived; 2. was, had never seen; 3. was, had met; 4. was, had been; 5. was, had gone; 6. came, had... heard; 7. hadn't eaten, went; 8. retold, had held; 9. had gone, came; 10. was, had seen; 11. re-read, had written; 12. had left/left, made; 13. had been, learnt; 14. had already arrived, entered; 15. hadn't gone, noticed.

Ex. 35 (p. 56) 1. had left, began; 2. hadn't risen; 3. hadn't gone; 4. told, had left; 5. had he taken, looked; 6. came, found, looked, had been; 7. had hardly lit, came; 8. had grown, had become; 9. had fallen; 10. had been; 11. had quarrelled, had taken; 12. left, hadn't gone, remembered, had forgotten; 13. had disappeared/disappeared; 14. had closed, opened.

Ex. 36 (p. 56-57)

I. 1. closed, was sitting; 2. arrived, had started; 3. had stopped, was shining; 4. was just leaving; 5. was watching, were exchanging; 6. reached, had already started; 7. realized, was travelling; 8. was looking, found; 9. were you doing; 10. hadn't been, began; 11. didn't allow, was blowing; 12. called, had already got; 13. heard, went, opened, didn't recognize, wasn't wearing; 14. (had) sealed and stamped, went, drew; 15. saw, were you using; was using, had hurt; 16. returned, were, had, had; 17. were walking, heard; turned, held; stopped; 18. arrived, was waiting; was wearing, looked; 19. saw, was painting; 20. was watering, began; 21. was saying, took; 22. said, were working, wanted.

II. 1. had just finished, was wrapping; 2. reached; 3. had come in, was untying; 4. were enjoying; 5. was cycling, fell, hurt; 6. had dried, had powdered; 7. was beginning, was

whistling, were creeping; 8. had moved, was standing; 9. had entered, was moving; 10. looked out, had approached, had overspread; 11. hadn't taken; 12. hadn't risen, were shining/shone.

Ex. 37 (p. 57) 1. Entering, saw, had left; 2. noticed, entered/came in, had left; 3. had hardly read, declared, didn't like; 4. had left, went into, turned off/switched off; 5. was sitting and thinking, hadn't arrived/come; 6. had stopped, there was; 7. didn't know, had left/gone; 8. didn't remember, couldn't/didn't remember, had met; 9. drove, saw; 10. had passed, understood, had; 11. Coming, learnt, had left; 12. came back/returned, talked about, had seen; 13. had finished, knocked; 14. had been, hadn't snowed; 15. had gone, came up/went to, dialled; 16. came back, showed, had done; 17. tried/was trying, had left; 18. was astonished, had made, had passed, saw; 19. No sooner had he come, met; 20. returned, had lived; 21. had parted, returned, went/made for; 22. was, had expected/anticipated; 23. knew, had met; 24. had gone, shut/closed; 25. was daylight, was still blowing, had stopped.

Ex. 38 (p. 58) 1. 'll have translated; 2. will have made; 3. won't have learnt; 4. won't have completed; 5. will have learnt; 6. will have come; 7. will have... gone.

Ex. 39 (p. 58) 1. Oh no, they will have already moved; 2. we'll have made; 3. they will have finished writing it; 4. he'll have already graduated from the Institute; 5. I'll have forgotten; 6. he'll have left; 7. she'll have received; 8. I'll have gone.

Ex. 40 (p. 58-59) 1. 'll have been, come; 2. is, 'll be; 3. are, I'll go; 4. Will you be angry, talk; 5. finish, 'll have done; 6. am, will have left, Don't worry, I'll drive; 7. 'll have stopped; 8. think, 'll see; 9. don't take, 'll be late, get, will have been over, 'll miss.

Ex. 41 (p. 59) 1. I'll have finished; 2. 'll have done, 'll go to the park; 3. 'll have passed; 4. will have built; 5. I'll have written, arrives; 6. will have left, come; 7. I'll have translated.

Ex. 42 (p. 59)

3. - Will you still be cooking dinner at 12 tomorrow?	- I'll have done the cooking already.
4. - Will you help Granny to look for her glasses when you come back w?	- she'll have found them already.
5. - Will you see Jerry in Atlanta when I return?	- I'm sure, he'll have already arrived,
6. - Will Keith be at home if I call him up at 8 o'clock?	- he'll have come already.
7. - Will they be having dinner at 6 o'clock?	- they'll have already had dinner by that time.
8. - Will you still be repairing the car if I call for you at 6?	- I'll have repaired it already.

Ex. 43 (p. 59-60)

I. will visit; gets; 'll be pfaying; doesn't matter; 'll go to see; have finished their talk; will have been over; will have had a shower; will have been ready; will have done; will be quite free; arrive, will be having dinner; 'll be playing; have stopped; will have made; 'll sit and drink; 'll go. II. will have finished, is looking forward to teaching; graduates, 'll begin; think, he'll become; will like; is working hard, knows, flies, may happen, will have no time; studied, helped; will be working; 'll go, think, he'll have finished.

8. THE PERFECT CONTINUOUS FORMS

Ex. 1 (p. 61) 1. have been working; 2. Has she been sleeping; 3. have been talking; 4. have just been telling; 5. hasn't been feeling; 6. have you been lying; 7. have been trying; 8. haven't been sleeping; 9. have been seeing; 10. hasn't been working.

Ex. 2 (p. 61) 1. You have been working too hard lately. 2. Have you been standing in this cold long? 3. She has been scrubbing the floors for three hours. 4. They have been singing at the top of their voices since morning.

Ex. 3 (p. 61) 1. Have you been waiting for me long? 2. Have you been fighting again? 3. How long has your foot been hurting you? 4. He has been studying for three hours already. 5. I have been learning Spanish since September. 6. Ann has been looking for a job for six months. 7. My brother has been smoking for ten years. 8. They have been working in Manchester since the 1st of March. 9. How deep the snow is! How long has it been snowing? 10. Your eyes are red. Have you been crying? 11. How long have you been playing chess? 12. How long have you been living in this town?

Ex. 4 (p. 62) 1. Have you been reading; 2. are you doing; 3. has been doing; 4. is working, has been planting; 5. have been playing; 6. have been thinking; 7. have you been swimming; 8. are staying; 9. have been stealing; 10. are laying.

Ex. 5 (p. 62) 1. has been ringing; 2. have been reading, am trying; 3. are the children doing, have been playing, are learning; 4. are leaving, have they been staying; 5. are you thinking, 'm not thinking, 'm counting; 6. is talking, has been driving; 7. have you been doing; 8. have been looking, is waiting.

Ex. 6 (p. 62) 1. is looking at, so he is, have been meeting... lately; 2. are you hurrying, has been waiting for; 3. Are you reading; 4. is wearing; 5. have been wearing; 6. are you waiting for; 7. Have you been waiting for him long; 8. are you listening to; 9. has been teaching; 10. is teaching; 11. have been developing; 12. am developing; 13. are you waving to.

Ex. 7 (p. 63) 1. has changed; 2. have been collecting; have collected; 3. has been reading; have not finished; 4. have been waiting, has gone out; 5. has happened, has been ringing, has answered; 6. have come, have been standing, listening; 7. have ar-

rived, have just been speaking; 8. have you known, have known; 9. have you turned, 've been playing; 10. 've definitely decided.

Ex. 8 (p. 63) 1. 've been reading, 've read; 2. has been sewing, has made; 3. has been skiing, has taken part; 4. has been writing, has written.

Ex. 9 (p. 63) 1. has she been travelling; 2. has he translated; 3. has he been translating; 4. have they visited.

Ex. 10 (p. 63) 1. has been typing, has not finished; 2. 've been wasting; 3. has fallen; 4. has been smoking; 5. has been doing, has gone; 6. has completed.

Ex.11 (p. 64)

I. 1. Have we met; 2. 've often seen; 3. 've been trying; 4. has been studying, has learned; 5. haven't heard; 6. 've been looking, haven't found, 've been; 7. Have you seen, haven't been, 've been talking; 8. 've been, 've been wandering; 9. 've come; 10. have informed; 11. have been doing; 12. 've loved; 13. 've stayed/'ve been staying.

II. 1. have been thinking, Have you made up; 2. have been struggling, have solved; 3. have been discussing, have been; 4. have been seeing, has put; 5. have been listening, 've heard; 6. have been waiting, has looked; 7. 've been telling, 've never paid; 8. has been talking, has come out; 9. has been doing, has improved; 10. 've been asking, hasn't answered.

Ex. 12 (p. 64) 1. 've been eating; 2. Have you eaten; 3. are you doing, are picking, have you picked, 've picked; 4. have been shopping, have found; 5. is making; 6. 've been polishing, am tired; 7. have you been doing, 've been pumping, have pumped, Will you help; 8. Have you met, have known; 9. are you making, 've lost, am trying, am throwing, are throwing, live; 10. has just sold, is lucky, has been painting, hasn't sold; 11. 've been doing, haven't done; 12. haven't you brought, Haven't you typed them yet; 13. have you put, can't find, has just gone; 14. has been standing, has already left; 15. has been collecting, got married, has collected, doesn't know.

Ex. 13 (p. 65) 1. are you looking for, are looking for, haven't bought, have-bought; 2. are you doing, am reading, is, have you been reading; 3. is, is working, has been working; 4. are you waiting, 'm waiting, 've been waiting; 5. 've been standing, have they been talking; 6. are you thinking, am thinking; 7. are singing, 've been singing, walked.

Ex. 14 (p. 65) 1. has returned, has been waiting; 2. have been reading; 3. came, was making, was having; 4. did you discuss, 've never heard; 5. 've been; 6. haven't changed, 've recognized, saw; 7. Has... gone; 8. did you go; 9. 've offered; 10. 've been overeating, 've lost, 've lost, told; 11. saw, was driving; 12. hasn't said, got; 13. have been talking; 14. 've been singing; 15. is, is sitting, hasn't moved; left.

Ex. 15 (p. 65-66) 1. do you hear, 've been talking; 2. has changed; 3. haven't seen; 4. 've been; 5. 'm leaving; 6. 'm going, don't begin, come; 7. see, talk; 8. have been living, has been; 9. have been crying; 10. hasn't arrived, are standing; 11. know, 've known; 12. has been listening; 13. rock; 14. asks; 15. has fallen, hurt; 16. Have you heard, has asked, has asked, has been... refusing, Has she accepted; 17. read/have read; 18. has been, has done; 19. has been, has been looking, doing, know, comes; 20. haven't been; 21. has been puzzling, are you looking, 'm speaking, has made.

Ex. 16 (p. 66) 1. have been listening to; 2. is your son doing, have just phoned; 3. Have you been working; 4. 've been waiting; 5. 've been thinking, said; 6. 've been looking for, have you been doing; 7. 've been trying; 8. are, have been watching; 9. will the mechanic come, 've been waiting for; 10. have been studying; 11. has been raining; 12. haven't been sleeping.

Ex. 17 (p. 66)

I. 1. have just seen; was crossing.; 2. haven't really worked; 3. did he come; 4. hasn't come back; 5. have you been examining; 6. have been working; 7. have already had coffee; 8. has told; 9. were going, told; 10. have been playing; 11. have been working; 12. have heard; 13. did he write; 14. have I seen; 15. has explained; was ill, couldn't call; 16. Have you written.

II. 1. has been training, have made; 2. has taken; left; 3. looked, said, was waiting; 4. have been arguing, have lost; 5. did you speak; 6. Have you known; 7. Have you been waiting; 8. did you begin; 9. are, have you been doing, 've been peeling; 10. left; 11. came up to, opened, waved; 12. have been waiting, has told; 13. am afraid, has changed; didn't tell, saw.

Ex. 18 (p. 67) 1. had been gathering; 2. had been shivering; 3. had already been discussing; 4. had been holding.

Ex. 19 (p. 67) 1. was leaving, had stopped; 2. was, was, had been working; 3. had been listening, wondered; had heard; 4. said, had been teaching; 5. said, had just finished, had been reading; 6. came, brought, had been expecting; 7. had been raining, were.

Ex. 20 (p. 67-68) 1. Yes, it did. It had been raining for 3 hours. 2. Yes, she did. She had been working there for 25 years. 3. Yes, I did. I had been living there for a fortnight. 4. Yes, they did. They had been studying it for 5 years. 5. Yes, they did. They had been working on it for 2 years. 6. Yes, he did. He had been playing football for 6 years. 7. Yes, he did. He had been listening to it for an hour. 8. Yes, they did. They had been walking for 2 hours.

Ex. 21 (p. 68) 1. They had been quarrelling on the way home. 2. Mother had been baking bread. 3. She had been reading too long. 4. You had been dancing all night. 5. Somebody had been using my typewriter.

Ex. 22 (p. 68-69) 1. The lecturer had been speaking for 15 minutes when the dean came in. 2. Larry had been waiting for half an hour when he realized that he had come to the wrong hotel. 3. My father-in-law had been working in America for 2 years when the war ended.

Ex. 23 (p. 69) 1. had been running; 2. had been talking; 3. was writing; 4. were waiting, had been waiting; 5. had been standing.

Ex. 24 (p. 69) 1. got, was eating; 2. was, had been talking; 3. went, were expecting; 4. turned, was standing; 5. had been fanning, stopped; 6. was leaving, called; 7. asked, had been looking; 8. were standing; 9. didn't say, had been sleeping, had.

Ex. 25 (p. 70) 1. new, had gone; 2. had been standing, came up; 3. was speaking, saw; 4. had parked, appeared, stood; 5. came, had lived; 6. were talking, came; 7. looked, was sleeping; 8. had left/left, stood; 9. had dressed, went, wrote; 10. welcomed, turned, had been fighting; 11. was reading, appeared; 12. came, saw, had changed; 13. had been sitting, came; 14. was, were having; 15. sat down, had prepared; 16. sat, had left; 17. looked, found, had made; 18. was, had been.

Ex. 26 (p. 70) 1. did... find out, had come; 2. left, had not gone, discovered, was, had left; 3. had been living; 4. enabled, had done; 5. destroyed, killed; 6. had scarcely got, heard; 7. had been looking; 8. drew up, stepped, had been sitting; 9. had rung, was; 10. shouted, was running; 11. picked up, had been reading, came, turned, had stopped; 12. had not eaten, was growling; 13. had arrived.

Ex. 27 (p. 70-71) 1. quarrelled/had a deadly quarrel; 2. was wearing, had not seen; 3. had left, were sitting; 4. met, smiled, asked, had spent; 5. think, showed, was, had been painting; 6. did not get; had stopped; 7. copied, put, went, had stopped, returned, had, sat down; 8. had been studying, started/began, asked, was finishing; 9. was having a bath, rang; 10. came round/dropped in, had not seen, noticed, had changed; 11. no sooner had they driven, the police stopped; 12. had been travelling, looked, did not feel; 13. had died down, had cleared, was shining; 14. looked, softened; 15. visited, had spent, had planted, was, turned into/grew.

Ex. 28 (p. 71-72) 1. 'll have been learning; 2. 'll have been living; 3. will have been reconstructing; 4. 'll have been grumbling; 5. 'll have been painting.

Ex. 29 (p. 72) 1. graduates from, will have been working; 2. 'll have been advertising, appear; 3. will have been studying; 4. comes, 'll have been living; 5. come back, will have been painting; 6. will they have been running, bring.

9. THE REVISION ON TENSES

Ex. 1 (p. 72-73) 1. hasn't phoned, arrived; 2. has happened, left; 3. think, has become, saw; 4. have you been doing/have you done; 5. have been saving; 6. have you been

doing, look; 7. said; have been looking; have never had, did; 8. have been doing; 9. have been thinking, told; 10. Have you been living, left; 11. are having, watching; 12. has come, Has he been, was; 13. 've just been, Have you seen, did you see, did you go; 14. want, Have you discussed, 've been skiing; 15. am, 've given, am asking, is, 've put, am; 16. are, am not, want, saw, 've been dreading, don't know, do you think, are they still waiting; 17. do you know, is, are having, are, aren't, 've been; 18. Have the children returned, brought, have not cooked, have you been doing.

Ex. 2 (p. 73)

I. 1. were you going, met, was going, had forgotten; 2. enabled, had omitted; 3. decided, found out, had begun; 4. was, found, had begun; 5. turned, lay, took, had been reading; 6. took, had put, went; 7. was, came, had said; 8. was, was, sat, circled, was raining, had been raining; 9. looked, wanted, had been; 10. was, had imagined; 11. came, had promised, were waiting, entered, rushed; 12. had been playing.

II. 1. busied, sliced, fired; 2. had been blowing; 3. was, had been, lay; 4. tried, were saying, were, (were) speaking; 5. deepened, stopped, had been pursuing; 6. was not, had expected; 7. had gone, fallen, knocked, begged; 8. had, had, had invited, rang, was; 9. had been listening, hastened; 10. had been, was, found, had gone.

Ex. 3 (p. 74) pulled, tried, became, had pulled, was filling, fell.

Ex. 4 (p. 74) looked; was; had not made, had seen; got, put; turned, washed, dried; brushed, turned, took, left.

Ex. 5 (p. 74) 1 . went, opened; took, put; drank, ate; wasn't, had finished, remembered, had promised, would not touch, would clear; 2. sat; heard; wondered, was doing; was; had crossed, was standing.

Ex. 6 (p. 74) went, called; went, stretched, picked; shot, heard; was; spoke, was smiling; are you leaving; 'll fly, is finished; 'll have; put, came; was, said; know, said; is leaving; is taking; have not seen, have you; have not.

Ex. 7 (p. 75) placed, let; took, put; showed; was, had been painting; had never sold; were; were, were; were.

Ex. 8 (p. 75) was; was, had received; entered, rushed, kissed, shook, told, had missed; spoke, asked; asked, had not come.

Ex. 9 (p. 75) had just finished; went; settled, was leaving, called; is, want; came; obeyed; got, began; was making, did not like; was.

Ex. 10 (p. 75) had not covered, favoured; met, was, took, wanted; had made, was travelling, wanted, was; was, looked.

Ex. 11 (p. 75-76) told; knocked? opened; was, looked; was pacing, talked; said, was, have decided.

Ex. **12** (p. 76) had gone, went, lit; felt; was passing/had passed, was clamouring; remembered, had had, went; had died, was; found, ate, looked/was looking; was, ate; needed, was; was, went; was; sat, continued; had finished, came.

Ex. **13** (p. 76)
1. put; looked, were, had not been painted, went; was; looked, was; looked; sucked; longed.
2. told, had won, was; had lived, had gone; had left, was, had combed.

Ex. 14 (p. 76-77) had not been, met; came, was having, introduced; had heard, was, announced, had come; asked, had had breakfast; answered; smiled, showed; was; had not shaved; said, leaned, lit, had offered; did you meet, asked; were doing; smiled, said, was.

Ex. **15** (p. 77) was, was giving; knew; knew; was, had been invited; had accepted; said, would be, permitted; had never seen; has not had, came; works, is; gets, will be, comes; blazed; was packed; overflowed, were sitting.

Ex. **16** (p. 77-78)
I. woke, was burning, had started, hit; had been, were; had been; had missed, had been sleeping; was, took; passed; was, did not want, got, pulled, could; saw, got; did not remember; found, had saved.
II. did you meet, picked, insisted, had, 've had, came, thought, went, got, saw, decided, doesn't sound, isn't, is, is, am going, is, have been looking for, swept, meet.
III. was, waited, had gone, were, sneaked, picked, asked, is, am, was, is, have not met, am, was, said, don't know, are talking, protested, took, met, grew, have got, is, do not know, has certainly never stayed.
IV. was sitting, looked, came, got, wished, believe, is, phoned, wasn't it, was, is, frowned, sat, believe, told, have never heard, have you come, didn't believe, leaned, are you accusing, are lying, know, said, was going, phoned, hadn't worked out, was coming, arrived, was, came, is, know, had been staying.

Ex. **17** (p. 78-79) 1. did you go, went, had left, went; 2. has he gone, think, has gone, goes; 3. Have you lived, did you live; 4. have been expecting; 5. are you doing, am doing, do you do, do, have had; 6. have been walking, are tired; 7. Have you found, lost; yes, I have; did you find, had been; 8. have known each other; 9. went, have been; 10. have already arrived, know; 11. had finished, was sitting, was, had just set; 12. have been waiting; 13. write, 'll go and post, don't know, gets; 14. is, have been peeling; 15. have been, moved, was; 16. Do they write, have been corresponding; 17. have been thinking; 18. haven't seen, moved; 19. have been writing, am; 20. are, have just been talking; 21. has been talking, left; 22. have been playing.

Ex. 18 (p. 79) 1. have been thinking, have worked, know; 2. came up, had dropped, stopped; 3. Do you like, love, has been; 4. has always called; 5. will be constantly ringing; 6. coming back, will stay; 7. has locked, won't go down, leave/have left; 8. saw, had been waiting for, had come; 9. has been going on; 10. know, have lived; 11. was cooking, was tidying up; 12. had hardly entered, broke out; 13. turned away, saw, had sprung into; 14. decided, 'll go, haven't changed; 15. have you been feeling; 16. haven't eaten, came; 17. isn't coming, have just spoken; 18. had taken, was smoking; 19. haven't danced; 20. has been raining, think, won't stop; 21. will have finished; 22. discovered; 23. No sooner he had opened, scattered; 24. will be sailing back; 25. are walking; 26. had paled, was growing dark, shone; 27. had put, was sitting; 28. have been dreaming; 29. leaves, don't go, 'll be late/'ll miss; 30. stayed, returned; 31. got up, came up, wasn't raining, there were; 32. have never felt, do; 33. am leaving; 34. had hardly approached, heard; 35. 'll tell, 'll find out; 36. was, had been blowing, had stopped, it was still drizzling; 37. had hardly said good-bye, started; 38. opened, was smoking; 39. 'll tell, has seen/sees; 40. drove, stopped.

11. TALKING ABOUT THE FUTURE

Ex. 1 (p. 83) 1. Lucy is staying with her aunt in the South of France. 2. Roy is taking his younger brother to Canada to his parents. 3. Letty is spending a fortnight in Rome. 4. Peter and John are hiking in the Swiss mountains. 5. Miranda is going round Greek islands on a cruising boat.

Ex. 2 (p. 83) 1. Are you travelling by train? 2. Are you taking a lot of things? 3. Are your animals going with you? 4. Are you letting your flat for the season? 5. Are you renting a car?

Ex. 3 (p. 83) 1. are opening; 2. are you going away? 3. open, close; 4. start; 5. does the plane... leave? 6. are going, are you coming; 7. are launching.

Ex. 4 (p. 84)
A.: Let's go to the theatre tomorrow.
B.: I'm sorry. I'd love to, but I'm working late tomorrow.
A.: What about Wednesday then?
B.: I'm afraid, I can't. I'm meeting my parents at the airport.
A.: Well, what are you doing on Saturday evening?
B.: I'm playing tennis this Saturday.
A.: I see. Well, are you free on Sunday evening?
B.: We are having a reunion party at school on Sunday.

Ex. 5 (p. 84) 1. I'm going to speak to him after lunch. 2. I'm just going to make it. 3. I'm going to buy it soon. 4. I'm just going to do it.

Ex. 6 (p. 84) 1. What are you going to wear? 2. Where are you going to hang it? 3. What are you going to buy instead?

Ex. 7 (p. 85) 1. was going to ask her; 2. were going to visit it; 3. was going to attend it.

Ex. 8 (p. 85) 1. 'm going to miss you. 2. They are going to get lost. 3. He is going to lose it.

Ex. 9 (p. 85) 1. Have you cleaned the car? - Not yet. I'm going to clean it tomorrow. 2. Have you had dinner? - Not yet. We're just going to have dinner. 3. The sky is so blue. It's going to be a fine day. 4. I've decided to make a party. - Who are you going to invite? 5. Did your friends go to Spain on holidays? - No. They were going to, but they changed their mind. 6. The examination is tomorrow. You haven't studied at all, you're going to fail.

Ex. 10 (p. 86) 1. I think I'll go for a swim. 2. I think I'll do my home work tomorrow. 3. I'll phone Ann now. 4. I don't think I'll have coffee. 5. I don't think I'll go there on holidays. 6. I don't think I'll go to the cinema. 7. I think I'll have juice. 8. I don't think I'll go for a walk. 9. I think I'll go by car. 10. I don't think I'll watch TV tonight.

Ex. 11 (p. 86) 1. I'll go to the cleaner's. 2. I'll do the shopping. 3. I'll wash the dog.

Ex. 12 (p. 86) 1. I'll cook dinner in the afternoon. 2. I'll write to you as soon as I get there. 3. I'll wash it tomorrow. 4. I won't break anything. 5. I'll take them on Sunday. 6. Do you promise not to tell anyone? 7. I'll come after you as soon as I can. 8. promise I won't be angry.

Ex. 13 (p. 86) 1. are going; 2. starts; 3. will get; 4. am meeting; 5. are arriving; 6. won't hurt; 7. will phone

Ex. 14 (p. 87) 1. She'll probably never write. 2. expect they'll stay at her aunt's. 3. am sure he'll phone tonight. 4. think they'll send a cable. 5. am sure he'll come back very soon. 6. expect she'll give you a kiss.

Ex. 15 (p. 87) 1. are you turning on, am going to; 2. I forgot, don't worry, I'll lend; 3. is aching, I'll bring; 4. are you carrying, I'm going to; 5. I've decided, are you going to; 6. There's fire coming out of, I'll call; 7. looks strange, as if it is going to; 8. I'll show; 9. I'll have; 10. Has Anton decided on; is planned, is going to, is going to; 11. shall we have, don't know, can't make up my mind, come on, hurry up, we'll have; 12. need, Do we?, I'll go and get some, am going to get, Do you want, I need, I'll get; 13. can you take me, I'll take, do you want me to take you, is taking me.

Ex. 16 (p. 88) 1. are to; 2. are not to; 3. is (just) about to; 4. am (just) about to; 5. is due to; 6. is not due to.

Ex. 17 (p. 88) a future fact; intention; intention; arrangement; a future fact.

Ex. 18 (p. 88-89) 1. She is going to buy him a new record for his birthday. 2. Tomorrow is May 1. It will rain. 3. I was going to see this film yesterday,... 4. We are meeting/are to meet at the Milk bar. He says he is going to ring me up at 7.

Ex. 19 (p. 89) **1. We'll go to Italy. 2. I'll show you the way. 3. I'm going to visit the Hermitage. 4. I'll help you.**

Ex. 20 (p. 89) 1. I'm staying at the Astoria Hotel. 2. We are going to the Maryinsky Theatre the first evening I am in St. Petersburg. 3. I'm meeting my Russian teacher the day after tomorrow. 4. I'm leaving St. Petersburg in a week.

Ex. 21 (p. 89) a. #1 b. #2 c #1 d. #1

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

1. GENERAL RULES

Ex. 4 (p. 94) 1. had; 2. was doing; 3. looks; 4. meant, said, had; 5. was; 6. was doing, intended; 7. knew; 8. was making; 9. was, didn't leave; 10. felt; 11. was.

Ex. 5 (p. 94) 1. had changed; 2. had been buying; 3. had received; 4. had been happening/had happened; 5. had gone; 6. had spent; 7. had done; 8. had lived/had been living; 9. had told; 10. had let; 11. had wanted; 12. had been; 13. had never got married; 14. had been doing;

Ex, 6 (p. 95) 1. had formulated; 2. have ever seen; 3. thought, had made; 4. was going; 5. had been waiting; 6. had returned; 7. was feeling/felt; could go; 8. had put; 9. had not seen; 10. was going to do, hoped; 11. was hanging; 12. had been living/had lived; 13. had suddenly invented.

Ex. 7 (p. 95) 1. told, was interested in; 2. knew, was thinking; 3. said, would return; 4. knew, was living/lived; 5. knew, had lived; 6. didn't tell, had spoken; 7. thought, received; 8. was glad, had received; 9. thought, would invite; 10. was sure, worked; 11. was sure, was working, didn't enter; 12. told me, had seen; 13. was sure, was sitting; 14. said, liked; 15. was sure, had been living; 16. heard, were; 17. heard, had been; 18. heard, had been working; 19. didn't know, was ill; 20. didn't know, had been ill; 21. didn't know, had known; 22. was told, returned/had returned.

Ex. 8 (p. 86-87) 1. was sure, regretted, had quarrelled; 2. thought, was tired, asked, had been doing; 3. had the impression, had been; 4. nodded, said, it was what she wanted; 5. said, could not understand, had changed; 6. suspected, had forgotten to mention, was waiting; 7. have no idea, knows, will be; 8. Does Ted know, is coming; 9. didn't know yet, would be doing; 10. said, would discuss, returned; 11. thought, would call, received; 12. said, would read, had passed; 13. said; would not go, (had) finished; 14. was afraid, would be angry, didn't come; 15. promised, would talk, saw.

REVISION

Ex. 1 (p. 96) 1. was happening/had happened; 2. were/would be; 3. returned, was sitting, (was) taking; 4. were, had... been crying; 5. was trying, was; 6. was, saw, said, 've been fighting; 7. would sleep; 8. made, had/had had; 9. would tell, lived; 10. drove, stared; 11. were running; 12. was sitting, (was) eating, came, was, had been, was having, waved, saw; 13. remained, had passed; 14. had fallen, returned, said, had turned, couldn't, had... understood, had happened; 15. had been sitting, sat; 16. looked, was sitting, lay, had been doing; 17. was reading, crossed; 18. were coming, ran.

Ex. 2 (p. 96-97)

I. 1. thought, were busy; 2. said, wanted; 3. hoped, could swim; 4. announced, wanted to go; 5. asked, had; 6. said, must; 7. was sorry, had to stay; 8. said, liked; 9. didn't know, lived; 10. said, was shut (closed) that day; 11. thought, knew; 12. thought, were still playing; 13. said, got up; 14. didn't know, like/liked.

II. 1. Did you know, had gone; 2. didn't tell, had spoken; 3. said, had... had dinner; 4. asked, had got; 5. rang up, found out, had... gone; 6. Did... tell, had accepted; 7. denied, had spoken; 8. Didn't... know, had gone; 9. thought, had graduated from; 10. said, had seen.

III. 1. said, would take part; 2. hoped, would be back; 3. said, would come back; 4. believed, would work; 5. hoped, would be able to go; 6. didn't know, would go; 7. told, would be doing; 8. said, would begin; 9. told, wouldn't wait for; 10. thought, would have.

Ex. 3 (p. 97) 1. said, had been ... busy, hadn't been; 2. was sure, (had) told, had received; 3. was surprised, hadn't told, were going; 4. thought, would read, had... arrived; 5. promised, would tell, had... come back, wanted; 6. was afraid, would tell, couldn't help; 7. knew, felt, was not satisfied; 8. was sure, had already heard, had returned; 9. said, would send, didn't hear; 10. said, was still, was going to see; 11. said, had just come, was leaving for; 12. told, the matter was, think, 'll be able to help; 13. said, was... busy, hadn't been; 14. said, must revise, wanted to do well at; 15. promised to get, began working on; 16. thought, would be fine; 17. heard, were free, decided, would be able to help.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH

1. INDIRECT STATEMENTS

Ex. 1 (p. 99) 1. told, hoped to pass; 2. said, was listening to; 3. said, had made; 4. told, had seen; 5. said, had not read; 6. said, hadn't cleaned; 7. said, didn't want to wear; 8. said, felt tired, had; 9. told, had; 10. said, had not seen.

Ex. 2 (p. 99) 1. "I haven't got..." 2. "I'm pleased..." 3. "I haven't seen..." 4. "Henry is studying..." 5. "I don't want..." 6. "We don't understand..." 7. "You are driving-..." 8. "The children are playing...".

Ex. 3 (p. 99) 1. tells; 2. told; 3. tell; 4. said; 5. tells; 6. said; 7. says.

Ex. 4 (p. 99) 1. are always saying; 2. asked; 3. said; 4. told; 5. says; 6. asked; 7. say; 8. said; 9. says; 10. told; 11. asked/said; 12. said; 13 told.

2. INDIRECT COMMAND AND REQUEST

Ex. 1 (p. 100) 1. asked... to take; 2. told... to collect, put; 3. told... not to run; 4. told... to learn; 5. asked... to meet; 6. told... not to go out; 7. told... to open; 8. told... not to go back; 9. asked... to tell.

Ex. 2 (p. 100) 1. asked... to give me; 2. told... not to get off...; 3. asked... to clean; 4. asked... to shut; 5. reminded... to post; 6. forbade... to come into; 7. warned... there was no parking/ parking was not allowed; 8. advised... to visit.

3. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Ex. 1 (p. 101) 1. asked, if... came; 2. asked, if... had got; 3. asked, if... understood; 4. asked, if... wanted to be; 5. asked, if... was going; 6. asked, if... had been.

Ex. 2 (p. 101) 1. asked, were tired; 2. asked, had slept; 3. wondered, went; 4. wanted to know, had been working; 5. asked, would be; 6. asked, had seen; 7. wanted to know, liked/had liked; 8. asked, were working.

Ex. 3 (p. 102-103) 1. asked, what... was doing; 2. asked, where... was going; 3. asked, what... has; 4. asked, who... had caused; 5. asked, when... (had) learnt; 6. asked, where... had put; 7. asked, which... can be divided; 8. asked, when... was going; 9. asked, where... had lost; 10. asked, what... were doing; 11. asked, why... hadn't answered; 12. asked, what the matter was; 13. asked, when... would be ready; 14. asked, why... wore; 15. asked, who... was looking at; 16. asked, who was; 17. asked, when... bought/had bought.

Ex. 4 (p. 103) 1. asked me, began; 2. asked, liked; 3. asked, knew; 4. asked, was working; 5. asked, had been/was; 6. asked, had spent; 7. asked, had had ... made; 8. asked, had read; 9. asked, went/had gone; 10. asked, were going to do; 11. asked, hadn't bought; 12. asked, had passed; 13. asked, had seen; 14. asked, would call/was going to call; 15. asked, was going.

REVISION

Ex. 1 (p. 103-104)

I. 1. asked, how he felt; 2. remarks, E. is; 3. says, John... seems; 4. asked, who... was writing; 5. says, Jack is, is playing; 6. asked what was burning; 7. replies, she can't understand, he is talking; 8. asked, who had given; 9. says, she'll tell him, she'll be back; 10. asked, how much... spends; 11. says, M. has known; 12. says, Sh. is, he has... had; 13. asked, who... had visited; 14. says, he was born; 15. says, they didn't have; 16. says, she was; 17. says, when she came... was playing; 18. says, rang, was writing,

II. 1. said, he... has; 2. said, he had; 3. said, she was... prepared, came; 4. said, he was sorry to; 5. said, he was; 6. said, he was, they wanted; 7. said, John... comes; 8. said, she didn't think, could accuse; 9. said, she was learning; 10. said, the taxi was waiting; 11. said, F. would be; 12. said, she would go, see, went; 13. said, he wouldn't be able to see her; 14. said, they wouldn't do; 15. said, he would wait for; 16. said, she would never forget her; 17. said, she was... grateful for, she had done.

Ex. 2 (p. 104) 1. heard, knew, would go up; 2. thought, preferred to be; 3. heard, would be, ordered; 4. asked, had had/would have; 5. asked, had; 6. was, told, had to go; 7. had, would be; 8. said, would be; 9. promised, would try; 10. told, had happened; 11. asked, had lived; 12. rang, said, didn't like; 13. told, to be, dialed, was; 14. put, belonged, told, had done, returned, treated, went; 15. wrote, would come.

Ex. 3 (p. 104-105)

I. asked, if I was waiting, invited; asked, what the problem was; said, was/had been run down; asked, stayed/had stayed/had been staying; wondered, why I hadn't kept/hadn't been keeping; explained, met; wanted to know, how I spent/had spent/had been spending; said, went; asked if I had, had to admit, lasted; asked, if I smoked, smoked, asked, smoked; asked, if I took/had taken/had been taking; answered, didn't have/hadn't had time.

II. what to do/what they should do; ordered them to clean; told them not to leave; advised them to shovel; how to get rid/we should get rid of; let's load; what to do/what we should do.

Ex. 4 (p. 105) said, had studied; told me; had put on...; added, had gained; told me, went on, would get; added, had to put; said, would have to live; agreed, could live.

THE PASSIVE VOICE

2. USES OF THE PASSIVE VOICE

Ex. 2 (p. 111-112) 1. will be driven; 2. -; 3. were built; 4. -; 5. -; 6. was informed; 7. -; 8. -; 9. must be obeyed; 10. -; 11. can be bought; 12. has to be written; 13. has been sold; 14. is held; 15. has been proved; 16. -.

Ex. 3 (p. 112) 1. was asked; 2. were made; 3. was being played; 4. were told; 5. were built; 6. was solved; 7. was opened; 8. were chosen; 9. was made; 10. was met; 11. was taught.

Ex. 5 (p. 112-113) 1. can/could be heard; 2. is/was praised; 3. is taken for; 4. am/was woken up; 5. was found; 6. was bought; 7. was painted; 8. was broken; 9. will be posted; 10. will be discussed; 11. will be changed; 12. were met; 13. has been brought; 14. has just been spilt; 15. has been broken; 16. has been dusted; 17. was shown; 18. was asked; 19. was lent; 20. was sent; 21. was sent for; 22. was listened to; 23. was much spoken about; 24. is often referred to; 25. was/has been agreed upon; 26. is/was/will be listened to; 27. is always found... with; 28. has never been lived in.

Ex. 6 (p. 113) 1. has been sent for; 2. has been looked after; 3. was being listened to; 4. willbe taken good care of; 5. isn't looked after; 6. will be spoken to/should be spoken to; 7. is listened to; 8. hadn't been taken care of; 9. can be relied on; 10. has been looked upon.

Ex. 7 (p. 113) 1. should be dry-cleaned; 2. is wasted; 3. will be typed; 4. is being repaired; 5. has been left; 6. has... been posted; 7. haven't been informed; 8. have been ordered; 9. isn't stamped; 10. haven't been introduced yet; 11. has been destroyed; 12. can be... done; 13. must be left.

Ex. 9 (p. 114) 1. died; 2. was given; 3. was attended; 4. be held; 5. lined; 6. was drawn; 7. followed; 8. was given; 9. watched; 10. could be heard; 11. turned; 12. whispered.

Ex. 10 (p. 114) 1. may not be used; 2, hasn't been read, haven't been cut; 3. isn't/hasn't been locked or put; 4. are being mended/am having them mended; 5. is used; 6. be left; 7. will be operated on; 8. are being reconstructed, will have been finished; 9. will be exhibited; 10. was being followed; 11. is swept, was not swept; 12. has been spoilt; 13. was left, was found; 14. are built; 15. is being repaired, was... hurt; 16. will be taken; 17. were returned, had been picked up.

Ex. 11 (p. 114) 1. has been swept, mopped, dusted; 2. were told, was being questioned; 3. will be found; 4. was occupied, was quieted; 5. was... done; 6. is being interviewed; 7. would be done; 8. was being watched; 9. had been washed, had been combed, had been removed; 10. had been dragged.

Ex. 12 (p. 115) 1. is being redecorated; 2. is being constructed, will be built/is being built; 3. was built, was known, was erected; 4. is used; 5. had been locked; 6. had been left; 7. was being prepared; 8. had been prepared, had been floored, tented, placed; 9. had been sweetened.

Ex. 13 (p. 115) 1. received, was... looked after; 2. was being prepared; 3. was unlocked, had left; 4. came, had... been served; 5. was greeted, was sitting; 6. was brought, (was) put; 7. (was) closed, dropped, stared; 8. could be/was ... explained; 9. was shut; 10. was

palled, was pushed; 11. was persuaded; 12. came, were driven,; 13. was discussed; 14. was asked; 15. tapped, opened; 16. has been taken.

Ex. 14 (p. 115) 1. who built; 2. is... being built; 3. has... been built; 4. are ... built; 5. will ... be built; 6. is... being discussed; 7. do you discuss/are... discussed; 8. has... been discussed; 9. Had... been discussed, was sent.

Ex. 15 (p. 115) 1. was not forgiven; 2. wasn't asked; 3. wasn't asked; 4. was forgiven and forgotten; 5. was envied; 6. was envied, had expected; 7. can be forgiven; 8. am... forgiven; 9. may be asked; 10. may be asked; 11. can be envied; 12. can't be forgiven.

Ex. 16 (p. 116) 1. was shown, is done; 2. was promised; 3. was given; 4. will be served; 5. will be shown; 6. was given; 7. was given; 8. was shown; 9. were not shown; 10. was promised; 11. were... told; 12. Were... shown; 13. Were... offered; 14. was... offered; 15. weren't... told; 16. will... be shown; 17. wasn't... given; 18. will be given.

Ex. 17 (p. 116) 1. are... listened to; 2. was interrupted; 3. was... loved and trusted; 4. is (being) taken care of; 5. was written; 6. was opened, was taken into; 7. wasn't made, was broken; 8. is much spoken about; 9. was being cooked, came up; 10. was dictated, was asked; 11. was being asked, entered, the students were being examined; 12. will be given; 13. has been sent for/was sent for; 14. will have been completed; 15. hasn't been seen; 16. was told, were being built; 17. was told, should be cooked; 18. will find out, is sent; 19. did ... go, wasn't told.

Ex. 18 (p. 116) 1. was shown, had been done; 2. is spoken of; 3. was explained; 4. was cut off, was sent for; 5. was offered; 6. Can... be relied on; 7. was told, should give up; 8. Were... asked; 9. were thanked; 10. was advised; 11. should be put an end to; 12. will not be asked; 13. were... forbiden/are not allowed; 14. were... dictated.

Ex. 19 (p. 116-117) 1. are taken; 2. was told, had... left; 3. was asked not to... 4. was asked, was told; 5. Will... be given; 6. was approved; 7. are taught, are played with, are entertained; 8. was dictated; 9. will be given; 10. will be taken; 11. was being built; 12. has... been decided; 13. will be taken good care of/will be well looked after; 14. was said; 15. have been taught; 16. should... be done; 17. can't... be done; 18. were... told; 19. hasn't... been done yet; 20. is being played.

Ex. 20 (p. 117)

I. 1. were shown, is produced; 2. have... been spoken to; 3. are well read, are seldom found; 4. Have... been explained, were not allowed; 5. came, had been restored; 6. was published, had been expected, is being... discussed; 7. don't say, will be laughed at; 8. have been told nothing; 9. Has... been approved yet, is still being discussed, has... been discussed; 10. will be informed, have been sent; 11. was offered, doesn't want; 12. turned on; was being played; 13. didn't know, was being introduced; 14. wasn't paied attention to; was made much fuss of.

II. 1. Is... being done to restore; 2. has never been taken for; 3. has been moved, were sent; 4. must be accounted for; 5. Have... been taught; 6. were treated to; 7. has been stolen; 8. have never been spoken to; 9. ought to be done; 10. can't be repaired; 11. is well spoken of; 12. has been promoted (to)captain; 13. will be told, leaves; 14. was being concealed from; 15. shan't/won't be seen; 16. is being aired, is aired.

III. 1. won't be operated on; 2. was received, was woken up, (was) given; 3. was interested in, were referred to/had been referred to/were being referred to; 4. were considered, wasn't even thought of; 5. was approved, was pointed at; 6. will be played; 7. were explained, (were) dictated, (were) given; 8. will be taken care of/cared of, will be delivered; 9. couldn't hear, was being said; 10. We'll find out, has been looked after; 11. has been given.

REVISION

Ex. 1 (p. 118) 1. was looked; 2. had been said; 3. have ... been treated; 4. am paid; 5. was being restored; 6. is being done/has been done; 7. had been turned; 8. has been seen; 9. had been offered; 10. was given; 11. were asked; 12. had been ifluenced; 13. are dealt; 14. had been promised; 15. had... been made; 16. has been lent.

Ex. 2 (p. 118-119)

I. had been expected, were shown, were detained, were not allowed, had been chosen, had been pointed, was interrupted, had been warned, were being introduced.

II. were being killed, were shot, were thrown, was poisoned, was brought, were held, were leapt, were saved.

III. were found, was being emptied, were dragged, stood, be left, were included, was being sent, was ... connected, was ... discovered.

IV. was given, had been drawn, was ... hampered, is believed, was caused, was observed, were brought, were trapped, were overcome, was taken, is reported.

Ex. 3 (p. 119)

I. knew, was, had been deprived, had been taken, had been inserted, needed, was held, were, knew, were left, would become, would be made, was struck, was taken, (was) placed, am going, will be observed, is done, will not be approved/is not approved, will be seen, will be punished, return, were impressed, went, returned, seemed, had passed, was astounded, have been outwitted, were overturned, were spattered, had been thrown, was being fought, was being had, wondered, had not been respected, looked, saw, had been covered.

II. boarded, had been provided with, was fitted, glowed/were glowing, were shut, went out, was, had been, were painted out, imposed, had put, longed/was longing, tried/was trying, was, had worn/had been wearing, had been, clung, set, hadn't occured, had been, had been wandering, had lunched, had been ordered, were needed, had not dined, saw, sat/was sitting, came.

Ex. 4 (p. 120)

A. was walking; was trying; had been promised; was approaching; had been done; looked at; has been written; thought; have been used; were written; were read; (were) liked; (were) spoken about; are forgotten; had been typed; (had been) sent; can be neither forgiven nor understood; was published;

B. retired; was taken; was known; was liked; became known; was married; had a child; was decided; didn't think; would be spoken about; happened; came; had been seen; were eating; was looking; was seen; were kissing; were met; must be done; must be told; must be stopped; it must be explained to him; was told; was received; had been repeatedly seen; was told; is taking; thought/believed; knew; didn't say; was not asked.

THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

1. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Ex. 2 (p. 124) 1. don't feel, I'll stay; 2. is; 3. arrive; 4. is; 5. will be, get; 6. Will... go, invite; 7. am; 8. rains; 9. speak.

Ex. 3 (p. 124) 1. lived, could grow; 2. used, would finish; 3. lived, would be; 4. went, would wake up; 5. were, would read; 6. had, could enjoy.

Ex. 4 (p. 124-125) 1. If you step on the ice, you'll be drowned; 2. If you drive fast, you'll have an accident; 3. If you ignore the sign, you'll get bitten by the dog; 4. If you smoke here there'll be a fire; 5. If you ignore the sign, you'll get dirty; 6. If you don't obey the sign, you'll be fined.

Ex. 5 (p. 125)

I. 1. would give; 2. wouldn't make; 3. knew; 4. stopped"; 5. wouldn't come; 6. would keep; 7. got; 8. wouldn't go; 9. had.

II. 1. knew, would introduce/had known, would have introduced; 2. would get, went/would have got, had gone; 3. had had, could have lent; 4. had liked, would have worked; 5. would not have passed, had not worked.

Ex. 6 (p. 125)

I. 1. didn't eat, might lose; 2. had had, might have watched; 3. went, might not feel; 4. went, might be.

II. 1. could understand, spoke; 2. had, could read; 3. knew, could write; 4. were, could be.

Ex. 8 (p. 126) 1. would go; 2. would learn; 3. would go; 4. wouldn't stop; 5. would be able; 6. couldn't have arrived; 7. could do; 8. could do.

Ex. 9 (p. 126) 1. hadn't been raining, wouldn't have enjoyed; 2. hadn't interfered, would have forgotten; 3. had trusted, could have led; 4. wouldn't have been spoilt, had not forgotten; 5. would have known, had been; 6. wouldn't have taken, had been asked; 7. wouldn't have happend, had been; 8. would have gone, had to walk; 9. would have minded, had been dismissed; 10. might have noticed, had opened.

Ex. 10 (p. 126-127) 1. had (not) thought, would not have refused; 2. hadn't been, would have noticed; 3. didn't have, would go; 4. there was, wouldn't have to stay; 5. hadn't stopped, wouldn't have enjoyed; 6. had thought, would not have agreed; 7. hadn't been, would have noticed; 8. liked, would buy; 9. hadn't lost, wouldn't have said; 10. knew, would meet.

Ex. 11 (p. 127) 1. would go swimming; 2. could have seen; 3. would have been alone; 4. would go; 5. wouldn't have gone; 6. would have gone; 7. would have had a picnic; 8. would help; 9. couldn't have seen; 10. could prepare.

Ex. 12 (p. 127) 1. would have got; 2. wouldn't have managed; 3. wouldn't keep; 4. would have never learnt; 5. would be; 6. would have spoken; 7. would have gone; 8. would be; 9. would like; 10. would have set.

Ex. 13 (p. 127-128)

I. 1. would have visited; 2. had known; 3. had arrived; 4. had been; 5. hadn't seen; 6. would have offered; 7. had realized; 8. would have stopped; 9. wouldn't have got; 10. wouldn't have tried; 11. had spoken; 12. wouldn't have been; 13. had tried; 14. wouldn't have got; 15. had been; 16. wouldn't have turned; 17. would have taken; 18. hadn't sneezed.

II. 1. had met, would have warned; 2. wouldn't have thrown, had known; 3. could have helped, had asked; 4. would have come, hadn't been; 5. wouldn't have left, hadn't finished.

Ex. 14 (p. 128) 1. had had, wouldn't feel; 2. wouldn't be, hadn't promised; 3. had gone, wouldn't be; 4. hadn't stopped, might be; 5. hadn't hurt, could play football/could have played; 6. had followed, would be/might be.

Ex. 15 (p. 128) 1. might be, had; 2. would be, wrote; 3. had tried, might have stopped; 4. were, wouldn't let/would not have let; 5. would hate, deceived; 6. hadn't been for, would have got up and gone; 7. could have gone, had wanted; 8. would be, told; 9. wouldn't have got, had asked; 10. were given, might have cried; 11. wouldn't be, turned out; 12. might be, learnt; 13. wouldn't bother, were; 14. had kept, would have missed; 15. might have been, could have joined/might be, could join; 16. would have looked, had told; 17. were, would try/would have tried; 18. had been, would have done; 19. were not, would leave; 20. were, would choose/had been, would have chosen,

Ex. 16 (p. 129)

I. 1. but for the cold, would go; 2. But for the bad road, would have come; 3. But for her, would never quarrel; 4. But for this young man, would have been drowned; 5. But for your

help, wouldn't have caught up with; 6. But for his diagnosis, wouldn't have been operated on; 7. But for the weather, would have spent; 8. But for the spelling, would have been.
II. 1. But for the scar, would not recognize/wouldn't have recognized; 2. But for this call, would have been; 3. But for the accident, would have got; 4. But for my tight shoes, would have enjoyed; 5. But for her tired eyes, would have never given/would never give; 6. But for me, would have forgotten; 7. But for you, would have stayed at home; 8. But for the children, would go/would have gone; 9. But for his leg, would take/would have taken part in.

Ex. 17 (p. 129) 1. had called, wouldn't have been able; 2. but for ..., would have managed to find; 3. had warned, wouldn't have managed to see; 4. couldn't have spoken, had seen; 5. changed, would recognize/had changed, would have recognized; 6. were asked, would... be able to answer; 7. were not, would carry/would have carried; 8. would never leave, had to risk/would have never left, had to risk; 9. don't find, leave a message; 10. hadn't been told, would have guessed; 11. But for the timetrouble, could have won; 12. refuses, 'll try to persuade.

Ex. 18 (p. 129) 1. don't find, will be late; 2. had listened, would have understood; 3. were not windy, would go skiing; 4. were a doctor; would help; 5. are open, buy smth; 6. invited, would come; 7. read, would know; 8. were not busy, would go; 9. won't have finished, help; 10. were you, would go.

Ex. 19 (p. 129-130) 1. were better, would get/had been better, would have got; 2. doesn't come, will read; 3. would... solve, had to deal with; 4. had entered, would graduate; 5. But for this incident, would have never learnt; 6. had got, would leave; 7. would have never learnt; 8. had not overlooked, wouldn't start it from the very beginning; 9. had to write, wouldn't cite; 10. skied well, would take part/would have taken part.

1.1 REVISION

Ex. 20 (p. 130) 1. had realized, wouldn't have come; 2. hadn't told, would have believed; 3. will never agree, is; 4. would be, kept, would have been/had kept/will be, keep; 5. asked, wouldn't know; 6. would be pleased, allowed; 7. will be, come and see/would be, came and saw; 8. happen, 'll act, has... been written/happened, would act, had... been written.

Ex. 21 (p. 130) 1. had been, wouldn't have come, talked; 2. were, would take/had been, would have taken; 3. calls, can get in touch; 4. don't find; 5. wouldn't understand, were given/ wouldn't have understood, had been given; 6. come across; 7. wouldn't find, asked/wouldn't have found, had asked.

Ex. 22 (p. 130) 1. learnt, would never speak; 2. will be, there is; 3. would feel, came; 4. will miss, leave/would miss, left; 5. arises; 6. would you do, had to do; 7. is/were,

wouldn't like; 8. will be, refuses/would be, refused; 9. would... think, heard/will... think, hear; 10. hasn't changed/doesn't change, will be; 11. won't be surprised, is offered/ wouldn't be surprised, were offered.

Ex. 23 (p. 130-131)

I. 1. But for your help, wouldn't have been able to; 2. had come, might not have happened; 3. had rained, would have got wet through, was wearing; 4. were fond of reading, would find; 5. would... go, were not raining; 6. rains, 'll stay at home; 7. were to say/said, would think me a lunatic; 8. will be, should change/changed; 9. might have felt, acted, had been; 10. were not, could/might go; 11. had no, could walk/had had no, could have walked; 12. would feel, didn't keep; 13. wouldn't have missed, had taken; 14. could go, were not; 15. would have liked, hadn't been; 16. would feel, had taken; 17. were you, would spend; 18. would know, read; 19. But for my illness, would have graduated; 20. wouldn't have broken, had been; 21. mightn't have got lost, hadn't been; 22. will come home, am not detained/unless ... am detained; 23. But for the rain, could/might go; 24. would be well, had consulted; 25. if it hadn't been for his illness, would have moved.

II. 1. hadn't intended to get married, wouldn't have sent; 2. thought, but for Mr. Peggoty, would have been; 3. told/said to; think, is; wouldn't have adopted, weren't; 4. told, should happen, would become, would give; 5. didn't know, had married; knew, wouldn't be going back; 6. had told, might have loved; 7. would be, hadn't married, thought; 8. was a capable boy, could have studied, hadn't been present.

2. MAKING A WISH

Ex. 1 (p. 133)

II. 1. my brother had; 2. I could play; 3. my tooth wasn't aching; 4. I sometimes didn't make; 5. he was coming to see; 6. I could swim; 7. I knew; 8. he didn't drive; 9. I spoke; 10. I could go; 11. the teacher didn't give us ; 12. my father came; 13. I lived nearer; 14. our TV set wasn't broken; 15. I could sell

Ex. 3 (p. 134-135) 1. had won; 2. had heard every word; 3. were calm; 4. had found a taxi; 5. hadn't gone to bed; 6. had answered; 7. had helped; 8. had taken; 9. had gone; 10. had been more attentive; 11. had slept; 12. had read; 13. hadn't rained; 14. had been working harder; 15. had been speaking; 16. were less expensive

Ex. 4 (p. 135) 2. knew; 3. had booked; 4. could drive; 5. would keep; 6. had worked; 7. had seen; 8. were not going; 9. would wait; 10. had brought; 11. had known; 12. could swim; 13. were coming.

Ex. 5 (p. 135) 1. I wish, weren't raining; were fine, could spend; 2. don't know, lives/is living; knew, would... write; 3. I wish, hadn't given... back; had known, needed, would have brought; 4. I wish, lived; 5. didn't... ask; would have helped, had asked; 6. I wish,

had seen; had been on; 7. am fond of reading, have; had, could read; 8. I wish, had been able to; hadn't been, would have gone.

3. REVISION

Ex. 6 (p. 135-136) 1. I wish, hadn't come so late; 2. I wish, hadn't left; 3. I wish, knew; 4. I wish, didn't know; 5. I wish, were not so; 6. I wish, were more; 7. I wish, had followed; 8. I wish, could see; 9. I wish, could read/read; 10. I wish, had come earlier; 11. I wish, would think... over; 12. I wish, had waited for his arrival; 13. I wish, could have met/had met; 14. I wish, hadn't followed; 15. I wish, hadn't been, (had) listened to/were not, listened to; 16. He wished, hadn't come and (hadn't) taken; 17. were you, wouldn't do; 18. had come, could have never happened/wouldn't have happened; 19. but for you, don't know, would have done; 20. were not so busy, could dine out/hadn't been so busy, could have dined out.

MODAL VERBS

2. CAN

Ex. 2 (p. 139) 1. will be able to...; 2. won't be able to...; 3. will be able to...; 4. won't be able to...; 5. will be able to...; 6. will be able to...; 7. won't be able to...; 8. won't be able to...; 9. will be able to...; 10. will be able to...; 11. won't be able to...; 12. won't be able to....

Ex. 3 (p. 140) 1. could; 2. was able to...; 3. could; 4. was able to...; 5. was not able to; 6. were able to...; 7. could; 8. could; 9. could, couldn't; 10. could/were able to...; 11. could; 12. was able to... .

Ex. 4 (p. 140) 1. can; 2. could; 3. can; 4. can/may; 5. could have helped; 6. can; 7. will be able; 8. can; 9. can't; 10. couldn't; 11. can't; 12. was able to; 13. could; 14. will be able to.

Ex. 5 (p. 140-141)
I. 1. will be able to speak; 2. can; 3. Can... skate; 4. could walk; 5. could; 6. Will... be able to do; 7. could swim; 8. Could... translate; 9. can buy; 10. will be able to go.
II. 1. was able to advise; was able to reach; 3. couldn't show; 4. can't find; 5. Can/Could I have; 6. can come back; 7. couldn't have written; 8. could paint; 9. could hardly breathe; 10.... can't you admit...? 11. Can... prove; 12. Can I hang...?

Ex. 6 (p. 142)
I. 1. Can (could) he understand; 2. Can she... be fond; 3. Can they know; 4. Can she be crying; 5. Can she be looking for; 6. Can they be... fighting; 7. Can they be fond of; 8. Can children like; 9. Can he be telling.

II. 1.'Could he have seen/can't have seen; 2. Could... have been/couldn't have been; 3. Could... have come/couldn't have come; 4. Could... have been dismissed/couldn't have been dismissed; 5. Can... have changed/can't have changed; 6. Can... have done/ can't have done.

Ex. 7 (p. 142) 1. be; 2. have told; 3. be; 4. have said; 5. be; 6. have known; 7. have worked; 8. have resented; 9. have been; 10. have seen; 11. have forgotten; 12. have won.

Ex. 8 (p. 142-143) 1. can't have been late; 2. can't have read; 3. can't have forgotten; 4. Can... have forgotten; 5. Can... have thought; 6. Can... have lost; 7. couldn't have said; 8. Could... have been; 9. can't be; 10. Can he know; 11. Can he have refused; 12. can't have lost; 13. can't have left.

Ex. 9 (p. 143) 1. Can... have misunderstood/can't have misunderstood; 2. Can... have disliked/can't have disliked; 3. Can... mistrust; 4. Can... have failed to notice/can't have failed to notice; 5. Can... have never received/can't have failed to receive; 6. Can... have failed to realize/can't have failed to realize; 7. Can... have failed to see; have never seen/ can't have failed to see.

Ex. 10 (p. 143) 1. Can... have never seen/have failed to see; 2. can't have failed to notice; 3. Can... have never learnt; 4. can't have disapproved of; 5. Can she have never told; 6. Can... believe/disbelieve; 7. She can't dislike; 8. can't have misunderstood; 9. can't have failed to; 10. Can... have never found.

2.1 REVISION

Ex. 11 (p. 143-144)

I. 1. can; 2. can, won't be able to take part; 3. wasn't able to translate; 4. can; can't repair; 5. was able to repair; 6. can't stop; 7. can, won't be able to answer; 8. will be able to go; 9. wasn't able to pass; 10. can't go; haven't been able to finish.

II. 1. can't finish; 2. Can you translate; 3. think, 'll be able; 4. was able to; 5. came, was able to manage; 6. couldn't speak; 7. were able to finish; 8. can't be; 9. am afraid, will not be able to come back; 10. Can... have sent; 11. am... glad, was able to help; 12. can't have forgotten; 13. knew, would be able to; 14. Can they have failed to inform; 15. cannot be done; 16. can you have failed to recognize; 17. can be found; 18. couldn't have failed to come; 19. could send off; 20. Can... have disliked; 21. could have got, had gone; 22. didn't you come; could have spoken.

3. MAY

Ex. 2 (p. 146-147)

I. 1. may; 2. Can, could, can't; 3. Can, can't; 4. Can, can, can't; 5. May; 6. can; 7. couldn't, can; 8. Can/may, can/may; 9. could, couldn't; 10. could/might; 11. couldn't; 12. may/could; 13. can't; 14. Can.

II. 1. may; 2. may; 3. may, may not; 4. could; 5. Can; 6. Can; 7. Can; 8. Can; 9. Can, can; 10. may; 11. can't; 12. cannot; 13. Can/may; 14. can; 15. may/might.

Ex. 3 (p. 147) 1. may meet; 2. may have left; 3. may have left; 4. may understand; 5. may not have been locked; 6. may not want to see; 7. may write; 8. may have forgotten.

Ex. 4 (p. 147) 1. May/can, you may/can; 2. might have stayed; 3. may have... left; 4. may be still waiting; 5. can get; 6. can see; 7. Can... help; 8. May... use; 9. can't use; 10. might come; 11. can't, can... have forgotten; 12. can't swim; 13. may need; 14. may come.

4. MUST

Ex. 4 (p. 150) 1. is to share; 2. have to do; 3. is to meet; 4. must change/'ll have to change; 5. will have to go; 6. is... to begin; 7. are to be built; 8. is to do; 9. am to meet/ am meeting; 10. 'll have to leave; 11. must; 12. has to wear; 13. must; 14. were to wait.

Ex. 6 (p. 150) 1. does... have to cook; doesn't have to cook; 2. Did... have to sit; didn't have to; 3. Will... have to; won't have to; 4. Did... have to...; didn't have to...; 5. Will... have to...; won't have to...; 6. Do... have to; don't have to; 7. Did... have to...; didn't have to...; 8. Will... have to...; won't have to.

Ex. 7 (p. 150-151) 1. doesn't have to come; 2. won't have to pass; 3. didn't have to water; 4. don't have to/needn't hurry; 5. didn't have to study; 6. don't have to get up.

Ex. 8 (p. 151) 1. had to; 2. must; 3. have to be; 4. had to; 5. are ...to; 6. must/should; 7. is to; 8. is to come; 9. must; 10. are to.

Ex. 9 (p. 151)
I. 1. must see; 2. had to go; 3. will have to wait; 4. is... to come; 5. must/are to give; 6. mustn't /are not to play; 7. Do... have to; 8. were to meet; 9. didn't have to wait; 10. will have to talk to; 11. had to walk; 12. must write/has to write...; 13. are... to be; 14. Must... go.
II. 1. was to become; 2. will have to write; 3. had to wait; 4. was to finish, wasn't able to...; 5. is to go; 6. will have to take; 7. am to bring; 8. had to go; 9. must; 10. had to leave; 11. will have to come; 12. must... go; 13. is... to come; 14. is to come/be; 15. didn't have to.

Ex. 11 (p. 152-153) 1. must have been; 2. must have been upset; 3. must have recognized; 4. must be; 5. must be trying; 6. must be waiting; 7. must be; 8. must have failed; 9. must have known; 10. must be; 11. must have taken; 12. must have been hungry.

Ex. 12 (p. 153) 1. be; 2. must have fallen; 3. must have been; 4. must be; 5. must have been; 6. must have been; 7. must have been; 8. must have been; 9. must be raining;

10. must have forgotten; 11. must have been; 12. must be; 13. must have made; 14. must have been driving; 15. must have been sent.

Ex. 13 (p. 153)
I. 1. Must have made no; 2. must have had no dinner; 3. must have had no experience; 4. must have given no answer; 5. must take no measures; 6. must pay no attention to; 7. must have no books; 8. must have got no answer; 9. must have got no money; 10. must have taken no trouble.
II. 1. Probably, haven't come; 2. Probably, don't know; 3. Evidently, hasn't been done; 4. Probably, isn't; 5. evidently, hasn't taken/did't take much time; 6. will probably come.

Ex. 14 (p. 153) 1. must know; 2. must be; 3. must have taken; 4. must have been; 5. must laugh at/be laughing at; 6. must have lived; 7. must be raining; 8. must have stopped; 9. must have been repairing.

Ex. 15 (p. 154) 1. have to work; 2. will have to talk; 3. had to wait; 4. had to apologize; 5. has to be bound; 6. have to get up..., don't you?

4.1 REVISION

Ex. 16 (p. 154) 1. must be; 2. must have been reading; 3. must have failed to realize; 4. must be tired; 5. must be eating; 6. must have been expecting; 7. must have never found; 8. must have got.

Ex. 17 (p. 154) 1. do; 2. follow; 3. have got; 4. be doing, be; 5. be; 6. have got; 7. be; 8. have got frightened.

Ex. 18 (p. 154) 1. must read/have to read; 2. must be reading; 3. had to cook; 4. must have been cooking; 5. had to go/was to go; 6. must have gone; 7. must talk to/are to talk to; 8. must be speaking; 9. had to write; 10. must have written; 11. must have been writing.

Ex. 19 (p. 154-155) 1. must be waiting; 2. is to wait; 3. must live; 4. must be living; 5. must read; 6. must be reading/must read; 7. am to stay/must stay; 8. must be staying with; 9. must be waiting for; 10. you have to look; 11. must have forgotten; 12. must have been writing.

Ex. 20 (p. 155) 1. must learn/had to...; 2. must not learn/didn't have to learn; 3. don't make noise, must be sleeping; 4. nobody must have told; 5. were to come; 6. must have forgotten, were to come; 7. didn't have to wait, did you? 8. won't have to wait.

Ex. 21 (p. 155) 1. was to begin, had to be delayed; 2. had to stay, had; 3. Do you have to get up/Must you get up; 4. agreed; was to come, was to wait; 5. was, didn't have to go; 6. came home, were to call on me; 7. was to finish, was not able to do it; 'll have to finish; 8. do you have to go/are you to be; 9. Did you have to wait, didn't have to wait;

10. hasn't come; is to be; will have to wait; 11. had to type, must have been tired and made; 12. must be; 13. must be tired; 14. must be; 15. will have to learn; 16. had to pay.

5. SHOULD AND OUGHT

Ex. 4 (p. 157) 1. have remebered; 2. obey; 3. have eaten; 4. have allowed; 5. have run/ run (in general); 6. have taken; 7. have taken; 8. have been finished; 9. have eaten; 10. have gone out; 11. have crossed; 12. have checked; 13. have warned; 14. have waited.

Ex. 5 (p. 157) 1. should know; 2. must have been; 3. must tell; 4. should have been; 5. must/ ought to; 6. should have apologized; 7. should consult; 8. shouldn't have said; 9. should have known; 10. should have been; 11. should give.

Ex. 6 (p. 157) 1. ought to respect; 2. have to; 3. had to.

Ex. 7 (p. 157) 1. a) must; b) should; 2. a) should; b) must; 3. a) must; b) should; 4. a) must; b) should; 5. a) must; b) should.

Ex. 8 (p. 158) 1 . had, should have reminded; 2. shouldn't have told, had to do; 3. should have; 4. had to do; 5. shouldn't have let, should have explained; 6. had to tell.

Ex. 9 (p. 158) 1. must have missed, should have been; 2. must have spoken; 3. shouldn't have spoken, might have hurt; 4. shouldn't have closed; should have aired; 5. was to happen; 6. should have read, must be; 7. didn't have to carry; 8. shouldn't worry, should keep yourself in hand; 9. did... have to wait; 10. don't have to get up; 11. must have been; 12. was to come over/call on; 13. can be bought; 14. must be raining; 15. don't have to/needn't cook; 16. must have been discussing; 17. should find/should have found.

6. NEED

Ex. 2 (p. 159) 1. needn't have sent; 2. needn't have washed up; 3. needn't press; 4. needn't have been reminded; 5. needn't have helped; 6. needn't have called.

Ex. 4 (p. 160) 1. needn't hurry; 2. needn't have come; 3. shouldn't give; 4. needn't have returned; 5. needn't have helped/shouldn't have helped (different meanings); 6. needn't go.

Ex. 5 (p. 160) 1. don't have to go; 2. needn't go out; 3. won't have to go; 4. needn't go; 5. don't have to; 6. needn't go, can send; 7. could do, didn't have to go; 8. needn't have gone/didn't have to go (different meanings); 9. needn't have bought; 10. don't have to stay; 11. didn't have to buy; 12. needn't have bought; 13. needn't have come; 14. needn't have gone into detail; 15. needn't have used; 16. didn't have to use.

7. REVISION

Ex. 1 (p. 160-161) 1. can/may, can/can't/may not; 2. should/ought to; 3. 'll have to; 4. can't/mustn't; 5. can't, have to; 6. won't have to, can; 7. needn't, can; 8. shouldn't; 9. don't have to; 10. is to; 11. mustn't/ shouldn't; 12. needn't; 13. may/can; 14. has to; 15. must; 16. are to; 17. must/can; 18. don't have to; 19. Can/may, needn't, can/may; 20. was to; 21. can, can't; 22. can; 23. should/must; 24. were to.

Ex. 2 (p. 161) 1. must be over; 2. can't say; 3. must have told; 4. must have taken; 5. can't have broken; 6. may have been ashamed; 7. must have sent; 8. can; 9. must have watched; 10. can't have left; 11. can't have failed to recognize; 12. must/may have helped; 13. must be; 14. must have written; 15. can... be; 16. must have been delivered; 17. can... fail to remember/have forgotten.

Ex. 3 (p. 161) 1. is to be; 2. can be; 3. may be; 4. may have been, mayn't have been; 5. must have been; 6. was to be; 7. can't have been; 8. May... have been; 9. Can... have been; 10. can't be true/have been true; 11. Can... be true; 12. must be true; 13. might be true; 14. might be true; 15. might have been true; 16. must have been true; 17. must have been mistaken; 18. must be mistaken; 19. can't have been mistaken; 20. Can... have been mistaken; 21. Can't have misunderstood.

Ex. 4 (p. 161-162) 1. could, doesn't have to; 2. might be able to help; 3. could I do, I must do; 4. should have asked; 5. might have to; 6. didn't have to visit; 7. may say, might have to wait; 8. was to come; 9. should have read; 10. could it be; 11. needn't have worried; 12. could be found; 13. might laugh at.

Ex. 5 (p. 162)

I. 1. must go, am to meet, must be waiting, will have to take; 2. was to be knocked down, had to move; 3. might have warned, wouldn't have to wart; 4. needn't have gone, could have come; 5. shouldn't have spoken; 6. should have thought; 7. needn't have booked; 8. Can/could... ask; 9. could go; 10. Can... have believed, must have made fun.

II. 1. had to move; 2. were to dine; 3. will have to study; could come, would help; 4. probably didn't tell, may be packing; 5. didn't have to get up; 6. shouldn't pay attention; needn't worry; 7. must have read; should read, could discuss; 8. shouldn't have spoken, might have taken offence/been hurt; 9. won't be able to.

Ex. 6 (p. 162-163) 1. must have put, was not able to get; 2. was to speak; 3. might have been; 4. must have met, may have met; 5. shouldn't have told, should have kept silent; 6. Can he have never heard; 7. evidently, didn't have time, mightn't have found; 8. probably will have to wait, is able to see; 9. was to be operated; had to be postponed; 10. can't fail to know; 11. must have prepared; 12. probably, didn't prepare...; 13. must have had no time, had to/will have to spend, should be ready; 14. could... help, may have to leave.

Ex. 7 (p. 163) 1. must... do; a) can do; b) must/'ll have to do; 2. can... see; a) certainly, you can; b) no, you can't; 3. can/may... swim; a) can't, may fall ill; b) can/may; 4. Must... write, can... make corrections; 5. can... come, needn't come; 6. could you come; 7. I wonder if I could ask; 8. I wonder if you could come/could ... come.

Ex. 8 (p. 163-164)

A. 1. why shouldn't I have a new dress made? 2. could walk; 3. could you make; 4. should fit; 5. needn't worry; 6. shall fit; 7. will you let; 8. when shall I come? 9. must have taken; 10. I'll have to do; 11. Can ... have made a mistake; 12. may have put on some weight; 13. should be all right; 14. should have warned; 15. won't work; 16. had todo without.

B. 1. must be talking; 2. might have been; 3. could he refuse; 4. could get; 5. must find; 6. must have forgotten; 7. must be eating; 8. can't be shortage; 9. can't ... fail to remember/he can afford to forget; 10. there must be; 11. can't refuse; 12. had to win; 13. must have fallen down; 14. can... have asked for/I can't have asked for.

THE NOUN

1. FORMATION OF NOUNS

Ex. 4 (p. 167) 2. smoker; 3. pianist; 4. amateur; 5. assistant; 6. donor; 7. historian.

Ex. 5 (p. 167) 2. excitement; 3. friendship; 4. happiness; 5. admittance; 6. discovery; 7. production; 8. childhood; 9. journalism; 10. efficiency; 11. arrival; 12. pollution; 13. explanation; 14. musician.

Ex. 6 (p. 168) 1. agreement; 2. investigation; 3. description; 4. improvement.

Ex. 7 (p. 168) 1. inspector, inspection; 2. oppressor, oppression; 3. composer, composition; 4. producer, production; 3. conductor, conduct; 6. supporter, support.

Ex. 8 (p. 168) 1. unemployment; 2. interconnection; 3. dishonesty; 4. misinterpretation; 5. indifference; 6. misfortune; 7. independence; 8. unimportance; 9. insecurity; 10. pre-election; 11. reconstruction.

Ex. 11 (p. 168-169) 1. a teacup; 2. a department store; 3. lifeboat; 4. handcuffs.

Ex. 12 (p. 169) 1. classroom; 2. hometask; 3. homework; 4. reading-room; 5. dining-room; 6. newspapers; 7. weekend.

2. CLASSIFICATION OF NOUNS

Ex. 2 (p. 171)
I. 2. U; 3. C; 4. U; 5. C; 6. U; 7. U; 8. U; 9. C
II. 2. U; 3. C ;4. U; 5. C; 6. C; 7. C; 8. C; 9. U; 10. C

Ex. 3 (p. 171) 1. collective; 2. multitude; 3. multitude; 4. collective; 5. multitude; 6. multitude; 7. collective; multitude.

Ex. 4 (p. 172) *Possible answers:* 1. is; 2. are; 3. were; 4. was; 5. have got; 6. are; 7. doesn't think; 8. are requested; 9. were practising; 10. are having, will come; 11. is playing; 12. are; 13. have been discussing; 14. has decided; 15. was; 16. were; 17. was; 18. were; 19. is; 20. has been; 21. is.

Ex. 5 (p. 172) 1. are not, didn't believe a word; 2. the crew stop; 3. the news is; 4. There is important information; 5. The company are sitting; 6. are of the opinion; 7. the staff were all gathered; 8. The staff is small.

3. THE CATEGORY OF NUMBER

Ex. 3 (p. 175-176)
I. 1. shelves; 2. several dozens; 3. one tooth; 4. wolves; 5. The children were; 6. some photos; 7. information; 8. several pairs; 9. two mice; 10. Two oxen; 11. Very strange phenomena were; 12. hair was.
II. 1. the sheep; 2. feet; 3. These are lady-birds. 4. Where are the knives? 5. These factories have good laboratories. 6. The last leaves, trees; 7. These stories are...; 8. The speeches were...; 9. the keys on the tables; 10. Where are the brushes? 11. plays; 12. The roofs of the houses were...; 13. The wives of the sailors...; 14. ...has a lot of geese.
III. 1. A mouse lives... 2. The key to the box was... 3. The wolf has been... 4. The fish was... 5. a good postman... 6. The cargo...

Ex. 4 (p. 176) 1. are; 2. are; They; 3. have; 4. these; They; 5. are; 6. is; 7. have; 8. are not, are; 9. don't.

Ex. 5 (p. 176) 1. is; 2. is; 3. do; 4. was; 5. were; 6. was; 7. were; 8. were, was, was; 9. was; 10. was; 11. were.

Ex. **6** (p. 176-177)
a) 1. the stairs lead; 2. his advice was; 3. The data were/the information was; 4. the same data/information; 5. This money is not mine. 6. had little; 7. His knowledge; 8. Your knowledge isn't enough; 9. a job/ work; 10. What news; 11. The news is known....
b) 1. this watch; it is; 2. Your watch/clock is; 3. the gate was closed; 4. The sledge is; 5. The export of the goods has increased....

c) 1. which of the sheep will be sent...; 2. The cargo was...; 3. His clothes are...; 4. There were very few people there. 5. Potatoes are...; 6. Carrots are...; 7. The fruits are...; 8. His wages are..,; 9. The contents... were; 10. ... is famous for its wines.

d) 1. There are five fish, one fish; 2. The news is; 3. Whose money is this? 4. a lot of swine and sheep; 5. Your money is; Take it. 6. Our winter vacation is over. 7. this information/these data; 8. Your advice. 9. the attention of all the passers-by....

4. THE CATEGORY OF CASE

Ex. 1 (p. 178) 2. two days' journey; 3. -; 4. –; 5. my daughter Helen's birthday; 6. -; 7. seven years' work; 8. the Earth's surface; 9. the Commander-in-Chief's orders.

Ex. 2 (p. 178-179) 2. the chemist's; 3. my aunt's; 4. at the Hart's.

Ex. 3 (p. 179) 2. my friend's bag; 3. the actress's career; 4. Mr Brown's signature; 5. the students' mistakes; 6. women's club; 7. a girls' school; 8. the guest room; 9. James's umbrella; 10. at Mike's.

Ex. 4 (p. 179) 2. -; 3. the ship's crew; 4. no one's fault; 5. Eliot's poetry; 6. -; 7. -; 8. -.

Ex. 5 (p. 179) 2. the doctor's surgery; 3. the piano keyboard; 4. our director's secretary; 5. Queen Elizabeth reign; 6. no one's responsibility; 7. the front door knob; 8. Scott's journey; 9. the company's manager; 10. The book cover; 11. The factory gate; 12. my mother's book; 13. The office phone; 14. The film critic; 15. the twins' mother; 16. my husband's sister.

Ex. 6 (p. 180) 1. my son's photo; 2. the dog's eyes; 3. the top of the page; 4. the students' club; 5. today's newspaper; 6. a month's holiday; 7. your wife's name; 8. the name of this street; 9. Mike's parents' car; 10. Rosa's love; 11. company's new manager; 12. the leg of the table; 13. the ground floor of the building; 14. Don and Mary's children; 15. the economic policy of the government/the government's economic policy; 16. my aunt and uncle's house.

Ex. 7 (p. 180) 1. at my friend's...; 2. Moscow's theatres...; 3. Britain's exports...; 4..., evening newspapers.

Ex. 8 (p. 180) 1. two days' work; 2. an hour's rest; 3. ten minutes' walk.

THE ARTICLE

1. THE USE OF ARTICLES WITH COMMON NOUNS

Ex. *2* **(p. 184) 1. 90 rubles a kilo; 2. twice a day; 3. 100 km an hour; 4. once a day; 5. three times a week; 6. 20 rubles a litre.**

Ex. 3 (p. 184) 1. -; 2. a; 3. the; 4. a; 5. a; 6. -; 7. -; 8. -; 9. a/one; 10. -; 11. a; 12. the; 13. -; 14. the; 15. the; 16. the.

Ex. 4 (p. 187-188) 1. a, -; 2. a, one of the; 3. the; 4. an, -; 5. a, -; 6. -, a; 7. a, the; 8. the; 9. a, the; 10. a, a; 11. a, -, a; 12. A, -... -; 13. the; 14. an; 15. –,"... -; 16. The; 17. an, a, the; 18. the, a, the, -; 19. A, her, the, -/the; 20. A, the, -, the; 21. the; 22. the, a; 23. the, the; 24. the; 25. the, the/your, the.

Ex. 5 (p.188) 1. -; 2. The; 3. –; 4. the...; 5. -, -; 6. the; 7. the... -; 8. -; 9. the... -; 10. -...-; 11. -; 12. -; 13. The...-... -; 14. –... -; 15. -...-; 16. the.

Ex. 6 (p.188-189) 1. a, the, the, a, a, a; 2. An/The; The... the; 3. an, the; 4. the, the; 5. the, the, the, a/(-); 6. the, the/a, the, the/a, the; 7. The, the, the, (-); 8. a, the; 9. (-), the; 10. the.

Ex. 7 (p.189) 1. the; 2. the human race... man... the dinosaurs; 3. the gods... God; 4. (-), (-), (-), the, (-); 5. the Navy... the Army; 6. the President; 7. President.

Ex. 8 (p. 189)
I. 1. a; 2. a; 3. a; 4. the; 5. the; 6. the; 7. a; 8. the; 9. the; 10. the; 11. the; 12. the; 13. the; 14. the; 15. the; 16. the; 17. the; 18. the; 19. the; 20. the; 21. the; 22. the; 23. the; 24. the; 25. the.
II. 1. a; 2. an; 3. a; 4. an; 5. the; 6. the; 7. the; 8. the; 9. the; 10. the.

Ex. **9** (p. 189-190) 1. a carriage; 2. The carriage; 3. a group; 4. The group; 5. a young talented actress; 6. the... actress; 7. the clock; 8. a clock.

Ex. 10 (p.190) 1. a room; 2. the room; 3. The knife; 4. a knife; 5. a/the knife, some bread; 6. a lake; 7. The lake; 8. The lock; 9. the lock; 10. - locks; 11. a/the lock; 12. - oranges; 13. The oranges; 14. an orange; 15. the orange.

Ex. **11** (p. 190) 1. The door; 2. a telephone; 3. The telephone; 4. the hall; 5. - dogs; 6. the dog; 7. a dog; 8. The pen; 9. –pens; 10. a coat; 11. the coat; 12. the key; 12. - flats... the house; 13. the sets; 14. the set; 15. - sets.

Ex. **12** (p. 190)
I. 1. - advice/a good piece of advice; 2. The advice; 3. the news; 4. The news; 5. - good news; 6. such –information; 7. the information; 8. - bad weather; 9. the weather; 10. the money.

II. 1. - friendly advice; 2. - such weather; 3. - nasty weather; 4. the day; 5. an... visit; 6. –news; 7. a job/- work; 8. - work; 9. - great progress; 10. - success.

Ex. 13 (p. 190-191) 1. the door, the postman; 2. the theatre, the play; 3. the mountains, the sea, the country; 4. a postman; 5. the centre, a new market; 6. the kitchen; 7. the Portugese, the Spanish; 8. the Germans, the Japanese; 9. a mistake; 10. a market place; 11. The market; 12. a camp; 13. The camp; 14. The post office; 15. a letter; 16. the/his letter.

1.4 REVISION

Ex. 14. (p.191) 1. a; 2. -, -; 3. a; 4. a, the; 5. a, an/the, the; 6. an; 7. the, a; 8. a, the, the; 9. a, the; 10. a, the; 11. a; 12. -; 13. -; 14. a, -; 15. the, the, the, the, the, the.

Ex. 15. (p.191-192) 1. a word, the parlour; 2. The room, the staircase; 3. a word, a sound; 4. The sky, the window; 5. a man; 6. the drama; 7. –... men; 8. a word, a... note; 9. -man; 10. the sun, the earth; 11. a cottage, a mansion, a... hall, a... gallery, -rooms, - closets; 12. a... man, a ... face, - ... hands; - woman; 13. the... woman, the world; 14. the strongest; 15. a... hat, the very; 16. the rich; 17. The room, the fireplace, the corner, the best...; 18. an hour, the schoolroom, the top, the house, the children; 19. the very; 20. a... street, a ... house, the windows, a woman, the table; a seamstress; 21. The man, -... trousers, a... shirt, the neck, the lapels; 22. the street, the... windows, the place. The... door, the house; 23. the very moment; 24. a... house, a lawn, a... garden, the side, a kitchen garden, the rear, a wall; The house, a... house; 25. The bartender, a... man, a vest, an apron, -... arms, a... nose; 26. -... parties, - men, the same, the same, the same, the same, - birds; 27. The old man, the house, the same; 28. the wicked; 29. - arm, - arm, a hump, - rabbit-holes; 30. the most, the family, a... face, the lips. The eyes, the brow; a girl.

Ex. 16. (p. 192) 1. the earth, the sky, the sun; 2. a dozen; 3. the compass; 4. a week, the cottage; 5. the house, the window, a face; 6. the story, the sofa, have a talk/chat; 7. a beautiful butterfly, the wall; 8. a key of her own; 9. the old, the young; 10. the right advice; 11. visitors, the wrong bell; 12. have a look, the house; 13. a word, a note.

2. THE USE OF ARTICLES WITH NOUNS OF MATERIAL AND ABSTRACT NOUNS

Ex. 1 (p. 194) 1. - tomato juice; 2. - concrete, - stone; 3. an ice-cream; 4. - oranges; 5. - mahogany; 6. - cotton, - wool; 7. an ice-cream, - ice-cream; 8. an ice-cream; 9. have - egg; 10. an egg, - coffee; 11. –black coffee, - sugar.

Ex. 2 (p. 194)
a. 1. -fish; 2. the fish; 3. some, some ham, some; 4. -wine, a plate of - oranges, - ... sugar; 5. - silence, the soup, an ... soup, - fish, the fish, champagne; 6. some coffee; 7. - coffee, - bread; 8. The rest, - cheese; 9. some gruel; 10. - stone.

b. 1. the water; 2. - blood, - water; 3. the wine; 4. - wine; 5. -, the bread, (the) meat, (the) beer, the landlady; 6. -... hair; 7. The coffee; 8. any opportunity, the telephone, (some) coffee; 9. the bar, (a) coffee, (a) brandy, - coffee, a talk; 10. - leather; 11. - pears, some/a chicken, some tongue, some cheese; 12. –lead; 13. the grass, the garden, – hard work.

Ex. 3 (p.195) a little fish; any salmon; - caviar; - caviar; the cheapest dish; the menu; a mutton chop; - meat; - drink; (some) white wine; - champagne; - water; the caviar; the salmon; –art; –literature; - music.

Ex. 4 (p. 195) 1. The water; 2. - water; 3. some water; 4. The snow; 5. - deep snow; 6. The tea; 7. –tea; 8. some sugar, the tea; 9. a lemon, - tea; 10. - lemon; 11. the lemon; 12. The juice; 13. orange juice; 14. The juice; 15. some bread and butter; 16. some milk; 17. - Milk; 18. some butter, the soup; 19. the butter; 20. - milk, -tea, - coffee; 21. a very good tea and coffee; 22. The coffee, - coffee; 23. the butter; 24. - oil, - gas; 25. some meat and vegetables, the vegetables, the meat; 26. - boiled milk, the milk.

3. THE USE OF ARTICLES WITH PROPER NOUNS

Ex. 1 (p.198-199) 1. the Ritz; 2. Montague Road; 3. Brown's... the Hilton; 4. London... Buckingham Palace; 5. Leoni's... the Globe Theatre; 6. Oxford Street... Oxford Circus; 7. London Bridge; 8. The Senate; 9. the Tate Gallery, London; 10. the Labour Party; 11. the Queen Elizabeth; 12. Westminster Abbey; 13. the Times; 14. the Pravda; 15. Congress; 16. Whitehall, Downing Street.

Ex. 2 (p. 199) 1. the sky, the Arctic, Greenland, the Andes, the Pacific; 2. the Riviera, the Caucasus; 3. - Lake Baikal; 4. –Elbrus, - Europe; 5. The Hague, the Netherlands, the North Sea; 6. the South East, England, the North; 7. the Suez; 8. The Sahare, - North Africa, the Atlantic, the Nile; 9. The Philippines; 10. The West Indies, - North, - South America; 11. the Mediterranean, the Adriatic.

Ex. 3 (p. 199-200)
I. 1. The Queen Mary, Queen Mary; 2. the Forsytes; 3. an English Leonardo da Vinci; 4. - Chekhov; 5. a Pullman; 6. Mrs Thatcher; 7. - Mr Tarantino; 8. the McCartney; 9. – Mother, a ...whisper.
II. 1. The Willowbys; 2. the Beatrice; 3. the father, the daughter; 4. - professor Keitel, the man; 5. the Pat; 6. a Napoleon, the game, - power, a Leonardo, –knowledge; 7. – Doctor Hitchkock; 8. –poor Edward; 9. -, the only; 10. the Mr Keaton.

Ex. 4 (p. 200) 1. The Cordillera, - in North America; 2. The banks of the Rhine; 3. - Elbrus; 4. - Marlow, the Thames; 5. The Mediterranean Sea, - Europe, - Asia, - Africa; 6. - Venice ... the Adriatic Sea; 7. - Livingston, - Central Africa; 8. - Hyde Park; 9. - Bavaria.

Ex. 5 (p. 200) 1. a Mednikov; 2. the Corman, the Camerons; 3. The Konstantinovs; 4. a Clapton, the Claptons; 5. - Krylov, a Russian La Fontaine; 6. The Moscow, the Moscow; 7. - T.V.Michurin, the village of Dolgoe, - Kozlov, The Michurins; 8. The Crimea, the Caucasus, the Black Sea; 9. a Shemyakin; 10. - Tolstoy, the Tolstoy... "Peter the First".

4. SPECIAL DIFFICULTIES IN THE USE OF ARTICLES

Ex. 1 (p. 203) *Names of seasons* 1. the day, the coming on, - night, the air; 2. all the nature; 3. the winter, a very bad time, - bread; 4. The summer, an end, –early autumn; 5. a lovely evening, - spring time, the year; 6. the autumn, the year; 7. a declining sun, a little Wiltshire village; 8. an election, the spring; 9. a cold fall, the wind, the mountains.
Bed, school, prison, town 1. an old town; 2. the way, to - town; 3. a girls' school; 4. the school, a... good one; 5. a lawyer, in - prison; 6. in –town; 7. a certain town, a work-house; 8. The hospital; 9. –church; 10. the ...truth,-prison; 11. bed; 12.-town; 13. the rector, - bed; 14. - prison, a quarter, a century.

Ex. 2 (p. 203-204)
I. 1. - summer; 2. - autumn; 3. - early spring, the day; 4. - summer; 5. the spring; 6. the summer; 7. the spring; 8. the winter; 9. - winter, - summer; 10. the winter, - spring.
II. 1. in bed; 2. the bed; 3. to school; 4. the ... prison; 5. - school; 6. the institute, at - school, a village; 7. in - bed, a sleepless night; 8. a hospital; 9. at midnight, to bed, - supper; 10. on the bed; 11. a hospital; 12. in the morning, to school.

Ex. 3 (p. 204) *Day, night, morning, evening* 1. a night; 2. - sundown; 3. the night; 4. the evening; 5. - evening; 6. The sun, - late morning; 7. The morning; 8. - early morning; 9. an ideal night; 10. the night, - head, - foot; 11. the afternoon; 12. - night; 13. the morning; 14. a bad night, a rather... night; 15. a... night; 16. - night; 17. a... afternoon; 18. the morning, the Park; breakfast; 19. a... morning, the telephones; 20. the... silence, the night.

Ex. 4 (p. 204) *Names of meals* 1. to - dinner; 2. - breakfast, the terrace, the hotel; 3. a good dinner, 4. a big lunch; the... day, the end, the week, a... dinner; 5. a good dinner; 6. The dinner; 7. a... bath, a... dinner; 8. - supper; 9. - dinner, a few.

Ex. 5 (p. 204-205) 1. The morning was cold and windy. 2. It was a warm summer evening. 3. Night came and the travellers decided to have a rest. 4. He writes from morning till night. 5. He spent a/the night at his friend's. 6. He spent a sleepless night and was very pale. 7. It's very nice to go to the country on a clear summer day. 8. Day and night he was thinking of one thing only. 9. It was a wonderful morning, sunny and quiet. 10. It was early morning, everybody in the house was sleeping. 11. Outside it was night. 12. It was a warm summer night. 13. I think, the day is going to be fine and warm. 14. The machines at the factory were working day and night. 15. I persuaded him to spend the night... . 16. I'll never forget the evening... . 17. The evening was cold and foggy.

5. THE USE OF ARTICLES WITH NOUNS IN SOME SET EXPRESSIONS

Ex. 1 (p. 206-207) 1. a bad sailor, at sea; 2. by post; 3. on - deck; 4. at present; 5. a good deal, the war; 6. to - heart; 7. by coach; 8. a hurry; 9. a little car, in question, the front door; 10. the case of love at first sight; 11. on board the yacht; 12. the trouble; 13. - sea, a month; 14. –heart; 15. - fire, - head, - foot; 16. by chance, the/a concert; 17. a fancy; 18. - work, the fireside; 19. a great many; 20. a pity, a talent, –uneasiness; 21. the house, a... garden, the pupils, - doors; 22. The rain, - foot, -; 23. - dawn, the boy, the next; 24. a sudden; 25. the other.

Ex. 2 (p. 207) For reference see the lists of set expressions (p. 205-206).

THE PRONOUN

CLASSIFICATION OF PRONOUNS

Ex. 1 (p. 210) 1. him/her; 2. it; 3. him; 4. them; 5. it; 6. him; 7. us.

Ex. 2 (p. 210) 1. my husband/his; 2. their flat/theirs; 3. my umbrella/mine; 4. our books/ ours; 5. his or her things/his or hers.

Ex. 3 (p. 210) 1. his; 2. hers; 3. theirs; 4. mine; 5. Ours.

Ex. 4 (p. 211) 1. my, yours; 2. his, hers; 3. your; 4. his, yours; 5. his, mine; 6. my.

Ex. 5 (p. 211) 1. She is a relative of theirs. 2. He's a friend of hers. 3. We are the former students of yours. 4. She is a niece of his. 5. I am a colleague of yours. 6. They are the pupils of hers. 7. She is a neighbour of ours. 8. He is a former school-friend of hers. 9. I am a student of his.

Ex. 6 (p. 211)

I. 1. our; 2. yours, your; 3. yours, mine; 4. Their, ours; 5. her, yours; 6. our, mine; 7. yours, mine; 8. your, mine.

II. 1. her, his; 2. mine, hers, her; 3. your, mine; 4. his, her; 5. mine; 6. her; 7. Theirs; 8. Your, mine; 9. hers; 10. your, mine; 11. her, mine, yours; 12. her.

Ex. 7 (p. 211-212) 1. his; 2. his, hers; 3. mine; 4. they; 5. yours, ours; 6. your; 7. his; 8. its; 9. their; hers, theirs; 10. theirs; 11. her; 12. my.

Ex. 8 (p. 212) 1. ours; 2. our, theirs; 3. my/mine, theirs; 4. Her, his; 5. your, their address/ theirs; 6. my, yours; 7. your, his, mine; 8. my, hers; 9. his; 10. a single word of hers; 11. your, hers; 12. our, theirs; 13. yours; 14. it is ... long; 15. his, mine; 16. its; 17. its; 18. your, it.

Ex. 9 (p. 213) 1. I always do it myself. 2. She makes them herself. 3. They built it themselves. 4. We'll repair it ourselves. 5. I clean it myself. 6. He corrected it himself.

Ex. 10 (p. 213) 1. -; 2. yourself; 3. -; 4. -; 5. yourself/yourselves; 6. -; 7. himself; 8. myself; 9. yourself; 10. myself; 11. himself; 12. yourself/yourselves; 13. themselves; 14. ourselves; 15. herself; 16. herself.

Ex. 11 (p. 213) 1. burn yourself; 2. yourself; 3. blame herself; 4. make ... yourself; 5. hurt himself; 6. cut himself; 7. talks to himself; 8. look after ourselves.

Ex. 12 (p. 214) 1. shaving; 2. dried myself; 3. make myself; 4. met; 5. relax; 6. enjoyed ourselves; 7. wash.

Ex. 13 (p. 214) 1. one another; 2. myself; 3. each other/one another; 4. herself; 5. itself; 6. each other/one another.

Ex. 14 (p. 214) 1. on her own; 2. by myself; 3. by themselves; 4. by themselves; 5. on their own; 6. ourselves; 7. by yourself; 8. on our own.

Ex. 15 (p. 214-215) 1. himself; 2. myself; 3. herself; 4. ourselves; 5. themselves; 6. itself; 7. ourselves; 8. herself; 9. himself; 10. himself; 11. themselves; 12. yourself; 13. yourself; 14. yourself.

Ex. 16 (p. 215) 1. was beside himself; 2. saw it himself; 3. didn't recognize himself; 4. by herself; 5. will put yourself; 6. doesn't look himself; 7. hurt yourself; 8. on his own/by himself; 9. introduced ourselves; 10. have you done it yourself; 11. Keep yourself in hand/Pull yourself together; 12. the Governor himself; 13. was himself; 14. humming to herself; 15. Behave yourselves/yourself! 16. think about themselves; 17. among yourselves; 18. of myself; 19. on your own/yourself; 20. needn't come yourself.

Ex. 17 (p. 215) 1. this; 2. that; 3. those, that; 4. these; 5. This; 6. These; 7. It; 8. That.

Ex. 18 (p. 216) 2. The pictures painted by Rembrandt can't be compared to those painted by Rubens. 3. The language in this textbook is easier than that in ... novels. 4. The invisible riches lying in the Urals may be still greater than those discovered. 5. The stories written by O.Henry are as full of life as those written by Mark Twain. 6. Natural sugar is of higher quality than that produced artificially.

Ex. 19 (p. 216) 1. This, this/that; 2. the same; 3. this; 4. those; 5. those; 6. this; 7. the same; 8. those; 9. That; 10. That; 11. This; 12. These; Those; 13. that.

Ex. 20 (p. 216) 1. Whose trousers are these? –These are my trousers. 2. I've brought you important news. This is the latest news. 3. Somebody knocked at the door. That was my neighbour. 4. Where did you put the money? –It is in the wallet, on the shelf. 5. Do you remember him? It was such a brave man! 6. Those were the most beautiful roses I had ever seen. 7. She has wonderful hair. It is long and wavy. 8. What's wrong with your watch? - It is 5 minutes slow. 9. Look. Who is that? - That is one of our students. 10. I have seen that man somewhere. - That is one of our sportsmen. - Yes, now I recognize him. 11. Who's there? - Please, open. It's me. 12. What wonderful flowers these are! 13. That'll do, you can stop working.

Ex. 22 (p. 217) 1. Which; 2. What; 3. What; 4. Who(m); 5. Whose; 6. Who; 7. What; 8. What; 9. What/Who; 10. What; 11. Which; 12. Which; 13. Who; 14. Who; 15. What; 16. Whose; 17. Which; 18. What; 19. What; 20. Which; 21. What.

Ex. 23 (p. 217) 1. Who; 2. Which of you; 3. Which of them; 4. Who(m); 5. Who(m); 6. What colour; 7. What; 8. What; 9. Which; 10. What; 11. Which/what; 12. Who.

Ex. 24 (p. 219) 1. Everyone/everybody; 2. everything, everyone/everybody; 3. everything; 4. all; 5. whole; 6. all; 7. everything; 8. all; 9. everyone/everybody; 10. the whole; 11. the whole; 12. everybody; whole; 13. all; 14. the whole; 15. everyone; 16. all the, the whole.

Ex. 25 (p. 219) 1. every leap-year; 2. every three hours; 3. every ten minutes; 4. every half hour; 5. every five minutes; 6. every year.

Ex. 26 (p. 219-220) 1. We all/All of us; 2. the whole; 3. The whole; 4. the whole; 5. all the; 6. All the; 7. The whole; 8. all the; 9. Everybody; 10. the whole; 11. all the; 12. every two months.

Ex. 27 (p. 221) 1. both; 2. Neither; 3. either way/both ways; 4. Both/Both of; 5. Neither of; 6. eithe/either of them; 7. Neither; 8. both; 9. neither of.

Ex. 28 (p. 221) 1. neither clean nor comfortable. 2. both very boring and very long. 3. either Richard or Robert. 4. neither the time nor the money to go on holiday. 5. either on Saturday or on Sunday. 6. He neither smokes nor drinks.

Ex. 29 (p. 221-222) 1. either; 2. both; 3. either; 4. either; 5. both, neither; 6. neither; 7. neither; 8. Both; 9. either, both; 10. both; 11. Neither; 12. neither; 13. both, neither; 14. Both, either, neither.

Ex. 30 (p. 222) 1. Every, each; 2. each, each; 3. either, each; 4. Either; 5. each.

Ex. 31 (p. 222) 1. on either side; 2. Both; 3. either... or, neither (of them); 4. both cameras; 5. they both; 6. either ill or has gone away; 7. Every minute; 8. each house; 9. neither of them, each; 10. each exhibit; 11. either; 12. either end; 13. ... I have read neither of them/I haven't read either of them, either (of them), both.

Ex. 32 (p. 223) 1. another; 2. the other; 3. another; 4. others; 5. the other; 6. the other; 7. another; 8. another.

Ex. 33 (p. 223) 1. another; 2. the other; 3. another; 4. another; 5. The other; 6. the others; 7. the other; 8. Other; 9. the other; 10. others.

Ex. 34 (p. 223) 1. another/no other way; 2. another issue; 3. another one; 4. other food; 5. the other; 6. the other; 7. another one; 8. the others; 9. no other; 10. another.

Ex. 35 (p. 225) 1. -; 2. any; 3. -; 4. any; 5. some; 6. -; 7. -; 8. some; 9. -; 10. some; 11. -; 12. some; 13. -; 14. some; 15. any; 16. -.

Ex. 36 (p. 225-226) 1. some, any; 2. any, some; 3. some; 4. Some; 5. any; 6. any; 7. any; 8. any; 9. any; 10. any.

Ex. 37 (p. 226) 1. Any; 2. any; 3. any/no; 4. some; 5. any; 6. some; 7. any; 8. some; 9. some; 10. Any; 11. any; 12. any; 13. any.

Ex. 38 (p. 226) 1. any; 2. some; 3. any/no; 4. no; 5. some; 6. any; 7. some; 8. some; 9. no; 10. some; 11. any.

Ex. 39 (p. 226) 1. no one; 2. None; 3. None; 4. none; 5. No one; 6. no one; 7. No one; 8. no one; 9. None; 10. none; 11. no one; 12. none; 13. None; 14. none; 15. None.

Ex. 40 (p. 226-227)
I. 1. some; 2. some; 3. some; 4. any. 5. Any; 6. any; 7. any; 8. some, some; 9. some; some; 10. any; 11. some.
II. 1. no; 2. any, some; 3. no, some; 4. any; 5. any, no/any, no; 6. no; 7. none of

Ex. 41 (p. 227-228)
I. 1. something; 2. anything; 3. anyone; 4. something; 5. something; 6. something; 7. nobody/ no one/somebody; 8. somebody/someone; 9. anybody; 10. nobody/no one; 11. somewhere; 12. anywhere.
II. 1. someone/somebody; 2. anything, anybody; 3. anything; 4. nothing/something; 5. Anyone; 6. no one/nobody; 7. anywhere; 8. anything; 9. Nowhere; 10. nothing.

Ex. 42 (p. 228)
a. 1. something; 2. something; 3. something; 4. something; 5. anything/nothing; 6. anything/nothing; 7. anything; 8. anything/nothing;

b. 1. someone/somebody; 2. Someone/Somebody; 3. someone/somebody; 4. anyone/anybody; 5. anyone/anybody; 6. anyone/anybody.

Ex. 43 (p. 228) 1. something; 2. some more; 3. anyone/anybody; 4. any/some; 5. anybody/anyone; 6. anybody/anyone; 7. anybody; 8. anybody/anyone, nobody; 9. no/any; 10. nothing/not a word; 11. nobody/no one; 12. some, none of; 13. nowhere; 14. no one/nobody, anything; 15. none of us.

Ex. 44 (p. 229) 1. somebody/someone; 2. hardly anything, nothing, something; 3. anybody, nobody; 4. nothing/anything, somebody; 5. any vacancy, nothing/anything, any; 6. nothing, any of us; 7. No one, anything, something; 8. somebody's, somebody; 9. anybody/ anyone; 10. some more, any more/no more.

Ex. 45 (p. 229) 1. Everybody/everyone, nobody, some, the others, anybody, who, nothing, something.

Ex. 47 (p. 230) 1. one; 2. ones; 3. ones; 4. the ones; 5. the one; 6. one; 7. one.

Ex. **48** (p. 230) 1. one; 2. ones; 3. (-); 4. one; 5. one; 6. (-).

Ex. 49 (p. 231) 2. ones; 3. one; 4. ones; 5. one; 6. ones; 7. one; 8. ones, ones; 9. one; 10. one.

Ex. 50 (p. 231) 1. the ones; 2. the ... one; 3. which one; 4. this or that one; 5. a black one; 6. which one, the long one; 7. which one? 8. the one.

Ex. **51** (p. 232-233) 1. much; 2. little, little; 3. few; 4. much, a few; 5. Much, few; 6. many, few; 7. few; 8. many; 9. little; 10. little; 11. much; 12. Much, little; 13. afew; 14. many; 15. many; 16. much, much; 17. few; 18. much; 19. much, many, few; 20. much; 21. little, much; 22. little; 23. many/a few; 24. little; 25. Many, few; 26. little; 27: many.

Ex. 52 (p. 233) 1. plenty of water; 2. little work; 3. few people; 4. plenty of time; 5. little; 6. Dick smokes a little; 7. little time; 8. little to eat; 9. little time; 10. little snow.

Ex, 53 (p. 233) 1. a little lemonade; 2. hasn't got many dresses; 3. many articles; 4. How many; 5. many/a lot of; 6. a lot of; 7. little; 8. a few; 9. plenty of; 10. many; 11. a few; 12. a lot of, a little; 13. much, little; 14. a lot of; 15. a lot of; 16. little; 17. many/a lot, a few; 18. many/a lot of; 19. many/a lot of; 20. many; 21. few.

THE ADJECTIVE

1. FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES

Ex. 4 (p. 236-237) 1. enjoyable; 2. productive; 3. recognizable; 4. energetic; 5. readable; 6. reddish; 7. boastful; 8. permissible; 9. attractive.

Ex. 5 (p. 237) 1. obedient; 2. shining; 3. respectable; 4. dangerous; 5. famous; 6. homeless; 7. disastrous; 8. courageous.

Ex. 6 (p. 237) 2. illegal; 3. impossible; 4. unimaginable; 5. incapable; 6. illiterate; 7. impractical; 8. dishonest.

Ex. 7 (p. 237) 2. a seventy-year-old woman; 3. a two-day trip; 4. an eighty-hectare farm; 5. three-month-old baby; 6. a two-kilo parcel; 7. a three-litre jar; 8. a ten-minute walk; 9. a twenty-mile fence; 10. a seventy-kilometer road.

Ex. 8 (p. 237-238)
a) 1. striped; 2. sleeved; 3. detailed; 4. crowded; 5. hurried
b) 1. doubtful; 2. cheerful; 3. beautiful
c) 1. different; 2. confident; 3. independent
d) 1. enjoyable; 2. reliable; 3. agreeable

2. WORD ORDER: ADJECTIVE + NOUN

Ex. 1 (p. 239) 1. a pretty young girl; 2. a handsome young man; 3. an oak kitchen cupboard; 4. a brown leather bag; 5. an old American film; 6. big blue eyes; 7. a cold rainy day; 8. a nice hot bath; 9. an old worn coat; 10. a little old red car; 11. a small antique gold watch; 12. a lovely little old village; 13. long thick black eye-lashes; 14. an old English stone mansion.

Ex. 2 (p. 239) 2. iron railings; 3. a kitchen table; 4. a plastic kitchen table.

Ex. 3 (p. 239-240) 1. a second-hand well-maintained sports car with a low mileage/a well-maintained second-hand sports car ...; 2. a pair of black Italian leather shoes; 3. a small old stone-built country cottage; 4. white cotton summer shorts for my holiday.

Ex. 4 (p. 240) 1. a cotton shirt; 2. a small black metal box; 3. an ugly green dress; 4. beautiful long fair hair; 5. an interesting old French painting; 6. unusual handmade golden earrings; 7. an unforgettable two-day boat trip; 8. an expensive old round handmade oak table.

Ex. 5 (p. 240) 1. smooth, smoothly; 2. well, good; 3. bad, badly; 4. nice, nicely.

Ex. 6 (p. 240-241) 1. smell nice; 2. sounded Interesting; 3. tastes awful; 4. feel well; 5. look/got soaked to the skin; 6. seemed upset.

Ex. 7 (p. 241) 1. looked angrily; 2. close the door quietly; 3. be quiet, quietly; 4. behaves, cooks well; 5. doesn't look safe; 6. arrived safe and sound; 7. are slow; 8. tastes wonderful; 9. drive carefully; 10. was sad, looked at me sadly.

3. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Ex. 4 (p. 243) 2. His work was more careless than mine. It was the most careless (work) in the class. 3. Basketball is more popular than tennis. It is the most popular game in the USA. 4. This watch is more expensive than that one. It's the most expensive (watch) in the shop. 5. Tuesday is more convenient for me than Friday. It is the most convenient of all week-days.

Ex. 5 (p. 243) 1. farther; 2. further; 3. worse; 4. lesser; 5. latest; 6. further; 7. well; 8. last; 9. oldest; 10. smaller; 11. less; 12. older; 13. most; 14. better; 15. better; 16. farthest; 17. oldest; 18. elder; 19. least; 20. most

Ex. 7 (p. 245) 1. Jane is as charming as Ann. 2. He is as tall as I am. 3. Michael is as strong as his brother. 4. Our car is as good as their car/theirs. 5. This report is as interesting as your report. 6. Her new hat is as becoming as her skirt. 7. Your job is as essential as his. 8. The sitting-room is as large as the dining-room. 9. The ice-cream is as delicious as the cake. 10. His stories are as funny as his jokes.

Ex. 8 (p. 245) 1. feel as tired as I felt yesterday; 2. as nervous before the interview as I usually am; 3. as popular as basketball; 4. as much as he used to; 5. as busy on Sunday as on week-days.

Ex. 9 (p. 245) 1. The bus is not so fast as the train. 2. My flat is not so big as her flat/as hers. 3. His voice is not so brilliant as Caruso's. 4. The pond is not so deep as the river. 5. Your typing is not so fast as hers. 6. This lecture is not so interesting as that lecture. 7. This hat is not so beautiful as that hat. 8. His article is not so long as her article/as hers.

Ex. 10 (p. 245) 1. much more famous; 2. a bit more windy; 3. far more interesting; 4. a lot more tired; 5. much more comfortable than; 6. much bigger.

Ex. 11 (p. 246) 1. the most interesting book; 2. a most popular; 3. the most outstanding; 4. a most important; 5. a most clever man.

Ex. 12 (p. 246) 1. This suit is the same size as that one. 2. I arrived here at the same time as you. 3. We rented the same house as your parents.

Ex. 13 (p. 246) 2. a bigger size; 2. more interested; 3. more easily; 4. a bit/ little quieter; 5. more crowded; 6. earlier; 7. a bit oftener; 8: much more expensive; 9. nearer.

Ex. 14 (p. 246) 1. thinner; 2. more talkative; 3. cheaper; 4. simpler than/more simple; 5. more beautiful; 6. more important; 7. more comfortable; 8. healthier/ more healthy and more peaceful.

Ex. 15 (p. 246-247)

a) 1. fainter and fainter; 2. more intelligent; 3. most practical; 4. more advanced, young; 5. latest; 6. good, better; 7. angrier/more angry; 8. wiser; 9. the more, the more complex; 10. cleverest/most clever; 11. good, better; 12. worse; 13. nearest; 14. last; 15. the longer, the shorter; 16 tallest; 17. more amusing; 18. younger.

b) 1. near; 2. cleverest/most clever; 3. futher; 4. serious; 5. the easiest; 6. the last; 7. cheaper; 8. more becoming; 9. the highest; 10. the most talented; 11. latest; 12. solemn, the most solemn; 13. dim, dimmer; 14. elder, older, younger; 15. the sunniest; 16. restless; more restless; 17. the most courageous; 18. greater; 19. far.

c) 1. worse; 2. younger; 3. The worst; 4. the happiest; 5. smaller; 6. calmer; 7. worse; 8. hotter; 9. the prettiest; 10. stronger, braver.

Ex. 16 (p. 247) 1. The longer he waited, the more impatient he became. 2. The more I get to know him, the more I like him. 3. The more you practise your English, the faster you'll learn. 4. The longer the telephone call, the more you have to pay. 5. The more goods you sell, the more profit you make.

Ex. 17 (p. 247-248)

I. 1. older/more ancient, the oldest/the most ancient; 2. the strongest; 3. longer, the longest; 4. the smallest; 5. a) the shortest; b) shorter; 6. as serious as; 7. the most important; 8. more simple/a bit simpler; 9. a bit lighter, not so/as gloomy as; 10. smaller.

II. 1. not so warm as; 2. our eldest sister; 3. not so far as; 4. less mistakes; 5. further; 6. not so expensive as; 7. best/closest friend; 8. as old as; 9. the last/latest work; 10. further; 11. shorter; 12. the last; 13. five years younger; 14. the farthest; 15. the shortest way.

III. 1. not so/as young as you, you're half my age; 2. the quicker.... the better; 3. a bit bigger lengthwise than; 4. three times as fast; 5. three times as big as; 6. much worse; 7. higher and higher; 8. twice as strong as; 9. the seldomer... the better; 10. the richer..., the greedier; 11. not so/as punctual as.

IV. 1. twice as simple; 2. several times as large as; 3. half the size, like ... better; 4. three times as heavy; 5. twice as cold as; 6. half his age; 7. a bit bigger lengthwise than widthwise.

V. 1. The less, the better; 2. as early as; 3. no worse/none the worse; 4. not so/as good as; 5. The more a person has, the more...; 6. not so/as young as; 7. as narrow as; 8. good, much better; 9. the sooner, the earlier; 10. weaker and weaker.

VI. 1. lighter; 2. more important; 3. busier; 4. more difficult; 5. the most interesting; 6. the most difficult; 7. the shortest; 8. more difficult; 9. the most beautiful; 10. not worse than; 11. the best; 12. eldest; 13. latest/last; 14. as strong as; 15. as cold as; 16. not as/ so wide as.

THE ADVERB

1. DEFINITION AND FORMS

Ex. 3 (p. 252) 1. performed beautifully; 2. answered formally; 3. acted heroically; 4. described accurately; 5. laughed happily; 6. were warmly greeted.

Ex. 5 (p. 252) 1. better; 2. more frequently; 3. faster; 4. most; 5. more clearly; 6. more; 7. harder; 8. quicker; 9. most fluently.

Ex. 6 (p. 253) 1. the harder, the sooner; 2. louder; 3. later; 4. worse; 5. better; 6. highest, fastest; 7. farther; 8. nearest; 9. quicker, fastest; 10. best; 11. most; 12. closer.

Ex. 7 (p. 253) 1. well; 2. good; 3. angry; 4. angrily; 5. bad; 6. badly; 7. bravely; 8. brave; 9. clear; 10. clearly; 11. coldly; 12. cold; 13. comfortable; 14. comfortably; 15. dangerously; 16. dangerous; 17. different; 18. differently; 19. exact; 20. exactly; 21. happy; 22. happily; 23. heavily; 24. heavy; 25. helplessly; 26. helpless; 27. perfectly; 28. perfect; 29. quietly; 30. quiet; 31. sadly; 32. sad; 33. sadly; 34. satisfactory; 35. satisfactorily; 36. seriously; 37. serious; 38. simple; 39. simply.

Ex. 8 (p. 253) 1. lately, go to bed late/keep late hours, late spring; 2. wrong, the wrong telephone number, a wrong answer, wrongly; 3. hardly know, worked hard, a hard worker; 4. nearly missed, near our house, the Near East.

Ex. 9 (p. 254) 1. most of all; 2. louder; 3. the more... the better; 4. harder, as quickly as; 5. twice as fast; 6. twice as quickly; 7. the more extensive... the higher.

Ex. 10 (p. 254) 1. know well, best; 2. best of all/best; 3. later than; 4. best (of all); 5. better than; 6. better; 7. more carefully than; 8. more often/oftener; 9. best of all; 10. much more; 11. much worse; 12. fastest; 13. more carefully; 14. much more attentively; 15. still/yet faster than; 16. still/yet earlier; 17. still/yet more slowly; 18. best of all; 19. a great deal/much more; 20. far/much later than.

2. CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS

2.1 ADVERBS OF MANNER

Ex. 1 (p. 255)

1. a) high; b) highly; c) highly
2. a) fairly; b) fair; c) fair
3. a) short; b) shortly; c) shortly
4. a) hardly; b) hard; c) hard

5. a) close; b) close; c) closely
6. a) deep; b) deeply; c) deep
7. a) easy; b) easy, easily; c) easily
8. a) warmly; b) warm; c) warm
9. a) right; b) rightly; c) right
10. a) well; b)good; c)well

Ex. 2 (p. 255-256) 1. deeply; 2. deep; 3. highly; 4. high, hardly; 5. hard; 6. closely; 7. closer; 8. nearly; 9. near; 10. lately; 11. late; 12. pretty; 13. prettily; 14. loudly; 15. loud; 16. dearly; 17. dearly; 18. wide; 19. widely; 20. wide.

Ex. 3 (p. 256) 1. wide; 2. deeply; 3. rightly/justly; 4. thoroughly; 5. close; 6. hard; 7. hard, hardly; 8. highly; 9. soon; 10. clearly; more vaguely; 11. high, hard; 12. loudly, for a long time; 13. easier.

Ex. 4 (p. 256) 1. was cold; 2. spoke coldly; 3. sounded cold; 4. were walking silently/in silence; 5. nodded silently; 6. smiled pleasantly; 7. It is a pleasure to be with you/You are pleasant to be with; 8. How well you look; 9. It goes well; 10. It is good they are coming; 11. simply; 12. It is very simple; 13. It is natural, that; 14. naturally; 15. didn't feel well; 16. is badly designed; 17. deadly pale; 18. dead tired; 19. fell dead.

2.2 ADVERBS OF TIME

Ex. 5 (p. 257) 1. yet; 2. yet, still; 3. two more; 4. What else; 5. somebody else; 6. other; 7. already ...; 8. yet; 9. yet, yet/still more interesting; 10. yet, too early; 11. some more; 12. yet early, yet; 13. Who else; 14. What else; 15. already; 16. still/yet colder; 17. yet, still; 18. other tales; 19. already; 20. Where else; 21. one more; 22. still/yet bigger; 23. 'll regret ... yet; 24. still; 25. still, yet.

Ex. 6 (p. 258) 1. for a long time; 2. for a long time; 3. for a long time; 4. long; 5. long; 6. stay long; 7. for a long time; 8. for a long time/long; 9. for a long time; 10. for a long time; 11. long ago; 12. long ago; 13. for a very long time yesterday; 14. long; 15. along time; 16. very long ago; 17. long ago; 18. for a very long time; 19. a very long time ago; 20. for a long time; 21. long before; 22. a long time before; 23. for a very long time; 24. too long; 25. for rather a long time; 26. a very long time ago; 27. won't last long; 28. didn't live ... long; 29. not long ago/recently; 30. doesn't work ... long; 31. haven't been ... long; 32. not long ago; 33. recently/not long ago.

Ex. 7 (p. 258) 1. often/much of him, recently/lately; 2. seldom, recently/lately; 3. many, recently/lately; 4. seldom, recently/lately; 5. not long ago/recently; 6. recently/not long ago; 7. lately/recently; 8. seldom, recently/lately; 9. recently/not long ago; 10. recently/lately; 11. recently/lately; 12. not long ago/recently; 13. lately/recently; 14. lately/recently; 15. not long ago/recently; 16. not long ago/recently; 17. lately/recently; 18. lately/recently; 19. lately/ recently; 20. lately/recently; 21. lately/recently; 22. lately/

recently; 23. quite recently; 24. lately/recently; 25. not long ago/recently; 26. lately/recently; 27. lately/recently.

2.4 ADVERBS OF PLACE AND DIRECTION

Ex. 8 (p. 259) 1. anywhere/nowhere; 2. didn't go anywhere; 3. where, nowhere; 4. Nowhere; 5. anywhere; somewhere, won't go anywhere; 6. a very long way off (away); 7. a long way; far; 8. a long way off (away); 9. far away; 10. far/far away from; 11. a long way; 12. far away; 13. very far; 14. late, a long way; 15. not far away; 16. rather a long way off; 17. seldom, a long way off (away); 18. near; 19. near here.

2.5 ADVERBS OF DEGREE, MEASURE AND QUANTITY

Ex. 9 (p. 262) 2. very much; 3. too; 4. very/too; 5. too/very; 6. very much; 7. very much; 8. very much; 9. very much; 10. very; 11. very much; 12. too; 13. very much; 14. very much; 15. very; 16. too; 17. very much; 18. too; 19. very much; 20. very.

Ex. 10 (p. 262) 2. too; 3. too much; 4. very much; 5. very; 6. very; 7. too much; 8. too much; 9. too; 10. too; 11. very much; 12. very/too.

Ex. 11 (p. 262-263) *Possible answers:* 2. terribly; 3. deeply; 4. extremely; 5. terribly; 6. wide; 7. greatly; 8. extremely; 9. really; 10. rightly; 11. painfully; 12. awfully; 13. terribly; 14. awfully; 15. terribly; 16. extremely; 17. extremely; 18. fast; 19. bitterly; 20. terribly; 21. badly; 22. extremely; 23. really; 24. extremely.

Ex. 12 (p. 263) 1. too many people; 2. very grateful; 3. fast asleep; 4. very much; 5. highly/painfully embarassed; 6. too surprised; 7. very much/really disapproved; 8. extremely angry; 9. Much later; 10. stood closely together; 11. rightly deserved.

Ex. 13 (p. 263) 3. ... and I invited Margaret, too; 4. It's too far; 5. It was too expensive; 6.... and expensive, too.

Ex. 14 (p. 263-264) 2. too; 3. either; 4. too; 5. either; 6. either; 7. either; 8. too.

Ex. 15 (p. 264) *Possible answers: 2.* But I saw nobody else; 3. But I didn't read anything else by him; 4. Now I understand his lecture; 5. But I didn't understand his book; 6. At last I've understood his lecture.

Ex. 17 (p. 264) 1. didn't leave any jewels *either; 2. Even* my mother; 3. some lovely necklaces too; 4. I *only* saw them *once;* 5. *everywhere;* 6. Millie was so very cautious; 7. I'll prepare some stuffing too; 8. there were some gold coins too/... *were also...* .

Ex. 21 (p. 265) 2. much/a lot; 3. much/far/a lot; 4, far; 5. any/much; 6. much/any; 7. much; 8. much/far; 9. much; 10. much/a lot.

Ex. 22 (p. 265-266) 1. *quite* late; 2. *rather* tired; 3. *fairly* middle-aged; 4. had *rather a* good meal; 5. were *quite* unaware; 6. *any more* to eat or drink; 7. wasn't *much/any* use; 8. *rather* a good idea; 9. *quite* dim.

Ex. 23 (p. 266)
I. 1. little; 2. little; 3. a lot; 4. much; 5. little; 6. a lot; 7. hard/a lot.
II. 1. quite old; 2. is not at all ...; 3. quite new; 4. is not quite new; 5. quite ready; 6. is not quite; 7. not ... at all; 8. quite light; 9. is not quite; 10. is not ... at all; 11. quite understand; 12. do not quite...; 13. don't understand ... at all; 14. am not tired at all; 15. not interesting at all.
III. 1. hardly any; 2. hardly any; 3. hardly any; 4. hardly ... anything; 5. hardly ever; 6. hardly anybody knows; 7. hardly any; 8. hardly any; 9. hardly any; 10. hardly any; 11. hardly ... anything; 12. hardly ... anybody; 13. hardly ... anything; 14. hardly ever; 15. hardly ever; 16. hardly ... any ... lately; 17. hardly ... anything; 18. hardly any.

2.6 VIEWPOINT ADVERBS

Ex. 24 (p. 267) 1. d; 2. c; 3. b; 4. e; 5. a; 6. f; 7. h; 8. g; 9. i.

Ex. 25 (p. 267) 1. h; 2. d; 3. a; 4. g; 5. b; 6. i; 7. c; 8. f; 9. e; 10. j.

Ex. 26 (p. 267-268) probably, according to, however, agreeably, moreover, in brief.

3. REVISION

Ex. 4 (p. 269) 1. somewhere; 2. anywhere; 3. didn't send ... anywhere; 4. Nowhere; 5. never; 6. once; 7. yet; 8. already; 9. quite; 10. since; 11. clever enough; 12. well enough; 13. almost; 14. hardly any; 15. hardly; 16. hardly, anywhere; 17. very much; 18. much; 19. so much; 20. very hard; 21. much; 22. anything, either; 23. as well/too; 24. who else; 25. still; 26. yet; 27. very slowly; 28. well; 29. usually; 30. quite; 31. always, early; 32. lately; 33. never, before; 34. too late, there, now; 35. immediately, otherwise/or else; 36. tonight, still; 37. too difficult, besides, very; 38. otherwise/or else; 39. nearly/almost; 40. much more often/oftener; 41. quite; 42. not quite; 43. not at all, yet; 44. seldom, far; 45. early, far; 46. far off, rather a long way off; 47. recently/not long ago; 48. for a long time; 49. don't live here long; 50. long ago; 51. long; 52. didn't talk to him long.

Ex. 5 (p. 270) 1. the longer ... the more; 2. is rightly called; 3. right; 4. safely got, very dark; 5. close to the ...; 6. deep into the night; 7. the earlier ... the sopner; 8. in the middle of; 9. wide open, well; 10. 'll come soon; 11. rather cold; 12. recently; 13. was widely used; 14. nearly.

THE VERBALS

1. THE GERUND

Ex. 2. (p. 275-276)

I. 1. in; 2. of; 3. in; 4. to; 5. to; 6. at; 7. from; 8. of; 9. by; 10. for; 11. on; 12. of; 13. on; 14. for.

II. 1. on; 2. for; 3. in; 4. of; 5. with; 6. in, with; 7. for; 8. to; 9. to; 10. of; 11. on; 12. for; 13. of; 14. from.

Ex. 3. (p. 276)

1	2	3	4	5	6	7
e	C	g	f	d	b	a

Ex. 4. (p. 276-277)

I. 1. crying; 2. playing; 3. keeping; 4. writing; 5. waiting; 6. hitting; 7. listening; 8. stopping, forgetting; 9. telephoning.

II. 1. doing; 2. going; 3. seeing; 4. worrying; 5. writing; 6. going; 7. having; 8. asking, making; 9. writing; 10. laughing; 11. working; 12. buying.

III. 1. earning; 2. doing; 3. managing, helping; 4. getting; 5. meeting; 6. seeing; 7. remaining; 8. doing; 9. replying; 10. driving; 11. getting.

IV. 1. neglecting; 2. hearing; 3. walking; 4. going; 5. walking; 6. going, saying; 7. giving; 8. giving.

Ex. 5. (p. 277) 1. washing; 2. watering; 3. feeding; 4. painting; 5. cleaning; 6. cutting; 7. introducing; 8. mending; 9. sweeping; 10. tidying, watering, dusting.

Ex. 6. (p. 277) 1. crossing, being knocked down; 2. having eaten; 3. climbing, being seen; 4. having worked; 5. being given; 6. having been bitten; 7. being fed; 8. asking, being asked; 9. being chosen; 10. being treated; 11. having drunk.

Ex. 7. (p. 277-278)

I. 1. to be; 2. to find; 3. listening; 4. to look; 5. to cheer; 6. discussing; 7. to employ; 8. to meet; 9. buying; 10. meeting; 11. to waste; 12. to answer; 13. whistling; 14. seeing.

II. 1. being needed; 2. whistling; 3. being laughed; 4. to be bothered; 5. having invited; 6. to be sleeping; 7. not to hear; 8. to be known; 9. being interfered; 10. erasing; 11. to be shown; 12. being called; 13. to be looking; 14. parting; 15. to hurt.

Ex. 8. (p. 278) 1. the boy of lying; 2. there was no telling; 3. had no wish of making; 4. The coat needs brushing; 5. there was no reasoning; 6. was good at turning; 7. before taking; 8. don't feel like cooking; 9. of doing it all.

Ex. 10. (p. 278-279)

I. 1. on having been the first to invent; 2. of having betrayed his friends; 3. having been

introduced to him, seeing him; 4. to driving on the lefthand side of the road; 5. of coming at the wrong moment; 6. for entering the room without knocking; 7. of having behaved like that; 8. having promised to drop in; 9. in finding his place in life; 10. looking at me.
II. 1. having everything my own way; 2. being entertained by ladies; 3. having invented; 4. wearing charity clothes; 5. having been so rude the night before; 6. being taken care of; 7. having persuaded him to come over/to drop in; 8. dealing with real businessmen; 9. asking many questions; 10. getting an independent income.

Ex. 11. (p. 279)
I. 1. couldn't avoid talking to her; 2. I don't deny helping them; 3. can't justify his working for; 4. hate waiting; 5. Is it worth reading? 6. hate wasting; 7. didn't mind coming again; 8. avoided giving his opinion; 9. I hate leaving you here.
II. 1. a good way of avoiding the answer; 2. no intention of deceiving you; 3. no intention of letting; 4. with the purpose of helping you; 5. our chances of getting dinner; 6. no danger in crossing; 7. no harm in telling; 8. habit of going to bed; 9. no opportunity of talking to her; 10. no difficulty in finding.
III. 1. am not used to cooking; 2. succeeded in finding; 3. insisted on paying the bill; 4. apologized for being late; 5. am thinking of going; 6. thanked them for being listened to; 7. count on finishing; 8. insisted on being shown; 9. suspect me of lying; 10. accused of stealing.
IV. 1. without stopping; 2. by objecting; 3. before taking decision; 4. by doing exercises; 5. after consulting his lawyer; 6. without noticing; 7. missed the opportunity of going there; 8. without thinking everything over.

Ex. 12. (p. 280) 1. don't blame ... for wishing to leave; 2. suspected him of teasing; 3. had no difficulty in working together; 4. insisted on teaching her to work; 5. to prevent him from returning; 6. apologized for not coming on time; 7. succeeded in making Ann talk; 8. accused me of treating; 9. insisted on paying; 10. talked Bella into staying for dinner; 11. began with feeling the pulse; 12. insisted on inviting; 13. felt about being a father; 14. account for having bought; 15. reproached himself for not having tried to talk to her.

Ex. 13. (p. 280) 1. was proud of having worked; 2. was not capable of acting/having acted (then); 3. was used to listening; 4. am sorry for having given you so much trouble; 5. am interested in finding; 6. are capable of solving the problem; 7. am tired of trying to do; 8. am sorry for keeping you waiting; 9. was disappointed at not meeting; 10. am so pleased with having been chosen; 11. is responsible for keeping; 12. was fond of laughing at.

Ex. 14. (p. 280) 1. are lucky to live; 2. were ready to burst into tears; 3. was busy cooking; 4. am sorry to have to leave; 5. was worth recording; 6. was quick to understand; 7. was worth writing about; 8. was delighted to find; 9. was not sufficiently interested to continue; 10. was still hard to get; 11. was busy looking for; 12. was surprised to be called/to have/get a call; 13. was proud of knowing; 14. was free to come and go;

15. was distressed to find; 16. was easy to understand; 17. was determined to stay; 18. was not easy to accept.

1.3 VERBS USED WITH THE GERUND AND THE INFINITIVE

Ex. 15. (p. 283) 1. Have you tried changing; 2. Have you tried phoning; 3. Have you tried taking; 4. Have you tried moving.

Ex. 16. (p. 284) 1. like wearing hats; 2. enjoys watching; 3. don't like going; 4. likes taking; 5. hate working.

Ex. 17. (p. 284) 1. travelling; 2. cooking, washing up; 3. telling; 4. living; 5. driving; 6. to get; 7. listening; 8. to come; 9. to learn.

Ex. 18. (p. 284) 1. am afraid of losing; 2. are afraid to go swimming; 3. were afraid to miss; 4. was afraid to hurt; 5. were afraid to look; 6. was afraid to spill; 7. a) was afraid to eat; b) am afraid of making myself ill.

Ex. 19. (p. 284-285)
I. 1. seeing; 2. to lock; 3. paying; 4. to buy; 5. posting; 6. to air; 7. going, playing; 8. to give.
II. 1. to bring; 2. borrowing; 3. to say; 4. promising.
III. 1. talking; 2. to ask; 3. to buy, to ask.

1.4 THE GERUNDIAL CONSTRUCTION

Ex. 24. (p. 286-287)
E.g. 1. Have you forgotten my telling you that my watch was five minutes slow? 2. He doesn't mind his son driving his car.

Ex. 25. (p. 287) 1. heard of his having been appointed; 2. don't object to their coming; 3. remember his telling me; 4. insist on your answering; 5. heard of his being sent; 6. count on his giving; 7. no hope of his finishing; 8. excuse my calling; 9. mind my reading; 10. mind my smoking; 11. insisted on their starting; 12. minds the meeting being held; 13. mind his calling on; 14. insists on his spending; 15. is responsible for the work being completed.

1.5 THE GERUND AND THE VERBAL NOUN

Ex. 26. (p. 288) 1. gerund; 2. gerund; 3. verbal noun; 4. gerund; 5. verbal noun; 6. gerund; 7. gerund; 8. verbal noun; 9. verbal noun; 10. gerund; 11. gerund; 12. gerund; 13. gerund; 14. gerund, verbal noun.

Ex. 28. (p. 289) 1. at; 2. of; 3. about/over; 4. to; 5. at/in; 6. of; 7. of; 8. about; 9. of; 10. in; 11. about; 12. of. 13. at; 14. at; 15. about; 16. of.

Ex. 29. (p. 289)
I. 1. speaking of; 2. being introduced, talking; 3. seeing, being seen; 4. sending, being sent; 5. being examined; 6. knowing, being impressed; 7. being interrupted; 8. discussing; 9. being installed; 10. reminding, being reminded; 11. pushing, pressing; 12. filtering.
II. 1. giving; 2. having spoken; 3. having been awarded; 4. seeing; 5. being asked/asking; 6. having broken; 7. being punished; 8. saying; 9. having been/being; 10. having forgotten; 11. being made fun of; 12. expressing; 13. being examined; 14. being attracted; 15. adjusting; 16. having misled them; 17. being given, having been offered.

Ex. 30. (p. 289-290)
I. 1. to look, to listen; 2. trying; 3. to discern; 4. considering; 5. to express; 6. buying; 7. to forget; 8. to have taken; 9. working; 10. to watch.
II. 1. to realize; 2. to know; 3. to analyze; 4. deciding; 5. to carry; 6. hearing; 7. to feel; 8. to ask.

Ex. 31. (p. 290)
I. 1. don't feel like arguing/don't want to argue; 2. continued smoking without saying; 3. didn't see any sense in continuing; 4. no use discussing; 5. against going; 6. needs finishing; 7. no hope of going; 8. by talking; 9. there is no turning back; 10. thanked him for coming; 11. doesn't miss ... to speak; 12. learn to speak, by speaking, only reading; 13. for inviting.
II. 1. am against/object to your completing; 2. Do you mind my opening; 3. has given up smoking; 4. remember meeting; 5. try jogging; 6. like reading, Reading; 7. stop talking; 8. stopped to admire; 9. suggested going; 10. what about going; 11. avoid reading; 12. it's no use giving advice; 13. needs washing; 14. excuse my being late; 15. no intention of going; 16. was afraid to fall down; 17. remember to call; 18. instead of going by bus; 19. are fond of being taken; 20. is busy getting ready for.

Ex. 32. (p. 290-291) 1. began crying/to cry; 2. wanted to find out; 3. felt like reading; 4. doesn't need defending; 5. liked being in the company; 6. kept glancing at; 7. was beginning to understand; 8. ceased to be useful; 9. could not resist showing; 10. could not help seeing; 11. kept ringing; 12. proposed to find; 13. mentioned having visited; 14. forgot to invite; 15. will never forget staying; 16. am trying to read; 17. didn't want to leave, offered to take; 18. put off writing; 19. couldn't endure being treated; 20. never minded being alone; 21. set about writing; 22. had taken the trouble to write; 23. remember delivering; 24. remember to send; 25. decided not to bother; 26. will enjoy being/living here; 27. tried growing; 28. was trying to save; 29. are not going to ask; 30. was tired of pretending to be reading or writing; 31. didn't feel like joking; 32. refuse to accept; 33. was anxious to avoid meeting; 34. went on waiting; 35. couldn't afford to be late; 36. suggested buying; 37. remembered to open; 38. remember mentioning;

39. regretted having talked; 40. dreaded being left; 41. agreed to take part; 42. promised to send; 43. prepared to tell; 44. arranged to undertake; 45. kept calling; 46. care to take a look; 47. did not take the trouble to reply; 48. started moving; 49. preferred to mind their own business.

2. THE INFINITIVE

Ex. 4. (p. 298) 1. the last to leave; 2. to hear; 3. for him to sit; 4. to wear; 5. to have swum; 6. to realize.

Ex. 5. (p. 298) 1. to feed the bird; 2. to go out; 3. to save the child; 4. to tell us that...; 5. to frighten the birds; 6. to watch the TV programme; 7. to buy a car; 8. to protect them against ... .

Ex. 6. (p. 298) 1. wasn't strong enough to support ...; 2. isn't hot enough to lie ...; 3. isn't strong enough to keep us ...; 4. am old enough to be ...; 5. aren't old enough to understand ...; 6. was curious enough to open ...; 7. are thin enough to wear ... .

Ex. 7. (p. 298) 1. It is too hot to run; 2. I am too old to wear ...; 3. He was too nervous to speak; 4. I was too terrified to move; 5. It is too cold to have a swim ...; 6. He was too snobbish to talk to ...; 7. It was too dark to go out into the garden; 8. It was too cloudy to see...

Ex. 8. (p. 298-299) 1. so as/in order not to disturb anyone; 2. so as/in order to discuss his progress ...; 3. so as/in order to read ...; 4. so as/in order to have ...; 5. so as/in order not to strain ...; 6. so as/in order to get to the top ...; 7. so as/in order not to get ... .

Ex. 9. (p. 299) 1. to see; 2. to be; 3. to be helped; 4. to have done; 5. to have broken; 6. to bother, to be given; 7. to appear, to be talked about; 8. to tell, to know; 9. to earn; 10. to be reading, not to hear; 11. to be told; 12. to be heard.

Ex. 10. (p. 299-300)
I. 1. do; 2. repeat; 3. to go; 4. leave; 5. play; 6. know; 7. wait; 8. go; 9. to go, go; 10. believe; 11. go, promise; 12. to ask; 13. to carry, help; 14. to use; 15. to go; 16. to give; 17. to make; 18. pick.
II. 1. to bother, to be given; 2. to be bothered, to decide; 3. to show, to be liked and (to be) praised; 4. to be expressed; 5. to tell, to know, (to) be told; 6. to earn, to be read, to be forgotten; 7. to have travelled and (to have) seen; 8. to be reading, to notice; 9. to have been raining; 10. to have booked; 11. to speak; 12. to be heard; 13. to be tested; 14. to be reprimanded; 15. to dance, to sit/to be sitting, watch/watching; 16. to have been, to wait; 17. to come, to be asked; 18. to carry, to let; 19. to have missed.

Ex. 11. (p. 300) 1. to break; 2. to be examined; 3. to be observed; 4. to be informed; 5. to ask; 6. to arrive; 7. to have noticed; 8. to be offered; 9. to have survived. 10. to have won; 11. to visit; 12. to have ever been held.

Ex. 12. (p. 300)

I. 1. to; 2.—; 3. to; 4. to; 5. to; 6.—; 7.—; 8.—; 9. to; 10. to; 11.—; 12. to, -; 13. to; 14.-; 15. to; 16. to; 17. to; 18.-; 19.-, to; 20. to; 21. to; 22.-; 23. -; 24. to; 25. -.

II. 1.—; 2.—, —; 3.—, to; 4.—, —; 5.—, to; 6.—; 7. to; 8.—; 9.—; 10. to; 11.—, to; 12. To; 13.—; 14. to.

Ex. 14. (p.301) 1. to put it mildly...; 2. to tell the truth ... ; 3. to begin with... ; 4. to make a long story short ... ; 5. to say nothing of ... ; 6. to say the least ... ; 7. to begin with ... ; 8. to tell the truth ...; 9. to put it mildly ... ; 10. to make a long story short/to cut it short ... ; 11. to say nothing of the dog; 12. to say the least ... .

Ex. 15. (p.301)

A. 1. To know grammar means to write ... ; 2. To think so ... ; 3. To say "yes"... , to say "no"; ... ; 4. To explain to him ... ; 5. To help her means to do ... ; 6. To get angry ....

B. 1. It is difficult to translate ... ; 2. It was nice to talk to ... ; 3. It is important not be noticed; 4. It will be difficult to explain ... ; 5. It is nice to be ... ; 6. It is so strange to be spoken to ...; 7. It was difficult to pretend ...; 8. It is nice to sit/to be sitting here, isn't it?; 9. It is easy to be mistaken ..., it is much more difficult to understand ...; 10. It is not at all necessary to learn ....

Ex. 17. (p. 301) 1. is to finish; 2. will be to look after; 3. was to get home; 4. is to collect; 5. is to take; 6. is to tell.

Ex. 18. (p. 302) 1. not a man to betray; 2. nothing to say; 3. no time to think; 4. the last to leave; 5. the first to say; 6. some time to think; 7. a sweater to wear; 8. no time to play; 9. nobody to look after her; 10. the third person to tell me so.

Ex. 19. (p. 302) 1. to catch; 2. to show; 3. To be noticed ... ; 4. To be taken along ...; 5. to understand; 6. in order to be understood; 7. so as not to be punished.

Ex. 21. (p. 302-303)

I. 1. not well enough to leave; 2. well enough not to need; 3. too young to read; 4. too far to hear; 5. too young to be taken seriously; 6. too complicated to be answered; 7. too lazy to have read; 8. too complicated to have been solved; 9. too big to play.

II. 1. hard to speak with; 2. nice to deal with; 3. hard to believe; 4. hard to catch; 5. easy to talk to; 6. hard to get; 7. dangerous to quarrel with; 8. impossible to check; 9. easy to believe; 10. difficult to stop; 11. nice to look at.

Ex. 22. (p. 303)

I. 1. This is hard to believe; 2. well enough not to make; 3. too complicated to solve/to be solved; 4. to show you; 5. It's too hot to go; 6. school to be built; 7. no time to read; 8. to have passed; 9. The rule is easy to understand; 10. It is necessary to go; 11. was hard to catch.

II. 1. to be given an opportunity to prove it; 2. to be allowed to visit; 3. to be listened to; 4. not to give anything to; 5. to be allowed to listen to; 6. to be told; 7. to be allowed to stay with; 8. to be given a copy; 9. to be allowed to read.

2.3.1 REVISION

Ex. 23. (p. 303) E.g. 1. It gives me pleasure to *listen to her sing (to music).*

Ex. 24. (p. 303) 1. To know the map well; 2. To have gone out on that rainy day; 3. To be humming a tune; 4. To forget the past; 5. To say such a thing to a child.

Ex. 25. (p. 304)
I. E.g. 1. Our plan was to *leave late at night.*
E.g. 9. The children were anxious to go to *the puppet theatre.*
II. 1. to speak to/about; 2. to do; 3. to follow; 4. to be erected; 5. to be desired; 6. to remember; 7. to be answered; 8. not to be contradicted; 9. to read; 10. to laugh at.

Ex. 26. (p. 304) 1. to be introduced/to have been introduced; 2. to be handled, have asked, to help, have happened; 3. to have changed, speak; 4. to have disappointed; 5. to have been awarded; 6. to take; 7. be ... memorized; 8. to memorize; 9. to be asked; 10. to do, to try; 11. to give; 12. to have been experimenting, to have achieved; 13. be reading.

Ex. 27. (p. 304-305)
I. 1. to have given; 2. to have been given; 3. to inform; 4. to be informed; 5. to have met; 6. to have been met; 7. to have been invited; 8. to have invited; 9. to interrupt; 10. to be interrupted; 11. to have troubled; 12. to see.
II. 1. to have seen; 2. to be looking for, to express; 3. to have been; 4. to be laughed at/ to be made fun of; 5. to be told; 6. not to notice; 7. to have told; 8. to have been told; 9. to introduce; 10. to be introduced; 11. to visit; 12. to have visited; 13. to have given.

Ex. 28. (p. 305)
I. 1. to drink; 2. To tell him the truth meant to deprive/rob; 3. Not to warn; 4. to persuade; 5. To be, not to see; 6. To nod; 7. to go.
II. 1. to finish; 2. to do, to find out; 3. To use, to save; 4. was to get home; 5. to do, is to consult.
III. 1. not to mention/never to mention; 2. to thank; 3. to speak; 4. to remember to send; 5. to have met; 6. to have been given; 7. to be reminded; 8. to get into; 9. not to notice.
IV. 1. to laugh at; 2. to worry about; 3. leaves much to be desired; 4. to read; 5. to be built; 6. to be held; 7. to say; 8. to deal with; 9. to come; 10. to look after; 11. to talk to.
V. 1. not to be miss; 2. to remind him; 3. to meet his mother; 4. to take part; 5. to save (to rescue) him; 6. to take us.

Ex. 29. (p. 306) 1. easy to deal with; 2. to make sure; 3. to work much, not to think of; 4. too excited to be quiet; 5. not easy to please; 6. to discover; 7. to do, to book; 8. to

conceal from; 9. enough time to call on; 10. to argue, nothing can be changed; 11. to have got hold of him; 12. to be proud of; 13. the last to leave; 14. to draw attention to; 15. to turn to for help; 16. The only thing to do is to ring him up.

2.4 THE INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

2.4.1 THE COMPLEX OBJECT

Ex.2. (p. 308)1.—; 2. to; 3.—; 4. to; 5. to; 6. to; 7. to; 8.—, to; 9.—; 10. to; 11.—; 12.-.

Ex. 5. (p. 309) E.g. 1. why don't you *want* her to wear high heels?/*ask* (if you like \t)/*force* (if it is right for her)

Ex. 8. (p. 310)
I. 1. doesn't let me play; 2. Don't make me lie; 3. Have smb bring; 4. Don't let them shout; 5. Make him take; 6. Let them write; 7. can't make him give up smoking; 8. to let her pass; 9. Don't make me laugh; 10. Let me help you; 11. Let me think; 12. Have the children put on; 13. Let me know; 14. had him explain; 15. Don't let him eat.
II. 1. Let me know; 2. haven't made you wait; 3. Let him smoke; 4. What made him make; 5. Let him free; 6. made him keep his promise; 7. Don't let her carry/allow her to carry; 8. had made him lie; 9. Will you allow me to come over/let me come over; 10. made him stop; 11. made us do; 12. Don't let children play; 13. would make him change; 14. Don't let her read.

Ex. 9. (p. 310-311)
I. 1. We heard them argue/arguing; 2. She saw the boy climb/climbing up; 3. Nobody noticed me open; 4. I saw a man showing her; 5. I have never heard him tell a lie; 6. we felt the temperature fall(ing) down; 7. I felt smb touch; 8. We watched the road being repaired; 9. I heard smb call; 10. He noticed her turn pale.
II. 1. he didn't feel like going; 2. the Professor had been ill; 3. smb mention; 4. he didn't believe; 5. he gave up; 6. everybody looking up; 7. he hadn't noticed; 8. he didn't understand.
III. 1. consider it to be; 2. want you to get to know; 3. didn't expect him to make; 4. would like him to join us/to go with us; 5. didn't expect her son to study/that her son would study; 6. asked the porter to carry; 7. wants the secretary to make an appointment; 8. didn't expect him to arrive; 9. would like you to inform; 10. consider him (to be) an expert; 11. didn't expect the discussion to be.

Ex. 10. (p. 311)
I. 1. want us to send; 2. would like you to wait for; 3. wants his daughter to become; 4. wants to be invited; 5. Do you want me to call; 6. want his article to be published; 7. don't want to be interrupted; 8. doesn't want me to take; 9. wants to be sent; 10. want you to explain; 11. Where would you like me to wait for you; 12. Would you like us to invite; 13. would like you to find out; 14. want you to go; 15. Does he want us to be here;

16. don't want to be sent; 17. wants the meeting to be postponed; 18. want you to write; 19. want to be shown; 20. likes the dinner to be served; 21. doesn't like the children to go for a walk; 22. doesn't like to be asked; 23. likes the children to come over; 24. likes to be complimented.

II. 1. know him to be; 2. expect the contract to be signed; 3. expect to be invited; 4. consider myself to be right; 5. consider him to be right; 6. didn't expect to be invited; 7. knew that he was; 8. think/consider him (to be) honest; 9, expect the goods to arrive; 10. consider him (to be); 11. expected it to happen.

REVISION

Ex. 11. (p. 311-312) 1. have never heard him sing; 2. didn't hear me open; 3. heard that he had passed; 4. heard that he had already left for; 5. heard her say; 6. have never seen him dance, heard that he dances; 7. saw that she didn't understand; 8. saw him come into; 9. saw that he was excited; 10. saw that the text was; 11. saw a taxi stop at; 12. saw her leave; 13. felt smb touch; 14. saw that there was nothing; 15. saw that the glass was broken; 16. Did you hear him ask; 17. would like to see her dance; 18. heard him say it; 19. heard the Professor mention.

Ex. **12.** (p. 312) 1. would like you to explain; 2. What would you like me to do for you? 3. Have you ever heard him speak? 4. heard that he had moved; 5. didn't see me take; 6. expected them to leave; 7. know that he is; 8. saw that the letter hadn't been signed; 9. Does he want us to help; 10. Did you hear him speak; 11. saw her come up ... and open; 12. consider him (to be) the best; 13. doesn't want his daughter to go; 14. didn't want him to be invited; 15. will hear her sing; 16. felt her voice tremble; 17. didn't expect to be sent; 18. don't like to be reminded; 19. asked to take him; 20. heard his name mentioned.

2.4.2 THE COMPLEX SUBJECT

Ex.2. (p. 314-315)

I. 1. to have been reading; 2. to have been working; 3. to know, to have spent; 4. to have overthrown and to be advancing; 5. to be looking for; 6. to be quarrelling; 7. to have been working; 8. to have been lost, to find; 9. to have been waiting.

II. 1. to recognize; 2. to have left; 3. to be working; 4. to miss; 5, to get; 6. to have forgotten; 7. to have written; 8. to forget; 9. to be taught; 10. to have been given; 11. to be operated; 12. to have been working.

III. 1. to be satisfied; 2. to put; 3. to be published and appear, to sell, to be sold; 4. to know, to have learnt; 5. to have overflown, to be advancing; 6. to be looking; 7. to have revised ... and (to have) worked out; 8. to be studying; 9, to have been lost, to find; 10. to have been overestimated, to have warned, to deform; 11. to have been flying, to be seen; 12. to be acquainted.

Ex. 5. (p. 316) 1. to have been; 2. to send; 3. to have moved; 4. to sign; 5. to have prescribed; 6. to have been; 7. to help; 8. to have come; 9. to have offered; 10. to be; 11. to spend; 12. to go; 13. to have made; 14. to cover; 15. to have been interested; 16. to agree; 17. to arrive; 18. to have followed; 19. to have known.

Ex. 6. (p. 316) 1. was seen to be writing; 2. was thought to write; 3. was supposed to have written; 4. is sure to be writing; 5. is sure to have written; 6. is unlikely to write; 7. is unlikely to have written; 8. is certain to have been written; 9. is sure to have written; 10. turned out to have written; 11. happened to have written.

Ex. 7. (p. 316-317)
I. 1. seems to be angry; 2. seems to be ill; 3. seems to have been ill; 4. seem to have used; 5. appears to know; 6. seem to have understood; 7. seem to have read; 8. seems to know; 9. seems to have been published; 10. seems to be satisfied; 11. appears to have left for.
II. 1. is said to be; 2. is expected to be signed; 3. is reported to have left; 4. is known to be of different opinion; 5. is considered to be; 6. is said to have been built; 7. seems to know; 8. appears to have read; 9. seems to be.
III. 1. appears to have been translated; 2. seems to be; 3. appears to be of great interest for them; 4. seemed to be satisfied with; 5. seemed to be surprised; 6. seems to be working; 7. seems to be waiting for; 8. proved to be; 9. turned out to be; 10. turned out to be; 11. happened to meet; 12. happened to hear him ask.

Ex. 10. (p. 317-318)
I. 1. is very likely to have left; 2. is likely to have arrived in; 3. is sure to come; 4. are certain to agree; 5. are certain to accept; 6. are sure to receive; 7. is sure to get; 8. is certain to be published; 9. are not likely to come; 10. are not likely to have received; 11. is not likely to go; 12. is not likely to be discussed.
II. 1. are likely to change; 2. is very likely to be discussed; 3. is unlikely to come; 4. is very likely to be over; 5. is likely to be; 6. are likely to be taken; 7. are unlikely to return; 8. is very likely to know; 9. are likely to be delivered; 10. is very likely to shine/to be fine; 11. are unlikely to finish; 12. is likely to be a success.

REVISION

Ex. 11. (p. 318) 1. is known to have been; 2. is said to have collected; 3. was reported to have been sent; 4. is supposed to be built; 5. is believed to have reached/arrived at; 6. was not expected to begin; 7. is reported to have been; 8. is known to absorb; 9. is unlikely to be forced to commit a crime; 10. is believed to help.

Ex. 12. (p. 318-319)
I. 1. seems to be knocking; 2. is known to be; 3. is sure/certain to enjoy; 4. proved to be right; 5. is unlikely to be discussed; 6. are sure/certain to help; 7. is considered (to be); 8. is sure to be; 9. turned out to be; 10. doesn't seem to have understood; 11. doesn't seem to like; 12. seems to know nothing/doesn't seem to know anything; 13. didn't

appear to have been packed; 14. didn't seem to be surprised; 15. doesn't seem to understand; 16. nobody seemed to pay attention to.

II. 1. is known to have been; 2. is expected to arrive; 3. are likely to return; 4. is unlikely/ is not likely to take part in; 5. seems to be; 6. appears to have forgotten; 7. is said to have written; 8. appears to have forgotten; 9. is likely to be concluded; 10. happened to be; 11. is reported to have returned; 12. proved to be; 13. appears to be tired; 14. are said to have been completed; 15. happen to know; 16. happened to be.

2.4.3 THE FOR-TO-INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION

Ex. 3. (p. 321) 1. It is good for you to eat/Fruit is good for you; 2. It is easier for me to do; 3. It will be simpler for them to go; 4. It would be difficult for her to solve; 5. It was pleasant for us to meet; 6. It will be useful for us to have a rest; 7. It is bad for you to smoke; 8. It was difficult for her to keep silence; 9. It is not for me to give; 10. It is not for them to discuss.

Ex. 4. (p. 321) E.g. 1. She is out playing. The doctor doesn't think it necessary *for her to stay in bed.*

Ex. 5. (p. 321) 1. it is easy for me to give up; 2. for you to finish; 3. for us to understand; 4. for us to eat; 5. for us to come in; 6. for you to read; 7. for everybody to see; 8. no room there for the children to sleep; 9. for me to do; 10. no/not the game for children to play.

Ex. 6. (p. 321) E.g. It's getting cold. It's bad for the children to have a swim.

Ex. 8. (p. 321) 1. too fast for me to see; 2. slowly enough for us to understand; 3. too upset for mother not to notice; 4. well enough for us to understand; 5. too dark for us to find.

REVISION

Ex. 10. (p. 322) 1. for Mr P. to sign; 2. it is necessary for you to be here; 3. it is difficult for us to do; 4. nothing for children to do; 5. it is difficult for her to translate; 6. nice of you to come; 7. too late for the children to go; 8. not polite of him to be late; 9. it is necessary for the documents to be sent; 10. it is easy for him to do; 11. it is highly important for him to receive; 12. it is uncomfortable for me to stay; 13. it is very easy for him to do; 14. it is necessary for your sister to see; 15. simple enough for everybody to do; 16. too difficult for him to translate; 17. it is difficult for us to get; 18. it will be easier for him to show; 19. warm enough for him to go; 20. too little time for me to tell.

2.5 REVISION

Ex. 3. (p. 323) 1. smth to tell you; 2. good news to tell you; 3. the first to break; 4. a lot to talk about; 5. the last to leave; 6. to read on the train; 7. no time to read; 8. not the man to forget;9. a child to care about; 10. the article for you to read.

Ex. 4. (p. 324) 1. think him (to be); 2. want you to understand; 3. watch the children play(ing); 4. heard them return/heard that they had returned (fig.); 5. believe him to be; 6. didn't want me to do; 7. noticed him leave; 8. let me help you; 9. let me call; 10. didn't expect them to return; 11. felt smb look(ing); 12. made you say; 13. saw him come up... say; 14. made her little son do; 15. heard him explain; 16. want their children to be; 17. told him to come; 18. advised us to read; 19. recommended me to see; 20. didn't expect him to be late for.

Ex. 5. (p. 324) 1. knew that ..., didn't want Mrs K. to marry. 2. made his wife obey; 3. felt his mother's hand tremble; 4. Mr M. and his sister thought David to be; 5. ordered David to be locked; 6. hearing smb call film; 7. heard that Mr M. was going; 8. Mr M. didn't want David to live, made Mrs R. send him to school; 9. saw that Mrs K. was unhappy; 10. Mr M. wanted P. to be dismissed, Mrs K. couldn't let ... leave; 11. saw a beggar boy come into; 12. felt that David was telling the truth.

Ex.6. (p. 324) 1. for little E. to know; 2. the best thing for them to do is to leave; 3. for Dora to use; 4. the first thing to do was to cook; 5. it was necessary for D. to go, would be beneficial for her to be; 6. asked T. to help, was too difficult for him to cope with alone; 7. asked the papers and account books to be brought; 8. had nothing to do but confess.

Ex. 7. (p. 324-325) 1. happened to meet, where he used to work; 2. was said to be; 3. seemed to love, was too lightminded to think, were sold to pay; 4. heard his mother cry; 5. happened to be bought; 6. saw the master beat, made the child suffer; 7. couldn't help crying; 8. ordered G's sister to be taken to, (to be) sold; 9. there was nobody to care for him, to say; 10. was sent to work, turned out to be; 11. was known to bring; 12. considered himself (to be); 13. was not the man to let; 14. was made to leave ... return; 15. To humiliate G., ordered G. to leave E. and (to) marry.

Ex. 8. (p. 325) 1. is considered to be; 2. is reported to have reached; 3. is unlikely to be appointed; 4. seems to know; 5. happen to know; 6. turned out to be; 7. seemed to be approaching; 8. happened to be passing by; 9. seems to be writing; seems to have been working at; 10. is certain to be published; 11. happened to meet; 12. are sure to like.

3. THE PARTICIPLE

Ex. 2. (p. 332)

I. buying, buying, bought, bought/being bought; receiving, receiving, received, received/being received; translating, translating, translated, translated/being translated.

1. written; 2. brought; 3. giving; 4. speaking; 5. asked; 6. answering; 7. read/being read; 8. told; 9. published; 10. working; 11. reading; 12. opening; 13. taking; 14. lost; 15. made; 16. standing; 17. walking; 18. entering; 19. looking; 20. built; 21. seeing.

II. 1. broken cup; 2. lost game; 3. torn envelope; 4. the team which had lost (the game); 5. the losing team/the team losing (the game); 6. boiled water; 7. boiling water;

8. forgotten method; 9. the man, who had forgotten; 10. barking dog; 11. method tested; 12. fried fish; 13. fish being fried; 14. the cat which had jumped on the table; 15. jumping dog; 16. the stolen theme; 17. laughing voice; 18. laughing girl; 19. chosen theme/ theme chosen; 20. baked potatoes; 21. lost chance; 22. solution found; 23. the sportsman who had won (the game); 24. written letter.

Ex. 3. (p. 332) 1. excited, burning; 2. interesting, interested; 3. worried, worrying; 4. burnt; 5. sinking; 6. exciting, excited; 7. frightening, frightened; 8. worried.

Ex. 4. (p. 332-333) E.g. 1. Having learnt that his newspaper had been taken over by another publisher, he resigned ... 2. Declining his offer of a loan, I said ...

Ex. 5. (p. 333)
E.g. I. 1. *Realizing* that he had missed the last train, he began ... 2. *Having heard* the story before, she didn't want ...
II. 1. *Having been away* at the time of disastrous floods, I could ... 2. Having been disappointed with the world, he became a monk.

Ex. 6. (p. 334) E.g. 1. The man *speaking* now is our new secretary. 2. The apparatus *standing* on the table ...

Ex. 7. (p. 334) E.g. 1. Be careful when *crossing a* street. 2. *Leaving* the room don't forget ...

Ex. 8. (p. 334) E.g. 1. *Entering the room,* I at once felt ... 2. *Having reached* the river, we decided ... 3. *Reaching out* in the darkness, I felt ...

Ex. 9. (p. 334-335) E.g. 1. *Having walked* most of the night, she felt ... 2. (when) *taking* child to the circus, I always ...

Ex. 10. (p. 335) E.g. 1. Did anyone see you *leaving the house?* 2. I hope your friend didn't hear you *whispering your secrets* to me.

Ex. 11. (p. 335) 1. built; 2. built; 3. being built; 4. building; 5. used; 6. used; 7. (being) sent; 8. sent.

Ex. 12. (p. 335-336)
I. 1. leaving; 2. when laid; 3. (while) waiting; 4. saying; 5. being written; 6. (when) writing; 7. having spent; 8. (while) away from home; 9. not wishing.
II. 1. being rejected; 2. having been rejected; 3. (while) waiting; 4. having left; 5. leaving/ having left; 6. leaving; 7. being written; 8. writing; 9. having been away.

Ex. 13. (p. 336) 1. a) told; b) being told; 2. a) made; b) being made; 3. a) being moved, b) moved; 4. a) erected, b) being erected.

Ex. 14. (p. 336-337) Л,

I. 1. standing; 2. standing; 3. standing; 4. who had been standing; 5. summing up; 6. waiting for you; 7. who have been waiting for you.

II. 1. having told all he knew; 2.'knocking twice and receiving no answer; 3. pushing the door; 4. closing the door quietly; 5. telling about this incident; 6. arriving at the hotel; 7. having come; 8. coming back; 9. having worked the whole day; 10. dropping the coin on the floor.

III. 1. being held; 2. held; 3. being held; 4. being turned; 5. when put; 6. having been kept without water for a long time.

Ex. 15. (p. 337)

I. 1. being proud of his father; 2. speaking at the meeting; 3. talking over the phone; 4. who had rescued; 5. touched upon in the report; 6. who had lost his parents; 7. not finding the book I needed; 8. having failed to complete the work on time; 9. having spent. 10. travelling about the country; 11. understanding; 12. knowing; 13. coming over to my friend; 14. seeing.

Ex. 16. (p. 337) 1. which had been often told; 2. told; 3. being told; 4. telling; 5. the promised help; 6. who promised; 7. who had been talking over the phone; 8. talking with my brother; 9. taking part in the conference; 10. who had taken part; 11. leading to the city; 12. which had led to the lake.

Ex. 17. (p. 337-338)

I. 1. signed; 2. sent; 3. broken; 4. restored; 5. broken; 6. the goods received; 7. illustrated; 8. the address given; 9. unexpected; 10. Having read; 11. Entering; 12. Having worked at; 13. saying; 14. Taking off; 15. looking; 16. Having slept; 17. Seeing; 18. said ... smiling; 19. leaning on; 20. seeing me he said smiling.

II. 1. which hung, hanging in the hall; 2. who had worked, working; 3. who translated, translating; 4. who has read, reading; 5. lying on the table; 6. who has written this article; 7. who had received; 8. sitting.

Ex. **18.** (p. 338) 1. leaving a message ...we went; 2. opening the book ... he showed; 3. she left smiling; 4. sighing heavily she poured; 5. opened her umbrella stepping; 6. leaving our suitcases ... we went; 7. checking his map he said; 8. not finding him at home we left; 9. not being sure ... I didn't say anything; 10. typing smth ... she asked me.

REVISION

Ex. 19. (p. 338-339) 1. locked, refusing; 2. having worked; 3. seeing, being seen; 4. sitting; 5. sitting; 6. shaken; 7. shaking; 8. Arriving; 9. Having arrived; 10. Supported; 11. Supporting her; 12. reflecting; 13. reflected; 14. coming; 15. who has just come; 16. leaving; 17. having turned; 18. Having finished; 19. Having looked; 20. not lived/it had not been lived; 21. engaged/he is engaged; 22. travelling.

Ex. 20. (p. 339) 1. sent to us; 2. written by the students; 3. taking part; 4. having a lot c time; 5. crossing the bridge; 6. playing chess; 7. being tired; 8. talking about; 9. th sleeping child; 10. talking about smth; 11. describing the life; 12. reading the story 13. being a good engineer; 14. looking through his mail; 15. waiting for a tram 16. connecting; 17. published; 18. you made in the previous dictation; 19. sitting at th open window; 20. turning off the light; 21. having read; 22. entering the room 23. hearing the steps.

Ex. 21. (p. 339) 1. to be criticized; 2. killed; 3. moved/to be moved; 4. to be taken; 5. b heard; 6. delivered/to be delivered; 7. open; 8. typed/to be typed; 9. copied; 10. crying 11. done; 12. wandering; 13. broken, gone; 14. to be locked and sealed; 15. elected.

3.5 HAVE SOMETHING DONE

Ex. 22. (p. 340) 1. had it cut; 2. had it painted; 3. had it cut; 4. had it repaired; 5. have i cleaned.

Ex. 23. (p. 340) 1. is having her hair cut; 2. has had her watch repaired; 3. I am having summer house built; 4. I am having them developed now/I haven't had them developed yet.

Ex. 24. (p. 340) 1. to have your suit cleaned and pressed; 2. to have my photograpl taken; 3. have my raincoat cleaned; 4. will not have your tap repaired; 5. have you clothes made; 6. have your dress made; 7. had all his documents stolen; 8. has had he kitchen painted; 9. has had a new coat made; 10. to have my hair done.

3.6 THE ABSOLUTE PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION

Ex. 26. (p. 341) 1. The rain having ruined my hat; 2. This being done; 3. Few peopl buying his pencils; 4. There being a severe storm; 5. It being Sunday; 6. The weathe being fine; 7. The Professor being ill.

3.7 REVISION

Ex. 1. (p. 341) 1. to; 2.—; 3. to; 4. to; 5.—; 6.—; 7.—; 8. to; 9.-; 10. to; 11.-; 12. to 13.—; 14.-; 15.—.

Ex. 2. (p. 342)
I. 1. to pay; 2. to turn; 3. to tell; 4. to face; 5. to stay; 6. walking; 7. saying; 8. to do 9. having told; 10. to let; 11. prevent; 12. asking; 13. to turn; 14. thinking.
II. 1. being kidnapped; 2. talking; 3. to be; 4. to find; 5. warning; 6. talking; 7. to play 8. surrounding; 9. looking; 10. to search; 11. watching; 12. walking; 13. being; 14. wal king; 15. to hear; 16. call/calling.

Ex. 3."(p. 342-343) 1. to clean the rooms; 2 was advised not to tell; 3. was told to pour out; 4. were heard arguing; 5. without counting; 6. is believed to be deeply attached; 7. was known to be writing; 8. could be seen waiting; 9. too excited to eat; 10. was reported to have changed; 11. he was not capable of taking decisions; 12. was fond of laughing at; 13. was allowed to leave; 14. were left talking; 15. will have no difficulty in finding a job; 16. might be of interest to you to see; 17. were left to see; 18. is said to be on holiday; 19. was told to come; 20. was found waiting for us; 21. watched people hurrying; 22. heard him call; 23. was said to be travelling; 24. laughing gaily at.

SOME CONFUSED OR CONFUSING ELEMENTS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

1. SOME PREPOSITIONS CONFUSED

Ex. 1. (p. 345) 1. with; 2. with; 3. at; 4. with; 5. by; 6. at; 7. by; 8. by; 9. at; 10. by; 11. by; 12. by; 13. with.

Ex. 2. (p. 346) 1. among; 2. among; 3. between; 4. Between; 5. Among.

Ex. 3. (p. 346) 1. into; 2. into; 3. into; 4. into; 5. in; 6. in; 7. into; 8. in; 9. into; 10. in.

Ex. 4. (p. 347) 1. beside; 2. besides; 3. Beside; 4. besides; 5. beside; 6. Besides; 7. except.

Ex. 5. (p. 347) 1. like; 2. like; 3. as; 4. like; 5. like; 6. As, as.

Ex. 6. (p. 347-348) 1. into; 2. beside; 3. as; 4. into; 5. besides; 6. with; 7. at, besides; 8. into; 9. into; 10. at; 11. by; 12. among; 13. at; 14. At; 15. beside; 16. with; 17. beside; 18. with; 19. between; 20. with; 21. in; 22. between; 23. among; 24. between; 25. among; 26. as; 27. like; 28. like, as, as; 29. as; 30. by, by; 31. except; 32. in; 33. with, into; 34. by; 35. beside.

Ex. 7. (p. 348) 1. with water; 2. at my uncle's; 3. with her sick sister; 4. beside my bed; 5. among; 6. by the sea; 7. by bus; 8. as a bus driver; 9. as in Italy; 10. as a hammer; 11. with an axe, by the stove; 12. into the country, into the hills; 13 At noon, in these latitudes, from it, in the house; 14. between you and me alone; 15. among; 16. besides him; 17. beside herself; 18. anybody like you; 19. reached into her handbag; 20. no difference between them; 21. like a youhg man; 22, like your daddy; 23. besides you two; 24. except Vasya.

Ex. 8. (p. 348) 1. beside; 2. Besides; 3. besides; 4. besides; 5. beside; 6. besides; 7. besides; 8. Besides; 9. beside; 10. besides.

Ex. 9. (p. 348) 1. by; 2. by; 3. with; 4. by; 5. by; 6. with; 7. by; 8. by; 9. with.

Ex. 10. (p. 349) 1. with us; 2. beiside me; 3. by the door; 4. like a teenager; 5. with la knife; 6. besides eaiting; 7. by train; 8. except your students; 9. by the back door; 10. at my girlfriend's; 11. between; 12. among friends; 13. into four parts; 14. as the Five Corners; 15. at the Five corners.

2. COMPLEX SENTENCE

2.1. SUBJECT CLAUSES

Ex. 2. (p. 350) 1. Who doesn't know this doesn't know anything/knows nothing. 2. What I was trying to find out was very important for our investigation. 3. Whoever stole the hat did my aunt in. 4. Whether she ever tried to change it or no, lay hidden in her own heart. 5. It is surprising how little the district has changed. 6. What I like best about the Colonel is his moustache. 7. Whatever you do don't say "yes" on the spot . 8. Whatever she had meant to say remained unspoken. 9. Where they were to move was not discussed. 10. Whether they will ever meet again is a mystery. 11. How difficult it was to accomplish this work is seen from her diary. 12. Whoever did it is a genius. 13. What you have done is unforgivable. 14. What they enjoyed delighted me. 15 . When you will do it is of no importance to me. 16. How you will do is another matter entirely. 17. How you are going to do it is not clear to me. 18. Whether there is life like that on the Earth somewhere else in the Universe has always been of great interest to scientists.

2.2. PREDICATIVE CLAUSES

Ex. **4.** (p. 351) 1. The most unpleasant condition is that we must; 2. His proposition is that they will make and deliver; 3. Such work is what is called; 4. The greatest riddle is how he has got here; 5. The funniest thing is that; 6. The only thing I don't know is whether he knows; 7. Your support is what she needs most at the moment. 8. That's why they have sent for you/sent for you; 9. The reason is that; 10. His greatest hope is that the experiment will prove successful.

2.3. CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY THAT, WHAT AND WHICH

Ex. 5. (p. 352) 1. that; 2. what; 3. that; 4. That; 5. What; 6. that; 7. that, what; 8. that, that; 9. What; 10. that; 11. That; 12. that; 13. What, that; 14. What, that.

Ex. 7. (p. 353) 1. that, that; 2. that; 3. what; 4. which; 5. that; 6. that; 7. which; 8. what; 9. that; 10. What; 11. that; 12. What, what; 13. that; 14. what; 15. which.

Ex. 8. (p. 353) 2; 4; 7; 8; 10; 13; 14; 15.

Ex. 9. (p. 353) 1. that stood; 2. what you're going to say; 3. The lultaby (that) my father used to sing; 4. which came as a surprise even to himself; 5. that used to hoot; 6. what made you so angry; 7. to what he did or said; 8. by the idea that; 9. That in his new capacity he displayed great talent and obtained great success is unquestionable; 10. What you need is what every working girl needs, a holiday, that is a rest; 11. That's what I don't understand; 12. The trouble is that I'm sleepy at night; 13. Do you know that

in Holland they grow tulips by the square mile? 14. The secret of the matter is that; 15. which is, of course, pleasant; 16. I knew (that) you would come; 17. I see (that) you don't feel like going there; 18. Where's the book (that) I brought; 19. says (that) he's already left/gone; 20. You know what I mean, don't you?

2.5. AS AND SINCE IN THE CLAUSES OF TIME AND CAUSE (REASON)

Ex. **11** - (p. 355) 1. так как; 2. как раз когда; 3. когда; 4. так как; 5. с тех пор как; 6. с тех пор как Джорджа нет; 7. Когда; 8. так как; 9. так как; 10. так как; 11. с тех пор как; 12. Так как; 13. когда; 14. Так как; 15. с тех пор как; 16. С тех пор как; 17. с тех пор как; 18. с детства; 19. по мере того как; 2. так как.

Ex. 12. (p. 356) 1. As; 2. because; 3. As; 4. since; 5. as; 6. As; 7. because; 8. since; 9. since; 10. as; 11. because; 12. since; 13. for; 14. as; 15. because; 16. for; 17. Since; 18. because; 19. since; 20. since; 21. for; 22. Since; 23. because; 24. since; 25. Since; 26. as; 27. Since; 28. because; 29. for.

2.6. UNTIL/TILL AND BEFORE

Ex. 13. (p. 357) 1. before; 2. before/until; 3. until/till; 4. before; 5. till; 6. until; 7. until; 8. until; 9. until; 10. until; 11. Before; 12. before/until; 13. till.

Ex. **14.** (p. 357) 1. Just as we started on our way, it began snowing. 2. He walked with care because he did not wish to fall. 3. Since the spring is now well advanced, we shall soon hear the cuckoo's voice again. 4. The game was stopped because a heavy storm broke out. 5. Since she went to Italy in April, I haven't received a single letter from her. 6. As the champion grew weaker, his opponent's attacks became ... 7. I decided to stop and have lunch first - for I was feeling ... 8. Don't send this telegram until Father reads it. 9. I made the decision before that phone call came. 10. Don't go there before they ring you up.

Ex. 15. (p. 357) 1. Before you start arguing, ... 2. Until the engineer comes, ... 3. Since you cannot reach an agreement . . . . 4. As they climbed higher and higher,.... 5. Just as they stepped under the arch, ... 6. ... before they come. 7. ... because she didn't want to meet them. 8. ... , for on the whole he isn't a debater. 9. . . . until your parents come. 10. They have lived in this house since their brother left for London.

3. REVISION EXECISES

Ex. **16.** (p. 358) 1. by; 2. in/into; 3. like; 4. After; 5. like; 6. in; 7. in; 8. till; 9. on; 10. with; 11. As; 12. at; 13. into; 14. because; 15. in; 16. into; 17. in; 18. once.

Ex. 17. (p. 358-359) 1. in; 2. in; 3. till; 4. before; 5. like; 6. that; 7. in; 8. because; 9. that; 10. like; 11. What; 12. that; 13. after; 14. with; 15. before; 16. with; 17. in; 18. what; 19. Besides; 20. what; 21. as; 22. that; 23. what; 24. like; 25. in; 26. in; 27. in; 28. among; 29. by; 30. with; 31. in; 32. by; 33. as; 34. as; 35. in;

Ex. 18. (p. 359-360) 1. Once; 2. in 3. as; 4. in; 5. on; 6. in; 7. After; 8. with; 9. As; 10. by; 11. with; 12. by; 13. -/that; 14. into; 15. as; 16. -/that; 17. that; 18. into; 19. until; 20. As; 21. into; 22. in; 23. -; 24. in; 25. with; 26. what; 27. with; 28. into; 29. into; 30. into; 31. with; 32. with ; 33. into; 34. with; 35. As; 36. by; 37. what; 38. with; 39. that; 40. After; 41. Before; 42. into; 43. that/-; 44. which; 45. Besides; 46. that; 47. with; 48. by; 49. -; 50. that; 51. in; 52. in; 53. in; 54. before; 55. before; 56. -.

4. EMPHASIS

4.3. THE EMPHATIC CONSTRUCTION "IT IS ... THAT, WHICH, WHO, WHOM"

Ex. 4. (p. 362) 1. It was John who said it. 2. It was after the war that stone buildings appeared here. 3. It was she who stopped the car. 4. It is not I alone that am to blame. 5. It was only the following morning that she noticed the disappearahce of that photograph. 6. It was not by this road that they came from the wood. 7. It was then that he remembered about the old architect. 8. It is only after you have learned to swim that I will allow you to take part in that boat trip. 9. It is not this artist who has painted Daddy's pool. 10. It was just before the performance began that they came.

4.4. THE EMPHATIC CONSTRUCTION "IT IS NOT UNTIL ... THAT"

Ex. 6. (p. 363) 1. It was not until the following day that the plane started. 2. It was not until he saw them again that he understood his mistake. 3. It was not until late at night that the match outcome became known. 4. It was not till the early spring that we first heard from him. 5. It was not until they iarrived at the station that they knew the train had been cancelled. 6. It was not till the end of April that the snow melted away. 7. It was not until she arrived at her new home that she let them know about her decision to leave. 8. It was not until his book was published that he was able to leave his job in the hospital. 9. It was not till he saw that letter that he believed everything was over. 10. It is not until you do it yourself that you can understand it.

4.5. THE EMPHATIC "NOT ... TILL/UNTIL"

Ex. 8. (p. 364) 1. He didn't start writing poetry until after graduating from the university. 2. He didn't call until 8. 3. They didn't leave until midnight. 4. The performance didn't start until 11.5. I couldn't leave until after lunch. 6. We won't be able to meet until after the show. 7. I'm not going to start translating this until after my holidays. 8. We didn't fall asleep until dawn. 9. They won't come back till autumn. 10. They didn't get married until after the birth of their second baby.

5. ADDITIONAL EXCERCISES. MISCELLANEOUS

Ex. 1. (p. 364-366)

I. has been known; has given; has enlarged; (has) done; (has) led; has become; were; was; made; derived; was; was; were; was; has not stood; (has) made; took; has been.

II. determined; had been; had won and lost; had been; had won; had dethroned; (had) placed; had fallen; had not attacked; advanced; found; made; reached; saw; was destroyed; found; came; had; suffered; died; lay; fell; had led; lived.
III. ruled; was; rose; began; could; sent; obtained; reached; received; tell; wishes; holds; returned; told; had said; took; went; threw; valued; had given; have accepted; have spared; went; had done; had kept; rose; had had; sat; had fasted; opened; had been prepared; saw; had thrown; had caught and brought; was; understood; had refused; began; had passed; lost; died; is; depend; have.

Ex. 2. (p. 365-366)
I. 1. a serial; the title; a magazine; the disciplines; a serial. 2. the loss. 3. The idea. 4. a book; the city; an extra day. 5. the importance; the life; the average Viennese citizen. 6. the same; the West; the politics; the State Opera House; the same; the Royals; the latest. 7. The Opera House; the centre; a sort; the National Theatre; the Houses of Parliament. 8. a tale; the Staatsoper; a very tiny; a Lehar operetta; the tenor; a tall ... ; the audience; a great impression. 9. the curtain; an abundance; the leading lady; the line-up; a brave smile. 11. the idea; a real performance. 12. the names. 13. a real name.
II. 1. the desert; the distance; a beautiful lake; a mirage. 2. an appearance; a road. 3. a mirage. 4. a process. 6. a straight stick; a glass. 7. the same. 8. the air; the ground; a desert; the Sahara; the sand; the heat; the sun. 10. the sky; the traveller; the face; the desert; the surface; the road; a brightness; a pool; the brightness; the sky'. 11. The layer; the image; the heat; a movement; the water. 13. that the air; the surface; the sea; the air. 14. the image; an object; the horizon. 15. the effect; the layer; the rays; the observer; an image; the ship; the sky; the same; an object. 16. a neighbouring. 17. the desert; the seasoned traveller; an oasis. 18. the air; the part; a gigantic telescope; the horizon. 19. the coast; a town.

Ex. 3. (p. 367) 1. having lost, showing; 2. trying, walking; 3. being, being, sitting; 4. taking; 5. having worked; 6. getting; 7. being, hearing; 8. giving; 9. examining; 10. Saying, lying; 11. getting, giving; 12. thinking, saying;, 13. taking; 14. throwing; 15. Having received, praising, finding; 16. Having been given, finding, finding.

Ex. 4. (p. 367) 1. at; 2 at; 3. by; 4. in; 5. in; 6. by; 7. in; 8. by; 9. in;. 10. in; 11. with; 12. in; 13. in; 14. in; 15. in; 16. in.

Ex. 5. (p. 367-368) 1. that; 2. with; 3. to/into; 4. in; 5. of; 6. What; 7. to; 8. at; 9. to; 10. for; 11. by; 12. with; 13. on; 14. with; 15. in; 16. with; 17. for; 18. What; 19. for; 20. in; 21. with; 22. as; 23. as; 24. of; 25. for; 26. than; 27. as; 28. as; 29. as; 30;as; 31. at; 32. how; 33. about; 34. in; 35. -/that; 36. into.

English Grammar:

Test File

TEST 1

Variant I

I	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	b	a	b	b	a	b	
П	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	c	a	b	C	b	c	
Ш	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	c	a	c	b	d	c	
IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	b	C	C	b	a	b	

V
1. will make; are writing
2. woke up
3. does she come
4. comes; will talk
5. is asking
6. came back; was reading

VI
1. am writing
2. returned
3. will be staying
4. met
5. was passing
6. took
7. will be
8. are
9. will meet
10. leaves
11. are coming
12. are bringing
13. don't want
14. will you call

VII
1. don't they
2. didn't he
3. isn't it
4. will she
5. did they
6. does he

Variant II

I	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	b	a	b	b	b	a	
П	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	b	a	b	b	c	b	
III	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	a	d	b	C	d	c	
IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	a	b	b	C	b	c	

V
1. are doubting
2. sets
3. was getting off; hurt
4. will be writing; will find
5. will stay
6. were you thinking; chose

VI
1. am
2. am hurrying
3. arrives
4. hates
5. don't want
6. start
7. are having
8. are going
9. go
10. met
11. was meeting
12. decided
13. will ring
14. are coming

VII
1. does he
2. didn't he
3. did she
4. will you
5. won't he
6. wasn't she

TEST 2

Variant I								Variant II							
I	1	2	3	4	5	6		I	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	b	a	b	b	a	a			a	b	a	b	b	b	
II	1	2	3	4	5	6		II	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	c	b	a	b	C	a			b	C	a	C	a	b	
III	1	2	3	4	5	6		III	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	c	d	b	d	d	d			c	b	d	d	C	d	
IV	1	2	3	4	5	6		IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	
	c	b	c	b	a	b			c	C	a	C	b	b	

V

1. has happened
2. have been calling
3. had gone to bed
4. will have forgotten
5. had been snowing
6. will have been driving

V

1. will have gone away
2. had been looking for
3. hasn't come
4. had lived
5. have been talking
6. will have been travelling

VI

1. have been sitting
2. have drunk
3. haven't arrived
4. had telephoned
5. have moved
6. have been waiting
7. have kept
8. had driven
9. had been
10. have come
11. will have cooked
12. will have assembled

VII

1. have you
2. hasn't he
3. won't they
4. don't you
5. has she
6. didn't he

VI

1. have been writing
2. have spent
3. had been travelling
4. have groun up
5. gone
6. have started
7. have been looking for
8. have found
9. has already begun
10. had sold
11. will have finished
12. will have been living

VII

1. have they
2. won't they
3. hasn't he
4. did they
5. have you
6. haven't they

TEST 3

	Variant I									*Variant II*							
I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	a	b	a	a	b	a	a		b	b	a	b	a	b	b	b
П	1	2	3	4	5	6			П	1	2	3	4	5	6		
	c	b	a	b	c	c				c	b	a	b	a	b		
Ш	1	2	3	4	5	6			Ш	1	2	3	4	5	6		
	b	d	c	c	b	d				b	d	a	c	c	b		
IV	1	2	3	4	5	6			IV	1	2	3	4	5	6		
	b	c	a	b	b	a				c	c	b	b	b	c		
V	1	2	3	4	5	6			V	1	2	3	4	5	6		
	c	d	c	c	a	c				a	d	c	c	d	b		

VI

1. is doing
2. have been hunting
3. went
4. have read
5. jog
6. will meet

VI

1. are spending
2. take
3. have been living
4. had
5. were talking
6. will wait

VII

1. are going
2. am looking
3. have not been
4. is
5. do you visit
6. enjoy
7. have seen
8. stopped
9. went
10. was waiting
11. decided
12. had eaten

VIII

1. haven't they
2. does he
3. weren't there
4. doesn't it
5. aren't they
6. did he
7. has he
8. won't you

VII

1. went
2. picked
3. am speaking
4. am flying
5. will be
6. stammered
7. will ring
8. arrive
9. returned
10. were leaving
11. had gone
12. seemed

VIII

1. won't they
2. doesn't she
3. does he
4. did he
5. isn't it
6. weren't you
7. have you
8. is there

TEST 4

Variant I

I

1. why I blamed
2. is getting
3. she was seeing
4. he had left; had rung her up
5. not to bother; she would not be
6. he spent
7. she had been speaking; I had left
8. I wouldn't feel; I don't know

П

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
c	b	c	b	d	c	b	c

Ш

1	2	3	4	5	6
b	b	b	b	a	a

IV

1. if I would join them
2. I had been; had hit
3. why I couldn't afford
4. how many children were dying
5. who was waiting
6. what price they had offered
7. I had been working
8. if I was/we were really enjoying

V

1. would start; came
2. had been following
3. had read
4. worked; got
5. should be
6. would be delivered
7. rotates
8. had been signed

VI

1. were planning
2. would be
3. could
4. got
5. had tried
6. knew
7. had done
8. knew
9. was talking
10. was
11. had had

Variant II

I

1. was getting
2. had left
3. had broken
4. the Presidents would discuss
5. he wouldn't like; he can't understand
6. he had ... been
7. they thought
8. consists

U

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
C	b	d	a	C	a	b	C

Ш

1	2	3	4	5	6
a	b	b	a	b	a

IV

1. who could tell
2. what the country exported
3. how I was feeling
4. where had been
5. what dress she had been wearing
6. why I hadn't invited
7. if I knew who built
8. had received

V

1. had started; arrived
2. wouldn't come
3. had liked
4. loses
5. would send
6. had been looking for
7. paid
8. was reading for

VI

1. know
2. had intented
3. didn't say
4. had thought
5. was going
6. had forgotten
7. was closing
8. was
9. had packed
10. didn't find

TEST 5

Variant I											Variant II										
I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
				✓																	
II	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8			II	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		
	b	a	c	c	d	b	b	c				c	d	b	a	d	c	d	a		
III	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8			III	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		
	b	c	d	a	b	d	c	c				c	b	d	a	d	c	a.	d		
IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8			IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		
	b	d	c	g	a	h	e	j				j	b	i	d	f	h	a	c		

V

1. you were sent
2. you'll be invited
3. I'm sent
4. he was being looked at
5. The Professor is sent for
6. the lecturer was being listened to

V

1. the children will be taken
2. we were shown
3. she has been taken
4. the boy was being followed
5. Ann will be taken care of
6. the f gures can be relied on

VI

1. had been finished
2. lingered
3. did't have
4. was being prepared
5. would be
6. would be presented
7. did't want
8. would be made
9. would reply
10. had been prepared
11. wondered
12. would be said
13. had been
14. would be regretted

VI

1. Is being done
2. had been planned
3. had been
4. will have been dug
5. will begin
6. approached
7. had been called
8. saw
9. was being hauled
10. had been unloaded
11. had been set up
12. bowed
13. will have been finished
14. will start

TEST 6

Variant I									Variant II								
I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	a	d	b	a	d	c	a	d		a	b	d	c	b	a	c	d
П	1	2	3	4	5	6			U	1	2	3	4	5	6		
	c	b	d	a	a	c				c	d	c	b	c	a		
III	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Ш	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	c	a	d	c	a	b	d		c	b	a	a	b	b	c	d
IV	1. had called 2. will borrow 3. had; would have understood 4. were 5. had come 6. would have never been found								IV	1. invited 2. see 3. would grow 4. would have bought 5. Will need 6. would help							
V	1	2	3	4	5	6			V	1	2	3	4	5	6		
	b	a	c	a	c	b				c	a	b	a	b	c		
VI	1. hadn't given up 2. were 3. would be 4. had answered 5. had 6. hadn't been								VI	1. had explained 2. had known 3. had had 4. were 5. hadn't been rude 6. wouldn't watch							

TEST 7

Variant I									Variant II								
I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	b	c	a	b	a	b	c		b	c	b	a	b	c	a	c
II	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	П	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	a	c	b	c	c	a	b		c	a	b	b	a	c	a	b
III	1	2	3	4	5	6			III	1	2	3	4	5	6		
	b	a	c	b	d	c				d	b	d	b	c	b		
IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	c	a	c	b	b	c	a		a	c	b	c	a	b	c	a
V	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	V	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	c	Ь	c	a	c	b	c		a	c	a	c	c	b	a	a
VI	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	VI	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	d	b	c	f	g	a	h	e		d	b	f	h	c	d	a	e

TEST 8

Variant I												Variant II											
I												I											
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
✓			✓			✓																	
П												П											
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
b	a	a	c	a	d	b	c	d	a	a	c	d	a	a	c	b	d	a	c	b	a	a	b

III

1. phenomena
2. geese
3. clocks
4. spectacles
5. stairs
6. goods
7. data
8. teeth

Ш

1. crises
2. trousers
3. formulae
4. contents
5. clothes
6. arms
7. gate
8. oxen

IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	a	a	b	b	a	a	b	b

IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	a	b	b	a	b	a	b

V

1. announcement
2. heiress
3. suspicion
4. persona ties
5. entrance
6. faithfulness
7. competition
8. pilgrimage

V

1. admission
2. difference
3. activity
4. childhood
5. marriage
6. kindness
7. hostess
8. development

TEST 9

Variant I

П	III	IV		VI
1 b	1 c	1 d	1 c	
2 c	2 b	2 c	2 a	
3 c	3 a	3 a	3 c	
4 c	4 b	4 d	4 b	
5 b	5 a	5 a	5 a	
6 b	6 a	6 c	6 b	
7 a	7 b	7 c	7 a	
8 c	8 c	8 b	8 c	

Variant II

II	III	IV		VI
1 c	1 a	1 b	1 a	
2 c	2 c	2 d	2 c	
3 a	3 b	3 a	3 c	
4 c	4 b	4 d	4 a	
5 b	5 b	5 c	5 a	
6 a	6 b	6 a	6 b	
7 c	7 b	7 a	7 b	
8 c	8 a	8 b	8 c	

10 10

и 11

12 12

13 13

14 14

15 15

10 10

11 11

12 12

13 13

14 14

15 15

TEST 10

	Variant I									*Variant II*							
I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	**I**	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	d	a	c	b	c	a	a	b		c	b	a	d	c	a	b/d	d
II	1	2	3	4	5	6			**II**	1	2	3	4	5	6		
	c	e	b	d	e	d				b	d	e	e	c	a		
III	1	2	3	4	5	6			**III**	1	2	3	4	5	6		
	d	b	a	c	a	e				d	b	e	a	a	G		
IV	1	2	3	4	5	6			**IV**	1	2	3	4	5	6		
	b	a	d	e	f	c				d	c	a	b	e	f		
V	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	**V**	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	a	e	b	c	a	d	b	c		d	b	e	a	c	b	a	c
VI	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	**VI**	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	c	a	b	e	b	d	b	a		c	e	b	a	b	b	c	a

TEST 11

Variant I				*Variant II*			
I	1. powerful 2. wooden 3. natural 4. irresponsible 5. hopeless 6. attractive 7. healthy 8. exciting	II	1. DBCAE 2. DABCE 3. ADBCE 4. BCADE 5. DCBAE 6. CBDAE	I	1. digital 2. introductory 3. northern 4. unfortunate 5. painless 6. sensible 7. famous 8. illegal	U	1. BCADE 2. CADBE 3. CADBE 4. ACDBE 5. CDBAE 6. CBDAE

III			III		
A	B	C	A	B	C
-er/est	more/most +	Irregular forms	-er/est	more/most +	Irregular forms
3 5 7 8 13 16	1 2 4 10 11 15	6 9 12 14	1 2 4 9 10 12	3 5 7 8 13 14	6 11 15 16

IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	b	c	b	a	c	c	b

IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	c	c	b	a	a	c	b

V	1	2	3	4	5	6
	c	f	a	d	e	g

V	1	2	3	4	5	6
	c	e	d	b	a	g

VI	1	2	3	4	5	6
	d	a	b	e	c	b

VI	1	2	3	4	5	6
	d	b	e	a	c	a

TEST 12

Variant I																*Variant II*															
I																I															
1		2		3		4		5		6		7		8		1		2		3		4		5		6		7		8	
1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2	1	2		2	1	2	1	2
b	a	a	b	b	a	b	a	a	b	b	a	b	a	b	a	b	a	b	a	a	b	b	a	b	a	a	b	b	a	b	a
II	1	2		3		4		5		6		7		8		II	1	2				4		5		6		7		8	
	h	c		i		a		e		b		g		d			j	a		b		i		f		d		e		b	
III	1	2		3		4		5		6		7		8		III	1	2		3		4		5		6		7		8	
	b	d		a		c		b		a		c		d			a	d		b		c		d		b		c		a	
IV	1	2		3		4		5		6		7		8		IV	1	2				4		5		6		7		8	
	c	b		a		b		a		b		c		a			a	c		b		b		a		c		b		c	
V	1	2				4		5		6		7		8		V	1	2				4		5		6		7		8	
	a	c		b		c		a		b		c		b			a	c		b		c		a		b		c		c	

TEST 13

Variant I									*Variant II*								
I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	c	a	b	a	c	b	d	c		b	a	d	a	b	c	d	a
II	1. being 2. hearing 3. being disturbed 4. having seen 5. asking 6. having cheated 7. working 8. having lost								II	1. being 2. receiving 3. having seen 4. being taken 5. talking 6. saying 7. being 8. buying							
III	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	III	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	a	a	e	e	a	a	e	c		c	a	a	a	e	a	a	e
IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	h	d	c	f	e	h	a	a		h	d	h	a	b	f	c	b
V	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	V	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	c	c	b	a	a	c	b		c	a	c	c	c	b	a	b
VI	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	VI	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	a	b	a	b	a	b	b	a		b	a	b	b	b	a	a	a
VII	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	VII	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	a	b	a	a	b	a	b	b		a	a	b	b	b	b	a	b
VIII	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	VIII	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	a	b	c	d	b	b	a	d		c	b	a	a	c	b	d	a

TEST 14

	Variant I									*Variant II*							
I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	a	b	b	a	b	a	b		b	a	a	b	b	a	b	b
II	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	II	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	d	a	b	c	b	c	d		b	b	d	b	c	d	b	d
III	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	III	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	b	c	a	c	a	c	b		c	b	b	c	a	b	c	a
IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	c	b	c	a	a	c	b	c		a	a	c	b	a	c	c	a
V	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	V	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	a	d	c	b	a	a	c	d		c	b	d	b	c	a	a	d
VI	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	VI	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	c	a	d	d	c	a	c	c		b	c	a	c	b	c	b	a

TEST 15

	Variant I									*Variant II*							
1	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	I	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	a	b	c	a	a	b	a	d		a	a	c	d	b	c	a	b
II	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	II	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	c	a	b	b	b	a	b		c	a	b	c	c	b	c	a
III	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	III	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	a	c	c	c	a	b	c	a		a	c	c	a	a	a	b	a
IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	IV	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	b	a	c	b	a	c	b	a		b	a	b	a	a	b	c	a
V	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	V	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
	a	d	b	c	a	d	a	c		a	c	a	b	a	c	d	c